

LIVING
TOGETHER
in the
OLD WORLD


CURRICULUM

CUTRIGHT / LEFFERTS / SHAPIRO / SOIFER



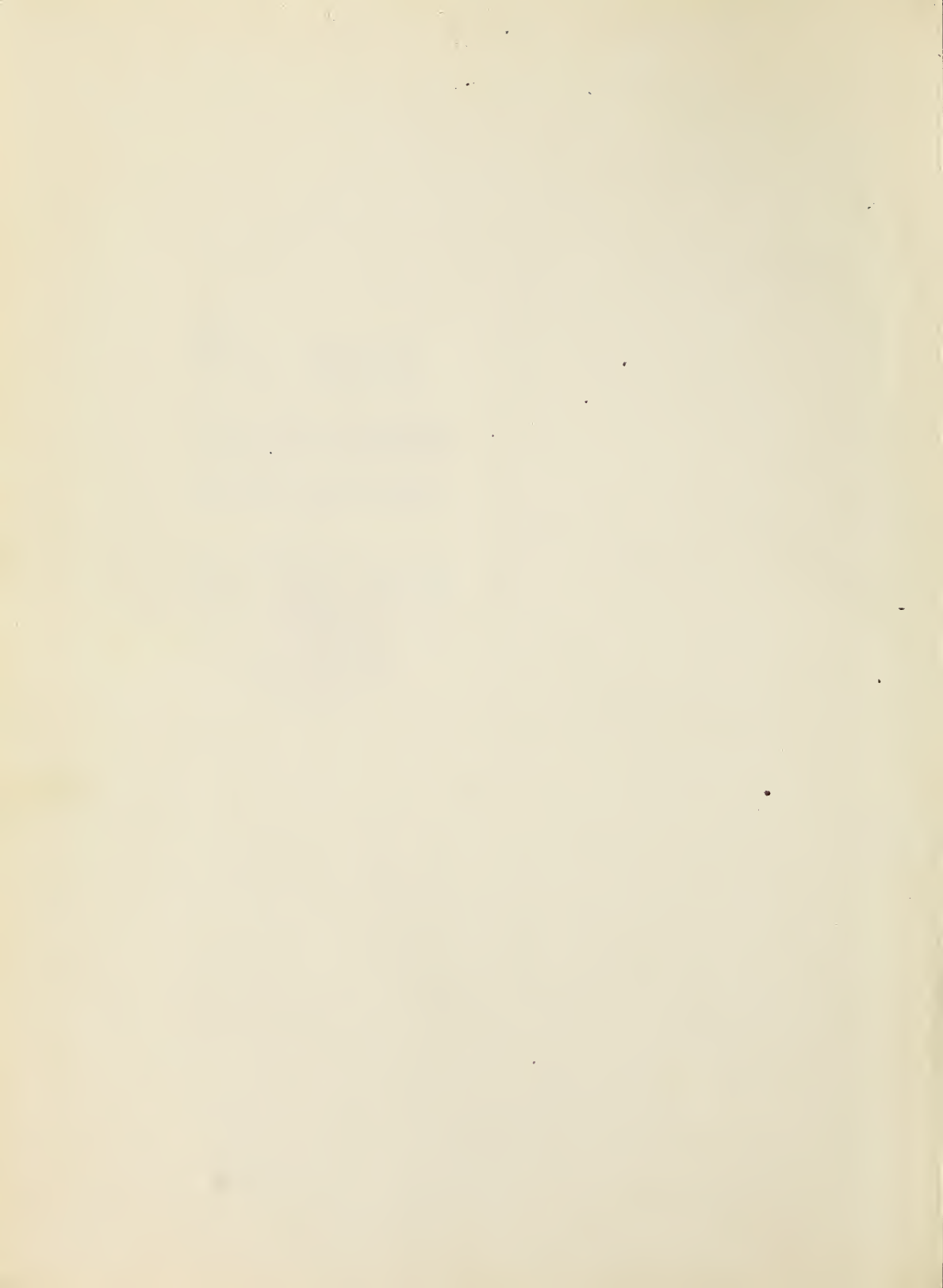
Ex libris
UNIVERSITATIS
ALBERTAENSIS





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2016 with funding from
University of Alberta Libraries

https://archive.org/details/macmillansocialscutr_4



MACMILLAN SOCIAL-STUDIES SERIES

A basal series in history and geography

PRUDENCE CUTRIGHT — General Editor

Living Together Today and Yesterday

CLARK — NEWELL

Living Together Around the World

MAE KNIGHT CLARK

Living Together in the Americas

KING — DENNIS — POTTER

Living Together in the United States

KING — DENNIS — POTTER

Living Together in the Old World

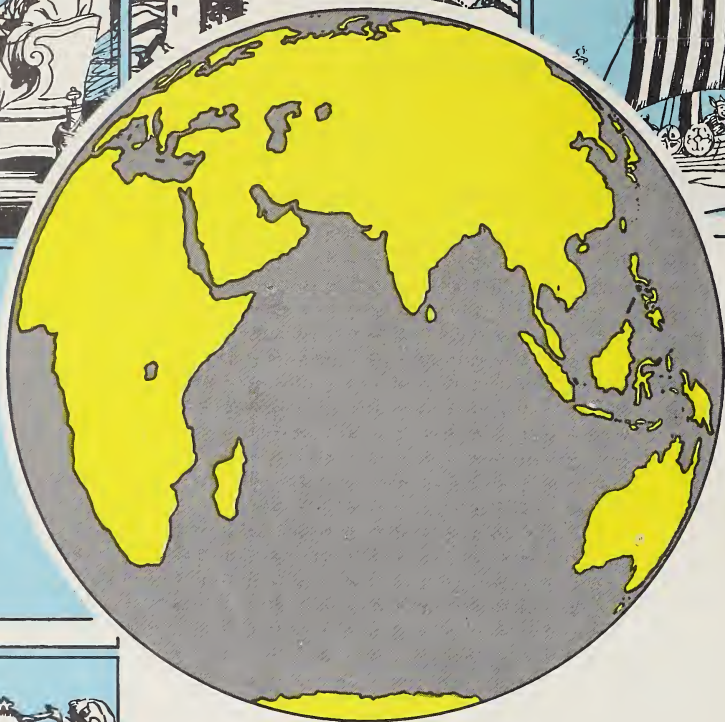
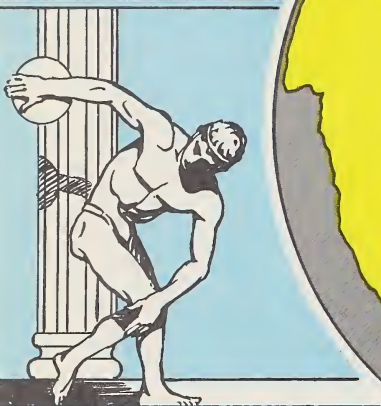
LEFFERTS — SHAPIRO — SOIFER

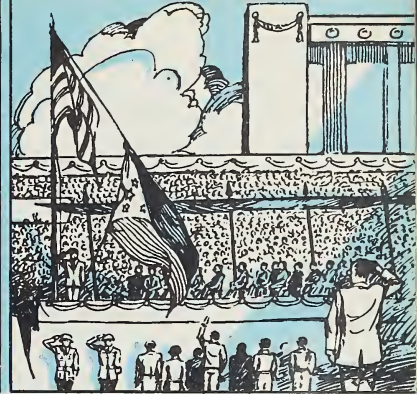
Living Together as American Neighbors

CUTRIGHT — DURAND

Living Together as World Neighbors

DURAND — BROOKS — ANDERSON





LIVING TOGETHER IN THE OLD WORLD

PRUDENCE CUTRIGHT

WALTER LEFFERTS - HARRY H. SHAPIRO - ISRAEL SOIFER

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY - NEW YORK



Athens, Greece



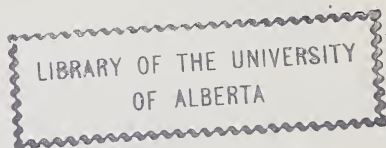
Naples, Italy

© THE MACMILLAN COMPANY 1958

All rights reserved—no part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission in writing from the publisher, except by a reviewer who wishes to quote brief passages in connection with a review written for inclusion in magazine or newspaper.

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

First Edition © The Macmillan Company 1953



ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

For the drawings and maps in this book acknowledgment is made to the following: to Mr. George M. Richards for the line drawings; to the late Mr. J. McA. Smiley for the construction and line of the maps; to Mr. Leonard Ralph Sorge for the art work and air-brush rendering of the halftone maps; and to Pictograph Corp., New York, for designing the graphs. Art work on page 290 © The Macmillan Company 1949, 1955.

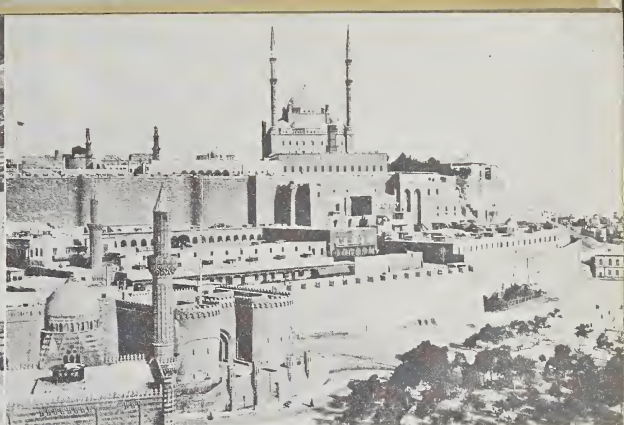
For the photographs of cities in the front of the book, acknowledgment is made to Ewing Galloway (for Athens, Naples, Canton, and Cairo); to the British Travel Association (for London); to the French Government Tour-

ist Office (for Paris); to Ewing Krainin (for Udaipur); to the Australian Information Office (for Melbourne); and to Gendreau (for Helsinki and Istanbul).

For permission to reproduce art objects acknowledgment is made to the Metropolitan Museum of Art for the painting *Madame Charpentier and Her Children*, by Pierre Renoir, and Chinese costumes; to the Guennol Collection for the Greek vase in the Metropolitan Museum and for the Babylonian ram in the Brooklyn Museum; to the Minneapolis Institute of Arts for the Chinese porcelain plate (gift of Mr. and Mrs. Augustus L. Searle) and for the Chinese jade disc (gift of Mrs. Edward C. Gale); and to the Wadsworth Atheneum, Hartford, Conn., for the Greek Tanagra figure from their collection.



Canton, China



Cairo, Egypt

PREFACE

Living Together in the Old World is a social-studies book designed to give pupils in the elementary school a knowledge of the history and geography of the countries of the Old World. The subject matter covers the continents of Europe, Africa, Asia, Australia, and the Pacific islands.

The text opens with an introduction covering the geographic terms and concepts useful to the pupil in his study of the Old World. The next unit presents an account of the development of man from the most primitive times to the era of the great valley civilizations. Each of the fifteen units that follow, except Unit 7 on "Life in the Middle Ages," deals with a specific geographic region. The pupil is introduced to each region first through its geographic setting. He then learns about the history of the lands of the region and the cultural contributions of their peoples to the world. Finally, he sees each land and its people, its government, and its ways of living as they are today. Frequently the pupil becomes acquainted with a country through an imaginary visit to it during which he may meet and talk with representative persons of the region.

The pictorial time-lines which introduce the units enlist the pupil's interest, give him a grasp of the chronology of events, and help him to acquire historical perspective. On the geographic side each area under discussion is introduced by a spot-location map which helps the pupil orient himself. In addition to the illustrated time-lines simple diagrammatic time-lines of a kind which the pupil himself may construct are included in the unit activities.

The contributions of the New World to the Old as well as the Old World to the New are pointed out. This gives the pupil an opportunity to see the interrelationship of the peoples and the countries of the earth. To emphasize the need for preserving democracy in the world today, a concluding section stresses the importance of co-operation among the freedom-loving nations and considers America's place of leadership in the world.

This book is one of the Macmillan Social-Studies Series, designed for use in social-studies classes in the elementary school. The major aim of the series is to develop citizens who appreciate the American way of life and who have the understanding and skills necessary for intelligent and responsible citizenship.

The organization of the series

The social-studies curriculum of the elementary school takes pupils to every major world area and from prehistoric to modern times. The abundance of information available requires standards for selection of facts and concepts most useful to elementary school pupils.

The Macmillan Social-Studies Series uses the following ten aspects of everyday living as a basis of selection and organization: production and consumption, transportation, communication, making a living, government and group living, home and family life, education, recreation, conservation, and the expression of aesthetic and spiritual impulses. These ten aspects provide a well-rounded view of life in our times and in the past, in our own nation and in other nations.



London, England



Paris, France

The sources of content

The Macmillan Social-Studies Series uses all the resources of all the social sciences. Five main areas, however, provide most of the content. The study of *geography* provides knowledge of the various regions of the world. *History* records the deeds and efforts of man to shape and to improve his way of life. It acquaints pupils with their American heritage and gives a historical background for understanding the cultures of peoples of other regions. The study of *government and civics* brings to pupils a knowledge of how people live together under laws and a realization of the importance of the individual citizen in a democracy. *Economic education* affords an understanding of how people earn a living, the importance of using natural resources wisely, and the role of science, transportation, and education in the welfare of a nation. Science is used to show the part that scientists and their discoveries have played in improving man's life on earth. *Sociology* provides data dealing with population changes and ways of living throughout the world.

This series has carefully organized sections dealing with history and geography. When geographical information clarifies a historical event, it is included in the narrative. However, the main course of the narrative is not interrupted. At the same time, the essential concepts of geography are presented separately and fully.

Special attention to vocabulary

The average pupil needs special help in mastering the vocabulary of the social studies. If he is to improve in his ability to read and to understand what he reads, new words and terms must be taught. In this series the words and terms essen-

tial to the subject matter of each grade level have been carefully selected. When a new social-studies word or term is introduced, it is italicized, defined, and reused frequently. These new words and terms are reviewed at the ends of sections and units and are also collected in a glossary. Pronunciations of difficult words are supplied in the glossary and in the index.

Reading in the social studies

These books not only teach the special vocabulary of the social studies, but they give pupils help with many reading problems. The pupil learns how to adjust the pace of his reading to the content as it develops. He is given purposes for his reading and is helped to realize them.

Each book of this series provides training in such study skills as map-reading, outlining, and summarizing. The manuals give concrete aid to the teacher in helping pupils master these skills.

Special features of the series

The Macmillan Social-Studies Series offers three types of help to the teacher—the textbook, an annotated teacher's edition, and a workbook for pupils which extends and applies the study skills of the textbook.

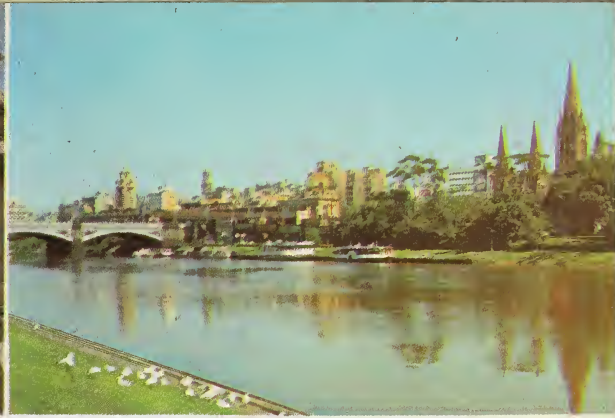
Each book is organized in units. The introductions to the units arouse interest, lead into the content, and close with questions which indicate the unit organization.

Review exercises are introduced within the unit to help pupils check their progress. At the end of each unit are projects which enable pupils to develop the communication skills and the social skills of democratic living.

THE AUTHORS



Udaipur, India



Melbourne, Australia

CONTENTS

	PAGE		PAGE
Unit 1. Our Earth	x	Unit 5. Greece and Its Neighbors	140
What Our Earth Is Like	2	The Greeks and Their Land	142
Climate and the Temperature Regions	6	The Importance of Athens	147
Kinds of Maps	11	Greece's Gifts to the World	153
		Life in Greece Today	156
Unit 2. How Early Man Lived and Learned	16	The Balkan Countries	159
How the Early Men Lived	18		
Man, the Hunter and Animal Tamer	20	Unit 6. Ancient Rome and Modern Italy	166
Man, the Farmer	22	The Rise of Rome	168
The Beginning of Art	25	Building the Roman Empire	173
The Beginning of Government and Law	26	Rome's Gifts to the World	180
		Modern Italy	183
Unit 3. The Countries of the Middle East	30		
The Land of the Twin Rivers	32	Unit 7. Life in the Middle Ages	196
The Country of Iraq	40	Life Under the Feudal System	198
The Land of Iran	44	Towns and Cities in the Middle Ages	205
Turkey, Old and New	50	The Crusades and What They Accomplished	208
Syria, Lebanon, and Jordan	55	The Gifts of the Middle Ages	210
Palestine, Where Religions Meet	59		
Arabia, a Desert Land	66	Unit 8. Spain and Portugal	218
Egypt, Land of Pyramids	72	The Early History of Spain and Portugal	220
		How Spain and Portugal Became Nations	222
Unit 4. The Countries of the Far East	88	Spain and Portugal in Modern Times	227
The Land of India	90	Spain's and Portugal's Gifts to the World	232
Ancient India's Gifts to the World	95	Spain and Portugal Today	234
Through the Crowded India of Today	97		
The Countries of Southeast Asia	105	Unit 9. France and the French Colonies	238
China, the World's Oldest Nation	116	France as a Nation	240
Ancient China's Gifts to the World	120	A Visit to France	247
Modern China	125		

	PAGE		PAGE
Some Reasons Why France Is Famous	256	The Story of Czechoslovakia	386
The French Colonies	259	The Story of Poland	391
Unit 10. Great Britain and the Commonwealth of Nations	268	Unit 15. Union of Soviet Socialist Republics	398
The Early History of Britain	270	The Russian Empire	400
English Ideas of Government	273	Famous Persons of Old Russia	402
Great Britain as a World Power	276	The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics	403
Great Britain Today	280	European Russia	409
Ireland, the Emerald Isle	289	Asiatic Russia	415
The British Empire and the British Commonwealth	292	Soviet Russia Today	419
Unit 11. Belgium and the Netherlands	306	Unit 16. The Continent of Africa	422
The Early History of the Low Countries	308	The Exploration and Settlement of Africa	424
The Netherlands as a Nation	309	Africa's Different Regions	426
Belgium as a Nation	319	Africa Today	434
Belgium's African Colonies	323	Unit 17. Islands of the Pacific	438
Unit 12. Scandinavia and Finland	326	Japan, from Early to Modern Times	440
Early History of the Scandinavian Lands	328	Japan and World War II	449
Denmark, Land of the Danes	329	The Philippine Islands	454
The Land of Norway	334	The Republic of Indonesia	456
The Land of Sweden	340	The Islands of Melanesia	457
The Land of Finland	345	The Islands of Polynesia	459
Unit 13. Germany, a Great Industrial Nation	350	The Future of the Pacific Islands	460
How Germany Became a Great Nation	352	After World War II	462
World War I and Its Results	356	Reference Tables	
Life in Germany Before World War II	359	Europe	464
Germany and World War II	364	Asia	464
Germany After World War II	366	Africa	464
Unit 14. The Countries of Central Europe	370	Australia and the Islands of the Pacific	465
The Story of Switzerland	372	Word List	466
The Story of Austria and Hungary	380	Index	472

Helsinki, Finland



Istanbul, Turkey



LIST OF MAPS

	PAGE		PAGE
Physical and Political Maps		Partitions of Poland	393
The World (<i>full color</i>)	12-13	Soviet Russia (<i>full color</i>)	411
North Africa and the Middle East (<i>full color</i>)	38-39	Africa (<i>full color</i>)	435
Iraq and Iran	41	Japan	442
The Fertile Crescent (<i>full color</i>)	51	Islands of the Pacific	452-453
Ottoman Empire at Its Greatest Extent	52	Special Purpose Maps	
The Eastern Mediterranean	60	The Four Hemispheres	2
Palestine	61	Population Map of the Old World	6
Arabia	66	Rainfall Map of the Old World	7
Egypt	75	Latitude and Longitude (<i>full color</i>)	9
India and Southeast Asia	91	Temperature Regions of the Earth	10
China	118	Glaciers in the Ice Age	18
Asia (<i>full color</i>)	124	Altitude Map of Asia	100-101
Europe (<i>full color</i>)	145	Products Map of Southeast Asia	108
Empire of Alexander the Great	153	Products Map of China	134
Greece and the Balkans	158	City of Rome	171
Italy	170	Routes of the First and Third Crusades	209
Roman Empire Under Augustus	175	Medieval Trade Routes	212
Spain and Portugal	223	Products Map of Spain and Portugal	230
France	244	City of Paris	250
Empire of Napoleon	246	Products Map of France	252
French Empire (<i>full color</i>)	261	Products Map of the British Isles	281
England Under Alfred the Great (<i>full color</i>)	272	City of London	284
England Under William the Conqueror (<i>full color</i>)	273	Products Map of Scandinavia	331
The British Isles (<i>full color</i>)	276	Nansen's and Amundsen's Routes	339
British Commonwealth and Empire	293	Altitude Map of Europe	375
Australia and New Zealand (<i>full color</i>)	294	Products Map of the U.S.S.R. (<i>full color</i>)	419
The Low Countries	313	Products Map of Africa	433
Scandinavia and Finland	330	Diagrams and Graphs	
Germany	355	The Seasons (<i>full color</i>)	5
Europe in 1914	357	Oil Production of Iraq	86
Germany: 1914-1945	367	Temperature Graph of Athens, Greece	165
Switzerland	373	Production of Raw Silk, 1955	195
Austria-Hungary: 1914-1920	382	A Manor of the Middle Ages	202
Central Europe	387	Map Symbols (<i>full color</i>)	303
		Wool, Australia's Chief Export	305
		Russians Work Longer to Buy Food	405



Africa



Eurasia



North America



South America

1.

Have you ever looked at the full moon through field glasses? If you have not, there is a pleasure in store for you. Through the glasses you see a yellow ball, or sphere. This sphere is moving around the earth. It takes the moon about twenty-eight days to move around the earth.

Our earth is also a sphere. It is much larger than the moon. The earth moves around the sun at a speed of more than one thousand miles a minute. It makes the journey around the sun in about three hundred and sixty-five days, or one year.

The distance around the earth is called its *circumference*. At its greatest distance the circumference is about twenty-five thousand miles. The distance straight through the center is called the *diameter*. The diameter of the earth is a little less than one third of the circumference, or about eight thousand miles. We have



Australia



Antarctica

Our Earth

never been able to bore into the earth more than a mile or two. So we know little about the inside of our sphere.

The outside, or surface, of our earth has both land and water. Some of the land areas are very large. Millions of persons spend their lives without ever seeing any large body of water. But looking at a school globe, we see that the earth has more water surface than land surface. Only one fourth of the earth's surface is land. Over the earth is a thick blanket of air which we call the *atmosphere*. The atmosphere covers both land and water.

For thousands of years man was shut in by large bodies of water. Then he learned to travel over the seas and to sail on all the oceans. He built roads which reached from ocean to ocean. Still travel was limited to the earth's surface for a very long time.

Then man invented the airplane. Flying through the atmosphere, the airplane crosses over the oceans and soars over the highest mountains. From it man can view any part of the earth. Little islands, far out in the ocean, once almost unknown, suddenly become important as landing fields for the airplane. With the airplane man has made the world seem small.

To be wise citizens of today's world, we must learn to think of the world in relation to air travel. Nations must understand one another in order to be good neighbors. More than ever before geography is an important study.

This unit on world geography will help you answer these questions:

1. What is our earth like?
2. How does our climate affect our earth?
3. What kinds of maps do we have?



Hemisphere is the name that is given to any half of the globe. The Eastern Hemisphere includes the continents of Europe, Asia, Africa, and Australia. The Western Hemisphere includes the continents of North and South America. The earth may also be divided into hemispheres by using the equator as a boundary line. Any area of the earth north of the equator is in the Northern Hemisphere and any area south of the equator is in the Southern Hemisphere.

WHAT OUR EARTH IS LIKE

Our school globe shows us the shape of the earth and its land and water surface.

THE DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH

On the globe we see only half of the earth at one time. Hemisphere is the name given to any half of the globe.

On the globe we can see the large bodies of land called continents. There are seven of them.

The seven continents

The Western Hemisphere, or New World, has two continents, North America

and South America. These two continents were once joined by a narrow strip of land which we call an isthmus. This is the Isthmus of Panama, and it is cut by the Panama Canal.

The Eastern Hemisphere, or Old World, has five continents: Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia, and Antarctica. Europe and Asia are joined. So were Africa and Asia until a canal across the Isthmus of Suez separated them.

The divisions of the Old World

Asia, as we see from the globe, is the largest of the seven continents. There is no real division between Europe and Asia. Europe is actually a great thumb of land, or peninsula, extending westward from the main part of Asia.

Africa is the second largest continent. Southeast of Asia lies Australia, the smallest continent.

Around the South Pole lies a great body of land called Antarctica. This continent is almost entirely covered with thick ice. Although it is larger than either Europe or Australia, Antarctica has no permanent population. From this we see that size alone does not make any area of land important in the world.

THE MOTIONS OF THE EARTH

As a clever pitcher throws a baseball to the batter, he makes it spin. The ball has two motions, a path through the air and a spin. The earth also has two motions. As it travels in a wide circle around the sun, it also spins around and around like a top. That is, it turns around its own center just as if there were an imaginary rod, or line, passing through it from end to end. We call the imaginary line on which the earth seems to turn its *axis*.

The earth on its axis

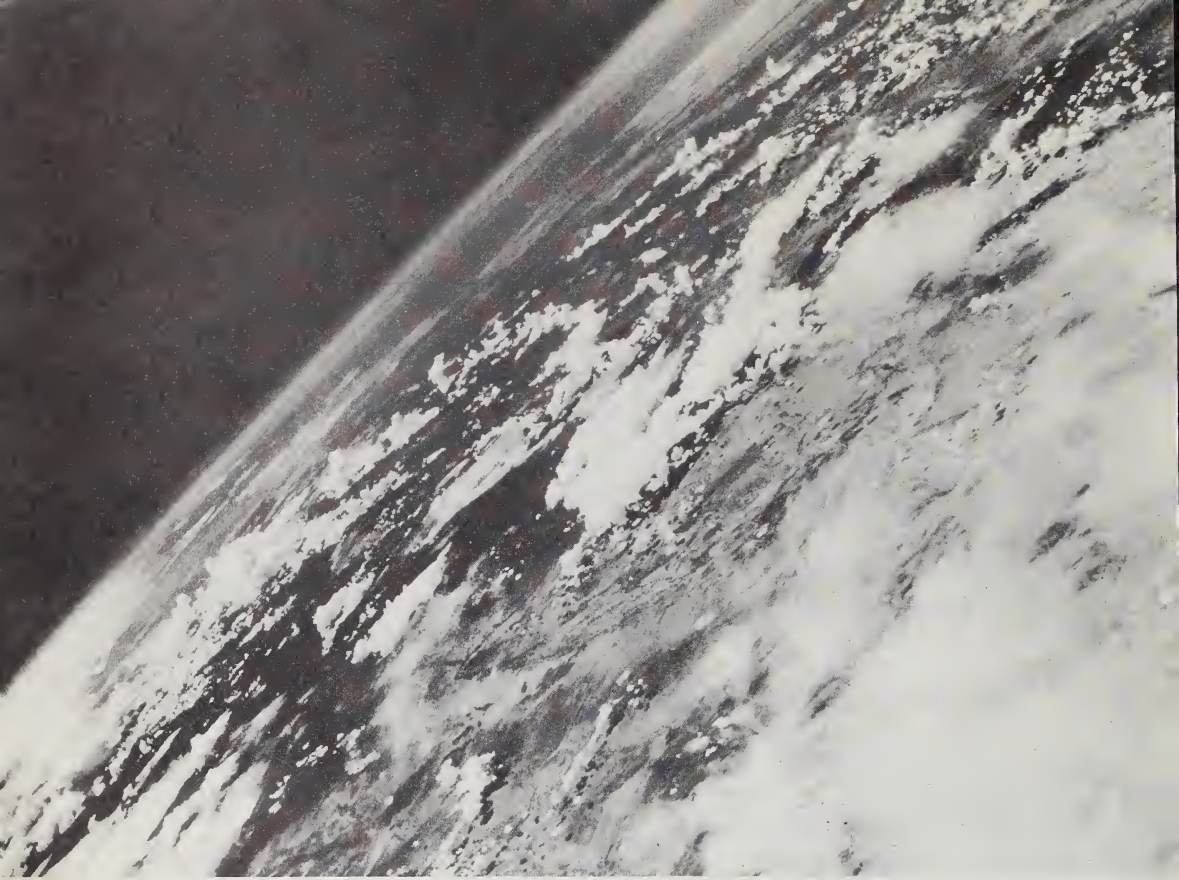
The earth turns completely around on its axis once every twenty-four hours. The turning of the earth on its axis is called *rotation*. As the earth turns, or rotates, different parts of its surface face the sun, which gives the earth light and heat. Half of the earth's surface has sunlight at one time, and the other half does not. The rotation, or turning of the earth on its axis, gives us day and night. The half that lacks direct sunlight has twilight around the edges. In other words, there is always a little more light during each twenty-four hours than there is darkness.

On a clear, dark night look up at the sky and notice the various groups of stars. Look at these groups again a few hours later. You will see that they have changed their places in the sky. A group that earlier in the evening was low in the eastern sky will now be much higher. Another group that was low in the western sky has disappeared entirely or, as we say, has set.

If you watch these star groups night after night, they seem to swing around a center. That center is a fairly bright star which does not seem to move but always keeps its place in the north. This is the North Star. It is near a group of stars which we call the Big Dipper, or the Great Bear. Can you find the North Star?

It is the rotation of the earth that makes the stars seem to swing around in a circle. The North Star does not seem to move because one end, or *pole*, of the earth's axis is always pointed toward that star. The North Pole points almost exactly to the North Star. The South Pole is at the opposite end of the axis from the North Pole.

The earth rotates on its axis. It also tilts to one side as it goes around the sun. If it



Acme Photo

This photograph shows the earth from a height of fifty-seven miles. It was taken by a camera in a rocket. If you look closely, you will see that the picture shows the actual curve of the earth.

did not tilt, day and night would always be equal in length. Each would be exactly twelve hours long. The earth tilts only slightly on its axis. The side that tilts toward the sun has longer days and shorter nights than the side that is tilted away from the sun.

Why the seasons change

Because the earth tilts a little, the sun is not always directly overhead at the equator. Sometimes it is overhead to the north of the equator, and sometimes it is overhead to the south of it. But the sun is always overhead somewhere in the tropics.

The northern boundary of the tropics is the Tropic of Cancer. Here the sun is overhead on June 21 or 22. This is the longest day of the year in the North Temperate regions. At the southern boundary of the tropics, the Tropic of Capricorn, the sun is overhead on December 21 or 22. This is the longest day of the year in the South Temperate regions.

From this you can see that the seasons in the North Temperate regions are exactly the opposite to the seasons in the South Temperate regions. When it is summer in the North Temperate regions, it is winter in the South Temperate regions.

In late December, as the earth turns on its axis, a circular area of land and water around the North Pole is in darkness all twenty-four hours. We call the boundary between this area and the rest of the earth the Arctic Circle. At the same time a circular area around the South Pole receives some light all twenty-four hours. We call the boundary between this area and the rest of the earth the Antarctic Circle. These parts of the earth are known as the polar regions. They never receive the sun's direct rays.

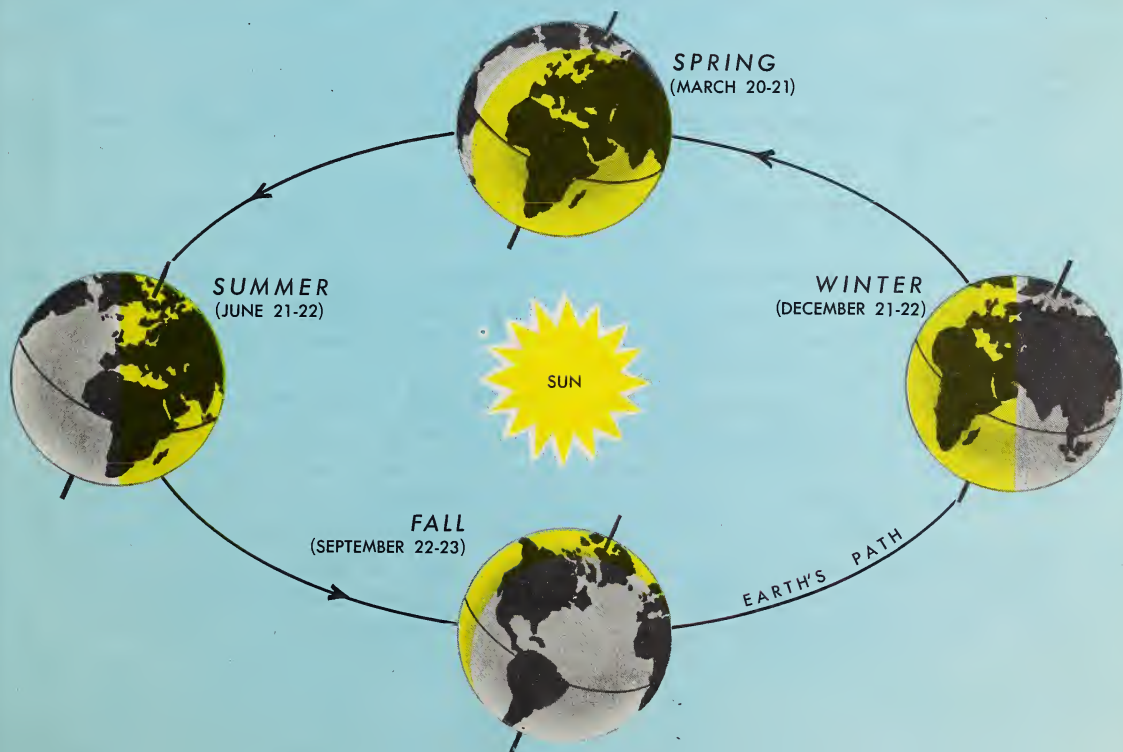
While turning on its axis, the earth moves around the sun once each year. The movement of the earth around the sun gives us our change of seasons. In winter the northern half of the earth is tilted

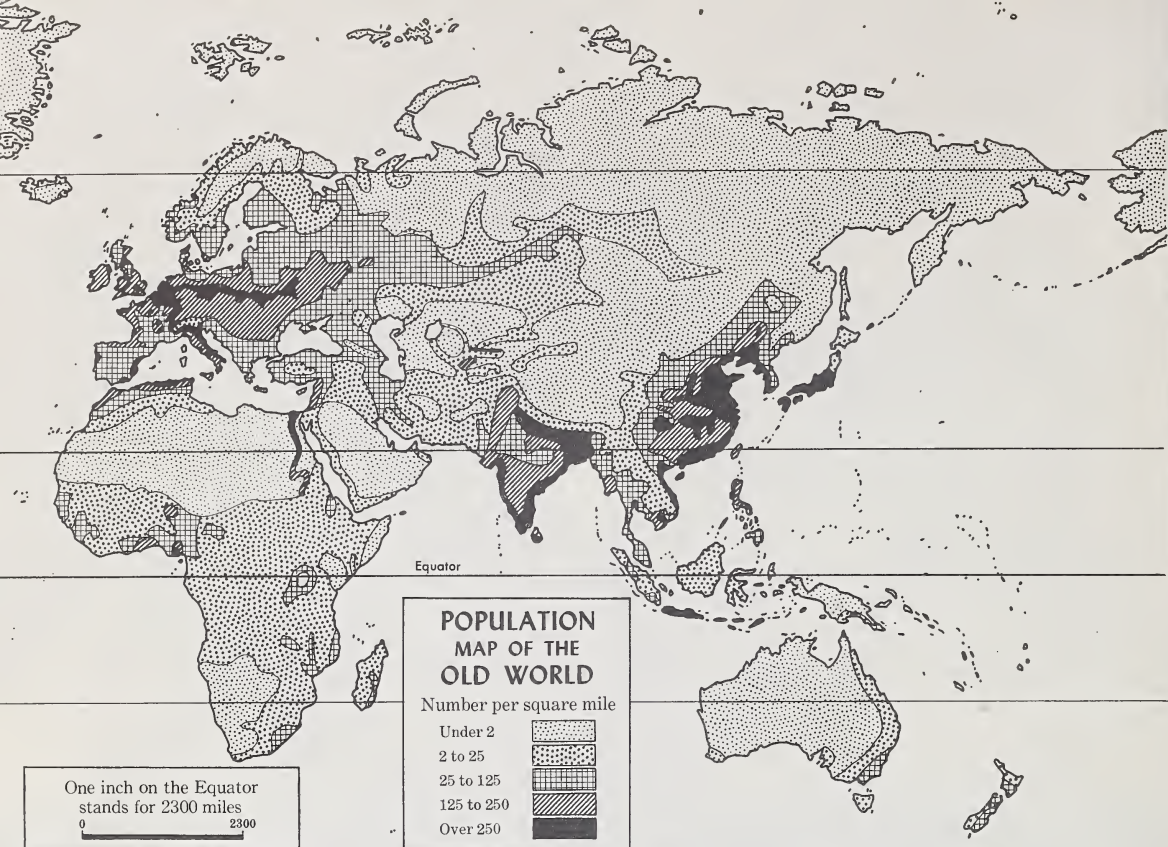
away from the sun. So it receives less sunlight than it does in summer when it is tilted toward the sun. In summer the northern half is tilted toward the sun, and it receives more sunlight than in winter.

Thus we see that changes of temperature and changes in the lengths of the days and nights divide the year into natural periods that we call seasons. The temperate regions have four seasons. But the tropics in general have just two seasons, a wet season and a dry season. The polar regions also have only two seasons, a season of light and a season of darkness.

The drawing on this page shows the earth's path around the sun and its position on the path during each of the four seasons. The earth's path is almost a circle.

This diagram shows the position of the earth at the beginning of each of the seasons in the North Temperate regions. In the South Temperate regions what season starts in late March?





This map shows how thickly populated are the different regions of the Old World which we shall study. Look at the key and find out which continent has the greatest population density. Which has the least? Can you think of any reasons why some areas have smaller populations than others?

CLIMATE AND THE TEMPERATURE REGIONS

We usually dress differently on a hot day from the way we dress on a cold one. We feel different. We amuse ourselves differently. The weather changes often and sometimes suddenly in most parts of the United States. Many newspapers publish weather forecasts daily. The weather a place has over many years is its *climate*.

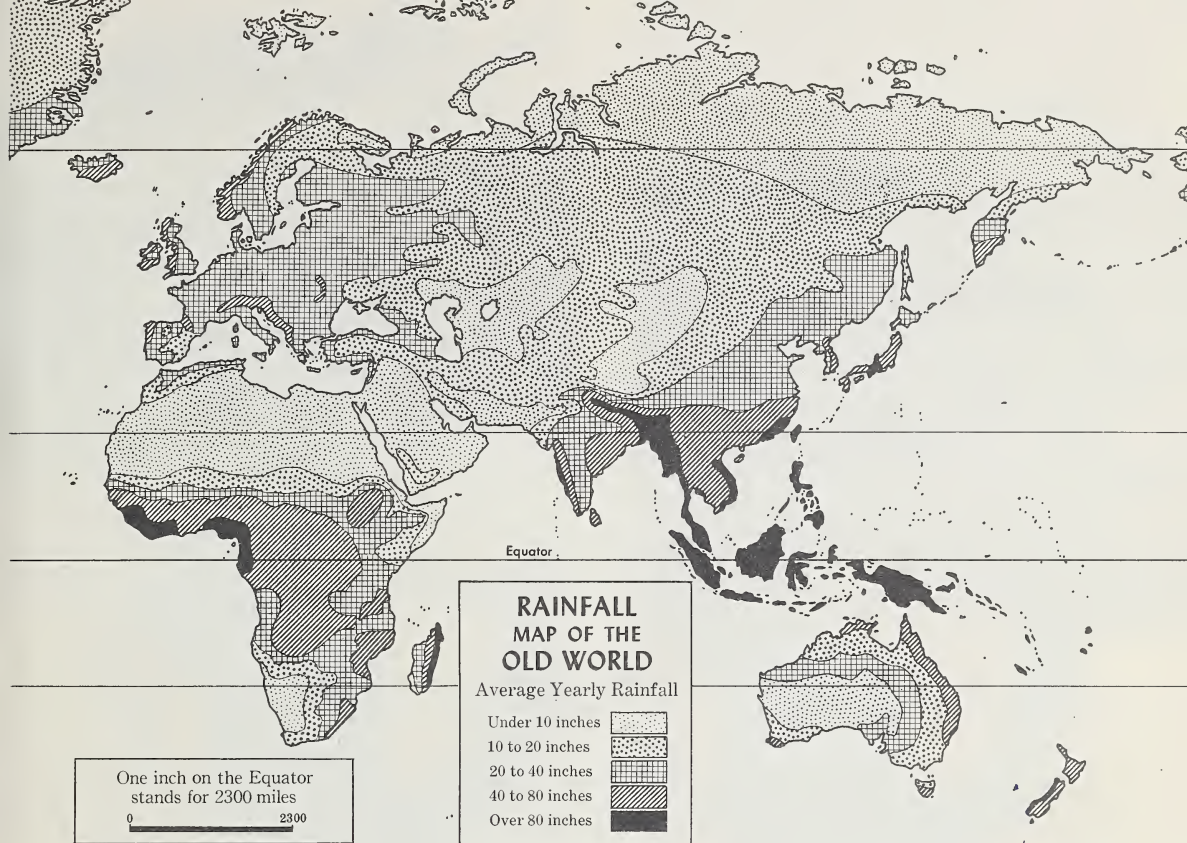
WHAT CLIMATE IS

Climate is the condition of the atmosphere over a period of years. For example,

we say that the climate of a certain place is cold in winter. This means that for many years the winters have been cold there.

Climate and the equator

Climates may be warm or cold, wet or dry. In general, the lands near the equator have the warmest climates on the earth because the sun shines on them most directly. As we go away from the equator either to the north or to the south, the climate becomes cooler.



This rainfall map of the Old World shows that most areas with heavy rainfall are close to the sea and to the equator. As one goes north or south there is less rainfall. Regions of heavy rainfall have only two seasons, the wet, with almost constant rain, and the dry, with little rain.

Climate and altitude

Other conditions also affect climate. For example, the higher up we go, the cooler the air becomes. In other words, altitude, or height above sea level, makes changes in climates. Some high mountains are covered with snow all year even though the land from which they rise is very hot. People travel to the mountains in summer in order to find cooler air. Plateaus, or flat stretches of high land, have cooler nights than do lower areas. Thus altitude helps to govern the climate of a region.

Climate and the oceans

Large bodies of water also affect the climate of neighboring lands. Water heats up more slowly than land, and it cools off more slowly. Winds from over an ocean or other large body of water cause bordering lands to have warmer winters and cooler summers. Oceans also influence climate.

Altitude and mountains

Winds from over an ocean bring water to the land. Warm air can take up and hold more water than cool air. When



Day from Cushing



Gendreau

Flat seacoasts have a very different kind of climate from high mountain areas. Bathers at the beach and skiers in the mountains can enjoy these activities because of the difference in climate.

warm, moist air is cooled, it drops some of its moisture as rain or snow. Air that strikes against mountains is forced higher up the slope, cools off, and drops its moisture upon the mountains. As it passes over the mountains, the air comes down as a dry wind that takes up moisture instead of giving it out. Mountains too help to govern climate.

LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE

Suppose you are visiting a city that is new to you, and you wish to find a certain house. If you know that the house is on Seventh Street where it crosses Second Avenue, you should have no trouble in finding the place. In somewhat the same way we can locate places on the earth.

On the surface of the earth we locate places by using imaginary lines that cross each other. These guide lines we call lines of *latitude* and lines of *longitude*. Lines

of latitude run east and west. Lines of longitude run north and south.

There must be starting places for the lines of latitude and longitude. First of all, we imagine a circle running around our globe halfway between the poles. We call this imaginary circle the equator. From this line we measure latitude north or south toward the poles. Other imaginary circles run parallel to—at equal distances from—the equator. These are called *parallels of latitude*.

How latitude is measured

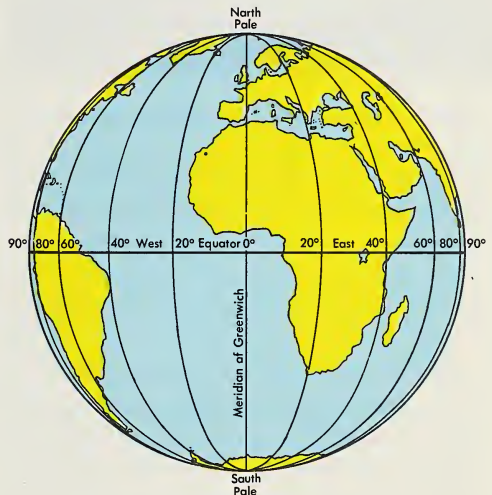
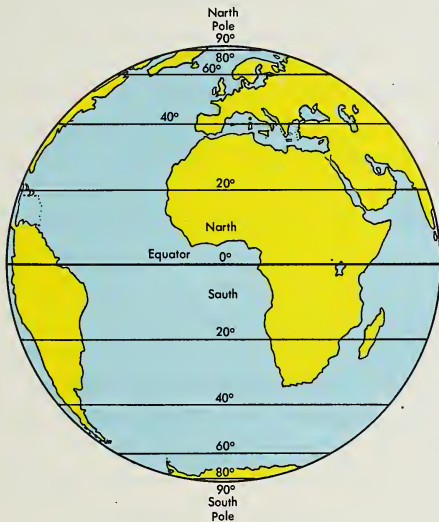
Latitude is measured by degrees. The equator, which is a circle around the middle of the earth, is numbered zero. Moving either north or south from the equator, we can tell how many degrees north latitude (north of the equator) or south latitude (south of the equator) a certain place is located. The poles, which are at either

end of the earth's axis, are at latitude 90. To represent degrees, we use a small circle to the right and slightly above the number. Thus the North Pole is at 90° north latitude, and the South Pole is at 90° south latitude. For example, Minneapolis, in Minnesota, is 45° north latitude, or 45°N. In other words, Minneapolis is exactly halfway between the equator and the

North Pole. As you can see from the map below, parallels of latitude become shorter and shorter toward the poles.

How longitude is measured

Longitude is also measured by degrees. To measure longitude, we use imaginary lines on the earth's surface extending from one pole to the other. These lines we call



The diagram at the top left shows the earth with the parallels of latitude at intervals of 20°. When you know that one degree equals nearly seventy miles you can measure how far one place is from another. The length of a degree varies, as the earth is not a perfect sphere.

The diagram directly above shows the meridians of longitude with the prime meridian, or 0°, running through Greenwich, England. Because the earth is a globe the meridians meet at the poles and are farthest apart at the equator.

The diagram at the left shows a globe with both latitude and longitude lines drawn on it.



This map shows temperature regions on the earth.

meridians. Meridians of longitude are not parallel, but they are all of equal length and they come together at the poles. One of the meridians must be the starting point for measuring east and west around the earth.

The 0° meridian runs through Greenwich, a town near London, in England. The 0° meridian is the *prime meridian*. Prime means “first” or “principal.” Longitude is measured east or west from this prime meridian. Points east of the prime meridian are said to be at a certain number of degrees east longitude. Points west of it are said to be at so many degrees west longitude. For example, Philadelphia is about 75 degrees (75°) west longitude. Melbourne, in Australia, is about 145 degrees (145°) east longitude.

Temperature regions

Many people think that in summer the sun is exactly over our heads at noon. That is not true anywhere in the United States, but it is true farther south.

As our Northern Hemisphere turns toward the sun or away from it, the place where the sun’s direct rays fall at noon

changes. Only one line on the earth at a time can receive these direct rays. If you direct the beam of a small but bright flashlight on a slowly turning globe, you will understand this better.

Late in March the direct rays of the sun at noon fall upon the equator. As spring advances, these direct noon rays creep farther northward each day. Late in June, when the Northern Hemisphere has its longest day in the year, the direct rays are as far north as they ever will get. They now fall on a line 23½° north of the equator. This line is the Tropic of Cancer. Where does it pass through North America?

When the direct noon rays have moved as far north as they can, they start to go south. Day by day they move southward. Though the weather may be hot, the days steadily grow shorter. Late in September the direct noon rays have come back to the equator. Days and nights are of equal length all over the earth.

The direct noon rays continue to move southward. Late in December they reach a line 23½° south of the equator. This line is the Tropic of Capricorn. Trace it on the globe and see through what continents and countries it passes. The Southern Hemisphere has its summer while we are having our winter. Would you prefer to visit Buenos Aires in December or in June? What kind of weather would you find in each month?

What the tropics are like

The belt around the earth between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn is called the tropics. The direct rays of the sun never go outside the tropics. The countries in this belt, therefore, receive a great deal of heat throughout the

year. Unless there are plateaus or mountain slopes to live on, white men usually find the continuous heat of the tropics very trying.

What the temperate regions are like

North and south of the tropics are the middle latitudes, which are also called the temperate regions. Temperate, a word which means mild, should apply to places having an even climate, not too hot and not too cold. However, regions called temperate can be extremely hot in summer and bitterly cold in winter. By temperate we mean that in these regions the weather average for the year—halfway between the coldest winter days and the hottest summer days—is temperate.

The parts of the middle latitudes which border on the tropics are called the *subtropics*, or the near tropics. Subtropical regions produce such fruits as oranges, grapefruit, and dates. However, in the subtropics there is sometimes danger of damage from frost. But places in the tropics, unless they are high above sea level, never have frost.

What the polar regions are like

Farther north and farther south of the temperate regions are icy areas known as the polar regions. These regions are located between the Arctic Circle and the North Pole and between the Antarctic Circle and the South Pole. These areas are so cold that few people live in them.

KINDS OF MAPS

When we have a map before us, we can imagine that we are looking down on the earth from the sky. Train yourself to use maps in that way. Though we cannot expect to remember everything on a map, we can remember a great deal that it shows. For example, study the map on page 12 so carefully that you can close your book and remember the appearance of the continents of the Western Hemisphere. Now study the map on page 13, and do the same for the Eastern Hemisphere.

Physical maps

A physical map shows the natural features of the earth—its mountains, oceans, lakes, rivers, deserts, and plains. On a physical map the different heights of land are often shown in different colors. In the physical maps in this book green is used for the lowest land, or the plains. Yellow is used for plateaus, brown for higher

lands, and a deep reddish brown for high mountains. The physical map on page 124 shows how these colors have been used.

In one corner of each physical map, within a box, is a list of the colors used and what they stand for. This list is called a key. Using the key will help you understand the map.

Political maps

A political map emphasizes man-made features such as national boundaries and cities. On page 12 is a map of the Western Hemisphere showing the different countries and the principal cities of the New World. On the opposite page is a map of the Eastern Hemisphere showing the different countries and principal cities of the Old World. The different countries are set off from each other by different colors. The colors help us to get good mind pictures of sizes and shapes of countries.

MAP OF



THE WORLD



Map scales

Because our earth is big and our books are small, maps have to represent large areas in a small space. On page 276 is a map of the British Isles, on which each inch stands for 90 miles. On page 124 is a map of Asia on which one inch means 870 miles. The number of miles (or yards, or feet) represented by an inch is called the *scale* of the map.

Each map in this book has its own scale. Find four different scales used on maps.

Use the scale of the map on page 145 to find the shortest distance from London to Berlin, and from Paris to Moscow.

You will need maps to remember geography and to understand history. In your study of the different countries of the Old World, it will be helpful to refer to the maps of the areas. As you use the maps in this book, try to get a good mental picture of what lands they represent. If you do this, you will find that maps are interesting and fascinating tools.

TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words and Terms You Should Know

atmosphere	diameter
circumference	latitude
meridians	pole
subtropics	climate
longitude	scale
parallels of latitude	rotation
prime meridian	axis

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 through 14. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. The weather of a certain place over a long period of time
2. A thick blanket of air around the earth
3. The turning of the earth on its axis
4. The distance around the earth's surface
5. Imaginary circles, north and south of the equator, used to mark latitude
6. Areas of the world in the temperate regions which border on the tropics
7. A way of representing distance on a map
8. The distance straight through the center of the earth
9. Either the north or south end of the earth's axis
10. An imaginary line through Greenwich, England, used as a starting point to locate places east or west

11. The imaginary line on which the earth seems to turn
12. Imaginary lines on the surface of the earth reaching from pole to pole
13. Distance north or south of the equator
14. Distance east or west of the prime meridian

Can You Answer These?

1. What is the earth's atmosphere?
2. How many continents are there? Which continents are in the Western Hemisphere? Which ones are in the Eastern Hemisphere?
3. What two kinds of motion has the earth? Which of these causes day and night?
4. What season is it in the Southern Hemisphere on Christmas day? On July 4?
5. To guess the climate of a particular place what three facts would you need to know about the place?
6. What are the seasons called in the tropics? In the polar regions?
7. What is a subtropical climate?
8. How are physical and political maps alike? In what ways do they differ?
9. What purpose does the scale of a map serve?
10. What purpose do colors serve on a physical map? On a political map?

Learning from Maps

Good maps tell many things about a region. How well can you read maps?

1. Turn to the map of the world, on pages 12–13, and answer these questions:
 - (a) In which hemisphere is China?
 - (b) In which hemisphere is Brazil?
 - (c) Which continent in the Eastern Hemisphere has the most land in the tropics?
 - (d) Find the latitude and longitude of London, England; of Paris, France; of Sydney, Australia.
2. Find the maps in this unit that show density of population and amount of rainfall. Use the keys in answering these questions:
 - (a) What continents and islands have areas where there are more than 250 persons per square mile?
 - (b) What continents have areas of less than two persons per square mile?
 - (c) What regions have forty or more inches of rain a year? What regions have less than ten inches a year?

Interesting Things to Do

1. If you have a pair of field glasses or opera glasses, look at the full moon through them and describe what you see.
2. If you have a compass, explain and demonstrate how it works.
3. Find out in what direction your shadow falls at noon. Make a diagram by which you can tell time by your shadow.
4. On a globe or a world map find the latitude and longitude of your home.
5. Maps frequently appear in newspapers, magazines, and travel folders. Find all the kinds of maps you can and bring them to class. They will be useful in your study of this book.

Using This Book

This book will be easy to use if you know how it is arranged. Here are some good rules

to follow in its use. You will probably find that they will be very helpful to you.

Open your book to the Title Page. On it you will find the name of the book, the names of the authors, the name of the publisher, and the city in which he is located.

Now turn to the Contents (pages vii–viii). Here you will find the subjects of all the units, or parts, that the book contains. What is the subject of the first unit? How many units are there in the book?

Turn to the beginning of Unit 1. Notice that the introduction, on the first two pages of the unit, closes with a list of questions. These questions tell you what the different sections of the unit are about. You will find a center head that matches each question. How many sections does Unit I have? What is each section about?

Following the Contents, on page ix, is the List of Maps in your book. How many colored maps are there? Find them.

As you turn through the book, look at the other maps, photographs, and drawings. Notice that each illustration has an explanation, called a caption, printed in heavy type. The captions will help you understand the illustrations better.

On pages 464–465 are Reference Tables which contain many important facts about the Old World. In these tables you can find facts quickly.

At the end of the book, on pages 466–471, is a Word List. This list contains all of the new social-studies words, followed by definitions, that have been taught in the book.

The Index, on pages 472–478, is the last section in the book. An Index is a list of the most important topics, persons, and places, arranged in alphabetical order. Each name or topic is followed by a page number or numbers where it is discussed in the book. By using the Index, you can find quickly what you want to look up. For example, look up the word *Arabia* in the Index. Now turn to those pages in the text. What do you find?



Early man making polished weapons and tools of stone



Early man harvesting grain with a sickle



Early man moving rocks with a primitive sledge



Early man hunting animals



Early man using fire



Early man living in a cave

2.

Thousands of years ago, in a world with many fierce beasts, there were beings who were different from the animals about them. These were the early men, women, and children. They did not have sharp horns, long claws, or big fangs for fighting. They did not even have tough hides or thick fur to protect them from wounds or cold. Yet these human beings managed to exist as masters of the lower animals and to improve their ways of living as time went on.

While the lower animals continued to act the same, man was changing his ways. Since early times man has been discovering and inventing. The life of man today is very different from the life of early man. By what steps did man rise toward the level of our present-day living? We shall learn how primitive ways, that is, the early and rough ways, have changed to our present civilized ways.



Early man using a cart with a primitive kind of wheel



Early man as an artist painting his cave walls



A village of the lake dwellers in Switzerland

How Early Man Lived and Learned

What does being civilized mean? Most persons would agree that a great forward step had been taken by men where they had developed a written language. Many people would say that a country is civilized when most of its people enjoy comfortable homes, plenty of food, and suitable clothing. They would also agree that a civilized country has good roads, ways of sending messages quickly, and opportunities for its people to make a living. These things are often but not always part of civilized life. For example, George Washington and Benjamin Franklin lived at a time when good roads and means of sending messages quickly were hardly known. Surely we would not call these heroes of our early history uncivilized.

How then can we tell whether people are civilized? It is really the way people think, feel, and act that shows whether or not they are civilized. To be civilized

means living together with others comfortably, happily, and usefully. As primitive peoples grew civilized, they learned new and better ways of living on the earth and with other people. They developed good rules for living with other men.

Man has come a long way on the road of civilization, but we cannot measure the distance he may yet travel. This story of man in the Old World will help you to learn many useful facts and to think about what you learn.

In this part of our story we shall learn the answers to such questions as:

1. How did the early men live?
2. How did early man learn to hunt and to tame animals?
3. What changes in man's life came about through farming?
4. How did man show he was an artist?
5. How did community life begin?

HOW THE EARLY MEN LIVED

Early men did not write history because they did not know how to write. But they left things behind them that help us to know something about them. We know what weapons and tools they used and the kind of food they ate. We know about the caves in which they lived, the villages they built, and the way they buried the dead. From these things we can form a good idea of the kind of life they lived.

THE LIFE OF SAVAGES

Since many of the early men lived in a warm climate they needed few clothes. They roamed about searching for food, which they ate raw. Birds' eggs, fruits, roots, seeds, and fish—all these things they ate.

These early men, who were not as strong nor as quick as some of their animal ene-

mies, had one great physical advantage. They had hands with thumbs which could close up against the fingers. With their hands early men used sticks and stones to kill animals. At night, to be safe from the fierce animals, they climbed into trees. Such people, who live in much the same way as animals do, we call *savages*. Savages are uncivilized.

The Ice Age

As time passed, a strange change came over parts of the earth. The weather grew colder and colder. Sheets of ice finally covered the northern part of Europe and North America. This period of time was known as the *Ice Age*. Such animals as the reindeer and the great elephantlike *mammoth* with its long, curved tusks moved far south.

During the Ice Age huge glaciers covered many areas of the world. At least three times the great ice sheets retreated and came forward again. Some were as much as a mile thick. They ground off tops of hills, cut valleys, and moved rocks. When these ice sheets melted many formed lakes, among them our Great Lakes. Some of these glaciers still exist in parts of Europe and North America.





The saber-toothed tiger was a dangerous enemy of primitive man. This great cat got its name because of the shape of his two upper teeth. These were curved like a kind of sword or saber.

Men in the Ice Age

The Ice Age lasted for many hundreds of years. During this time life was hard, but man was able to change his ways, or adapt himself, to meet the hard conditions of living.

As the sheets of ice grew thicker and covered more and more land, man had to adapt himself to the cold. He had to find shelter. He used the furs of animals as clothing to protect himself from the cold. In many places in every land he found caves. Sometimes, before he could live in a cave, he had to drive out such dangerous animals as the huge cave bear or the powerful *saber-toothed tiger*.

THE IMPORTANCE OF FIRE

By this time man had learned to use fire. Fire frightened the wild beasts away. The cave protected him from wind and storm, but fire made a real home of the cave. In the cave, man could keep warm and dry. Here he could store extra food and wood. For the first time in history



Field Museum of Natural History

These hairy beasts with curved tusks lived in the northern regions of the world thousands of years ago. Some of their frozen bodies have been found. They were ancestors of today's elephants.

he had a fairly good and safe place in which to live. Home life had begun.

The discovery of fire

When man learned to use fire, he took a long step forward. How he first learned we do not know. Probably a stroke of lightning set trees or grass on fire. Perhaps a mass of melted rock came rolling out of some volcano and set the forests on fire. The heat of fire felt good to early man, and he learned how to keep fire alive for weeks or even months. To keep a fire burning for so long a time was a hard task even in the shelter of caves.

Later on, man learned how to make fire for himself. This was a wonderful discovery. How would you make a fire without matches if you needed to do so? Any Boy Scout can show you how.

The use of fire

When fire came into use, it made a great difference to man. With fire he could cook his food instead of eating it raw. At

first, the food to be cooked was put under hot ashes or into the fire itself.

Man found that cooked foods had new and delightful tastes. He learned to smoke and dry meat so that it would keep for some time. Fire gave man better food.

Pottery making was another important result of using fire. Early man learned to bake his food by rolling it in wet clay and putting the roll into the fire. From this he soon learned to bake the clay into a dish in which he could cook his food. Early man also made baskets that he lined with

clay. After he filled them with water, he boiled food in them by dropping hot stones into the water. If his basket happened to catch fire and burned, he might find that what he had left was a ready-made dish or pot. So the making of pottery may have begun.

Fire made it possible for man to have dishes that would hold together well. Better pottery brought with it better cooking. In these bowls and pots the cave mother stored food and small articles. The use of pottery was a step toward civilization.

MAN, THE HUNTER AND ANIMAL TAMER

For a long time man had only wild fruits, vegetables, roots, and seeds or grain to eat. Then he learned how to kill animals. Their meat gave him strength.

HOW MAN HUNTED ANIMALS

Man found it easy to kill small animals. He could throw stones at them, or strike them with a club, or pierce them with a spear. To kill large animals, however, he needed to be brave, clever, and to have good weapons. At first, perhaps, he was satisfied to protect himself when he was attacked. But in time he gained courage to attack beasts.

Man's first weapons

Before man made good weapons, he had to use clever tricks to catch animals. Sometimes he rolled rocks down from the cliffs as the beasts passed underneath. Sometimes he piled up heavy logs that would fall upon the beasts who followed a trail. Sometimes he led or chased the animals into pits or marshes from which they could not escape. Often he lay in wait for young animals that strayed from their herds.

Early man needed weapons and tools. Sticks and stones lay all about him, and he learned to use them as weapons.

Improved weapons

After a time man learned to tie a stone to the end of a club and use it as a weapon. To fasten the head of the club tightly to the handle he cut notches into the end of the handle. Then he used thin strips of animal skin, or *rawhide*, to fit into the notches and to bind the stone fast. Rawhide shrinks as it dries and also becomes very hard. It held the club head tighter to the handle than man's hands alone could tie it. American Indians used it.

It was man's mind, his ability to think, that made him skillful in the use of weapons and gave him power over the wild beasts. Animals do their fighting and killing by striking at close range.

Early man soon learned that he could fight beasts and kill them without always being close to them. When he used his club, he could stay the distance of the club handle away from the fierce animal. The handle of the spear helped man fight from

a still greater distance. By throwing spears or stones, he could defend himself even farther away. Finally, with the bow and arrow, man became master of the animals. This weapon allowed him to keep a safe distance away from his prey. When he shot an arrow from his bow, it could speed swiftly and with killing force to its distant mark. The reindeer, the bison, the bear, the tiger, and even the mammoth fell before him.

The bodies of the animals gave man useful materials. The hunter got meat and furs in this way. The skins of animals also made good covers and containers. When cut into strings, the skins could be used as we now use rope. When tanned into leather, the skin of some animals made good clothing. Bone, horn, and ivory were valuable materials for weapons and tools.

The use of flint

Long before knives were used man found that the sharp edges of broken stones were good to cut with. He probably tried many kinds of rock before he found that *flint* would cut the best.

Flint is a stone which is very hard but breaks rather easily leaving sharp edges. From flint early man made arrowheads, knives, scrapers, awls (to pierce with), and daggers. Pieces of flint, when struck together, threw off sparks and thus gave man a way to make fire. He learned that it was a good thing to make his home near a place where much flint lay in the ground.

After a while man discovered a way to shape flint. By using a sharp bone point and pressing very hard along the edges of a piece of flint he could chip off one small bit after another. In this way he learned to make flint articles in just the shape he wanted. Man grew skillful in working



American Museum of Natural History

Early man gradually became skillful in shaping stone tools and weapons to meet his needs. Here are a scythe, a saw, a knife, a chisel, and a dagger. The flat tool may be a scraper.

with flint and was able to make arrowheads, spearheads, and axheads.

The Stone Age

Although man had many wooden tools and weapons, the use of stone was a great help to him. Stone was hard and could be sharpened. We call the time before man had learned to shape his tools well the *Old Stone Age*. The Old Stone Age lasted for thousands of years. During this time men were learning to chip stone more skillfully.

Finally, men began to grind and polish their stone tools and weapons. For heavy work they used the stone ax, chisel, and hammer, which were polished, smoothed, and had a fine edge. As bone was easier to

grind down than stone, it also became valuable to them. Women in the cave homes used bone needles. The men used pickaxes made from deerhorns.

The age of polished stone and bone is called the *New Stone Age*. Many tribes of Africa and of the Pacific islands were still in the New Stone Age when they were discovered by the white man. The North American Indians, too, were living in the New Stone Age when white men first came to America. Perhaps you have seen some of their polished stone arrowheads.

THE TAMING OF ANIMALS

Sometime during the New Stone Age man began to tame animals. When the early hunters killed a mother animal, her young might be brought back as pets for their children. As they grew up, they became tame.

It is thought that wolves began to come to the homes of men in order to pick up scraps of food or bones. These wolves were really wild dogs. Perhaps hunters would find their puppies and bring them home. Here they would grow up in the cave or the camp. The dog was the first tamed animal. Sheep, goats, cattle, and pigs later added to the list of tamed beasts.

Tamed animals, a sure food supply

When animals such as these became tame, they furnished man with a sure supply of food. He then did not have to do so much hunting. He cared for and protected them, and his tame beasts became greater in number. When the mother animals produced milk, man used some of this as food.

Man, the herdsman and shepherd

Certain tribes lived entirely by tending and raising sheep, goats, and cattle. They lived on the great, grassy plains where their flocks and herds could be driven from one good pasture to another. Because these herdsmen and shepherds often changed their camps, they made shelters that were easily moved. Thus the tent came into use. Many tribes still follow this wandering life, moving their animals from pasture to pasture.

When man began to raise animals, he increased the amount of food which he could get from a certain area. He protected his animals from wild beasts, took them to the best pastures, and looked after the young. Because of the milk and meat which the herds gave, many more people could live by herding than by hunting.

MAN, THE FARMER

During the earliest periods of man's life his main problem was to get enough food. He wandered about, searching for something to eat.

THE SEARCH FOR FOOD

Finding food was at first a matter of luck and chance. Here was a root. There were berries, seeds, and fruit. Somewhere else there was a wild animal that could

be killed. In most places, however, not enough food of any kind could be found to feed a great many people.

The first crops

After a while people began to gather the wild seeds they found in baskets or in skin bags. They could then bring the harvest back to their cave. At times some of these seeds spilled to the ground. Not long after

These early men have just killed a stag with spears and bows and arrows. The animal will provide them with clothing as well as food. Notice the tents in this camp and the tamed dogs that helped men hunt.



American Museum of Natural History

this the cave dwellers would find growing near their cave a few plants which had sprouted from these seeds. Later they learned to plant seeds in a small garden plot or field which could easily be reached and watched.

The first seeds that man planted were the grains, such as wheat and barley, whose seeds could be used for bread. We call these *cereals*. After he was successful in raising cereals, he planted also the seeds of vegetables and the pits of fruits. Thus, in addition to wheat and barley early man had cabbages, beans, squash, plums, apples, and melons to eat. Farming gave man a better living.

The importance of crops

When man began to raise crops, he could make desirable plants grow thickly together and produce much food in a small space. By farming and by cattle raising many more people could make a living than by hunting wild animals. As people lived and worked together, they became more civilized.

The beginning of village life

When people farm, they must remain in one place during the growing season. Hunters and herdsman can move about, but man cannot drive his growing crops from place to place. Because farming will support a fairly large number of people

in one neighborhood and because farmers must stay by their fields, villages grew up near those fields. Man then became used to thinking of one place as his home and of other people in the village as his friends.

MAKING CLOTHING

To clothe themselves people at first wrapped themselves in leaves or bark, woven together, or in furs. Leaves and bark were not warm or lasting. Furs were heavy and clumsy. After a time they learned to make leather from animal skins.

The use of leather

One of the first advances in clothing was the making of leather. First, men learned to scrape the fat and hair from the skins of animals. Then the skins were rubbed with fat. These raw skins, when dried, became leather. Raw skins decay easily, but leather does not.

Because leather is flexible (that is, easily bent), it could be pieced together to make garments. Thus sewing began. Even the most uncivilized tribes that we know of today can sew. The first needles were made from long, sharp thorns or from pieces of wood or bone. For thread early man used strips of fiber from plants or the *tendons* of animals. Tendons are the tough white cords which join muscle to bone. Many polished Stone Age needles made of bone have been found.

The use of flax

As early man hunted, the women looked for plants with strong, threadlike parts, or *fibers*, to be used in sewing. They found that plants such as the blue-flowered flax and the tall, feathery hemp had especially long and slender fibers. They learned to weave these fibers together into a rough sort of cloth. Cloth made from flax is called linen. Cloth is much softer than leather, fits more closely to the body, and does not get hard after being wet.

The use of wool

In time, people discovered that the long hair of animals could also be made into cloth. They twisted into threads the hair of goats and camels and the wool of sheep. Several threads could then be twisted into one long string of yarn. Making threads this way was called *spinning*.

Next, in a crude upright frame called a *loom*, the women stretched stout yarns. In and out, across these, they passed

threads or yarn to fill up the spaces of the loom. This was *weaving*. As they wove these yarns, they pushed the threads closer together to make the cloth firm. If you examine the wire on one of your window screens at home, you will see how the weaving was done. In this way people made rugs, blankets, and clothing.

By spinning and weaving it was now possible to have comfortable clothing, cloth coverings for beds, and woven coverings to spread on the ground. The looms in the villages were kept busy turning out woven materials. Gradually the weavers learned to dye cloth in different colors and to weave the threads in fancy patterns.

TRANSPORTING GOODS

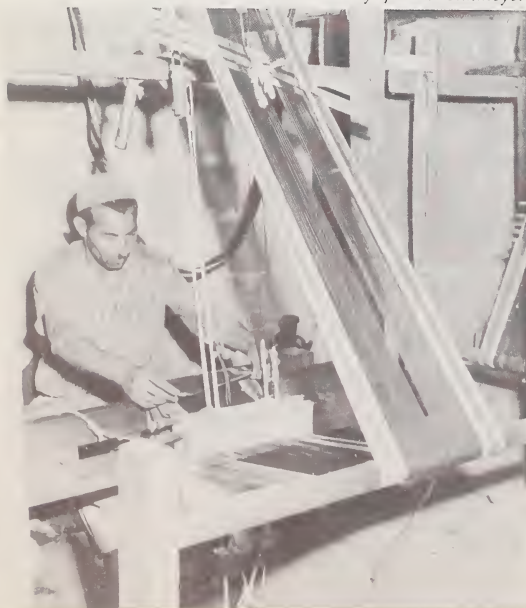
In some countries today the traveler may see people carrying huge baskets on their backs. The baskets are filled with goods and produce to sell at the market or fair miles away. In the same way early man had to carry all the things he wished to take from one place to another. After a time he found that he could pull more than he could carry. When he killed a deer or a bear, he learned to make a rough sled upon which he dragged the dead animal to his home. This primitive means of moving, or transporting, goods was an important forward step.

Travel by land

Dragging is hard work. Dogs were sometimes harnessed to do the dragging. Dogs still do this labor in many countries today. Many early peoples had herds of cattle. Because the ox was much stronger than the dog, the ox was often used to transport goods. Until the wheel was invented, the ox had to carry the load on his back or drag it on the ground.

A modern weaver works at a hand loom similar to those in ancient times. He makes his living by weaving beautiful cloth in many bright colors.

Hays from Monkmeyer



Travel by water

When it was necessary to travel on water, early man used a floating log. To get a large, flat surface for carrying articles, he learned how to tie several logs together to make a raft. A raft could carry a number of people or a heavy load of goods.

A large raft could not be easily moved by paddling with the hands. In shallow water man used poles to push the raft along, but in deep water poles were almost useless. The next step was to make paddles with a broad, flat surface. Yet, as you can find out for yourselves, it is not easy to paddle a raft.

By burning and by scraping, man hollowed out a log until he had made the kind of canoe we call a *dugout*. Such a boat was faster and lighter than a raft. Some of the smaller dugouts needed only one paddler. The large ones had several persons as a crew.

When water is calm, it offers a smooth, level surface over which boats can easily glide. After the invention of the canoe,



Keystone View Company

One of the oldest and one of the most modern means of transportation are seen together in present-day China. Notice the primitive wooden wheel on the cart pulled by a water buffalo.

early man was not so much shut in by water as he had been before. Rivers and the smaller lakes now became water highways. Like the sled, the canoe was a forward step in solving the problems of transportation. In another important way man had shown that he could adapt himself to the earth on which he lived.

THE BEGINNING OF ART

Art is the making of beautiful things by man. We know that there were artists among early men because examples of their work have been found.

ART FOUND IN CAVES

Not many years ago a nobleman of northern Spain was told that a large cave had been discovered on his land. Taking his little daughter along, he traveled to the cave. Soon after they entered the cave, the little girl pointed to the ceiling and cried, "Bulls! Bulls!" There on the rock above them were the colored pictures of

six bison, or buffaloes. Who drew and painted these pictures? It was early man.

Early paintings

In many other caves in France and Spain have been found—drawn, painted, or carved in stone—the pictures of the animals which man hunted in a far-off time. In the caves explorers also found crude lamps made of hollowed stones. These lamps had wicks fed by oil or grease which gave a faint light. By the help of such a lamp, or by the blaze of a fire, the early artists worked at their pictures.



American Museum of Natural History

Early man often painted pictures of animals that he hunted, such as bison. He mixed brown, red, yellow, and black earth with oil to make colors.

From the pictures in the caves we can see what animals early man knew. There were the animals which provided food, such as the deer, the mammoths, and hairy bison. There were also wild bears. In their paintings the artists often used bright colors, with much red and brown.

Early carvings

Sometimes the artist did not color his pictures. Instead he carved the outlines of animals upon the wall. Carvings had to be cut into the rock. One such carving, in a cave in southern France, shows a herd of reindeer crossing a stream. The artist used wavy lines to represent water. To be sure that the person looking at his picture would know he meant to show water, he drew fish between the wavy lines.

Some people have thought that most of the pictures of animals were used as charms to bring good luck in hunting. For example, a hunter might draw a picture of a bison before going out to hunt. He probably meant that he hoped to kill such an animal that day.

Pictures of early men were sometimes drawn on the cave walls. One cave picture shows a battle between men fighting with bows and arrows.

Early statues

Paintings and carvings were not the only forms of early art. Early man also used clay to make little statues of men, women, and animals. In recent times one young Frenchman risked his life to search the deepest parts of one of the caves in France. Far within the earth he found the clay statue of a bear, with arrowheads thrust into it. The statue may have been made to celebrate the killing of a bear. Or it may have been a charm which the artist hoped would bring him good luck in hunting that animal.

MAN'S LOVE OF BEAUTY

Man also liked to decorate his weapons and tools. He cut designs in their handles. Sometimes he even carved the handles into the forms of animals. From this you can see that art had an important place in the life of that far-off time.

In all lands and all ages man has drawn pictures, made statues, and decorated the things he used. He has a natural desire to make beautiful things. Man's liking for art is shown in many ways. He expresses his ideas by the size and shape of the things he makes and by the designs and colors he uses. Art has made life more enjoyable.

THE BEGINNING OF GOVERNMENT AND LAW

The earliest group of people was the family. Its leader usually was the father. As long as human beings were just food

gatherers, the members of each family could live a life completely apart from other families.

THE IMPORTANCE OF CO-OPERATION

In searching for food the men of several families might find it an advantage to go hunting together. Often families who lived near one another found that they could work together for protection and to gain food. After a time such groups formed a tribe. They learned to work together.

Early customs

In times of need or danger, quick action was necessary. A leader was needed. A chief, therefore, headed the tribe and told the group what to do in times of danger. As the tribe grew larger, the chief asked advice from the older men who had lived longer and had more experience.

After a tribe had existed for a number of years, the families in it came to live and think in much the same ways. These ways became habits, or *customs*, which few people wished to break. Persons who acted contrary to the customs were usually driven out of the tribe. Families kept up the customs, for they felt that it was safest to do so.

The first laws

After men learned to be herdsmen and farmers, they lived together in larger and larger groups, or communities. They began to think more and more of owning property, whether the property was animals, or land, or other goods. As the tribe grew larger, they found that the customs did not cover all their activities. More rules, or laws, had to be made by the chief. Others were made by the wise men. Still others were made by a vote of all the heads of families.

The chief saw to it that the laws were obeyed. The making and enforcing of laws

to help a group live together in an orderly way is called *government*. Government helped to make man civilized.

After a time man began to see that he was better off when he obeyed the laws and worked together with the other people of the village. Working together with others is called *co-operation*. Co-operation was more important to the early farmers, who lived together in the village, than to herdsmen. Co-operation made man less rude and selfish. That is, it made him more civilized.

A NEW STONE-AGE COMMUNITY

In Switzerland a strange discovery brought to light many facts about man's life in the New Stone Age. About one hundred years ago Switzerland had a very dry season. The lakes were very low. In one of the large lakes appeared what seemed to be a great many stumps. Those who studied them saw that the stumps were tree trunks, or *piles*, driven into the lake bed to support houses. There were thousands of these piles.

When the mud around the piles was examined, many remains of man's life were found. Men who observe facts and put together those that seem related are called *scientists*. By studying the facts, they can discover things that were unknown before. The scientists who studied the old Swiss village found polished stone tools. This showed them that the men who lived there had advanced to the New Stone Age.

What the houses were like

The village in which these people lived was built on piles driven so closely together that they formed large platforms. On the platforms were large cabins with fireplaces for warmth and for cooking. A bridge,



This model of a Swiss lake village shows how some early families found protection in houses built on wooden piles in the water.

Bettmann Archive

which could be taken up if necessary, connected the village with the shore. The Swiss lake village was protected on all sides by water. The fish that swam about the lake houses gave them a supply of food. The people of this community used both bone hooks and braided nets for fishing.

Compared with other homes of early man, these lake houses were rather pleasant places. With their polished stone tools, the lake men made furniture and pottery. They spun flax into linen. They grew cereals and fruits.

How the villagers lived

Flocks and herds grazed on the green hills that surrounded the lake. These animals furnished meat, milk, hides for

leather, and wool for spinning and weaving. Pieces of wooden wheels tell us that by this time man had discovered the use of the wheel and were using an ox cart.

From the remains of this lake village scientists learned much about ways of living in the New Stone Age. At the end of the New Stone Age man was ready to begin another part of his march forward.

Lake dwellings have been found not only in Switzerland but also in many other parts of Europe. The people who lived in the lake villages seem to have had a peaceful and fairly comfortable life. They were far ahead of most of the Stone Age people. They had gained a good deal of power over nature. In the next unit we shall speak of people who had learned enough to be called civilized.

TO HELP YOU LEARN

Can You Answer These?

1. Early man left no written history of his times. How, then, do we know how he lived?
2. What great physical advantage did early man have over the large animals? How did he make use of this advantage?
3. What important changes in the life of early man did the Ice Age bring?
4. In what ways did the discovery of fire help man?
5. What improvements in early man's weapons helped him to become master over many of the animals?
6. Name some of the animals he hunted.
7. What important changes in life were brought about when people learned to spin and weave?
8. Why could many more people live by herding than by hunting?
9. How do we know there were artists among the early people who lived before the days of written records?
10. How did early man improve his power to move goods from place to place?
11. Why were co-operation and government more important to the early farmers than to hunters or herdsmen?

Words and Terms You Should Know

savages	flint	Ice Age
scientists	loom	weaving
rawhide	customs	New Stone Age
dugout	spinning	Old Stone Age
tendons	government	saber-toothed tiger
fibers	mammoth	co-operation
piles	cereals	

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 20. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A period when early man used tools and weapons made of polished stone and bone
2. People who are not yet civilized
3. A canoe made by hollowing out a log
4. Tough white cords which join muscle to bone
5. A fierce animal of early times which had two very long, curved teeth
6. Laws made for the good of the people which must be obeyed
7. The period during which man used chipped stone and bone for tools and weapons
8. A large elephantlike animal with long, curved tusks
9. Strips of animal skin
10. Grains used for bread and other foods
11. A frame for weaving yarn or thread into cloth
12. A time when sheets of ice covered the northern parts of Europe and of North America
13. Practices that have become habits
14. Working together with others
15. Tree trunks driven into the ground to support houses
16. Making cloth by passing threads across other threads stretched on a frame
17. Men who observe facts which they study and arrange in an orderly way
18. A hard stone used to make weapons and to strike fire
19. Making thread by twisting hair of animals or fibers of plants
20. The threadlike parts of certain plants

Interesting Things to Do

1. Pretend that you are a cave artist. Draw or paint animals of the present day. Put the drawings together to form a continuous picture. Large sheets of wrapping paper will serve this purpose.
2. Write about a day in the life of a Stone Age man or woman. Tell the important events that might have happened.
3. Select a tool commonly used today and trace it back to its beginnings in the life of early man. Diagrams or drawings may help you tell your story.
4. Do you like to read? If so, here are the titles of several books about early men that are probably in your school or public library: *Caves of the Great Hunters*, by Hans Baumann; *The First Lake Dwellers*, by C. G. Osborne; *Man's First Million Years*, by J. M. Lucas; *First Men in the World*, by A. T. White. Read one of these books and tell the class about it.
5. If you can put the following events in their proper time order, you will show that you understand the story of man as told in this unit: Swiss lake dwellers, first farmers, first men to use polished stone weapons, first men to use fire, first men to use sun-dried pottery.

Things to Think About

1. Lightning may have helped early man discover fire. Lightning also helped an American, Benjamin Franklin, make a discovery about electricity. This was a valuable discovery because it prepared the way for many important inventions. How has man's life changed since electricity has been put to use?
2. What do we mean by being civilized? Are people still learning about the arts of civilization? Explain your answer.



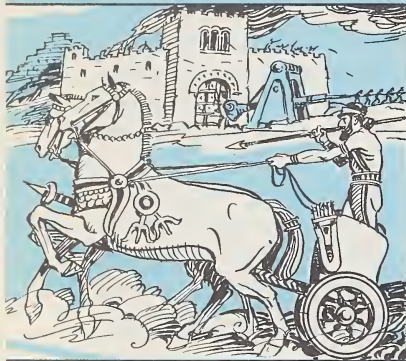
Building a pyramid as a tomb for a pharaoh—about 2900 B.C.



Phoenicians trading with the people of Britain—850 B.C.



Birth of Jesus in Bethlehem (Dates after this become A.D.)



Assyrian warriors—700 B.C.



Babylonian traders—2000 B.C.



The Middle East (U.S. in gray)

3.

While the people of Europe were still savages, civilized ways were being developed in Asia and in Africa. Civilized ways of life usually began among people who lived in river valleys. There rich soil and plenty of water made it easy to gain a living. The valleys of the Euphrates and the Tigris rivers in Asia and the Nile River in Africa were among such early “cradles of civilization.” Find these three rivers on the map on pages 38–39.

We do not know whether civilization had its earliest beginnings in southwestern Asia or in North Africa. Since many scientists now seem to favor Asia, we shall visit Asia first. This cradle of civilization lies in a region sometimes called the Middle East. The nine countries of the Middle East in Asia are Iran, Iraq, Turkey, Syria, Lebanon, Israel (formerly Palestine), Jordan, Saudi Arabia, and Yemen.



Christian soldiers rescuing
Vienna from the Turks—1683



Suez Canal, under direction of
De Lesseps, completed in 1869



Modern oil field in
Saudi Arabia today

The Countries of the Middle East

Most of the people in the Middle East today are Arabs or resemble Arabs in their ways of living. They wear loose robes, have many of the same customs, and believe in the Mohammedan religion. The Arabic language is the speech used in most of the countries of the Middle East, which we shall study.

Let us board an airplane and fly eastward to Iraq. We cross the Atlantic Ocean. We pass through the narrow Strait of Gibraltar, between Europe and Africa. The great rock fortress held by the British rises on our left. Now we come to the Mediterranean Sea. On either side of the Mediterranean the lands are spread out below us like a map (pages 38–39). To the south we notice the sands and rocks of the Sahara, the vast African desert. Soon the great port of Alexandria shows us that we are above the land of Egypt. Not long

after we pass over the Nile River we reach the eastern end of the Mediterranean Sea.

Soon we are flying over another large desert in the northern part of Arabia. Only a few green spots, or oases, break the dryness of this desert. Finally our plane lands near the Euphrates River in Iraq.

This unit will answer these questions:

1. How did early civilization develop in the land of the Twin Rivers?
2. What is life like in Iraq?
3. What is life like in Iran?
4. Why is Turkey a changed nation?
5. What are Syria, Lebanon, and Jordan like?
6. What is the story of Palestine and Israel?
7. Why is Arabia such a thirsty land?
8. Why is Egypt called one of the "cradles of civilization"?



Bettmann Archive

Ancient Babylon was once the world's greatest city. Now a small town stands on the same site.



Pasi from Three Lions

In modern Baghdad an ancient type of boat called a *gufa* is still in use on the Tigris River.

THE LAND OF THE TWIN RIVERS

When we have landed in Iraq we find no city, only a small settlement of natives. One of the first things we notice is that workmen have been busy with spades. The soil has been dug away in a number of places, uncovering some mud-brick walls and foundations of houses. Beyond these are comfortable tents. From one of these tents a scientist from an American university comes to greet us.

EARLY HISTORY OF MESOPOTAMIA

"You have come to the right place to learn about the early people of the Middle East," says Dr. Harrison. "On this spot stood the city of Ur, the home of Abraham, whom the Hebrews were proud to call their father. Abraham left Ur and journeyed westward more than four thousand years ago. For hundreds of years before Abraham's time, Ur had been a large and prosperous city in the land of Sumer."

Dr. Harrison continues: "By digging in the earth, we have uncovered temples and

tombs that show how skillful were the people of Ur. They did fine work in gold and copper. We have also found here lamps, bowls, and vases, harps, bracelets, and necklaces. In some libraries and museums you can see similar articles. We can actually learn history by digging things out of the ground. Sometimes it is the only way in which we can learn about early civilizations."

To begin our study of history, Dr. Harrison shows us a map of the area like the one on page 41.

Pointing at the map, Dr. Harrison says, "There, to the west of the Caspian Sea, is a land of high mountains. One of these is Mount Ararat. On this mountain, the Bible tells us, Noah's Ark landed after the great flood, or deluge.

"From these mountains two rivers flow towards the Persian Gulf. They flow so much in the same direction that we call them twins. The westward river is the Euphrates. The eastward river is shorter

and wider because it carries more water than the other. It is the Tigris River.

"In ancient times this country was called Mesopotamia, meaning 'the land between the rivers.' We often use the name Mesopotamia now to mean the land on either side as well as between these rivers.

"At one time," Dr. Harrison continues, "the twin rivers flowed into the Persian Gulf some distance apart. Now they have united, about a hundred miles from the gulf, to form one stream. They bring down so much mud that they are filling up the Persian Gulf at the rate of one mile every fifty or sixty years. Ur was once a seaport. Now, as you see from the map, it is many miles from the gulf."

"What has this geography to do with history?" we ask Dr. Harrison.

"Geography and history go hand in hand," Dr. Harrison answers. "We cannot understand history except through the study of geography. The land is the stage on which the peoples of history have played their parts. Let us consider the Sumerians, the earliest people of Mesopotamia."

Here is what we learn from our explorer friend about this early civilization.

THE CITY-STATES OF THE SUMERIANS

Into the low and rather marshy ground near the mouths of the twin rivers, settlers came in ancient times. They probably came from the mountains to the east or the north. The Sumerians were a quick-witted, active people and skillful workers.

The Sumerians saw that the new land could support them easily if they learned to work with nature. They settled on the highest spots they could find. They dug many canals. Along the canals they

planted date orchards and grain fields. The canals drained the marshes. The Sumerians then turned the land into fields. The canals also carried water to crops that were planted in dry areas. Bringing water to crops in this way is called irrigation.

As the Sumerians grew richer, they made more settlements farther north along the Euphrates. They built a number of cities, such as Ur. These cities were surrounded by high brick walls made of dried clay. Over each city ruled a chief, who was both priest and king. The rulers of the Sumerian cities grew so powerful that they extended their rule over the land outside the cities. We call a city of this kind a *city-state*. There have been many city-states in the history of the world.

How the Sumerians farmed

By means of irrigation, good crops could be raised and many people could be supported in a small space. Irrigation made food plentiful among the Sumerians.

How the Sumerians used metals

Not all the people were needed to cultivate the land, so some of the Sumerians became skilled craftsmen. They learned

A Sumerian war chariot had wooden wheels with copper rims. It was pulled by donkeys.

Oriental Institute, University of Chicago





F. G. Mayer, New York

This bronze figure of a sheep dates from about the time of Hammurabi, in Babylonia. The different colors in the bronze are the result of the many years that the statue lay buried in the earth. By uncovering the ruins of ancient cities, scientists have learned a great deal about how people lived in early times in Babylonia.

to work with copper. They put copper tires on their wagons and made beautiful figures of animals and birds. Their troops wore metal armor and used spears with metal tips. This use of metal helped them win battles. They locked their shields together and pushed forward, with their spears forming a bristling mass, to crush their enemies. Hundreds of years later Alexander the Great, one of the world's famous conquerors, used the same plan to win wars.

How the Sumerians used clay

Southern Mesopotamia had little stone, but clay was a common material. The Sumerians built their houses of clay bricks which had been dried in the sun. These bricks were rather soft and would sometimes melt in a heavy rainstorm. Wealthy people used bricks which were harder because they had been baked in an oven.

The Sumerians used clay tablets for their writing. Persons who did the writing were called *scribes*. The scribe used a short wooden stick or the strong stem of one of the heavy kinds of grass which grew near

the water. This stick, or *stylus*, as it was called, had a sharp edge. The scribe took a tablet of moist clay. Into this he pressed the end of the stylus, making wedge-shaped signs. This kind of writing was called *cuneiform*.

The clay tablet with its cuneiform writing was then baked, and the signs remained. A Sumerian message or letter was written on one or more tablets. The tablets, which were really clay bricks, were heavy to carry. But paper had not yet been invented, and the clay bricks have lasted well.

The Sumerians never reached the point of making an alphabet. Their system of writing was based on several hundred syllables, which they combined to make words. Learning to read and write was difficult.

In arithmetic, the Sumerians counted by sixties. In some ways this is a convenient way to count. As you may easily prove for yourself, sixty can be divided evenly by a good many numbers. When we count sixty minutes to an hour, we are following the example of the Sumerians.

THE TRADING BABYLONIANS

One of the city-states along the Euphrates River was Babylon. It was about one hundred fifty miles north of Ur.

A famous king

Babylon had a number of powerful kings. Hammurabi, its greatest king, came to the throne about 2000 B.C. Hammurabi brought most of the city-states to the south under his rule. Southern Mesopotamia became known as Babylonia.

Hammurabi did his share of fighting and conquering. But he was proud of the ways in which he made life better for his people. "With pasturage and water I provided them and settled them in peaceful dwellings," he said. That sounds like the statement of a good king.

The laws of Hammurabi

Hammurabi was the first ruler to give his people a complete set of laws. In the dry region of Babylonia, the life of the people depended on getting enough water to raise crops and have pasture for animals. Many of Hammurabi's laws were about land and irrigation. The laws were engraved on pillars of hard, black stone. These pillars were set up in different parts of the kingdom. Part of one of the pillars has been found, and on it almost three hundred laws are written. Everyone who could read knew the law and could tell other persons about it.

Business in Babylonia

During Hammurabi's reign, the Babylonians spent most of their time in useful work, such as farming and building. As the capital of the kingdom, Babylon grew to be a great trading city. It had tall buildings and palm-shaded gardens.

The Babylonians were so prosperous that they began trading with neighboring peoples. Donkeys carried grain, dates, wool, woolen cloth, and leather goods far to the west. They brought back all sorts of interesting articles. Boats carried heavy loads along the many irrigation canals.

The Babylonians were the best businessmen that the world had ever seen. They carried on business in some ways much as we carry it on today. The merchants drew up contracts containing the names of witnesses and with official seals, almost exactly as we do now. Seals were also used on letters and on the wrappings of bales of goods to make sure that no one opened the bales unlawfully. They sent out bills to the people who owed them money.

The merchants also lent money, but the interest they charged for the use of the money was very high. It amounted to 20

This sculpture was found at the top of one of the pillars of Hammurabi. It shows the king standing to receive the laws from the sun god.

Oriental Institute, University of Chicago



per cent or more a year, and usually it had to be paid each month. How does that compare with our rate of interest?

Married women had the right to own property and the right to engage in business for themselves. Thus Babylonian women enjoyed more rights than women of most civilized countries did until modern times.

The government kept close watch over business and even fixed the price of wages. As the priests owned much property, they took the lead in planning good ways of carrying on business. Even the temples became business places.

The fall of Babylon

When Hammurabi died, the Babylonians lacked a strong leader. After a time fierce mountain tribes came from the east and conquered Babylonia. In their warfare they used the horse. The Babylonians, who used donkeys to carry goods, had never seen horses before. For a long time the Babylonians called the horse "the donkey from the East." From this time on, the horse and the horse-drawn chariot played an important part in warfare. These invaders settled in Babylonia and ruled the land for nearly six hundred years.

THE FIERCE ASSYRIANS

While the Babylonians were enjoying their palm-shaded gardens and were busily trading, another nation grew up a few hundred miles farther north. From the

town of Assur, their capital, the people took the name of Assyrians. Assur was in a highland region and had a cooler climate than that of Babylonia. East of it were the mountains of the country which later was called Persia. The Assyrians were vigorous and energetic and easily learned the ways of the civilized Babylonians.

The war methods of Assyria

Unfortunately for the peace of their neighbors, the Assyrians decided that they would become the masters of the world. As a help in carrying out this idea, they used iron, a metal little known up to this time. The Babylonians had used *bronze*, a mixture of tin and copper. Bronze is easy to work, but it is not as hard as iron. The Assyrians built their war chariots of iron and used the horse to pull them. Their troops were armed with iron-headed spears and iron swords.

The Assyrians sent armies of armored men marching into battle with chariots and horsemen riding in to take the enemy by surprise. They won victory after victory.

When their foes shut themselves up in walled cities the Assyrians used a tower on wheels with men shooting arrows from the top. The tower was pushed up to the wall of the city. While the archers shot at the defenders of the wall, men inside the tower worked a large battering-ram that brought down the wall. Through this opening the attackers rushed into the city.

British Museum



A king of Assyria uses archers and a battering ram to attack this walled city. Notice how some of the bricks in the wall are already beginning to fall.

Nineveh in ancient times was a large and beautiful city. The building at the right in the drawing is the splendid palace of the king. The ruins of Nineveh are not far from the modern city of Mosul.



Historical Pictures Service

The fighting tower and battering-ram were still used two thousand years later.

The Assyrians were more cruel than any other people of their time. If a city tried to defend itself, it was wiped out. One Assyrian king boasted: "I made the conquered country a desert. I changed it into hills and mounds of rubbish."

Finally the Assyrians conquered Babylon and destroyed it. They built a new capital, called Nineveh, on the Tigris River. Here they brought the spoils seized from the lands they had ruined. Nineveh became a rich and splendid city.

The fall of Assyria

But the Assyrians overlooked some important facts. They did not know that war is waste and that nations cannot live forever on the spoils of war. Busy with war, their kings neglected farming and trade. Assyria lost so many brave men in battle that it grew weak within.

After some time several other nations joined together to attack Assyria, the country they had good reason to hate. They gained the victory. Through all the civilized world went up the joyful shout, "Nineveh has fallen!" Two hundred years later, when the Greek army marched past the spot where the city had stood, they found no sign of great Nineveh.

Assyria's gifts to the world

We must give credit to the Assyrians, cruel though they were, for a number of useful things. To supply Nineveh with water, one of their kings built a broad stone channel, or *aqueduct*, crossing a valley which was a thousand feet wide. This is the oldest city aqueduct known. Can you name any aqueduct in the United States?

To keep in touch with the different parts of his land, one of the Assyrian rulers built roads. For the first time men actually planned roads and built them just where they wanted them to go. Nineveh was the center of a number of roads branching out and connecting all parts of the country.

The king used the roads to send messengers to the different sections, or provinces, of his land. His officers in the provinces brought regular reports, written on clay tablets, over these roads to Nineveh. To protect these messengers, the king set up stations along the roads. In each station lived an officer with a group of soldiers. The officer's duty was to receive the messengers, provide them with food and a place to rest, and send other messengers on with the clay tablets. Here we see an early kind of postal service.

Aqueducts, well-built roads, and a postal service—these were the gifts of the Assyrians to civilization.



Courtesy of the Gallery of Fine Arts, Yale University

This lion of enameled tile was once part of a wall near one of the gates of ancient Babylon.

THE EMPIRE OF THE CHALDEANS

After a time the city of Babylon, which had been completely destroyed by the Assyrians, rose again. A new people, the Chaldeans, had come to Babylonia.

The rise of the Chaldeans

The Chaldeans conquered and looted Nineveh. They built a new Babylon. Proud of his victories, the great Chaldean king, Nebuchadnezzar, decided that a new Babylon should outshine every other city.

The Babylon which rose again by the Euphrates measured forty miles around. Its walls were so thick that on top two chariots could easily pass each other.

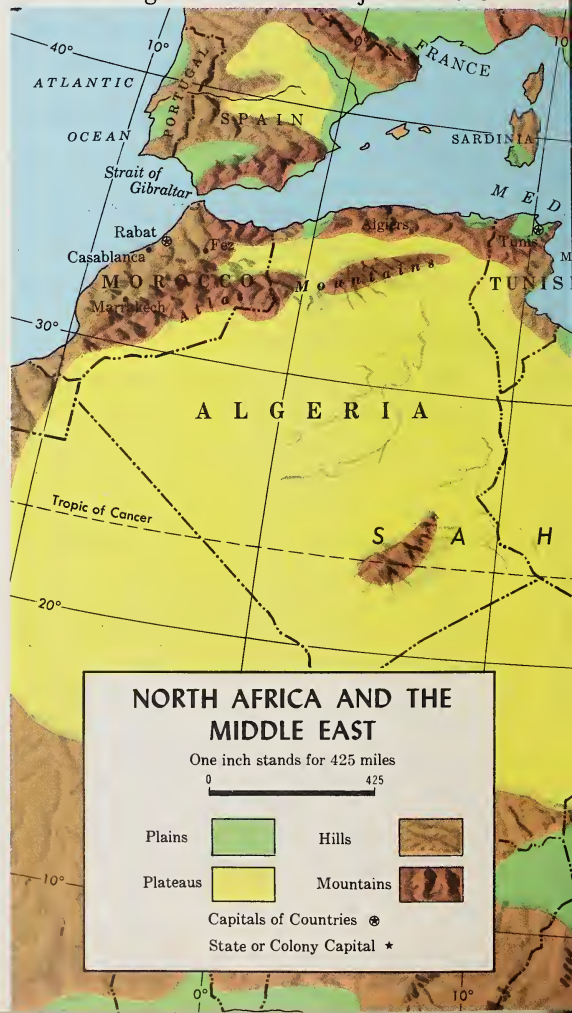
Scientists who have dug into the ruins of Babylon believe that a tower found there was the tower of Babel. The story of Babel is told in the Bible. This tower was several stories high. Each story was set back a little more than the one beneath it, somewhat like today's skyscrapers. An outside staircase led to the top.

Nebuchadnezzar married a girl from the mountains on the east side of the Tigris. In the flat land of Chaldea she grew homesick. Because the king loved his wife very much, he decided to build a roof garden for her. He had a number of platforms erected on the roof of the palace. On the platforms, or terraces, were layers of earth in which flowers and trees were planted. Slaves pumped up the water which kept

the gardens rich and green. These terraces, high above the city, looked like hanging gardens, and that is what they came to be called. The Hanging Gardens of Babylon have been called one of the seven wonders of the ancient world.

The study of astronomy

From the tops of their temples, night after night, the Babylonian priests studied the sky. Most of the stars, they saw, followed the same course and stayed in the same pattern. But other bright points constantly changed their positions. We know now that the wanderers are heavenly bodies revolving about the sun just as the



earth does. We call them *planets*. Our earth is a planet.

The Babylonians figured out the paths of the sun, the moon, and the planets as they moved through the sky. They knew when the seasons would begin. They observed *eclipses*, or darkenings of the sun and moon. They were able to predict when eclipses would occur. The study of the heavens is a science called *astronomy*. Our science of astronomy owes much to the Babylonians.

The end of Chaldea

The kings who followed Nebuchadrezzar were not as strong as he had been.

Chaldea was conquered, and the city of Babylon fell as Nineveh had fallen before it. The canals that had supplied water to the land of Chaldea were neglected.

Rain melted the sun-baked bricks of Babylon back into mud. Today, under the burning sunshine, visitors find there only the ruins which have been dug out of mounds in the desert.

Babylon's gift to the world

The laws of the trading Babylonians are still remembered as the best the world had known up to that time. To the Chaldeans, who observed the heavens, we owe the beginnings of astronomy.





Standard Oil Company of N.J. (Photo by Corsini)

To harvest dates from a date palm, men climb the tree and gather the ripe fruit in a woven basket. Then the basket is lowered to the ground. Some of the fruit is sold fresh and the remainder is dried.

THE COUNTRY OF IRAQ

The country through which the Twin Rivers flow is now called Iraq. Iraq is somewhat larger than our state of New Mexico. It has about as many people as Massachusetts has. We shall see why this country does not have more people.

IRAQ, A DESERT LAND

As you can see by the map on page 41, a large part of Iraq lies outside the valleys of the Euphrates and Tigris rivers. West of those rivers, the desert stretches for five hundred miles. Few people can live in

that region. Even along the rivers there is little rain. The air is dry, and the heat is great. Wherever water does not actually touch the soil, the ground is baked hard and dry by the extremely hot sun and is gray with dust.

The soil of the Euphrates-Tigris Valley has been brought down by these two streams. It is very rich and needs only water to make it produce fine harvests. By means of irrigation it once supported many more people than are found in the valley today.

Ewing Galloway



A Bedouin camp in this barren land is extremely primitive. The Bedouins drive their flocks of sheep and herds of cattle from one pasture to another. These rough tents are the only homes they ever know.



This map of Iraq and Iran shows that large parts of each country are desert areas. The only really fertile part is the valley of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers in Iraq. Here in early times civilizations grew up. The sites, or places, where some of their cities stood are shown. In both countries farming depends upon irrigation. Much of Iran is a high mountainous plateau with few rivers. Many of the rivers are dry part of the year as shown by broken lines on the map.

Basra, an ocean port

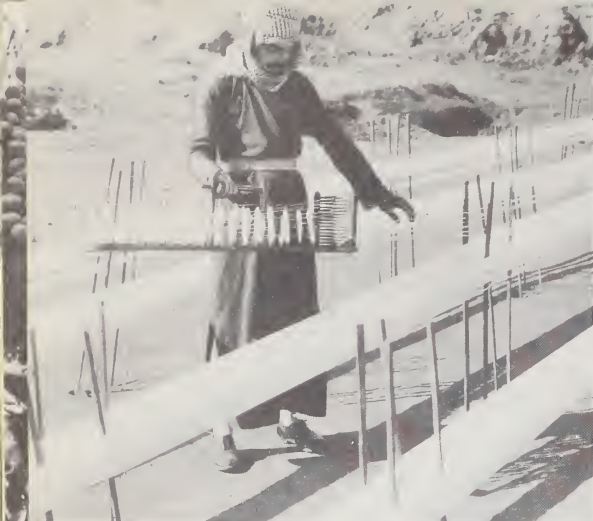
Iraq has only one ocean port, Basra. If you have read *The Arabian Nights*, you will remember that Sinbad the Sailor sailed from Basra. Today Sinbad would be surprised to see that Basra is much farther from the Persian Gulf than it was in his day. How did this change come about?

Basra lies at the point where the Twin Rivers meet. Ships must sail seventy-five miles upstream to reach the city. Most of the goods that Iraq imports, as well as what it exports, must pass through Basra.

Dates, an important product

Millions of date palms, watered by irrigation, surround Basra. Their clusters of yellow fruit hang heavily from the branches. Most of the imported dates eaten in the United States come from this region. We eat dates like candy, but in Iraq and other countries of the Middle East they are an important food.

The date palm can grow in dry lands because it strikes its roots deep down into the ground to find water. If the roots find water, the dryness of the topsoil does not matter. The Arabs say, "The date has its



James Sawders-Combine

A native of Baghdad spins cotton yarn. As he walks, the thread reels off the small spindles onto the pole frame holding the lengths of yarn.

feet in the water and its head in the fire.” A date grove can produce more than ten times as much food for human use as the same land planted in wheat. However, the thrifty Arabs often raise wheat also on the ground under the date palms during the mild, sunny winters.

The people of Iraq

Here and there, near the banks of the river, groups of wandering Arabs, or *Bedouins*, today pitch their tents. The *Bedouins* are a desert people, who do not live long in one place but roam about. They depend for their living on their camels, donkeys, and goats. Many of them live entirely on dates, grain, and milk.

The summer heat in Iraq reaches 100 degrees or more day after day, month after month. To make themselves comfortable, the people of Basra build their mud-brick houses with thick walls, which keep out much of the heat. At night, when the earth cools off, it is pleasant to sit on the flat roof under the stars.

TWO FAMOUS CITIES

Now we shall go by train to Baghdad, the capital of Iraq.

Baghdad, the capital of Iraq

For more than a thousand years Baghdad was the most important city in Iraq. At this point in early times travelers and merchants coming from the East met those coming from the West. The Arab ruler who founded the city built it in the form of a circle, with his palace in the center. He thought a ruler should live as near as possible to all his people. Do you think he was right?

In Baghdad silk merchants from China met fur traders from Russia and pearl sellers from the Persian Gulf. Poets and scientists were welcomed at the court of its ruler. Baghdad is also mentioned in *The Arabian Nights*. When you read these stories, see what you can learn about Baghdad.

In trying to make Baghdad a modern city, its rulers have made some wide streets. But in Baghdad the sun is hot most of the year. So the natives prefer narrow streets, which are cooler because they are shady. Along the narrow streets we find open-front coffee shops with many customers.

We pay a visit to the bazaars. Bazaars are streets which are lined with shops with all kinds of native goods for sale. There are separate streets for shoemakers, tailors, metal workers, dealers in vegetables and fruits, and so on. In these streets, covered with awnings, the shops are small open stalls. In his shop the owner often sits cross-legged on the floor with his goods displayed within arm's reach around him.

One sound that we hear all day long in Baghdad is the tinkle of camel bells. Up and down the streets go lines of camels,

pushing through the crowd. The camel is well suited to the desert. His big, padded feet move easily over hard rock and sink but little into deep sand. His horny lips and mouth can handle the spiky, thorny bushes of the desert on which he often has to feed. His stomach has several different divisions, in which water can be stored for days at a time. Ugly as the camel may be, the desert dweller finds him of great value.

At blazing noon we observe a *caravan* moving in from the desert. A caravan is a group of people who travel across the desert, using camels to carry them and their goods. When the camels have eaten and are allowed to rest, they do not lie down in the shade. Instead they all walk out into the sun, sink upon their knees in the hot sand, and close their eyes. No wonder the Arabs call the camel "the ship of the desert."

Mosul, a rich oil city

From Baghdad we fly across the sun-baked desert to Mosul, more than two hundred miles farther up the Tigris. Here Nineveh once stood in all its glory. It was

in Mosul that the weavers first made a kind of fine cotton cloth, called *muslin*, which we use in many ways. The word *muslin*, as you can see, came from the name of the city where the cloth was first woven.

Today the city of Mosul is important to Europe because rich oil fields have been discovered near by. Oil is the life of modern transportation. Airplanes and many ships are powered by oil. All over the world, in desert and in jungle, engineers search for it and develop the fields where it is found.

IRAQ IN MODERN TIMES

Iraq has seen the rise and fall of several ancient civilizations. In modern times it was for many years a part of the great but poorly governed Turkish Empire. (*Empire* means a government which holds power over conquered peoples.) Little attention was paid it by the world.

Iraq in World War I

In 1914 a great conflict involving many nations broke out. In this war, now known

Shostal (Eric Kolmer)

Many people in Iraq and in neighboring countries spend their whole lives wandering from place to place in the desert. These nomads take their camels, horses, sheep, and their other belongings with them. The long, loose clothing protects them from the hot sun and blowing sands.



as World War I, the land of Iraq became one of the chief battlegrounds. On one side were Germany, Austria, and some other countries of Central Europe. Turkey fought on the side of Germany. On the other side, the principal nations were Great Britain, France, Russia, Italy, Japan, and—later on—the United States. This group of nations which fought together was called the *Allies*.

The war soon reached Iraq, and Basra was captured by the British. Later, the British sent forces into the area north of the Persian Gulf. The purpose of this expedition was to capture Baghdad, an important point on the new railway connecting Asia and Europe. The British finally succeeded in taking much territory, including Iraq, from the Turks.

Iraq, an independent nation

After the war, Iraq was placed under the control of the British. But the people

of Iraq wished to be free. They established a national government and elected a king. In 1932, when Great Britain recognized the independence of Iraq, the two countries signed an agreement. Under the agreement each was to come to the aid of the other in the event of war.

In 1939 Germany began a new war. This war, called World War II, spread until it reached all parts of the globe. True to its agreement, Iraq allowed the British to land defense troops at Basra. Later Iraq entered the war to help the Allies.

Iraq today

Iraq today has a king. It also has a constitution. The members of the governing assembly are elected by the people. The soil of Iraq is rich, but great areas have no water. More irrigation works should be built. Iraq also has huge deposits of oil which give the country great importance in the eyes of other nations.

THE LAND OF IRAN

East of the Tigris River rises range after range of mountains. These mark the boundary between Iraq and a country, once called Persia, but now known by its ancient name of Iran. It stretches from the Caspian Sea to the Persian Gulf.

THE GEOGRAPHY OF IRAN

Look at the map on page 41. You see that most of Iran is separated from the countries to the west and north by mountain walls. The thin strip along the shores of the Caspian Sea has all the rain it needs. The climate is warm enough for raising tea and cotton. But mountains on the south block off the rain-bearing winds from the greater part of Iran and leave it a desert.

Although these mountains shut off a great deal of rain, they do furnish large supplies of water in the form of streams. These streams, fed by melting snow, flow down the mountainsides and are soon lost in the desert. Near every stream are towns or villages which use its water for irrigation.

In all lands there is much more water flowing under the surface than upon the surface. Through long experience the people of Iran have learned to dig tunnels into the hills to tap the underground water. The farmers draw up the water from the tunnels and use it to irrigate their fields. By means of irrigation, old-time Persia became famous for its gardens.



Pan American Airways

Two rug weavers work at a Persian carpet. The pattern they will follow is fastened to the loom.

One poet, singing of these delightful gardens, wrote:

"If there is a heaven on earth,
It is here, it is here, it is here."

THE PEOPLE OF IRAN

The traveler may journey for many miles in Iran and never see a human being. Yet Iran has more people than we might expect from its great amount of desert. In area it is larger than our four states of Washington, Oregon, California, and Texas together. And it has nearly as many people as these states have. The capital of Iran is Tehran. This city has a population of more than a million.

Most of the people of Iran belong to the white race. The hot sun, however, has caused many of them to have dark skins. In the cities a great number of them dress much as we do.

Nearly all Iranians are followers of Mohammed, or *Moslems*. The buildings where they pray and worship are called *mosques*. All mosques have towers called *minarets*. From these minarets the people are called to worship. They pray in the mosques, or wherever they happen to be, five times a day.

Iranian farmers

Most of the farmers of Iran are tenant farmers. These tenant farmers do not own farms. Instead they pay rent to the owner, or landlord, by giving him a part of what they raise. Because water is so precious, the farms are small. It is hard for these tenant farmers to live well on the part of their crops which they can keep for themselves.

Iranian sheepherders

In the mountains of Iran, in the region of Kurdistan, many people live by tending sheep. The Kurds, as the people of this region are called, live in tribes. During the winters, which are very cold, they keep their sheep in the lower valleys. As the heat of summer dries up the lower pastures, the Kurds take their flocks up to the

A woman in an Iranian village makes bread in a primitive way. After the dough is rolled thin it is baked in a pit heated by charcoal.

Ewing Galloway





F. G. Mayer, New York

One of the gifts of Persia to the world was their bright-colored pottery. Often they used designs of interwoven lines. A kind of picture decoration is shown on this plate, which has the figures of a man and a lion.

higher, cooler pastures in the mountains. The fine wool from their sheep is used in the beautiful Persian rugs for which Iran is famous.

Iranian bazaars

The city workers, like most of those in the Middle East, are handicraft workers. Each Iranian shoemaker, weaver, carpenter, and baker has his own little shop where he makes the things he sells there. The bazaars are full of these small shops. There are a few factories in the big cities.

PERSIA'S GIFTS TO THE WORLD

Persia, or Iran as it is now called, gave the world many gifts.

Fruits, flowers, and nuts

To Persia we owe the peach and the apricot as well as the lilacs that delight us in the spring. In our markets today you will find Persian melons. Do you think these were actually brought here from Persia? Ask a fruit dealer about them.

Probably you have at some time eaten *pistachio* ice cream or pistachio candy. The pistachio nut, which is ground into a paste and used for flavoring, comes from Persia.

Big fields of waving white poppies produce large quantities of sticky juice that hardens into *opium*. Opium is a drug used in medicines to deaden pain.

Fine weaving and dyeing

The Persians were artistic, and their art expressed itself in many ways. The Persians wove *brocade*. Brocade is a kind of cloth with raised designs in gold and silver thread. They made gay pottery and enameled tiles. The beautifully colored Persian rugs are among the finest in the world.

Sheep were numerous in Persia, so there was plenty of wool for weaving shawls, carpets, and rugs. The Persians delighted in weaving. Sometimes a carpet would keep a man busy at his loom for many months. On the Persian hills grew various plants which were used for dyeing. The designs which ornamented Persian shawls are still copied in men's ties and in women's garments. In the United States today women wear coats and neckpieces of curly Persian lamb. This fine fur is the dyed skin of young Asiatic sheep which first came from Persia.

You can see that far-off Persia, or Iran, as it is now called, produced a number of things we meet in everyday living.

IRAN TODAY

Iran is still a backward country. It has only one important railroad and few paved highways. There are few automobiles. In the country you would find hundreds of camels or donkeys for each car.

Great oil reserves

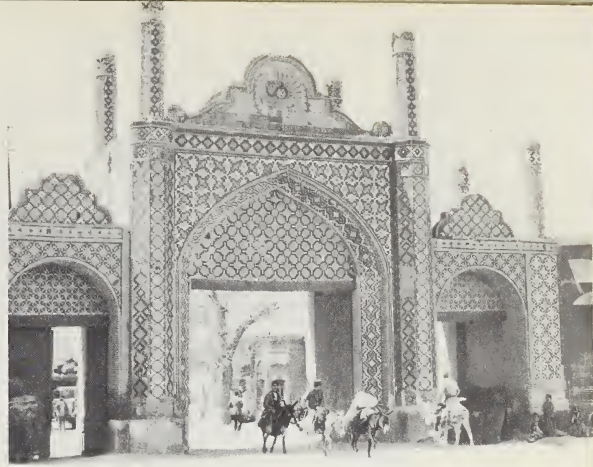
Around the head, or upper part, of the Persian Gulf, oil has been discovered in great quantities. Iran has been called "a desert resting on a lake of oil." A pipe line takes the oil to a port on the Persian Gulf where there are large oil refineries. Iran's gas and oil furnish power for British ships.

Modern customs

After World War I Iran's new ruler, or *shah*, decided to improve his country and make it modern. According to Moslem custom at this time, women wore veils over their faces when appearing in public. The shah forbade this. He burned the tents of

Tehran, capital of Iran, lies at the foot of high snow-covered mountains. Much of it is now a modern city with wide streets and fine new buildings. The Iranian lawmakers meet in the building at the lower right.

Ewing Galloway



Three Lions

Small donkeys carrying packs and riders pass through one of Tehran's twelve beautiful gates.

some of the wild Kurdish tribes to make them settle down and become more civilized.

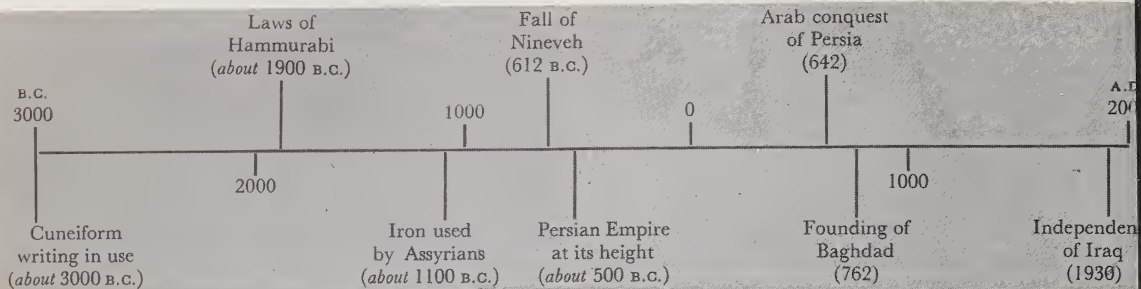
The shah set up schools in many places where there had never been a school before. He announced that the old name of Persia should no longer be used, but that the nation should now be called by an older name, Iran. The shah succeeded in making many improvements, but Iran still has a long way to go to be modern and prosperous.

The future of Iran

The capital was moved north to Tehran, which is backed by a wall of snow-topped mountains. Tehran is supplied with water from underground canals. In summer the water supply grows scanty, but the region around Tehran is now provided with irrigation canals. Vegetables, fruits, and cotton are raised.

So much of the land is desert that there is no way of furnishing enough water for it. Most of the people make only a poor living. But many nations are interested in Iran's oil. The development of its oil fields promises Iran a brighter future.

Time-Line: Iraq and Iran (3000 B.C. — 2000 A.D.)



A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

scribe	brocade	Bedouins
opium	Moslems	pistachio
shah	Allies	aqueduct
stylus	minaret	eclipse
muslin	caravan	astronomy
mosque	bronze	city-state
empire	planet	cuneiform

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 21. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. An independent city that rules a large area of surrounding land
2. A person who wrote messages or records
3. A stick with a sharp edge or point used for writing
4. Moslem title for the ruler of Iran
5. A woven cloth with a raised design
6. Writing with wedge-shaped signs
7. A substance made of a mixture of tin and copper
8. A drug made from poppies used in medicine to deaden pain
9. A green nut grown in Persia
10. A channel built to carry water
11. A heavenly body moving around the sun as our earth does
12. Arabs who wander about with no permanent home
13. A darkening of the sun or the moon

14. A group of people who travel across the desert on camels
15. The nations that fought against Germany in World War I
16. A tall, slender tower on a mosque
17. The scientific study of the heavens
18. A fine cotton cloth first made in Mosul
19. Followers of Mohammed
20. A building where Moslems worship
21. A government that holds power over conquered peoples

Using a Time-Line

A time-line helps us to understand history. It is a device on which events are arranged in the order in which they happened. Study the time-line of Iraq and Iran. Notice that it is divided into five equal parts, each standing for one thousand years. Copy it, and add to it other events mentioned in the text.

Events on our calendar are divided according to whether they occurred before or after the birth of Christ. Events that happened before that date have the letters B.C. (Before Christ) placed after them. For the years following the birth of Christ we use the letters A.D. (an abbreviation of the Latin phrase *Anno Domini*, which means "In the Year of Our Lord").

No one can be certain when some of the events of ancient times happened. For that reason, historians use the word *about* before the dates they give to such events.

History tells us about "seven wonders of the ancient world." One of these was the Hanging Gardens of Babylon. How were the gardens built? For what purpose? Find the names of the other wonders of the world.



Ewing Galloway

Your class may wish to make a large time-line to take account of important historical events. Here are two suggestions:

1. Use a heavy string or a clothesline for this purpose. Decide on an appropriate scale. Practically all events mentioned in this book will fit into the five-thousand-year period covered by the time-line on page 48. If you can string twenty-five feet of line along the molding of the blackboard, for example, you can allow one foot of line for every two hundred years. If you have room for only twenty feet, each foot of the clothesline would represent two hundred and fifty years.

As you study about an event of importance, prepare a little card and attach it by thread, tape, or plastic clothespin in its proper place on the time-line. You can use differently colored cards to represent different countries or types of events.

2. Instead of the cord or line you may use a roll of paper in constructing a class time-line. Either shelving or wrapping paper may be used. Draw pictures to represent the important events and write captions for the pictures. At the top

and bottom of the roll, indicate the important dates that go with the pictures. You can display the entire roll, or just the section you are studying at the time.

Can You Answer These?

1. Why did the valley of the Twin Rivers become an early home of civilization?
2. Explain this statement: "We can actually learn history by digging things out of the ground."
3. Why was Hammurabi considered the greatest king of Babylon?
4. Why does the date palm grow well in dry lands?
5. What is the city of Mosul like today?
6. Why do most of the people of Iran live within easy reach of the mountains?

Can You Match These?

Copy the six place names in the first column on a piece of paper. Next to each, write the word or words that belong with it.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. Ur | shah |
| 2. Mesopotamia | Hammurabi |
| 3. Babylon | muslin |
| 4. Basra | Sinbad the Sailor |
| 5. Mosul | Sumerians |
| 6. Iran | Abraham |



Ewing Galloway

Beautiful Santa Sophia has served both as a church and as a mosque. It is now a museum.



Ewing Galloway

In modern Turkey an ancient fire watchtower stands beside the new University of Istanbul.

TURKEY, OLD AND NEW

Let us continue our journey through the Middle East. We board our plane and leave Mosul for Turkey.

THE FERTILE CRESCENT

South of us and to the west of the Persian Gulf lies the vast Arabian peninsula, which is mostly desert. Fortunately for civilization, a belt of fertile lowland curves northward from the head of the Persian Gulf, then bends south along the eastern end of the Mediterranean Sea. (See the map, page 51.) North and east of it are mountains. South of it is the desert. This crescent, or curved belt, is called the *Fertile Crescent*. Trace it with your finger on the map.

The Fertile Crescent is like a broad road between the barren desert on one side and the mountains on the other. Its soil is rich and well watered. Far back in history cities grew up in it, armies marched over it, and the caravans of merchants traveled it. The world has profited by the exchange of ideas as well as the exchange of goods made possible at this meeting place.

We pass over the Fertile Crescent on our way to Turkey. Along the Tigris we fly. We see Mount Ararat. The land below us now is mostly dry and barren. Flocks of white sheep and black goats are feeding. We are now in Turkey.

TURKEY'S HISTORY

Our plane comes down to earth at the mountain town of Ankara, once known as Angora. Find Ankara on the map on page 60. It stands almost in the center of the big peninsula that was once called Asia Minor, or "lesser Asia." It is now called by the Turkish name of Anatolia.

Turkey's capitals, old and new

Until recent times Ankara was a sleepy town, little known to the world. Today it is the capital of Turkey. It has new and modern buildings.

For many long years Constantinople, a city on the European side of the Bosphorus Strait, was the capital of Turkey. In 1930 the name of this city was changed to the Turkish name of Istanbul. Istanbul is a

great, beautiful city on the border between Asia and Europe.

The influence of Mohammed

Most people in the Middle East are followers of Mohammed, or Moslems. The Koran, the sacred book of the Moslems, says, "There is only one God, Allah, and Mohammed is his prophet."

Mohammed was born in Arabia about fourteen hundred years ago. To the Arabs, who then worshiped idols, he preached the religion of one God. Many believed his teachings.

After the death of Mohammed his Arab followers set out to win the peoples of the world for the Moslem faith. They spread their religion by using the sword. After the Arabs had conquered many lands, they settled down. But when the leaders began to quarrel and fight among themselves, their power began to weaken.

From east of the Caspian Sea came a warlike people called the Turks. The region from which they came is known as Turkestan. The Turks were tough, hard fighters. They took Arab lands, adopted the Moslem faith, and dreamed of conquering Europe.

The Turkish empire

Later a second group of Turks appeared. They were called the Ottoman Turks after their leader, Othman.

These Turks conquered large areas of Asia and Africa. In 1453, not long before the discovery of America, they took the city of Constantinople. They made this city the capital of the Ottoman Empire. For more than two hundred years their armies continued to advance and to add new land to the empire. They finally reached Vienna, in the center of Europe. But Christian forces saved the city.

The Fertile Crescent curves from the Persian Gulf to the Mediterranean Sea. This rich area was one of the ancient cradles of civilization. Look at the map and name some of the great empires which once existed here. What cities that are shown on this map are still in existence today?





In 1566 the Turks controlled northern Africa and in Europe were close to Vienna. But soon afterward their empire began to decline. Today Turkey includes only the darkest area on the map.

The siege of Vienna was the peak of Turkish power. After that, one part after another of the land in Europe taken by the Turks became independent. In Constantinople, the Turkish rulers, called *sultans*, saw their empire becoming smaller and weaker. Under the sultans Turkey became known as “the sick man of Europe.” By World War I, all the Turkish possessions in Europe had been lost except a small portion of land that included Constantinople. The Turks also held the important water passage near which Constantinople stood.

MODERN TURKEY

In World War I, Turkey joined Germany. Germany was defeated, and Turkey lost territory. Then Mustapha Kemal, later called Kemal Pasha, arose in Turkey.

A new government

Kemal made up his mind that Turkey had been a “sick man” long enough. He wished to see his country strong and powerful. To carry out his plan of “Turkey for the Turks,” Kemal moved the capital to Ankara, in Asiatic Turkey. He built new government buildings in Ankara. When the sultan left the country, Kemal became the ruler. “From now on,” said Kemal, “religion and government will be separate.” Is that our idea in the United States?

At Ankara, Kemal and his helpers made laws to help Turkey. They realized that the old ways of living had made the nation backward.

First, they did away with the Arabic way of writing, with its many dots and

curves. Instead, they adopted the same alphabet that the people of western Europe and the United States use. It is now much easier to learn to read and write Arabic. If a Turk wishes to learn a European language, he does not need to learn a different alphabet.

New ways of living

The leaders then decided that every person should take a last name, or surname. This made it easier to keep track of the thousands of people with the same first names. We might think it quite odd for a person to have only one name. But only a few hundred years ago most people in Europe did not have surnames. Kemal himself was given the surname of Atatürk, which means "chief Turk."

Kemal did away with the black veil that all Moslem women had to wear to hide their faces when they went out. He saw that Turkey could not make progress unless women were given their proper rights. Taking away their veils was like tearing down a wall that kept women from being free. This was an important change.

A fine statue of Mustafa Kemal overlooks the city of Ankara, which he made the Turkish capital. The old village of mud-brick houses and narrow streets was torn down and a new city of more modern design was built in its place. The Turks are proud of Ankara because it shows that they have adopted western ways.

Better farming methods

Most of the people in Turkey are farmers. For that reason the new government is now teaching better ways of farming. Much of the land is dry, so the government agents show the people how to make the best use of all the rain that falls and how to raise crops suited to dry soil. Many Turkish farmers have been slow to take up the new ways. But they will always be poor unless they learn to use better farming methods.

What Istanbul is like

From Ankara a flight of about two hundred miles westward across the mountains takes us to Istanbul. Istanbul has a fine location. The city stands at a crossroads of travel and trade on the Bosphorus Strait. Those who wished to go by land from Europe to Asia need only to cross this narrow water channel, the Bosphorus Strait. Those who traveled by water between the Mediterranean Sea and the Black Sea also must pass through that strait.

In early times Istanbul was called Constantinople, after the Roman Emperor

Monkmeyer





Gendreau

Three mosques and the borders of two continents can be seen in this picture of Istanbul. At the left is Santa Sophia, once a Christian church. Across the Bosphorus are suburbs of Istanbul in Asia.

Constantine. For many hundreds of years it was a great trading city. The Germans dreamed of a railway, passing through Constantinople, that would link Berlin with Baghdad. (The railway was completed finally in 1940, but not by the Germans.)

When the Turkish capital was moved from Constantinople to Ankara, it was a hard blow to the proud city. Because Constantinople had been named for a European, Kemal restored it to the ancient Turkish name of Istanbul.

Why Izmir is important

From Istanbul a flight to the southwest brings us to the shore of the Mediterranean Sea. There stands Turkey's chief sea-

port. Formerly known as Smyrna, the Turks now call it Izmir.

In reaching Izmir, we have come into a region with a *Mediterranean climate*. The countries along the Mediterranean Sea have rainy winters, cool but not cold. They have hot, almost rainless summers. If you think of southern California, you will know what grows well in a Mediterranean climate. Oranges, lemons, grapes, olives, figs, dates, prunes—these are the products of the Mediterranean coast lands.

In spring these Mediterranean regions are beautiful with flowers. In summer they have bare brown hills, with dusty soil. These are lands where there are more sheep and goats than cattle. There is rich pasture on the lowlands in winter and

spring, but the animals must go up into the mountains in summer to find grass.

In Izmir the shops offer rugs and carpets for sale. They are made from the wool of the sheep raised in Anatolia. The fleece of the goats is called *mohair*. The Bedouins make their tents from mohair.

Figs and other fruits are plentiful. There is also tobacco from the rainy, warm region along the Black Sea. Turkish tobacco is sweet-smelling and brings a good price. Bales of cotton are piled on the wharves along the sea front. Here also are packages of licorice root, used for flavoring candy or tobacco. Smyrna figs, noted for their fine flavor, are exported to many countries all over the world, including the United States.



Combine

Grapes are picked on the sunny slopes near the city of Smyrna. Notice the mosque with its dome and minarets in the background.

SYRIA, LEBANON, AND JORDAN

Our airplane now flies east, over the mountains and valleys of southern Anatolia. Most of the land is barren. We will land in the city of Aleppo, in Syria.

THE LAND OF SYRIA

Syria is slightly larger than Missouri and has about as many people. Much of Syria is desert. The Lebanon Mountains extend along the Mediterranean. A narrow fertile strip of land good for farming lies between two mountain ranges. Another fertile strip lies between the mountains and the sea. About one sixth of the people are Bedouins, who wander about the desert, without permanent homes.

Syria's past

France has always been interested in Syria. French knights of old fought against the Turks there. They built castles and governed lands there. After World

War I, Syria, which had belonged to Turkey, was given as a *mandate* to France. A mandate is land which a powerful country controls and protects but does not own. At the beginning of World War II, Syria was given its independence.

Homes in Syrian villages look like beehives and are made of mud. When dry and hard, the mud keeps out much of the heat of the sun.

Oriental Institute, University of Chicago



Aleppo, an old trading city

Aleppo, which lies inland, is a city that once lived entirely by the caravan trade of the Fertile Crescent. Long lines of camels from Baghdad and from Mosul carried back goods as valuable as those they brought. When, in 1869, the Suez Canal was opened between the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea, the trade of Aleppo was hurt for a time. Now a railroad connects Aleppo with Izmir, in Turkey, and with Medina, in Saudi Arabia. Aleppo is prosperous again.

Damascus, the world's oldest city

The railroad to Medina passes through Damascus, another center of caravan trade in Syria. Damascus, or Damas as the Moslems call it, lies south of Aleppo.

Damascus is the oldest inhabited city in the world. While other famous cities have been destroyed or deserted, Damascus has

A native water seller in Syria sells water to passers-by from an urn strapped to his back.



Combine



Ewing Galloway

The famous "Street which is called Straight" is narrow and paved with rough cobblestones. Imagine driving an automobile along this street.

remained a home of manufacture and trade. It is the largest city of Syria, being about the size of Memphis, Tennessee. Damascus lies on an oasis, or green and fertile spot, sixty miles long along the Jordan River. Mohammed, who was used to the burning desert sands, said he was afraid to go to Damascus because then he might not want to go to heaven.

The main street of Damascus, a mile long, is proudly named Straight. As we walk along the street called Straight, we see iron arches extending across the street from one house to another. Awnings placed over these arches protect the street from the hot sun. St. Paul, the Bible tells us, walked along this street almost two thousand years ago. In what ways do you think the street might be the same today?

For hundreds of years Damascus was famous for its swords made of hard steel. Often the handles and the blades of the swords were inlaid with silver and gold.

As we visit the bazaars, we find many kinds of linen cloth. When the light shines

on these linens in a certain way, we see a pattern woven into them. Cloth woven in this way is known as *damask*. Can you explain why it is called damask?

The Phoenicians, great sea traders

Thirty-five hundred years ago the Phoenicians lived in one of the fertile strips of what is now Syria. Phoenicia lay between the Lebanon Mountains and the Mediterranean Sea. The Phoenicians were much like the Arabs and the Hebrews. They built city-states similar to those that grew up along the Euphrates. Living near the sea, they became a sea-going people. From the great cedar trees that grew on the Lebanon Mountains they built strong ships that could stand rough weather. The ships had two rows of oars. Having both sails and oars, the Phoenician captains could take their ships to far-off places.

The bold and daring Phoenicians became the great sailors and sea traders of their day. They visited the island of Cyprus, just west of the Syrian coast. Beyond Cyprus to the west is another island, Crete. Find Crete on your map. The people of Crete were highly civilized in many ways. The Phoenicians carried on a lively trade with them.

The Phoenicians bring welcome goods to trade with the people living on the coast of Britain.

Bettmann Archive



Phoenician ships went as far as Spain, where the Phoenicians had copper mines and trading posts. They went through the Strait of Gibraltar and traded on islands in the Atlantic Ocean. They went as far north as Great Britain and came back loaded with tin. Tin mixed with copper makes bronze. The Phoenicians sought out every port where they could trade with profit.

The people of Phoenicia became excellent craftsmen. They made beautiful glass. They carved ivory. They did all sorts of metal work. They wove linen cloth and dyed it in beautiful colors. The dyes they used were especially fine. From the bodies of sea snails they made a purple color that was much prized.

Three great Phoenician cities

The oldest Phoenician city was Byblos, which was near the spot where Beirut now stands. The sailors of Byblos brought sheets of paper, made from a plant called *papyrus*, from Egypt. Papyrus sheets were used for writing letters and making books. Byblos became so important in the trade of papyrus sheets that rolls of papyrus sheets were called "biblia." Any book, therefore, was a bible. Our Holy Scriptures came to be known as the Bible.

South of Byblos stood Sidon, another great Phoenician city. On an island near Sidon was Tyre, the greatest and proudest Phoenician city. It was the people of Tyre who discovered the secret of making the purple dye which became famous in ancient times.

Hiram, who was king of Tyre about one thousand years before Christ, had many expert workmen at his call. When King Solomon began to build the fine temple in Jerusalem, it was to Hiram that he



Ewing Galloway

The famous cedars of Lebanon, once common, are becoming scarce. Notice how tall the cedar is in comparison with the man standing beneath it.

turned for help. Hiram's men cut many great cedars and hauled them to Jerusalem. They did most of the work of building the temple. They also made the gold dishes for the religious services.

For hundreds of years after the time of King Hiram, Tyre and Sidon were important cities. Syria was a highway across which rival armies marched. Syria changed rulers frequently, but the Phoenicians went on trading. Tyre's position on an island protected it from attack.

Three hundred years before the birth of Christ, Alexander the Great, whose story we shall hear later, marched his army through Syria. He destroyed the city of Sidon. The people of Tyre thought that they could easily defend their island. But

Alexander built a stone path through the sea. Marching over this, his troops attacked and destroyed Tyre. Today, where the proud cities of Sidon and Tyre once stood, there are only small fishing villages.

The gifts of the Phoenicians

The Phoenicians were the greatest builders of their time. They were also the greatest seafaring nation and trading nation of the ancient world.

In their travels the Phoenicians came into contact with the Seirites, who lived just north of the Red Sea. The Seirites used a simple form of picture symbols, or letters, which they had learned from the Egyptians. The businesslike Phoenicians adapted to their own use this method of writing in keeping their accounts. These sailor-traders in their visits to other peoples shared with them this valuable tool, the alphabet. Through the Phoenicians the alphabet spread to the Greeks in Europe, and from the Greeks to Italy. With some changes it became the basis of our alphabet today. The alphabet, which the Phoenicians helped to develop, was their greatest gift to the world.

THE REPUBLIC OF LEBANON

Bordering Syria and facing the sea is Lebanon. Lebanon has but one large city, the seaport of Beirut. We go almost directly west from Damascus to this important city. It is similar to other seaports of the Middle East. In the busy city of Beirut, however, is a university supported by money from the United States. Here the young people of Lebanon, Syria, and other near-by countries learn to be of service to their people. Lebanon is an Arab nation, but about half the people are Christians.

Many ideas and inventions of Europe and the United States now reach the Middle East. Lebanon, like Syria, is now independent, free to direct its own progress. Today Lebanon is prosperous because much of the oil from near-by Arabian countries is shipped from Beirut.

THE KINGDOM OF JORDAN

South of Syria is the Arab kingdom of Jordan. Its area is slightly larger than that of Indiana. The population of Jordan is about the same as the population of the state of Oregon.

PALESTINE, WHERE RELIGIONS MEET

To the south of Syria, on the Mediterranean Sea, lies the small country of Palestine, often called the Holy Land. Hebrews, Christians, and Moslems turn their thoughts toward this center of religion.

THE HISTORY OF THE HEBREWS

Two thousand years before the time of Christ, there lived in Babylonia a tribe of people who were wanderers like the Bedouins. They lived in tents and were shepherds. When the pasture gave out, they moved on to new pastures with their

Jordan was long ruled by Turkey. Britain took the area in World War I. In 1946 Jordan was given its independence. Most of the people live in small villages. Their way of life is primitive.

Jordan is named for the river which forms most of its western boundary. Only a narrow stretch of land along the river can be farmed. The rest of the country is desert and mountain.

Jordan's chief city and capital is Amman. Jordan also holds part of the city of Jerusalem. In 1952 Jordan became a member of the Arab League.

flocks and herds. Near Ur was a tribesman by the name of Abram, who wished to find a land where he could be both a farmer and a shepherd. Abram, who was later called Abraham, believed he was called of God to establish a home in a new land. Taking his family and his possessions, he moved west to the land later called Palestine.

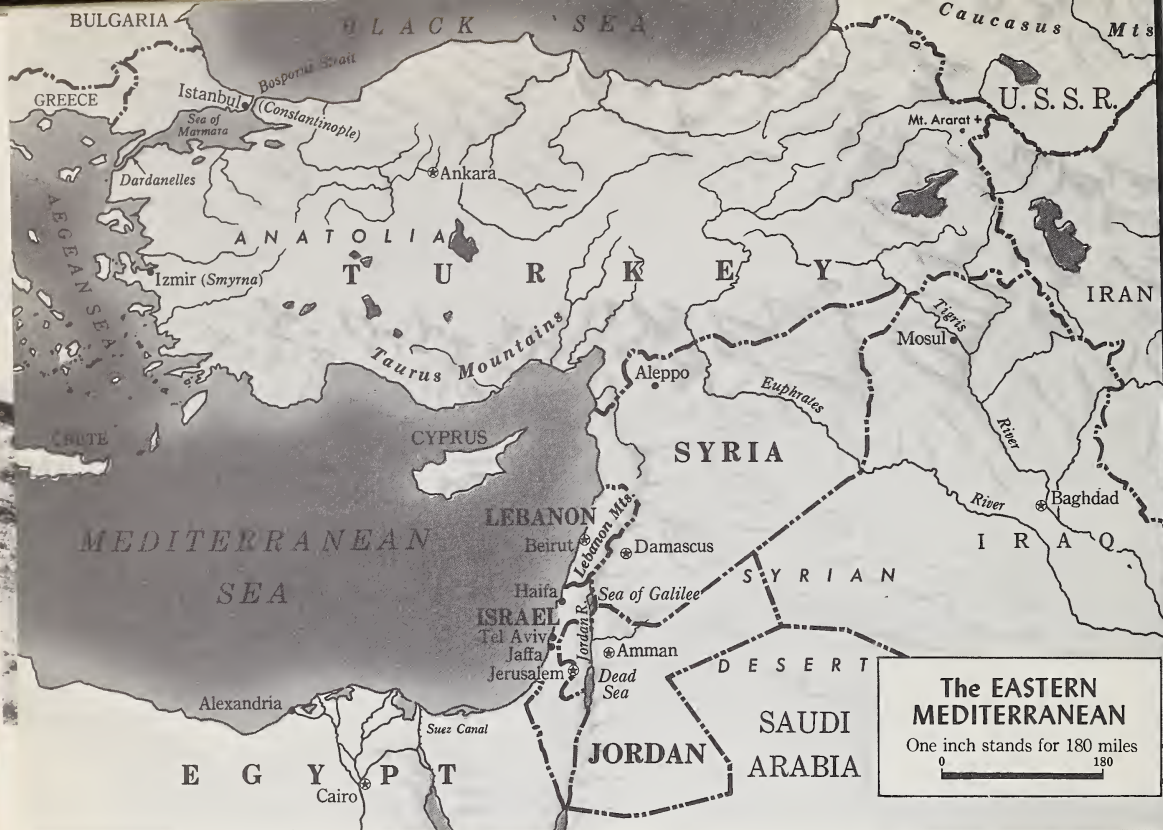
Moving to Canaan

The land to which these wanderers came seemed so fertile that they spoke of

A camel caravan is still the favorite freight train of the Bedouins in Syria and Palestine. This one is traveling the road which leads to Jerusalem. Each man takes charge of a small group of camels.

Ewing Galloway





Five countries occupy the eastern end of the Mediterranean. They are Turkey, Syria, Lebanon, Israel, and Jordan. Cyprus belongs to Great Britain. Egypt is shown on a separate map (p. 75).

it as "a land flowing with milk and honey." In it lived the Canaanites, who built walled cities and led much the same kind of life as the Babylonians. As the years went by, Abraham's descendants increased. They were called Hebrews.

After a while there was a famine in the land. Some of the Hebrews left Palestine and went to Egypt. They found food and settled down there. However, the king of Egypt became displeased with the strangers and made them do hard, heavy work. Finally they rebelled. Under Moses, their leader, they left Egypt and started back toward the land of Canaan.

The journey across the desert took a long time. Because the Hebrews had been

slaves in Egypt they did not know how to act as free men. Moses taught them the rules of right living. In the Bible we can read the laws (among them the Ten Commandments) which he gave to his people. Some of the Hebrews tried to worship idols, but Moses prevented them from doing so. In time, the Hebrews came to believe firmly in one God.

The Hebrews in Canaan

At last the Hebrews moved into Canaan. After many battles peace was made. The Canaanites and the Hebrews learned to live together in the land. Then a new enemy, the Philistines, came. This warlike people entered Canaan by sea and built

strong cities on the southwest coast. The Philistines were sturdy fighters. With their fine weapons and their ability to fight, the Philistines managed to conquer the Hebrews.

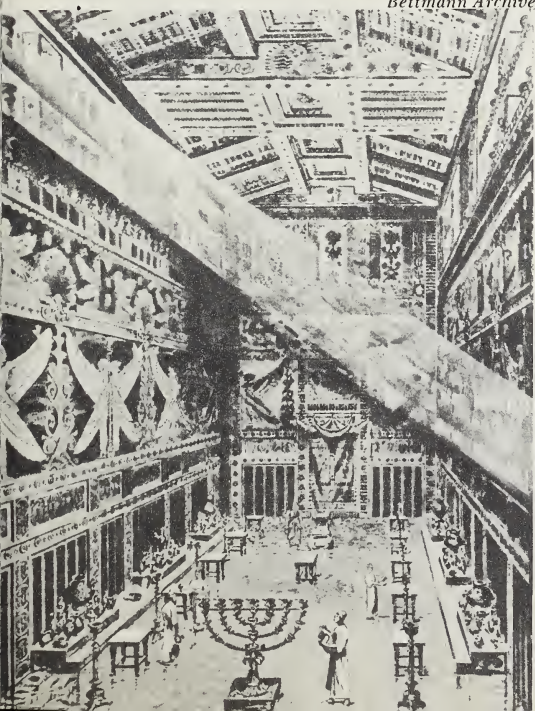
Jerusalem, the Hebrew capital

After having the Philistines as their masters for a number of years, the Hebrews rebelled. There were desperate battles. King Saul of the Hebrews killed himself when he lost his last fight. His son-in-law David became king. He captured the hill town of Jerusalem and made it the new capital. David was one of the great men of the ancient world. He was a statesman, a warrior, and a poet.

The next king was Solomon, David's son. Solomon was said to be the wisest of kings. His reign was the most splendid age of Hebrew history. He had a great fleet

This is a model of the Temple of Solomon in Jerusalem which shows how it once looked.

Bettmann Archive



This map shows Palestine in the days of David and Solomon. Parts of modern Syria, Lebanon, and Jordan were included. The Philistines lived in the tiny coastal area west of Jerusalem.

of ships that sailed to many places to trade. It was Solomon who built the famous temple at Jerusalem.

The divided kingdom

Soon after Solomon's death, his kingdom was broken into two parts. Solomon built great palaces and lived in luxury. To pay for this he taxed the people heavily. Ten of the twelve Hebrew tribes rebelled against Solomon's son because he refused to reduce the heavy taxes. These ten tribes then formed the northern kingdom of the Israelites, with its capital at Samaria. The two other tribes became known as the Judeans or Jews. They kept



Ewing Galloway

A Mohammedan mosque, called the Mosque of Omar or the Dome of the Rock, stands on the ground once occupied by the Temple of Solomon. It is surrounded by tall cypress trees.

Jerusalem as their capital city. The two kingdoms were never again united.

The Hebrews taken captive

After a while the fierce Assyrians invaded Palestine, captured Samaria, and carried away many of the Israelites. But they failed to capture Jerusalem. King Nebuchadrezzar, about whom we studied earlier, finally took Jerusalem. He destroyed Solomon's temple and carried off many Jews as captives to Mesopotamia. Persia then overthrew Babylonia. The Persian king allowed all the Jews who wished to do so to return to Jerusalem. Many Jews returned, and they rebuilt the temple. But they were not a free people.

As we shall learn later, the Persians were defeated by the Greeks, and the Greeks by the Romans. As each new world con-

queror appeared, the Jews had a new master. But they continued to worship in Jerusalem. They collected the writings of their wise men. These writings are found today in the Old Testament. In the Old Testament are preserved the messages of such prophets as Amos, Isaiah, and Jeremiah, who taught great religious ideas to the people.

The religion of the Hebrews

The Hebrew prophets brought a new religious message to the world. The Hebrews believed in one God. Other nations worshiped idols and heavenly bodies, but the Jews were forbidden to do so. The prophets taught that God is a spirit. To please him, men must not only worship him in religious ceremonies, but they must also serve him by being honest and just.

The prophets did not believe that God could be worshiped only at certain sacred spots or in special temples. Instead they taught that man's heart was the true temple in which God should be worshiped. Thus the teachings of the Hebrew prophets laid the foundation in men's minds for the Great Teacher, Jesus.

The Jews driven from Palestine

At the time that Jesus was born, in Bethlehem, Palestine had become a part of the powerful Roman Empire. But in 66 A.D. the Jews rebelled against the Roman government. This rebellion resulted in the ruin of Jerusalem and the driving from Palestine of nearly all the Jews. Since that time the Jews have lived in many countries. But many Jews never gave up the hope of again claiming Palestine as their homeland.

During World War I, British troops took Palestine from the Turks. After the war it was given to Great Britain as a mandate.

THE NEW NATION, ISRAEL

After World War I, there was a plan among Jews in many parts of the world to provide a home for Jews in their old

homeland, Palestine. This plan was called *Zionism*. Much money was contributed to carry out the plan of the Zionists, and many Jews went to settle in the Holy Land. Tel Aviv was built by the Zionists.

The Arabs, who had lived in Palestine for hundreds of years, were not pleased when the Jews came in such large numbers. Many of the new settlers worked on the land, irrigating dry areas and raising good crops. But the Arabs did not favor the modern ways of these newcomers. When trouble in Europe caused the Jews to bring in larger groups of settlers, the situation became very tense. After World War II the British gave up their mandate over Palestine. Israel declared its independence.

When the Jews declared themselves an independent nation, Palestine was invaded by neighboring Arab nations. The Jews defeated the invaders. A new Jewish nation, Israel, was formed with Tel Aviv as the capital. In 1950 the capital was moved to the ancient city of Jerusalem.

Jerusalem today

Palestine is a country with little level land. On the mountain backbone which

At Easter time pilgrims from all parts of the world visit Jerusalem. This picture shows many of the pilgrims walking around the ancient walls of the city sacred to three important religions of the world.



Ewing Galloway



Ewing Galloway

A farmer in the Holy Land tends his sheep. Modern methods of agriculture have been introduced into Palestine by the Jewish settlers in recent years.

runs the length of the Holy Land from north to south stands Jerusalem. A wall still surrounds the old part of the city. A small part of the wall of Solomon's temple remains. For many years it was the custom of the Jews to assemble at this temple wall to mourn, or wail, for the lost glory of the Hebrew nation. It came to be called the Wailing Wall.

Today the notices posted on the streets are written in three languages: English, Hebrew, and Arabic. They remind us that Jerusalem is a holy city to people of three different religions. To the Jew it is still the city of the temple. To the Christian it is the city where many happenings in the life of Jesus took place. To the Moslem it is the place from which Mohammed ascended into heaven on the back of his winged horse.

After Israel's war for independence, Jerusalem was divided into two parts. One part is controlled by Israel, and the other by the government of Jordan.

What the Hebrews gave the world

The Hebrews were the first people to do away with idols. Among the ancient peoples the Hebrews were the only nation that believed in one God. The idea of one God, the Ten Commandments, and the

fine teachings of the prophets gave the world a new standard in religion. Today the sacred books of the Hebrews are used in the religious instruction of all European and American countries.

THE LAND OF ISRAEL

As we move east from Jerusalem, we note that the land falls away to a deep valley. In this valley are two lakes. The northern one is the Sea of Galilee. From the fishermen on this lake Jesus chose some of his twelve followers.

From the Sea of Galilee, south through the deep valley, runs the Jordan River.

An Arab baker bakes bread on flat pans like shovels. The primitive oven is behind him.

Hays from Monkmeier



Many cattle and sheep find pasture along its banks. Orchards of various kinds of fruit border its path. There are olive trees, some of which have borne fruit for a hundred years.

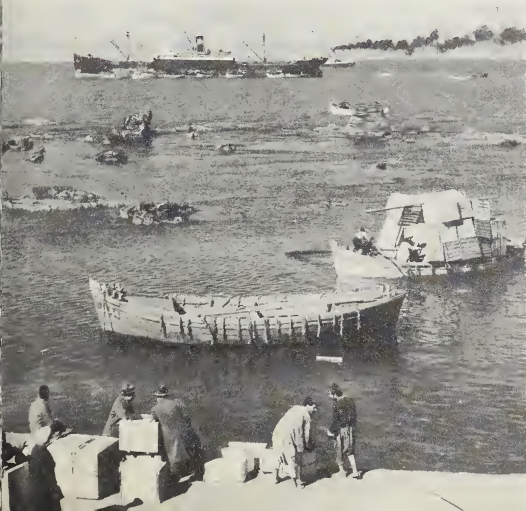
The Dead Sea

The Jordan River flows into a lake, blue and sparkling, which is surrounded by rocks and desert soil. This lake is the Dead Sea. Why is this body of water called "dead"?

There are almost no birds near this sea. Birds cannot live there because they find no food. Fish cannot live in the Dead Sea. Nor are there any water plants in this sea. The reason is that, like our Great Salt Lake, the Dead Sea has no outlet. Most water contains not only common salt but also other mineral matter. Water is constantly drawn up by the heat of the atmosphere from any body of water. Such water is fresh and pure, and the salt remains behind. When a body of water has no outlet to carry away the salt, the water becomes very salty indeed. That is why the ocean and the Dead Sea are salty.

Many small boats are used to bring the cargo from large ships to the docks at Jaffa. The boats follow a passage between the rocks.

Wells from Cushing



The Dead Sea is five times as salty as the ocean. Bathers cannot sink in it. Factories built near the mouth of the Jordan are now taking out some of the valuable minerals which this lake contains.

Israel's seaports

In the northern part of Israel is the seacoast town of Haifa. It is the port of Israel which is nearest Syria. Much of the trade between Israel and other countries passes through the port of Haifa.

Northwest of Jerusalem is the ancient town of Jaffa, the port nearest to Egypt. As we travel from Jerusalem to Jaffa, we see in summer a dry and barren country. Most of the wild trees were cut down long ago. For shade we must look to the orchards. The rains come only during the winter season. The farmers are glad to see them come, for then the wheat and barley spring up and flowers brighten the ground.

Jaffa stands on rocky land. There are so many rocks that large steamers cannot reach the shore. Their cargo has to be transferred to small boats, which carry it to land. In Jaffa we buy fine oranges

Tel Aviv, second largest city in Palestine, is one of the most modern cities in the Middle East. Its name means "hill of spring" in Hebrew.

Ewing Galloway



raised on irrigated land. Besides oranges, the boats from Jaffa carry boxes of soap made with olive oil, barrels of olive oil, and barrels of wine from the grapes that grow plentifully. Jaffa has the crowded, narrow, busy streets and the many little shops so common in the Middle East.

Two miles from Jaffa we find the modern city of Tel Aviv. It has wide, attractive streets, pleasant houses, up-to-date stores, and some busy factories.

Israel today

Israel, which is about the size of Massachusetts, has almost two million people. These are Jews from many countries, Arabs (who are Moslems), and some Christians. The leaders of the new nation are reclaiming land through irrigation and building industries. They have also built many new railroads and highways in recent years. Israel is today the most progressive nation in the Middle East.

ARABIA, A DESERT LAND

On our way to Egypt, we shall visit the great peninsula of Arabia.

The Arabs once ruled an empire which stretched from central Asia into Spain. It is still a large country today. Its length, if measured on a map of the United States, would reach from the northern boundary of Minnesota to the mouth of the Rio Grande, in Texas. Three Arabias would cover the whole of the United States.

Most of Arabia is a rainless desert. The cities are near the coast, which gets a certain amount of rain, especially in the southwest. What does the map tell you about Arabia's rivers?

THE KINGDOM OF SAUDI ARABIA

After World War I, Arabia gained its freedom from the Turks. Then a powerful leader named Ibn-Saud took control of most of the peninsula. He formed the powerful kingdom of Saudi Arabia.

Arabia is a barren land, for most of it has little or no rain. Arabia has no real rivers. None of its streams is more than a few feet wide. The water of these streams is soon used up by crops or sinks into the thirsty ground. Back from the sea the land rises high enough so that from time to time the winds bring some rain. The people in these favored places, which are mostly narrow valleys, raise date palms, alfalfa, vegetables, and grain.

Medina and Mecca, holy cities

Our plane carries us south over Arabia. Below us we see a train carrying pilgrims on their way to the holy city of Medina. In Medina the pilgrims will worship at the grave of the religious leader, Mohammed. Mohammed spent the latter part of his life in Medina.

A still holier city than Medina is Mecca, where Mohammed was born. Mecca lies





Ewing Galloway

The black building, called the Kaaba, stands in the center of a square in the holy city of Mecca. The sacred black stone set within it, which was found by Mohammed, is actually part of a meteor.

farther south. But we cannot enter either Medina or Mecca. No "unbeliever," or non-Moslem, is allowed to set his foot inside those sacred cities.

We can, however, fly over Mecca and look down into a great courtyard where stands a stone building, the Kaaba. The Kaaba is the center of the Moslem faith. It once held the idols which the Arabs worshiped before Mohammed taught them to believe in one God.

Every pilgrim to Mecca must kiss the sacred black stone set in the wall of the Kaaba. Each Moslem is expected to visit Mecca at some time during his life if he can. Moslems who visit Mecca are considered holy for the rest of their lives.

Neither Mecca nor Medina has much real trade. Their business comes from taking care of the crowds of pilgrims. Many of these visitors arrive in Mecca from Jidda, the nearest seaport, by trucks or busses.

Wherever a Moslem lives, he spreads out his prayer rug five times a day. He kneels on it and bows his head toward Mecca, the city he hopes to visit. Some-

times we speak of a place we hope we can visit as our Mecca.

THE KINGDOM OF YEMEN

In southwestern Arabia is the small kingdom of Yemen. Most of the country is mountainous. There is enough rain in Yemen to grow grain and some other crops, including coffee. Because the finest coffee once came from near the city of Mocha, the drink has often been called mocha instead of coffee.

The story of coffee

If you have studied about Brazil, you know that it is the greatest coffee-growing country in the world. Coffee, however, probably grew first in Africa. Africa gave it to Arabia, and Arabia gave it to Europe.

Many years ago an English merchant came back from Smyrna, bringing a supply of coffee with him. Some of his friends and acquaintances came to his house to try the new drink. They liked it so much that they visited him often. To protect himself against being disturbed, he gave one of his servants money to set up a coffeehouse in



Ewing Galloway

By means of the fortified port of Aden the British control the sea route from Europe to India and the Far East. Aden is also the most important coaling station for ships which use the Suez Canal route.

London. Soon others were built. Some years later coffeehouses also appeared in France. The word *café* comes from the French word meaning either coffee or coffeehouse.

Coffee is still raised in the hills behind Mocha. But the city of Mocha, which had a shallow harbor, lost its trade to better ports in the north.

THE BRITISH REGION OF ADEN

Outside the entrance to the Red Sea, a hundred miles or so from Mocha, a half circle of black rocks faces the coast. Here is the old town of Aden. Aden stands at an important gateway of trade. Long ago the British thought it so important that they took possession of it. They also made trade agreements with the rulers of a number of little states along the southern and eastern shores of Arabia. This gave the British control of the southern entrance to the Red Sea and the sea route from Europe to India.

The city of Aden, shown on the map on page 66, is not far from the equator. It is one of the hottest places on earth. Once Aden used to collect its water in great *reservoirs*, or wells, cut in the rock. The

reservoirs held rain water, but in dry times, when the supply of water grew low it was impure and not safe to drink. Today pipes bring water from an oasis back in the hills.

ARABIA TODAY

The people of Arabia are of two groups. One group lives in towns like the people of Mecca, Medina, and Aden. The people of the other group roam from place to place, getting their living from their herds and by plundering.

How the Bedouins live

The wandering tribes, called Bedouins, number many thousands of people. They have large flocks of animals. The Bedouins cannot live in the desert without water. Here and there wells have been dug. As long as his animals can be watered once a day, the Bedouin can keep not only camels but also donkeys and goats. He can also have sheep where there is pasture enough.

The pastures of the desert receive water from the light rains of winter and spring. When the rains come, plants sprout up almost at once and stay green for several weeks. Even when the pastures are dry, they give some food to the animals. There

is a rule that each large tribe is supposed to stay within a certain region in order to avoid quarrels with other tribes. But, as among our American Indians in the past, one tribe sometimes raids another. Then war begins.

The Bedouins' ideas of honorable conduct seem strange to us. For example, although one tribe will steal from another tribe, members of the same tribe do not steal from each other. This honest behavior within each tribe is especially worthy of praise because most of the Bedouins are very poor. Few have more food than is needed to keep life in the body.

A drink of camel's milk and a handful of dates are thought to be enough to support a man for a day. The clothes of the Bedouin family are usually ragged and often dirty. A few blankets and some bowls and cooking pots are all that can be found in most Bedouin tents. The tent itself is cold at night and hot in the daytime.

The Bedouin, poor as he is, will never refuse to share his food with a traveler or with one of his own tribe. A Bedouin always keeps his word. Any contract he makes is carried out.

The life the Bedouin leads is a hard and dangerous life. Only the strong can

Most of the Arabs who roam the desert living in tents like this family are called Bedouins. The father wears loose robes and a headdress which hangs down over his shoulders. The mother often covers her face with a veil when she is with strangers. The women do much of the hard work.

Standard Oil Co. (N.J.)



endure it. The Bedouin is a good friend and a bad enemy. He believes that men are equal, and he is proud of being free. No amount of comfort could make him content to be away from the wide stretches of his beloved desert, hard though its conditions may be.

Arabia, prosperous today

Ibn-Saud, of Saudi Arabia, was a strong ruler. He stopped the warfare among the Bedouins by taking away their rifles. He had many new wells dug or drilled. Thus he made Arabia more peaceful and more prosperous.

Recently rich oil fields were discovered near the Persian Gulf in Saudi Arabia.

American and British oil companies have leased, or rented, most of these oil fields. Their business is bringing great wealth to the rulers of the country.

The Arab League

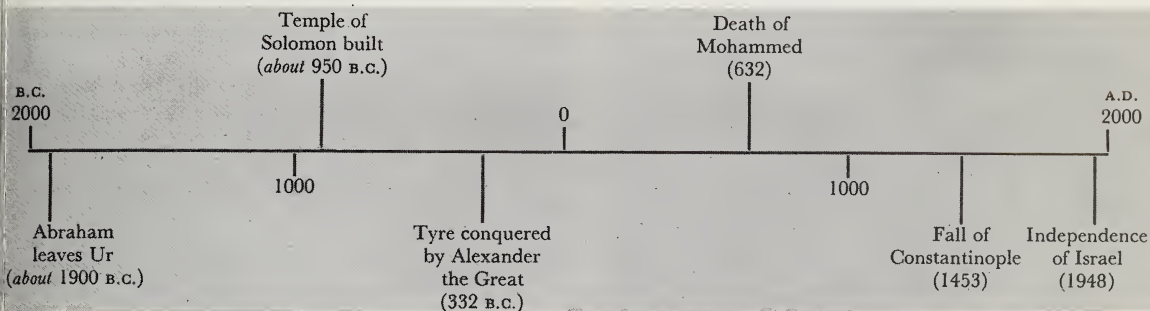
In 1945 the Arabs formed a league. The purpose of the league is to provide co-operation among Arab nations and to end the rule of foreigners in Arab countries. The members of the league regarded Israel as an enemy, and they sent troops to fight the Zionists. The Arabs were not successful in overthrowing the new nation. The members of the league do not always agree among themselves, but as Arabs they are united against the world.

This is the market section of an Arabian town on the Persian Gulf. People come from a great distance with their camels and sheep to trade here. The merchants and craftsmen of the town live in these flat-topped houses made from sun-dried bricks. This town is surrounded by date gardens.

Standard Oil Co. (N.J.)



Time-Line: The Eastern Mediterranean (2000 B.C.—2000 A.D.)



A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

sultan	reservoir	mohair
damask	Fertile Crescent	mandate
café	Mediterranean	papyrus
Zionism	climate	

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 10. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A large well cut in rock to store water
2. The plan to provide a home for Jews in Palestine
3. The title of the former ruler of Turkey
4. The fleece or hair of Angora goats
5. A kind of cloth woven in patterns
6. A coffee house or restaurant
7. A belt of fertile lowland curving from the Persian Gulf to the eastern end of the Mediterranean Sea
8. Land that a powerful country controls and protects but does not own
9. An Egyptian plant used to make paper
10. A climate with cool, rainy winters and hot, almost rainless, summers

Can You Answer These?

3. What important changes did Mustafa Kemal introduce into Turkey?
4. To what religion do most Turks belong?
5. What are Turkey's important products?
6. Why has France been interested in Syria?
7. For what two products was Damascus famous?
8. In what country did the Phoenicians have copper mines? Where did they obtain tin?
9. For what great gift are the Phoenicians remembered?
10. What do young people study in the University of Beirut?
11. What is the nation of Jordan like?
12. Why is Palestine called the Holy Land?
13. Why did Abram go to Palestine?
14. How is the Dead Sea different from other seas?
15. Why was King David one of the great men of the ancient world?
16. How has Israel become a progressive nation?
17. Why is most of Arabia barren?
18. Why do Moslem pilgrims travel to Mecca and Medina?
19. What product is bringing great wealth to Saudi Arabia? Discuss this.
20. Why was the Arab League formed?
21. Why is the life of the Bedouin hard and dangerous?



James Sawders-Combine

The pyramids and Sphinx of ancient Egypt still stand in the desert near Cairo. Once a temple stood between the paws of the Sphinx.



Ewing Galloway

The modern city of Cairo is Egypt's capital. A view from the citadel, or fort, shows one of its many mosques, for Cairo is a Moslem city.

EGYPT, LAND OF PYRAMIDS

Flying southward along the shore of the Mediterranean, we cross the border line of Egypt and continue westward. Finally the white houses and white domes of a busy city appear. The many slender towers, or minarets, tell us that we are still in a land where Moslems live. This is Alexandria, the great trading port of Egypt.

Alexandria extends for miles along the Mediterranean Sea. The city has modern wharves, warehouses, and public buildings. Yet Alexandria is a very old city. Founded two thousand years ago by Alexander the Great, it had a good location on the western edge of the Nile delta.

THE GREAT NILE RIVER

The Nile is the greatest river in Africa. It begins in Lake Victoria and flows northward for more than four thousand miles into the Mediterranean. It is as long as the Missouri-Mississippi, our greatest river system. Trace the course of the Nile on the map on page 435 from its source to its mouth.

The delta of the Nile

The Nile has a very large delta. A delta is a stretch of land built up at a river's mouth by the mud and sand brought down by the river. Many large rivers have deltas. At the mouth of the Mississippi River is another famous delta. Like most deltas the delta of the Nile is shaped like a triangle.

At one time the Nile flowed into a bay. When the muddy water met the ocean waves, the soil in the river sank to the bottom and gradually formed land. As more and more dirt was brought down, the land extended farther and farther. Thus the river choked up its own mouth. Its stream broke into channels that led toward the sea through the swampy delta. Once the Nile had seven branches. Now five of the branches in the delta have been drained away.

The delta of the Nile now measures about one hundred fifty miles from north to south. It covers an area as large as our state of Maryland.

A trip along the Nile

From Alexandria we fly along the edge of the fertile Nile delta, green with its crops of rice, cotton, corn, and sugar cane. We come after a time to the place where the delta begins. At this important spot stands the city of Cairo, the capital of Egypt and the largest city in Africa. Cairo is a city with fine hotels, native bazaars, and shining white mosques. Cairo has about as many people as Los Angeles.

Let us fly southward up the Nile, a broad stream whose yellow waters carry many steamboats, launches, and sailing vessels. The Nile Valley is narrow, never more than thirty miles wide. At some places it is only two miles across. Beyond it on either side is the scorching desert. Through irrigation there is on each side of the river a strip of green. But less than one twentieth of Egypt's land can be cultivated.

Six hundred miles from Cairo a great dam, the Aswan Dam, holds back the Nile waters. It marks the place where there was once a large *cataract*, or waterfall. Here at the First Cataract civilized Egypt of ancient times ended. The Aswan Dam, as one traveler said, "rules the river that rules Egypt." At times when the Nile is

The great Aswan Dam is a mile and a quarter long and 144 feet high. It provides water for irrigating about seven million acres of land.

Ewing Galloway



Gendreau

Feluccas (fě-lŭk'áz) or cargo sailboats, set out for Alexandria. They have tall sails to catch the wind over the high banks of the Nile.

especially high, this dam holds the water back in a lake two hundred miles long.

In our journey southward toward the equator we reach a spot, more than a thousand miles beyond Aswan, where two large streams meet to form the Nile. Here we find the city of Khartoum. Khartoum is a center of trade for this region of Africa. A railroad connects it with Port Sudan on the Red Sea. Find Khartoum and Port Sudan on the map on page 435.

The two rivers that unite at Khartoum to form the main river are the White Nile and the Blue Nile. In this highland area is a group of great lakes which the natives call *nyanzas*. From Victoria Nyanza flows the White Nile, a fairly clear river. The Blue Nile comes from the east, out of the mountains of Ethiopia. In the rainy season it becomes a great flood of muddy water. The Blue Nile is blue only at the dry time of the year.

CIVILIZATION IN ANCIENT EGYPT

An important condition for the development of civilization in any land is a good climate. Egypt has a good climate.

The climate of Egypt

Man came to live along the lower Nile River as long ago as the Stone Age. He found a land whose rich soil would produce a plentiful supply of food if he used his hands and his brain. South of the Nile delta the climate was almost rainless. The air was hot in the daytime, but during the early morning and at night it was pleasantly cool. This is the kind of climate that encourages man to be active.

Egypt was almost hidden from the rest of the world. On one side it bordered the sea. On the other side the desert protected it from unwelcome visitors. Thus the early Egyptians remained at peace. They had a chance to invent, and their craftsmen had time to improve their skills. The result was that early man in Egypt developed civilized ways faster than did early man in Europe, who had to spend much time in fighting.

A farmer along the Nile tills his land just as his ancestors have done for thousands of years.

Keystone View Co.



The importance of the Nile

The melting snows on the highlands of central Africa, together with the spring rains, cause the Nile to rise every spring. The higher it rises, the more water there will be for irrigating the crops.

Today, as in the past, the Nile begins to rise in May. Its waters spread out beyond its banks, flooding the land and changing it into a shallow lake.

The water has to travel so far that Cairo does not see the highest flood until late in September. The Nile rises steadily and quietly. Thus it has risen for thousands of years. The farmers can count on this yearly rise, which takes the place of rain.

After the floods were over, the early Egyptians went out to plant their crops. They scattered seeds in the layer of rich soil that the river had left. Sometimes they drove flocks of sheep over the wet ground so that their sharp hoofs could trample the seed down. The hot sunshine made the grain spring up quickly and bear plentiful crops.

Year after year, never failing, the Nile River brought its gift of water and rich

This farmer is using an ancient *shadoof*, or water lift, to pump water to his fields.

Ewing Galloway





Egypt is another land with a great deal of desert. The map shows you that Egypt's cities have always been located in one special area. What is this area? Why were the cities built there?

soil. No wonder that all the Egyptians—farmers, priests, and nobles—spoke of “Father Nile.” They owed everything to this river. Without the Nile floods Egypt would have been nothing but a barren waste of sand.

Irrigation in early Egypt

After the hundred days of flood the sun's rays would bake the land into dryness again. As in Mesopotamia, the land had to be irrigated. For this dikes, dams, reservoirs, and canals were needed. To plan, build, and operate them required skill and co-operation.

By means of irrigation the Egyptians extended their cultivated land greatly beyond the space covered each year by the Nile flood. Waters flowed through canals to the farms. Reservoirs held water through the dry season. Thus the Egyptians were

able to raise two or even three crops on the same land in one year. The narrow Nile Valley supported a large number of people.

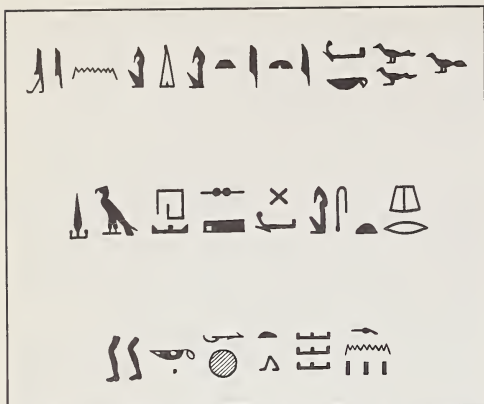
The water was so valuable that it had to be portioned out to each farmer week by week and farm by farm. One dam, one reservoir, one canal served many people. The Egyptians were forced to become a careful and co-operative people.

Today along the Nile we see irrigation being practiced. The great Aswan Dam, built by the British, was at first a mile and a quarter wide. Later, it was made higher and wider so that it would hold back more water. On the banks of the big river Egyptians still use water in the same way that they did five thousand years ago.

Writing, an Egyptian skill

The Egyptians invented a way to write. Until people are able to write they cannot become highly civilized. Writing helps us to keep records and to send exact messages. It also gives us a chance to learn from the experience of others. The people of Mesopotamia had one style of writing. The ancient Egyptians had another quite different form of writing.

Many of the buildings and monuments of ancient Egypt are still standing. Carved on them are many Egyptian inscriptions. The Egyptians did not use letters, as we do. Instead they used pictures of the object, or something associated with it, about which they were writing. For example, an ox was represented by a simple drawing of this animal. In the same way pictures stood for a hawk, a lion, a snake, a house, a man, the sun, and so on. Such pictures were called *hieroglyphs*, from *hierog*, meaning “sacred,” and *glyph*, meaning “writing.” In the beginning, few except the



The hieroglyphic writing above is a message from an Egyptian king. The message says: "I order that you reduce and crush all the high officers of the enemy. I cast them together with all their possessions at your feet." Can you recognize any of the figures?

priests could read and write the hieroglyphs.

At first, each picture stood for a word. Groups of pictures were used to express ideas. Then the Egyptians worked out the plan of having each picture represent a syllable. Thus words were written by putting the syllables together. There were about six hundred of these syllable signs. It was so hard to learn these signs that only the nobles, priests, and the official writers, called scribes, could read and write.

Because syllable writing was hard to learn, the Egyptians later invented a sign, or letter, for each sound in their language. There were twenty-four of these signs, and with the invention of these letters the alphabet was born. However, the Egyptians never made full use of their alphabet. They mixed up hieroglyphics, syllable signs, and letters. This may have pleased the scribes, but it was not easy to read.

Not only did the Egyptians invent a way of writing, but they also developed the

material on which the scribes wrote. Along the Egyptian waterways grew a tall plant with a feathery top, called papyrus. The Egyptians cut the papyrus stems into thin strips and laid them side by side. Across these they placed another layer of papyrus strips. By beating, pressing, and rolling the two layers together they made a smooth yellowish-white sheet. From papyrus we get our word "paper." In what city was there much trade in papyrus sheets (see page 57)?

The scribe wrote with a pen made of a reed spread out at the end into a tiny brush. He dipped the brush into ink. The ink was made of vegetable gum, water, and black soot. To form a book, the papyrus sheets were pasted together into a strip which might be one hundred feet long or more. The sheets were then rolled up and tied with a string. Sometimes the papyrus rolls were stored in jars, labeled, and placed on shelves.

Egyptian ways of measurement

The Egyptians were good at figuring and measuring. After every Nile flood the surveyors (people who measure land) laid out the boundary lines that had been swept away by the waters. An irrigation system needed careful measuring. In growing and harvesting crops, in storing grain, and in trading in grain, the Egyptians had to be able to figure. They had to find the amount of grain the storehouses would hold. Skillful measuring was also needed in building.

The Egyptians were also interested in measuring time. As early as 4000 B.C. the Egyptians had worked out a calendar. Their calendar had twelve months of thirty days each. This left five days over at the end of the year. These extra days

were grouped together as feast days or holidays. Do you think the Egyptian calendar had some advantages?

To measure time during the day the Egyptians had shadow clocks. A shadow clock was very simple to make. It was just a stick with a crosspiece that cast a shadow on a longer piece of wood marked off in lines. The space between two lines represented an hour. In sunny Egypt the shadow clocks worked well.

The Egyptian religion

The Egyptians were a highly religious people. The Egyptians carried their religious ideas into every part of life. They believed in many gods, but the most important gods were those who represented the things that were necessary in raising food. There was Osiris, the god of the Nile, who caused the Nile to rise each year. There was Isis, his wife, who repre-

sented the rich, dark soil. There was Ra, the sun god, who sailed daily across the sky and finished the work the water and the soil had begun.

The Egyptians thought a great deal about a life after death. They believed that there was a life after death. The life of each person would continue through his *ka*, or ghost. But the *ka* could do nothing unless the dead body was preserved as a home to which the *ka* could return. So they developed a method of *embalming*, or preserving bodies after death.

At first, only the rich people—but later everyone—provided that their bodies after death should be embalmed. A body so prepared was called a *mummy*. Thousands of these Egyptian mummies have been found. Many museums in the United States have mummies that you may see.

The Egyptian kings believed that they could take their property with them into the next world. In their grave rooms were piled food, furniture, musical instruments, and jewelry. There were dolls representing cooks, bakers, makers of pottery, herds-men, and boatmen to serve their master in the next world.

The Egyptians thought that when the spirit reached the next world it would pass into the Hall of Truth. There judges would question it as to the good or bad deeds it had done on earth. If the person's deeds had been good, the spirit began a life of pleasure. If his deeds had been bad, terrible punishment was his fate. The idea that a person's deeds were important to him in the next world made people try to live a better life.

THE EGYPTIANS AS BUILDERS

The builders of Babylon had to content themselves, for the most part, with using

Scientists examine an Egyptian mummy found in one of the ancient pyramids near Cairo.

Acme



clay. Stone for them was rare and costly. But Egypt had many stony cliffs. The Egyptians learned to cut from them big blocks of limestone and granite. They also learned to form these into great buildings.

Egyptian pyramids

Perhaps you have heard about the great stone *pyramids* near Cairo. A pyramid has a square base and four three-sided faces which meet at a point at the top. The kings of Egypt built pyramids as places where their mummies would be safe and surrounded by treasures which they expected to use in the next world. The Great Pyramid, which is the largest, was built to be the burial place of Cheops. Cheops ruled Egypt nearly five thousand years ago. The Great Pyramid covers thirteen acres, or an area as large as twelve football fields.

Such great monuments required an immense amount of time and toil on the part of many people. We may think that other kinds of building would have made the people happier and more comfortable. We have to admit, however, that in build-

ing pyramids and tombs the Egyptians showed remarkable skill. The Egyptians did their work so perfectly that it is difficult, even today, to find the joints where the stones meet.

The Egyptian Sphinx

Near the greatest of the pyramids is another curiosity which the Greeks called the *Sphinx*. In a large limestone rock on the desert, one of the Egyptian pharaohs saw the likeness of a crouching lion. He set his men to work to make the likeness better. In front, they carved out long legs and paws. The head was made to look like the king himself. As we stand today before this image, which is as high as a four-story house, it seems to look beyond us, back to the days when busy workers shaped it. Driving sand as well as bullets from the guns of passing soldiers have harmed its features, but its strange look remains.

Many other sphinx images were carved by the Egyptians. But no others were cut directly out of the natural rock, and no others were of such great size.

Egyptian obelisks

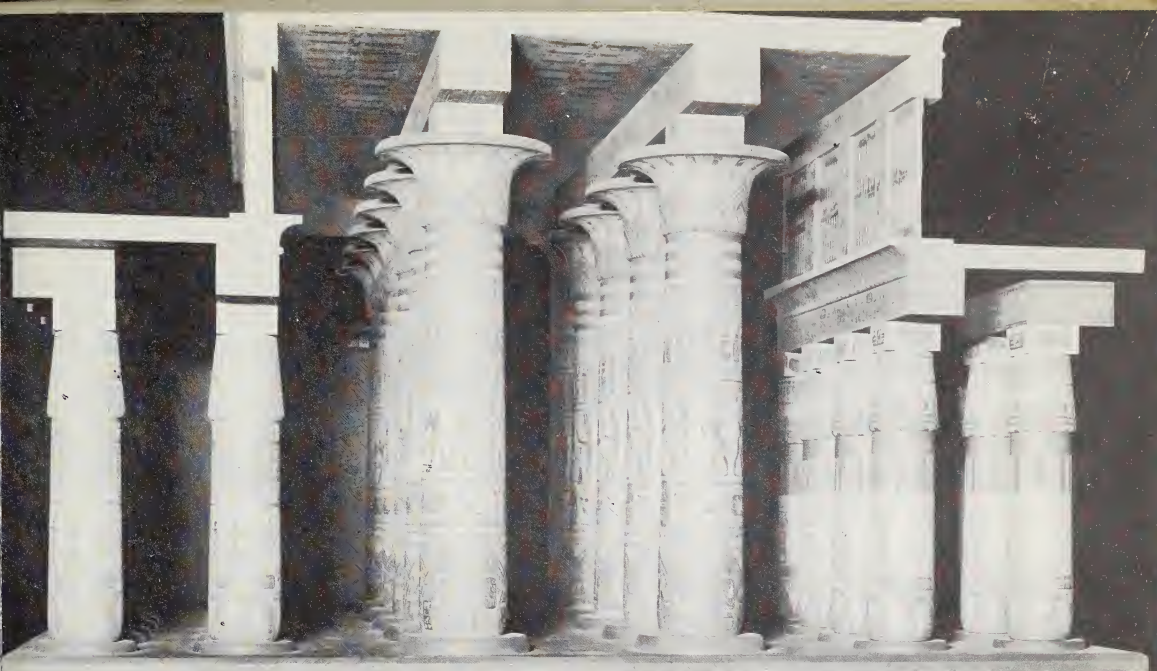
A few miles from the present city of Cairo the old capital of Egypt once stood. It was called Memphis. In Memphis, as in many other places in Egypt, the Egyptians put up slender, pointed shafts of stone called *obelisks*. The obelisks were covered with hieroglyphics praising the pharaohs.

Each obelisk was formed of a single piece of granite. Some of the obelisks were about a hundred feet high and weighed nearly a thousand tons. Many obelisks still remain in Egypt, but some have been moved to foreign lands. Rome, London, Paris, and New York, each has its obelisk

This small sphinx at Memphis, Egypt, is made of alabaster, a beautiful, hard, white mineral.

Screen Traveler from Gendreau





Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

This model of the Temple of Karnak shows how it once looked. Beautiful columns support its roof.

to remind the people of Egypt's one-time greatness. The Washington monument in our nation's capital is an obelisk.

The world's greatest temple

Far up the Nile River was the city of Thebes. Thebes became the capital when Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt were united about 2000 B.C. Lower Egypt was the delta country. Upper Egypt was the land between the delta and the First Cataract at Aswan. Once a great city, Thebes today is in ruins. Here were some of the famous temples in which the Egyptians worshiped. The pharaohs built these temples and usually made them of great size.

Where Thebes once stood is the largest temple in the world, the Temple of Karnak. We approach the temple by a broad avenue, leading up from the Nile and bordered with ram-headed sphinxes. Much of the Temple of Karnak is now in ruins,

but in its time it was a wonderful temple. During more than fifteen hundred years one ruler after another took pleasure in improving it or making changes in it.

In this temple we feel like dwarfs as we wander about through a forest of huge columns, which, as one writer says, "seem to be holding up the sky." On top of each pillar a hundred men could stand. We notice that the tops, or *capitals*, of the columns are carved to represent the buds of flowers. Some of these capitals show the papyrus flower, and others show the lotus.

These columns are not connected by arches, such as we use in stone buildings, but by huge slabs of stone laid upon the capitals. The Great Hall is the largest room, but it is only one of many in this large temple. Pictures and inscriptions cover the pillars and walls. Once every part of the building shone with gold and silver and beautiful colors.



Bettmann Archive

In this Egyptian painting the Pharaoh himself rides in the war chariot at the left. At the right the Egyptian soldiers use tall ladders to scale the high walls of the enemy fort.

Burial places of the Theban kings

Across the Nile, on the west side, rise the wild cliffs that mark the beginning of the Libyan Desert. Into these cliffs the Egyptian rulers cut many deep tombs to be used as burial places for themselves. In near-by spots the wealthy nobles of Thebes were buried.

The walls of the tombs are covered with paintings of life in Egypt ages ago. From them we have learned a great deal about the old civilization in this land of the Nile. Here are pictures of the ancient Egyptians at work and at play. These paintings show that women had an honored and important part in Egyptian life.

THE GOVERNMENT OF ANCIENT EGYPT

From early times Egypt was ruled by a king, called a *pharaoh*. Pharaoh is an Egyptian title which came from a word meaning "great house."

The pharaoh, an all-powerful ruler

The pharaohs were so powerful that the belief spread among the people that they were sons of the sun god. The god ruled in the sky, and the pharaoh ruled on earth.

The pharaoh came to have complete power over his people. Since he was thought to be descended from the gods, Egyptians believed it sinful to disobey his commands.

The pharaoh controlled the lives of the people and use of land. Working with the pharaoh were the priests, who prayed to the gods to be kind to the country. Many nobles ruled over great estates. Great numbers of officials and government employees carried out the wishes of the ruler. Many scribes kept the records.

Life under the pharaohs

Because the Nile could supply water year after year and because its waters were

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art



An ancient Egyptian painting shows the Pharaoh and his queen receiving offerings. Notice the small dog under the queen's chair. The Egyptians made pets of both cats and dogs.

skillfully used, food was plentiful in Egypt. So Egypt came to be a thickly settled country. Great cities arose. People must be quite civilized before large cities can grow up. To live in large communities people must be willing to co-operate.

To the priests and nobles the pharaoh gave a share of the land. The nobles lived in comfort in cool, one-storied houses built of sun-dried brick and wood. They employed many skillful workmen—builders, sculptors, painters, furniture makers, jewelers, potters, and gardeners. In smaller houses lived the farmers and the laborers who toiled in the mines or dragged the blocks of stone used in building. The farmers and the laborers paid taxes. They did not pay in money, for the Egyptians had no money, except for gold and silver rings which were sometimes used as money. They paid in grain and meat, in dates and wine, or in anything else that the pharaoh wanted.

Every few years the pharaoh had the people of his kingdom counted. This is called taking a *census*. The census was taken to learn how many persons were to be taxed and how much each should pay. Do we take a census in the United States?

From this we can see that the government of Egypt was strong and well-organized, with many officials and heavy taxes. This government was entirely different from ours. It rested on one man, the all-powerful pharaoh, and the priests and nobles.

Under the pharaohs the arts and crafts flourished. Clever workers were well paid. The tables of rich people shone with dishes of silver, gold, and rock crystal. The guests drank from shining glass and dressed in linen so finely woven that it seemed almost like silk. Some of this beautiful



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

The statues show girls bearing offerings of wine and meat and live ducks to the Pharaoh.

linen has been found, in good condition, wrapped around mummies.

The women wore valuable jewelry and used almost as many aids to beauty as do the women of today. They painted their faces, reddened their lips, and colored their nails. Music from tall harps and mellow flutes was heard through the houses. Outside, the children bounced balls and played with marbles and tops.

For those who were rich or powerful, life was pleasant in the Egypt of thousands of years ago. The rest of the people lived poorly, as most Egyptians do today.

The gifts of ancient Egypt

First in the list of gifts that Egypt gave us we place the system of writing. Some students of language believe that the Phoenicians, who were the first to make full use of the alphabet, gained their knowledge of

writing from the Egyptians. The Egyptians also were the first to use papyrus as the material on which records could be easily kept.

Next in the list of Egyptian gifts comes the calendar, with its division of the year into three hundred sixty-five days. Hundreds of years later Julius Caesar, the ruler of the Roman Empire, saw that this calendar was better than the one the Romans used. So the Romans adopted the Egyptian calendar. The calendar we use today is the same calendar with some improvements.

By the use of bronze, Egyptian craftsmen produced many useful and attractive articles. Masons and other workers built great pyramids and temples. The builders in Egypt were the first to develop the column, which is used to make many of our great buildings strong and beautiful. Though workers today have better tools, they are no more skillful of hand or of eye than were the Egyptians. We also owe to these ancient people our ways of surveying and measuring land.

Even though other early peoples used irrigation, the Egyptians developed irrigation on a grand scale, making the desert "blossom as the rose." On the Nile and on the Red Sea the Egyptians used the first sailing vessels of the world.

Ancient Egypt showed the world the advantages of a well-united government. To this day we think of the time of the pharaohs as a period of civilized living in which the people co-operated to share the gifts of their land.

MODERN EGYPT

Today the life of many Egyptians goes on much as it did four thousand years ago.

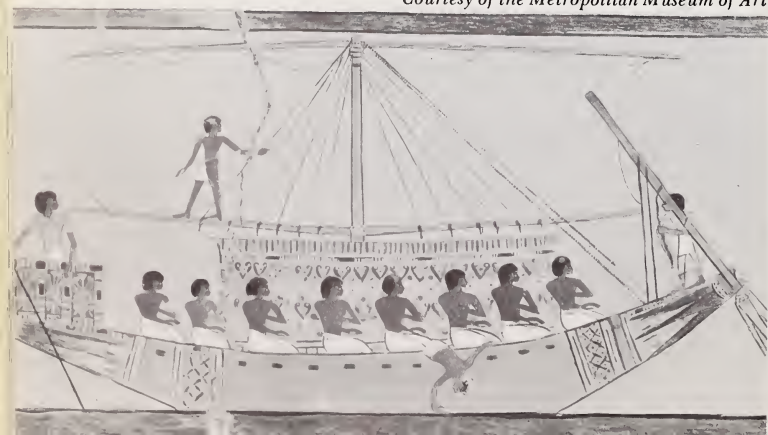
Farming in Egypt today

The patient *fellahin*, or farmers, plant their little fields and irrigate the land where they can. The fellahin plow with a pointed stick pulled by oxen. They live on simple food with almost no meat. They often share their mud huts with their animals.

The fellahin see the Nile flowing by as always, carrying its life-giving waters. They see the water rising through the hot, rainless summer. By constant labor they bring it to their thirsty soil. They use much the same kinds of tools as those which the people of pyramid times used.

The Egyptians eat most of the food they grow. The farmer's food is usually lentils, beans, barley or wheat bread, and onions. Sometimes he likes to chew a stalk of sugar cane. Thousands of tons of onions are shipped to England each year.

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art



This painting of a ship on the Nile was found on the wall of an ancient Egyptian tomb. The man at the right holds a great oar used to steer the ship. The man at the left is the lookout.



Combine

A bridge across the Suez Canal opens so that a large floating dock can be towed through.

The largest crop of Egypt is not a food crop. It is cotton. One third of all the farm land is planted in cotton, and cotton is the great export. Just as our land along the Mississippi is white with ripe cotton in season, so is much of the land along the Nile. The Nile delta is the greatest cotton-producing region in Egypt. Egyptian cotton is of such high quality that some people call it the best in the world. Its fibers are longer than those of cotton grown in the United States. It makes very strong thread and yarn.

The Suez Canal

Some things in Egypt have changed since early times. Do you see on your map of Egypt the Isthmus of Suez, east of the Nile delta? Long ago men saw that a canal through the isthmus which united Africa and Asia would greatly reduce the

distance ships had to travel from Europe to the East. In this way ships could reach the Indian Ocean through the Red Sea and sail directly to the Far East without having to go around Africa. A French engineer, Ferdinand de Lesseps, undertook to build such a canal. Many persons doubted that De Lesseps would be successful. But after ten years the Suez Canal, one hundred miles long, was finished.

Through this canal ships pass from Port Said, on the Mediterranean, to Suez, on the Red Sea. Can you show by the map how important this canal is for trade between England and India? Thousands of ships use the Suez Canal each year.

The British in Egypt

After the opening of the Suez Canal the British had a great interest in Egypt. For many years they ruled the country. Through the work of the British government, living conditions in Egypt were improved. Irrigation dams were constructed. Hospitals and schools were built. Life and property were safe under British rule. The number of people in Egypt doubled in fifty years.

The government of Egypt today

Egypt became independent in 1922, when the British gave up most of their power over the country. But the British kept the right to have their soldiers in the Canal Zone to protect their interests and to defend the Suez Canal. During World War II, German and Italian troops advanced eastward through the Egyptian desert until they were near Alexandria. Fortunately, the British turned them back just in time to save the country and the Suez Canal. The canal is one of the British life lines of trade to India, the Far East,



Ewing Galloway

A load of Egyptian cotton bales stands before this warehouse. Most of Egypt's cotton is exported but a small part is manufactured for use by the natives.

and Australia. After the war the British claimed the right to keep troops in the Canal Zone, but the Egyptian government kept pressing for their removal.

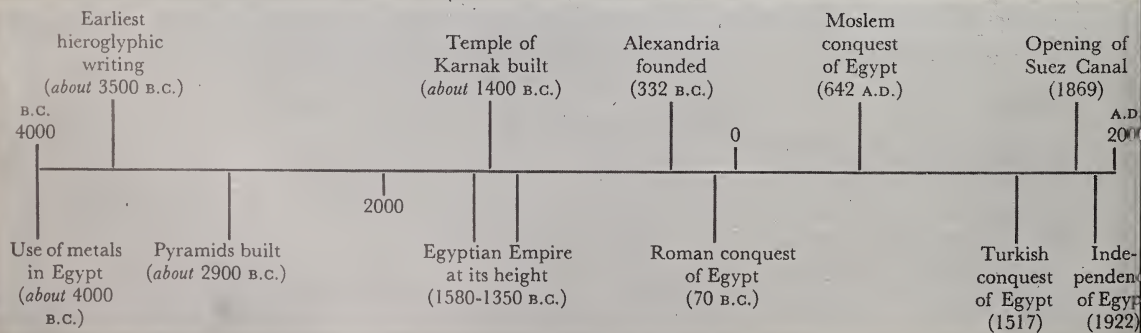
In 1950 the Egyptian king was forced to give up his throne and leave the country. Egypt became a republic under the presidency of Abdel Nasser, an Egyptian army colonel.

In 1956 the British removed their soldiers from the Suez Canal Zone. A short time later Colonel Nasser seized control of the Suez Canal. He stated that it was Egyptian property and that the tolls paid by ship owners who used the canal should

go to Egypt. Nasser's action caused great concern among the nations of the world, who thought it unlawful and who feared that the canal might not be operated fairly. The seizure of the canal was another example of Arab unrest in recent times.

The leaders of the new government are working to modernize Egypt. Cotton mills are being built. Oil has been found in a few places in Egypt. Egypt is a member of the Arab League. The military leaders are trying to build Egypt into a strong nation and to make it the leader of the nations of the Middle East.

Time-Line: Egypt (4000 B.C.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words You Should Know

cataract	Sphinx	mummy
embalming	capital	pharaoh
obelisk	hieroglyphs	fellahin
nyanza	pyramid	census
shadoof		

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 13. After each number write the word from the above list that matches the definition.

1. Egyptian farmers
2. A waterfall
3. An ancient Egyptian water lift
4. A body preserved by embalming
5. A great stone structure used as a burial place for Egyptian rulers
6. A group of great lakes near Khartoum
7. A large limestone rock in the Egyptian desert, carved with the head of a man and the body of a lion
8. The picture writing of ancient Egypt
9. A count of the people of a community
10. A way of preserving bodies after death
11. A slender, pointed shaft of stone
12. The king of ancient Egypt
13. The top of a column

Can You Answer These?

1. Why was the climate of Egypt favorable to the development of civilized life?
2. How did the Nile River control the life of the people in Egypt?
3. What gifts did Egypt give to the world?
4. What is Egypt's most important crop? Why is it used all over the world?
5. What plan of government does Egypt have now?

Learning from Maps

1. Look at the map of Iraq and Iran. Most of the cities of Iraq are located on rivers. Can you tell why? Describe the land west of the Euphrates.

2. Look at the map of the Eastern Mediterranean. What countries border on the Mediterranean Sea? Does each have good harbors on the Mediterranean? Explain.
3. Why is the number of miles represented by an inch not the same on all the maps printed in this unit?
4. Where do most Egyptians live? See the population map on page 6.

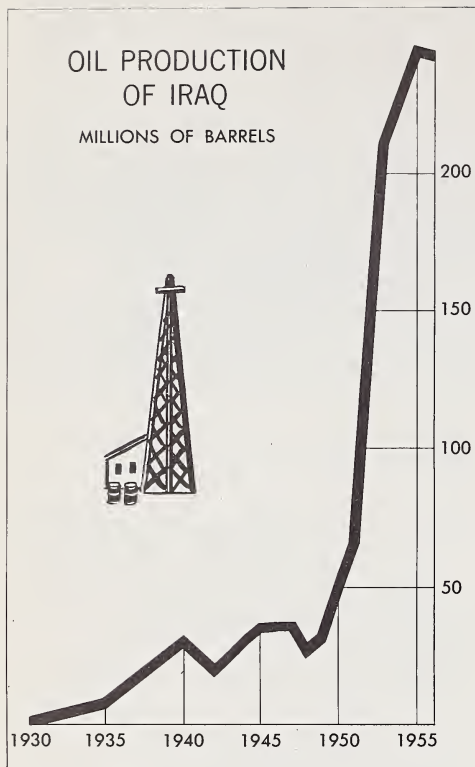
Can You Choose the Right Answer?

Each statement below is followed by three possible endings. Choose the ending that will make each statement true.

1. The Sumerians were good farmers because: (a) they lived in walled cities (b) they used donkeys to pull carts (c) they irrigated the land
2. The city of Mocha is famous for: (a) cotton (b) coffee (c) bronze
3. The Bedouins live in the open because: (a) they ride camels and horses (b) it is cooler outside the cities (c) their herds need new pastures
4. The Aswan Dam holds back the waters of the: (a) Nile (b) Jordan (c) Euphrates
5. The greatest gift of the Phoenicians to the world was: (a) the printing press (b) a system of laws (c) the alphabet
6. The new religious message which the Hebrew prophets gave to the world was the worship of: (a) one god (b) the sun and moon (c) Buddha
7. An Arab nation about half of whose citizens are Christians is: (a) Jordan (b) Lebanon (c) Syria

Using a Time-Line

Continue the time-line that you began for Iraq and Iran by adding to it other events from this unit. Rereading the text and looking at the pictures on the opening pages of this unit will help you.



Using Graphs

Graphs are used at times to give information in convenient form. The graph on this page is a *line graph*. A line graph is useful to show the amount of production of a farm crop, or of shoes in a factory, or of other products over a period of time. The line rises or falls on the graph as the amount of the product increases or decreases.

Study this graph and answer the following questions:

1. What product is measured on this graph? What period of time does the graph cover?
2. In what year did oil production first reach 50 million barrels?
3. Did oil production ever reach 250 million barrels?
4. In what five-year period did oil production increase most rapidly?

Who's Who?

The descriptions below tell about some of the people in this unit. Match the people with the descriptions.

Cheops	Mohammed	Solomon
Moses	Ibn-Saud	Kemal Pasha

1. The builder of modern Turkey
2. The ruler of Egypt who was buried in the largest pyramid
3. The leader and teacher who led the Hebrews out of Egypt
4. The ruler who formed the powerful kingdom of Saudi Arabia
5. The founder of the Moslem religion
6. The Hebrew ruler who was said to be the wisest of kings

Linking the Old World and the New

1. For building purposes the Sumerians used bricks made of clay that they baked in the hot sun. Where in the United States do some people build their houses from sun-baked clay bricks?
2. The Babylonians were very much interested in trade. They had laws controlling trade. One law told how much a man could receive for his work. Does our government have laws of this kind?
3. You have learned that Hammurabi had the laws of Babylonia engraved on stone pillars for all the people to read. Our country has so many laws we cannot read all of them. But we do have one set of laws that every American should know. This is the Constitution of the United States. All the laws of our country must be in agreement with the ideas expressed in the Constitution. The king made the laws in Babylonia. He was all-powerful. Who has the final power in the United States? To find the answer, read the first sentence, called the *Preamble*, of the Constitution.
4. The ancient world gave us three important features of architecture: the arch, the column, and the dome. Find pic-

tures in this unit illustrating each of these. Can you find buildings in your community that use these features?

5. After World War II many nations had to fight a different kind of war—a war against poverty, hunger, and disease. Point Four is the name of the program set up to help struggling nations to develop their resources and improve their living conditions. Under this plan the United States has sent skilled Americans to other countries to advise them about how to grow better crops and make better goods. Try to find out how these countries have been helped.

Interesting Things to Do

1. Pretend that you are a scientist digging in the ruins of Babylon, Nineveh, or Ur. Write a letter to the museum that employs you, telling the discoveries you have made. Compare your “discoveries” with those of your classmates.
2. There are many ways to show day-by-day links between your community and the countries studied. Here are a few:
 - (a) Arrange posters, travel folders, pictures from newspapers or magazines, and postcards in a display
 - (b) If you collect stamps or coins from these countries, bring them to class
 - (c) Has any person in your community visited the Middle East recently? Perhaps a committee can interview this person. Display products of these countries.

Making a Chart

Make a chart containing the most important facts about each of the countries of the Middle East. You will find the information in the text and in the Reference Tables on pages 464–465. Copy the headings and add the other countries in this unit. The chart has been started for you. Using an encyclopedia may help you with the products.

Country	Area	Population	Capital	Form of Government	Chief Products
Egypt	386,198	22,934,000	Cairo	republic	cotton, onions

3. If you like to read, here are some suggestions: *The Arabian Nights* (many editions); *Ali Lives in Iran*, by Caroline Singer and Cyrus Baldridge (a story of modern Persia); *The First Book of Israel*, by N. B. Kubie; *Once Upon a Time in Egypt*, by Frances K. Gere; *Once the Hodja*, by Alice G. Kelsey (folk tales about Turkey).
4. Read in the Bible the story of Abraham or of Moses. Tell it to your class. As you do so, trace the journey on a map.
5. With some of your friends as a committee, prepare a conversation between two town-dwelling Arabs and two Bedouins. Each side should give the advantages of its way of living.

Things to Think About

1. When the Suez Canal was closed for several months during the winter of 1956–1957, many Europeans suffered great hardships. Oil was needed to heat homes and buildings, for factories, and for transportation. What would happen to the United States if the Panama Canal were to be closed?
2. The invention of writing and of the alphabet changed man's life greatly. How many means of communication based on the written word can you name? How many do you use? Do such modern means of communication as radio and television have as great an effect on us as the written word?



Gautama, the Enlightened One, founder of Buddhism—500 B.C.



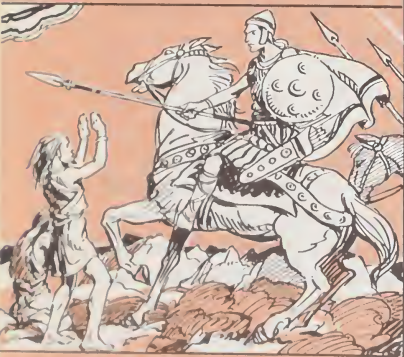
An Indian Maharaja at the Taj Mahal—completed in 1650 A.D.



First Manchu emperor taking over control of China—1644



Confucius and scholars—500 B.C.



Aryans invading India—2000 B.C.



India, China, and Southeast Asia

4.

Asia is the world's largest continent. It is an area greater than that of North America and South America combined. Its population is more than half that of the whole world, yet great sections of the continent are not inhabited. In other parts of Asia people are more crowded than they are anywhere else in the world.

Asia is bounded by the Indian Ocean on the south, by the Pacific on the east, and by the Arctic on the north. Its western boundaries are the Mediterranean, Caspian, Black, and Red seas, with the huge peninsula of Europe to the west. Only narrow Bering Strait separates Asia from North America on the northeast.

Asia has the greatest plains, the greatest plateaus, and the highest mountains of any continent. The highest peak in the world, Mount Everest, is in the Himalayas. Mount Everest is more than twice as high



Workers gathering rubber on a plantation in modern Malaya



Gandhi teaching a group of his Indian followers—1948



Chinese communists taking over a city in China—1949

The Countries of the Far East

as Pikes Peak in the Rockies. The mountains of Asia formed barriers which for a long time kept people from crossing from one part of the continent to another. Gradually, however, people built roads across the mountains. Railways now connect the great cities. And the airplane reaches all parts of the continent.

The Far East begins with India and Pakistan, follows the mainland of Asia through Burma, Thailand, Indochina, Malaya, and China. The Far East is sometimes called the *Orient*. Orient means the part of the world where the sun rises. Japan and Siberia are also included in the Orient. We shall study them in later units along with Indonesia, the Philippines, and other islands of the Pacific Ocean.

The peoples of the Middle East were living in a civilized way long before the time of Christ. At the same time, two

other regions, India and China, were also centers of civilization. Mountains and deserts shut them off to a large extent from the Middle East and from each other. They developed their special ways of living. When the people of Europe became acquainted with the Far East, they found it had much to give Western civilization.

Our studies of these Far Eastern countries will answer such questions as:

1. What is the land of India like?
2. What did India give the world?
3. What is life in India like today?
4. What kind of country is Burma? Thailand? Indochina? Malaya?
5. What was early China like? Who was Confucius? What did he teach?
6. What gifts did ancient China give to the world?
7. What is modern China like?



Alice Schalek from Three Lions

This mound was built by an Indian emperor over two thousand years ago. It is the largest monument to the religious leader Buddha.



Screen Traveler from Gendreau

In the modern city of Calcutta a policeman stands on a wooden platform to direct traffic. His white uniform is usual in warm countries.

THE LAND OF INDIA

We need an airplane to see the peninsula of India. This great land is half as large as the mainland of the United States. The peninsula is commonly called India, but it is today divided into two nations, the Republic of India and the Republic of Pakistan.

THE GEOGRAPHY OF INDIA

The physical map on page 91 shows that the great triangle of India is set off from the rest of Asia. On the north the Himalayas, the highest mountains in the world, rise like a great wall. Mountains and wide desert lands form India's western boundaries. Southward, as the peninsula narrows, the Bay of Bengal on one side and the Arabian Sea on the other wash India's coasts. Southeast of India lies the beautiful island of Ceylon.

Two great rivers flow from the mountains into the plains of northern India. The Indus, a thousand miles long, reaches the

Arabian Sea. The Ganges, longer still, pours through a large delta into the Bay of Bengal. In the plains through which these rivers pass, most of the people of India live today. India is thickly inhabited. One seventh of all the people of the earth live in India. This is more than twice as many people as inhabit the United States.

India, a land of contrasts

Great mountain peaks covered with snow look down on the plains of India. In the thick jungle at the mouth of the Ganges and along the southern coasts tigers, panthers, leopards, bears, and wolves roam. There are many snakes. Along the Indus are wide deserts with little vegetation. At times India has heavy downpours of rain. At other times its plains are burned hard and brown by the blazing sun. India has some very rich men, but most of the people are very poor. India is indeed a land of contrasts.

The monsoon seasons

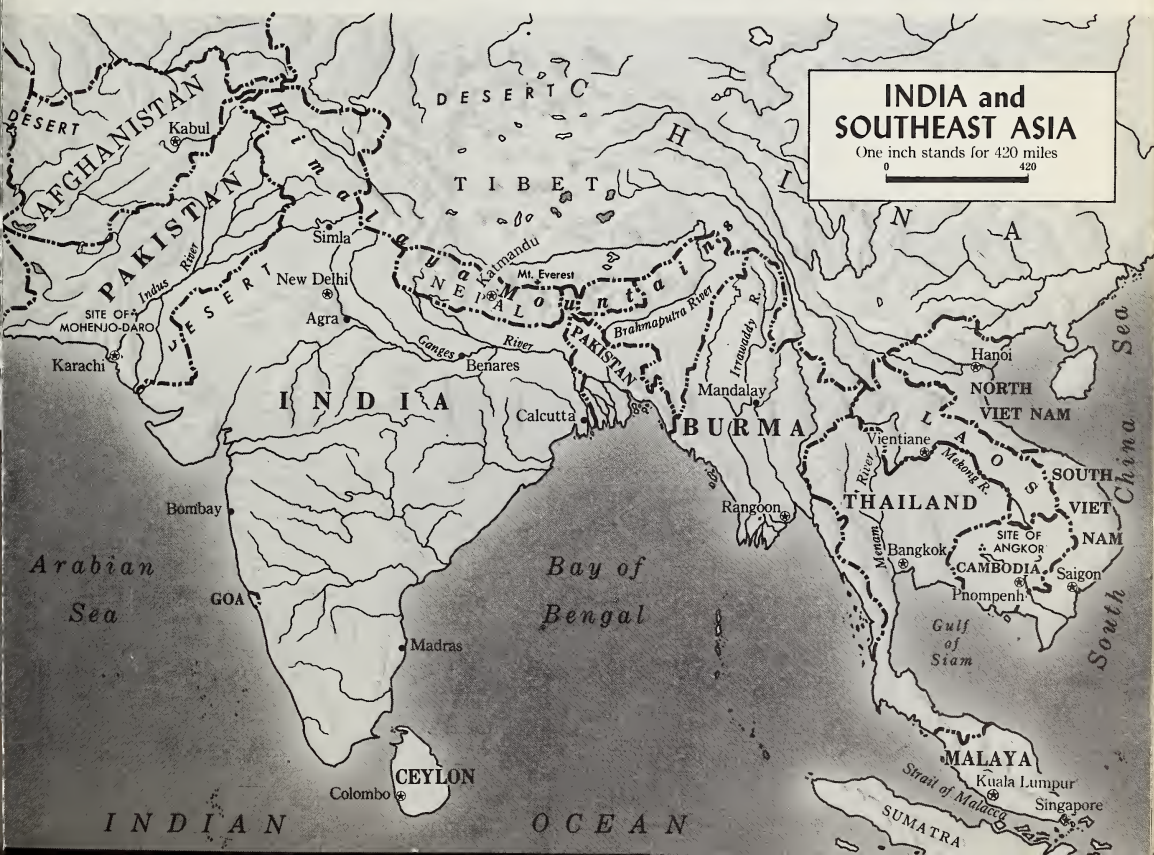
Anyone who has ever lived in India or who has read about life in that country has heard of a wind called a *monsoon*. The monsoon is a wind which blows across southeastern Asia. When summer comes to that part of Asia, the land grows hot. The air over the heated plains and deserts rises. Other air from the Indian Ocean moves in to take its place. This causes a wind from the southwest, which blows for several months from the sea to the land. This is the summer monsoon.

In winter these open stretches of land cool off. The sea is warmer than the land, so the wind now blows from the land toward the sea. This wind, which blows

from the northeast, lasts for about six months. It is the winter monsoon.

Whenever a moist wind is forced to rise, it becomes cooler. It then drops some of its moisture, in the form of rain. The monsoon, as it reaches the shore, generally meets hills or mountains. As it travels up these slopes, it grows cool and brings rain to the land. Summer, in most of southeastern Asia, is the wet season. On the other hand, when the winter monsoon blows from the interior of Asia, it becomes warm as it approaches the sea. As it grows warm, it takes up moisture and carries it out to sea. The winter, then, is a dry season through most of India and southern China.

This map shows the great peninsula of India and the smaller peninsula of Southeast Asia. Note that the peninsula of India is divided into two countries, India and Pakistan. The two parts of Pakistan are on different sides of the peninsula. What countries make up Southeast Asia?





James Sawders

Hunger and poverty haunt many of India's villages. In this small Indian village the families live in round stone or mud huts with pointed straw roofs to shed the rain. The only opening is the low doorway. Often as many as twelve people live in one hut.

In winter the trees lose their leaves, the grass turns brown, pasture is scarce, and crops dry up. There is little water in the smaller streams, and the roads are deep with dust. As the month of May comes on, the weather grows increasingly hot. There are refreshing winds at times. But when these die away, all the people, even the animals, swelter in the heat.

Finally, great clouds form, thunder crashes, and the rain arrives. It pours—most of the time—for weeks and months. The rivers overflow their banks, the dust

turns to mud. Soon grass covers the earth with a green cloak. The farmers then plant their crops. Sometimes the monsoon is late in coming, or it does not bring enough rain. Then millions of people in India go hungry, and many actually starve to death. To India the coming of the summer monsoon is the most important event in the year.

THE EARLY HISTORY OF INDIA

For many years it was not known that India had had a very old civilized life.

Ewing Galloway



About four out of five Indians are farmers, but most of the farms are very small. Modern methods of agriculture do not work well on these small pieces of land. So most farmers still use very primitive tools like the wooden plow which this one is using.



Ewing Galloway

The snow-covered peaks of the Himalayas rise even above the clouds along the northern border of India. The tall peak near the right is Mt. Everest, a mountain over five and one-half miles high.

Buried cities

One day, while digging in ruins on the banks of the Indus River, scientists discovered a buried city. This ancient city was found under thirty feet of soil washed down by the river. They found other cities. From their discoveries we know that India had a fine civilization almost as early as did Egypt and Mesopotamia.

The first city discovered was at Mohenjo-Daro, a city which in comforts equaled Memphis or Babylon. The houses had bathrooms. The people used coins, older than any other coins known. They used carts with wheels. They carved statues of marble, and used gold and silver jewelry. They had a way of writing which we do not yet know how to read.

Civilized men were building, manufacturing, and trading in the Indus Valley five thousand years ago. Others were doing much the same on the banks of the Nile and the Euphrates.

The men who built Mohenjo-Daro were short and dark. They are thought to be the ancestors of some Indians today.

The coming of the Aryans

Years later, through the mountain passes on the northwest, came tribes of strangers who looked quite different from the earlier inhabitants. These new arrivals were tall and light-complexioned. They were herdsmen and farmers. They called themselves *Aryans*. The Aryans had lived in the plains north of the present Black Sea and the Caspian Sea. Look at your map on page 124 to find the lands from which the strangers came.

The Aryans drove out the dark people who had built the great cities in northern India. The language of the Aryans we call *Sanskrit*. Sanskrit words are found in the German, Dutch, French, Italian, and English languages, for the Aryans spread far through Europe and Asia.



Ewing Galloway

A Hindu wears a caste mark on his forehead. Caste rules are slowly breaking down in India.

THE CASTE SYSTEM

Since the native people of India far outnumbered the Aryans, the conquerors invented a plan to continue their control. They divided the people into classes, or *castes*, like layers in a great cake. There was a top layer, made up of the priests. The next layer was composed of military men. Then came the merchants and so on. At the very bottom was a group of people who were scarcely considered to have any caste at all. These were called *untouchables*, or outcastes.

How the caste system works

There were certain caste rules which had to be obeyed. No person could eat with a member of another caste, and no one could marry into another caste. Those who disobeyed these rules "lost caste" and were severely punished. The caste system

still survives in India. All those who live under the caste system are known as *Hindus*.

As time passed, more and more castes were created, until there were about two thousand castes in India. The number of Hindus without a caste, or of very low caste, increased until there were many millions of them. Most high-caste Hindus think they cannot come near one of the untouchables, without becoming impure.

Why the caste system is bad

The system of caste kept the Hindu from being progressive and ambitious. If he happened to be born into the shoemaker caste, he had to be a shoemaker all his life. This is different from the United States. Here every man is free to plan his life's work. But in India a person could never change his caste.

After he dies, every individual, according to Hindu belief, is born over again. If he has lived a good life, he will be born

This woman is a member of the group known as "untouchables" in the Indian caste system.

Gendreau





Gendreau

At an outdoor school in northern India a Moslem teacher instructs a small girl in reading. Only about twelve of every hundred Indians can read and write. Notice the nose ring the girl is wearing.

the next time into a higher caste. If he has been sinful, he goes into a lower caste. Perhaps he will even be born as a pig, an ant, or a worm. With such beliefs, a person can do nothing to improve his position in life. His only hope is that the next time he is born he will be more fortunate.

Today there are signs that such ideas are changing. Recently, the Indian government issued this statement which has become a law: "Untouchability in any form is abolished." This is an important step toward freeing India's millions from the chains of the caste system.

ANCIENT INDIA'S GIFTS TO THE WORLD

India developed a way of living which had taken shape long before the birth of Christ. This way of living has continued until modern times.

A NEW RELIGION

Near the foot of the Himalayas almost six hundred years before the time of Christ

there lived a young prince named Gautama. He had a splendid palace and great riches. Before he was thirty, he had grown tired of seeking pleasure. He looked at the people in the streets and saw suffering, sorrow, and death everywhere. He began to ask himself some very difficult and important questions.



Gendreau

The famous Jain Temple in Calcutta has lovely pools, gardens, and trees. The Jains are a religious group which broke away from the Hindus. They believe it is wrong to kill any living creature.

Gautama's search for truth

"What is the meaning of life?" the young prince asked. No one could tell him. "I must go away and find the answer," he decided. One night he crept into the bedroom where his wife lay with her arm around his newborn son. As he looked at the two sleepers, Gautama's heart almost failed him, but he tore himself away and left his palace.

For seven years the prince practiced all the trials which the "holy men" of India were accustomed to undergo. Clad in a beggar's rags, he listened to what the priests had to teach. He sat covered with dust and ashes, under the rain and sun. He fasted until he was weak. Still he was not satisfied.

As he sat one day thinking of all that he had given up, the answer suddenly came to him. "The good life is peace," he said. "To have peace, man must be unselfish, and he must love everyone. Man should overcome anger by kindness and evil by good."

Now Gautama began to journey through the land begging his food and spreading his message. All castes were alike to him. His followers called him Buddha, which means the "enlightened one," or "wise one."

The spread of Buddhism

After Gautama died, the people of India made him a god. They made statues of him and built rich temples in which priests conducted services. The Buddhist religion, or *Buddhism*, spread into China and Japan.

Today Buddhism has almost died out in India. But elsewhere many millions of believers bow before statues of Buddha and repeat the words of Gautama, "Peace be with you."

OTHER GIFTS OF INDIA

The India of ancient times developed many things that we still use today. Let us see what some of these are.

India and the number system

When you do your arithmetic work, you are using Arabic numerals. But these nine number signs, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, were borrowed by the Arabs from India. The Arabs, who were great travelers, introduced this easy way of counting into Europe. From India the Arabs borrowed also the zero sign, which allows us to count easily by tens and hundreds and thousands and millions. This little sign is so simple that we forget how hard our figuring would be without it.

Certain kinds of problems can be solved more easily by *algebra* than by arithmetic. Algebra uses letters instead of figures. It comes, through the Arabs, from India.

Health practices in ancient India

Many of the doctors of ancient India had gardens where they grew valuable plants from which drugs and medicines were made. One of these drugs was opium, still used by doctors to deaden pain. Vac-

inating persons against smallpox and other diseases was used in ancient India. Grafting skin from one part of the body to replace skin lost by burns or wounds in another part is also an idea from India.

The people of India, like the Egyptians, bathed often. They used toothbrushes at a time when no one in Europe had heard of such an aid to health. Their easily washed cotton clothing was also an aid to health. India gave cotton to the world.

THROUGH THE CROWDED INDIA OF TODAY

India is almost a continent in itself. With so large a land area and with so many people, India should play a great part in the world today. Yet India has great problems to solve. In spite of the progress that has been made, India is still tied with the chains of the past.

Let us take a trip through this great land with an American family. We shall find that India is an extremely interesting land to visit.

A TRIP THROUGH INDIA

George and Alice Boyd are going with their father and mother to India. Mr. Boyd is a dealer in vegetable oils.

"You'll be surprised," says Mr. Boyd, "at the different kinds of oils I shall buy

here. India produces great quantities of coconuts, flaxseed, cottonseed, peanuts, mustard, and castor beans. All these products contain oil."

"What are these oils good for?" asks Alice.

"Oils are used in making soap, paint, and medicine. Some are made into lubricating, or smoothing, oil. Others are used in cooking and in salad dressings," her father explains. "Some of these oils are pressed out in India's own factories. But large amounts of products are shipped in the form of raw materials to Europe, where the oil is manufactured nearer the places where it will be used. The world would find it hard to get along without these oils from India."

Gendreau

A boy watches his father at work on some of the finest embroidery in the world. In a year or two he will be helping him to do this kind of work. It requires a great deal of skill with the needle.





T.W.A. Airlines Photo

This archway at the water's edge in Bombay is called "the Gateway to India." Bombay has a good harbor and is the leading seaport on India's west coast. It is also a great manufacturing center.

Bombay, a cotton city

The Boyd family first visits the great city of Bombay. You can see from the map, on page 91, that this is the most likely port for persons arriving from the west. The Boyds take a ride through the broad busy streets of Bombay. The fine buildings are in European style, but the people in the streets do not look like Europeans. They wear white cotton robes and white muslin turbans.

"Millions of Indians wear cotton clothing," Mr. Boyd says. "Making cotton cloth keeps thousands of workers busy in the cotton mills."

"No wonder they wear cotton in this hot climate," Mrs. Boyd remarks.

"India is indeed a land of cotton," continues Mr. Boyd. "The monsoon winds are hot and moist. This helps to make the kind of climate the cotton plant likes. In the western part of India are great cotton

fields. India is second only to the United States as a cotton-growing country. It produces about two fifths as much as the United States. At one time India raised only the amount of cotton that its people needed. When Europe began to want cotton, India planted more. Much of it was shipped to England, where it was made into cloth very cheaply. Soon England began to return to India some of its own cotton in the form of cloth. This practice continued for many years. But today India is making its own cloth. There are hundreds of cotton mills in Bombay alone."

Ceylon's many plantations

Southward from Bombay sails the ocean liner carrying the Boyds. At the southeastern tip of India, it comes to the beautiful island of Ceylon. Ceylon has its own government, but it is so near India that most visitors think of it as a part of India.

The natives of Ceylon are a small, dark people. Like the people of India they wear much cotton clothing. Their flowing robes make it hard to tell at a distance which are men and which are women.

Tea is one of Ceylon's great products. We have all heard of Ceylon tea. The Boyds visit a tea plantation among the beautiful hills. The bushy shrubs, bearing their white or rosy blossoms in season, are clipped to a level just high enough for easy picking of the leaves.

Once the Ceylon planters raised coffee as their principal crop. But when a disease attacked the coffee trees, the planters turned to tea raising. This proved so profitable that a group of rich Chinese made a trip to find out how Ceylon was able to take the tea trade away from China. When tea dropped to a low price, the Ceylon planters added two more crops, rubber and cacao. Both of these have been successful. Cocoa and chocolate are made from cacao. The world must have

rubber, and most persons are fond of chocolate.

On the way to Calcutta

Up the coast, through the hot Bay of Bengal, moves the ship bearing the Boyds. It enters the great delta formed by the Ganges and the Brahmaputra rivers. Calcutta, the city where the Boyds will leave the ship, is nearly ninety miles from the sea, on a branch of the Ganges. As they sail up the stream, George keeps looking at the jungle along the bank. He hopes to see a tiger or a *python*. A python is a large snake that can crush a man in its deadly embrace. But he is disappointed. He is excited when he catches sight of the narrow snout and pointed teeth of a crocodile swimming beside the ship.

In Calcutta, India's largest city

In Calcutta the Boyds find the scenes of Bombay repeated. In one part of the city is the well-kept business section. Close by

On a tea plantation in Ceylon women pick the tea leaves and put them in baskets on their backs. The leaves are later dried, crushed to bring out the flavoring juices, and then graded for export.

Ewing Galloway





This map is an altitude map of the continent of Asia. It extends from Egypt to the China Sea. Look at the map of Asia, page 124. Can you tell what parallel of latitude the map above follows?

is the area where the Europeans live, with its big park. In another part is the section, with winding, crowded streets, where the native Indians live. On the river large and small vessels constantly pass.

"What are those factories on the other bank of the river?" asks Alice.

"They are *jute* mills," says Mr. Boyd.

"What is *jute*?" inquires Mrs. Boyd. "I've never heard of it before."

"Jute is a tall, feathery plant. Its tough, brown fibers are used in making heavy twine, burlap bags, and wrapping paper. India raises almost all the jute in the world. The jute stems are cut. Then they are soaked in water, and the outer bark is removed from the long fibers inside. Most of the jute fibers are woven into the burlap bags, or gunny sacks, which we use by the millions on our farms.

Snake charming is an ancient and popular form of entertainment in India. As the pipe is played the snake rises slowly and weaves to and fro in time with the motion of the charmer.

Ewing Galloway



"India is famous for black tea, which it grows in large amounts. Next to Cuba, India is the world's largest producer of sugar. It grows as much rice as China and is second only to the United States in tobacco production."

Along the Ganges

The Boyds are glad to leave the hot city of Calcutta. They travel north by train along the Ganges River to Benares, nearly five hundred miles away. Benares is a sacred city situated on "Mother Ganges." For more than three miles a row of temples rises along the river. Broad flights of stairs lead down to the Ganges. Many people are standing in the shallow water.

To Benares come millions of pilgrims every year. They offer gifts to the many gods in the temples. They never fail to wash in the waters of Mother Ganges. They drink the water and carry it away in jugs and bottles to give to their friends. Many persons who are ill come to Benares to die. Their bodies are burned, and the ashes cast into the stream. George and Alice think that much disease would come from drinking such water. But the people of India never think of it.

The worship of cattle

As the Boyds pass through the crowded streets of Benares, they see cattle in the streets. These cattle, unlike ours, have

Mt. Everest 29,141 ft.

HIMALAYA MTS.

East China Sea
Nanking

TIBET

CHINA

The map shows how flat the land is until the mountains in northern Iran are reached. Then come the higher Himalayas and finally the broad plain of China extending to the East China Sea.

large humps on their backs. These hump-backed cattle are gentle, and they are allowed to do as they please.

"Look," cries Alice. "That cow must be a pet. She has a necklace of beads."

"Well," Mr. Boyd answers, "you might call her a pet, but there is more to the story. The Hindus believe cattle are sacred. It is hard to think of a sin worse for a Hindu than the killing of cattle. For two thousand years this has been the rule. No Hindu ever eats beef."

The Hindu god, Ganesa

George sees the form of a god with the head of an elephant carved on one of the temples. "That is Ganesa, the favorite god of Hindu mothers," says Mr. Boyd. "Let me tell you the story of Ganesa.

"Once upon a time the great god Siva went on a trip, leaving his wife Parvati alone. To pass the time, Parvati molded a handful of mud into the form of a boy and breathed life into it. She named him Ganesa. Parvati then set him to watch the door of the house while she slept.

"When Siva came home, Parvati was asleep. Ganesa, not knowing him, kept Siva from entering. In a rage, Siva drew his sword and struck off Ganesa's head. When Parvati awoke and told Siva that Ganesa had only been obeying her orders, Siva was sorry. He rushed out. The first living thing he saw was a young elephant.

Siva struck off its head, put it on Ganesa's body, and Ganesa lived again.

"This is the story of Ganesa, one of the best-loved Hindu gods. Every Hindu mother worships him because she hopes that her own sons will be just as obedient as Ganesa was to Parvati."

In New Delhi, the capital

Another trip of nearly five hundred miles to the northwest brings the Boyds to Delhi. They are still in the northern lowlands of India and in the basin of the great Ganges.

"You know," says Mr. Boyd, "that the great land of India is a mixture of races, languages, and religions. Nine out of ten persons can neither read nor write. Most

Sacred cattle wander through the city streets. Actually India has a third of the world's cattle.

Screen Traveler from Gendreau





Deane Dickason from Ewing Galloway

The famous Taj Mahal is considered by many people to be the most beautiful building in the world. It was built of white marble by an Indian ruler as a tomb for his favorite wife.

of the people in one part of India know little about those in other parts. Sometimes the people of one village have trouble in understanding the language of another village near by.

“When British merchants came to India hundreds of years ago, they found it divided into nearly a thousand different states. The British were asked to settle disputes between these states. Gradually the British gained power until they governed about three fourths of the Indian people.”

Calcutta was the first capital of the British government. But the climate was so hot that white people could not live there in comfort. Then, too, Calcutta was away from the center of the country. Just before World War I, the capital was moved to Delhi. Delhi was a former capital of India. Fine new government build-

ings have been built at New Delhi, just south of the crowded native city. Here the British governor lived.

Although Delhi is higher than Benares or Calcutta, it still lies in the lowlands. When summer came, most of the government officials moved to the city of Simla. Simla is one hundred fifty miles northward, on the highlands that finally rise to the Himalayas. In the warm sun and cool breezes of Simla Europeans could work and live in comfort.

INDIA IN RECENT TIMES

During the long period that the British held power in India, they brought improvements to this backward land. Peace was kept within the country. The farmer could plant crops and harvest them without fear. The wild raiders who used to

swoop down from the northern mountains to attack and plunder were kept in check. The diseases which resulted from the heat and bad water were cut down. In many cities safe drinking water was provided. Some progress was made in keeping streets clean. Hospitals, with fine medical service, were built in nearly every large city.

Besides British India there were more than five hundred native states. Some of the states were small. Others were as large as some of the important European countries. Most of the rulers bore the title of *maharaja*. Maharaja means "great chief." Most of the maharajas lived like kings in fine palaces with many servants. Some of them governed very well.

Farming in India

At least three fourths of the people of India are engaged in farming today. Most of them own no land but rent small patches

Calcutta, which is on a branch of the Ganges River, is the largest city and the most important port in India. The post office shown above is only one of its many modern and beautiful buildings.

of ground from a landlord. They live poorly in mud-walled houses with roofs of thatch, made of straw or grass.

India, which is about half the size of Europe, has nearly as many people. Often there is not enough food. The British built great irrigation works to give the people more farming land. They also built thousands of miles of railways and highways so that food could be shipped quickly to places where it was needed.

India could produce much more through scientific farming of the land. Progress is being made by the present Indian government. The United States has sent scientists to teach the Indians more modern methods of farming. But India's swarming millions still remain poorly fed.

The movement for independence

In World War I, India fought on the side of Britain. Soon after this a movement

Screen Traveler from Gendreau



for independence, under the leadership of Mohandas Gandhi, swept through India. Gandhi taught the Indians to oppose British rule not by fighting but by refusing to work for the British and by refusing to obey British laws. This kind of peaceful resistance proved very effective.

An Indian National Congress party was organized to carry on the work of making India free. During World War II India was on Britain's side, but many Indian leaders were dissatisfied. Britain, however, was not ready to give India its freedom while the conflict raged.

When World War II was over, Britain promised the Indian leaders their country's freedom provided they could reach agreement among themselves. But the people of India could not agree on some important matters.

The most important thing about which they disagreed was religion. India has many religions, but the chief forms are Hinduism and Moslemism. There are about three Hindus to every Moslem. But the Moslems are more active and more warlike than the Hindus. Many street battles have broken out between these

Gandhi arrives at Simla for a conference with the British viceroy. This great religious leader was assassinated in 1948, but his great aim, Indian independence, was achieved.

Combine



Deane Dickason from Ewing Galloway

When India was partitioned, or divided, Karachi, on the northwest coast, became the capital of Pakistan. This cotton exchange is in Karachi.

two groups because their religious ways are so different.

Both Hindus and Moslems wished India to be independent of the British. The Moslems refused to be satisfied unless the country could be divided into a Moslem nation and a Hindu nation. Thus the two parties, both against British rule, were also opposed to each other. The path to freedom was not easy. Many persons perished in the cruel religious riots.

Two new nations

After the war was over, the British government decided to give India its independence. It declared that the problems of India must be solved by the Indians themselves. But it recommended that the country be divided into a Moslem nation and an Indian nation.

In 1947 the division was made, and the British left India. The Hindu nation is called the Republic of India. The Moslems call their nation Pakistan.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

jute	Orient	untouchables
Aryans	Sanskrit	caste
Hindus	python	maharaja
algebra	monsoon	Buddhism

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 12. After each number write the word from the above list that matches the definition.

1. The Far East
2. The language of the Aryans
3. Natives of India who live under the caste system
4. A large snake that crushes its victims
5. A native Indian ruler
6. A wind of southern Asia blowing from the southwest in summer and from the northeast in winter
7. A certain class, or group, to which each person in India belongs by birth
8. A religion that had its origin in India and spread to China and Japan
9. A plant with strong fibers that are used to make twine and burlap
10. A branch of mathematics using letters instead of figures
11. Members of the lowest caste in India
12. Tall, fair-complexioned people who crossed the mountains from the north and settled in India

Can You Answer These?

1. How many people live in India?
2. Why is the coming of the summer monsoon so important in India?
3. What is the caste system?
4. What gifts did we get from India by way of the Arabs?
5. How did Gandhi help India?
6. Why is India called a land of contrasts?
7. How was India divided?
8. Name the capitals of the new nations.

Can You Choose the Right Answer?

Below is a list of sentences with three possible endings. Choose the correct endings.

1. Southeast of India is the island of:
(a) Formosa (b) Ceylon (c) Cyprus
2. The mountains of India are the:
(a) Himalayas (b) Urals (c) Andes
3. Civilized men lived in the Indus Valley about: (a) 3000 years ago (b) 4000 years ago (c) 5000 years ago
4. Followers of Gautama are called:
(a) Buddhists (b) Hindus (c) Moslems
5. India is the second country in the world in the production of: (a) tea (b) cotton (c) cacao
6. The largest city in India is: (a) Bombay (b) Calcutta (c) Delhi
7. Moslems call the nation they formed:
(a) Pakistan (b) Goa (c) Ceylon

THE COUNTRIES OF SOUTHEAST ASIA

Seven countries occupy Southeast Asia. They are Burma, Thailand, North Vietnam, South Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, and Malaya. Find these on the map on page 91.

LAND AND PEOPLE

The countries of Southeast Asia are much alike in size, in climate, and in the

occupations of the people. But we shall also learn about their differences.

What these lands are like

The map shows that large rivers flow toward the south through these countries. Burma has the Irrawaddy, Thailand has the Menam, and Vietnam has the Mekong. Near the mouth of each river is a

large city, Rangoon in Burma, Bangkok in Thailand, and Saigon in South Vietnam. Most of the people live in the valleys of these great rivers and of the streams that join the rivers.

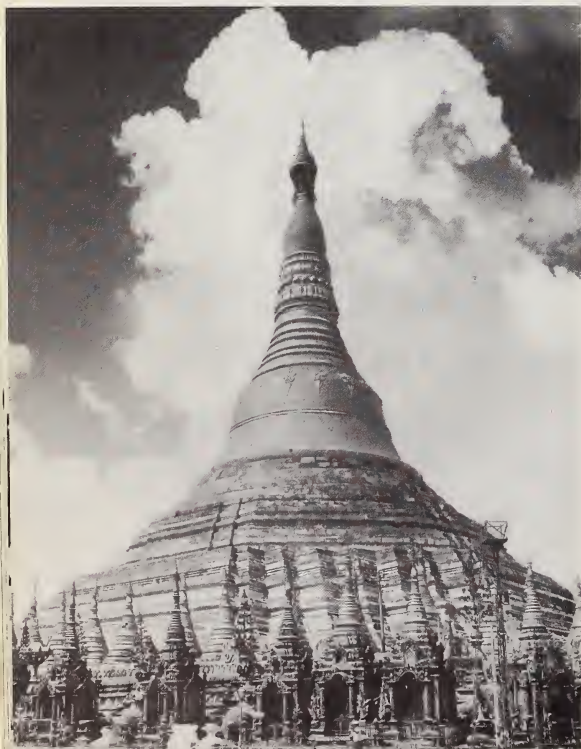
What the climate is like

The monsoon winds (see page 91) control the climate of all these countries just as in India. The monsoon winds bring much rain to the lower parts of the river valleys. But they lose most of their moisture before they reach the northern and interior areas.

Burma and Thailand are rice countries like much of southern China, yet there are great grassy plains in the north. On the mountain slopes and near the rivers are thick forests and jungle areas. The

The great Shwe Dagon pagoda in the city of Rangoon is surrounded by small shrines.

Ewing Galloway



cities of Rangoon and Bangkok are near the equator. Their climate is hot.

What the people are like

The people of Southeast Asia look much like the people of India, but in other ways they are more like the Chinese. The people of Burma and Thailand live peacefully on a simple diet of rice and fish.

The Malays are a different race. In early times they were known as pirates and head hunters. But in recent years they have changed. Today they are good sailors, woodsmen, and farmers. Malaya is thickly settled. Many Chinese live in the peninsula. They make a good living as manufacturers and merchants. So many different groups of people live in Malaya that it is sometimes called the "melting pot of Asia."

How the lands are governed

Burma was once a part of India. But in 1937 the British made Burma into a colony with the right to govern itself in most affairs. In 1948 Burma was given complete independence.

Indochina, which is the eastern part of a peninsula extending into the South China Sea, was long a French colony. After World War II some of the natives rebelled against French control. There was a long war, and the French lost.

Today Indochina is made up of four independent nations, North Vietnam, South Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos. On the Malay peninsula is Thailand, an ancient kingdom, and Malaya, one of the world's newest republics.

MODERN BURMA

From India we fly eastward to Rangoon. Rangoon is the capital of Burma.

An elephant carries a teak log, balancing it carefully between his trunk and his tusks. In the forests of Burma elephants are often used to lift, carry, and pile the heavy teak logs. Many of the elephants are taken wild from the jungles of Burma, tamed, and then trained to do this work.



Ewing Galloway

The city of Rangoon

As our plane approaches the city, we see the tall, gold-covered spire of the Shwe Dagon *pagoda*. This pagoda, which is built like a tower, is part of a Buddhist temple. It is considered the holiest of Rangoon's thousand pagodas. At night floodlights shine upon the tower, which can be seen twenty miles away.

As we land, a sticky heat meets us. We soon learn to take life easy, as the people do. At one of the festivals of Burma it is a custom to sprinkle water about saying, "May you be cool all through the year."

Burma, a "Golden Land"

In Rangoon, a city about as large as Milwaukee, we learn that the Burmese call their country the "Golden Land." Their land is golden when the monsoon rains end and the ripe rice makes the lowlands the color of gold. In every Burmese town, and perched on rocks far away from towns, are gold-covered pagodas. Yellow-robed priests of Buddha are everywhere.

Few of the Burmese are rich. Because the country is not so crowded as are India and China, this region produces much more rice than its people need. The people do not suffer from hunger, but the nation is not rich. Oil flows from central Burma by pipe line to Rangoon. For many years most of the money from the oil went to foreigners who had drilled the wells. But when Burma became independent, the government made a plan to keep the profit for its own people.

Burma is one of the great rice-exporting countries of the world. Whenever the Burma rice crop runs short, many people of India, next door to Burma, go hungry. In Burma many of the laborers and storekeepers are Chinese. Some Chinese own large businesses and have become wealthy from trading in rice.

A voyage on the Irrawaddy

From Rangoon we could take a river steamer and go upstream nearly a thousand miles. But we wish to take a shorter

voyage, so we shall go only as far as Mandalay. You may know Rudyard Kipling's poem, so often sung, in which these lines are part of the chorus:

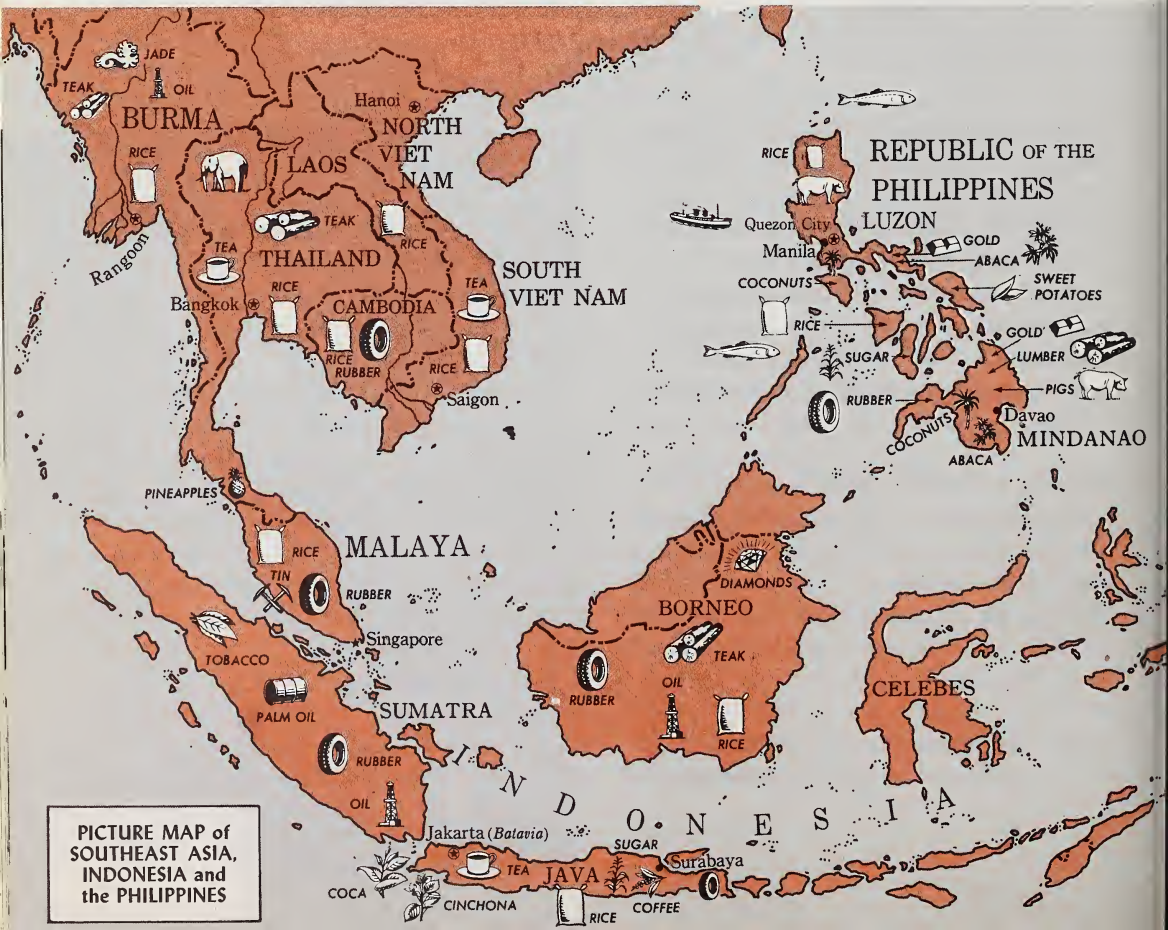
On the road to Mandalay,
Where the flyin' fishes play,
An' the dawn comes up like thunder
Outer China 'crost the bay!

The bay referred to is the one near Rangoon. But Kipling made a mistake in geography when he wrote these lines. By looking at the map on page 91 can you point out the mistake he made?

On our river steamer we see many interesting things. Along the banks elephants are dragging and pushing big, heavy logs of hard *teak* wood. Teak is a valuable wood for shipbuilding because worms do not like it and do not eat it full of holes as they do other kinds of wood. It is often used for fine furniture.

We are invited to visit the mines of Burma, where rubies are dug out of the ground. Other mines produce *jade*, that "royal stone" so prized by the Chinese for carving into jewelry, vases, and other art objects. The jade usually preferred is a

This picture map shows the chief products of Southeast Asia, Indonesia, and the Philippines. Until recently many of these countries were controlled by European nations who were rivals for the resources of this area. Today most of the nations on this map are independent. What are the most important products? Which products were unknown when the Europeans first came?



PICTURE MAP of
SOUTHEAST ASIA,
INDONESIA and
the PHILIPPINES

A Bangkok canal is crowded with small boats, many of them filled with fruit and other produce to be sold in the city. Notice the odd-shaped hats many of the boatmen are wearing to protect them from the hot sun. At one time many of the people of Bangkok lived in floating houses built on stilts in the river.



Ewing Galloway

deep green, but the Chinese also like white jade. Perhaps you have seen articles made of jade in a jeweler's shop or in a museum.

THE KINGDOM OF THAILAND

We leave Burma and fly to Bangkok, the capital of Thailand. Thailand is the only country in Southeast Asia which during its long history has never been ruled by a European nation.

The cats and elephants of Siam

Thailand was long known as Siam. After the war it changed its name to Thailand, which means "land of the free." It is the home of many tropical plants and animals. Siam became famous all over the world for its cats. Siamese cats are gentle and make fine pets.

Siam is also noted for its elephants. Elephants do most of the heavy work there. In fact, the country was once known as "the land of white elephants." There are no really white elephants, but a few of these great beasts are a light shade of gray. Such animals were formerly highly

prized and were kept for the king's use. Sometimes the king as a favor would give some person one of his white elephants. The person who received the elephant had to keep it and care for it. Otherwise, the king would be offended. But it was so expensive to keep one that today we call anything useless a "white elephant."

The Japanese in Thailand

Before World War II Thailand had been friendly to Japan for a number of years. Its young men went to Japan to study as army and navy officers. So, when the war began, Japan found men in Thailand who were ready to co-operate with it. When Japan invaded the country, the Thailand army was not strong enough to drive them back. The king was forced to resign. Thailand was ruled by military men. For its help Japan gave Thailand part of Burma and Malaya.

Bangkok, city of canals

Bangkok is a bit larger than Rangoon, or about the size of San Francisco. The

first thing we notice about the city is the network of canals. In the past, thousands of Bangkok families spent their whole lives on boats, which were their homes. Others lived on houses perched on stilts over the water. Now most of the people, who once had floating homes, live on land. Most of Thailand's trade passes through Bangkok. The city is a railway center as well as a seaport. Life in Bangkok has greatly improved in recent years.

MODERN INDOCHINA

Indochina is a tropical land with high temperatures and heavy rainfall. The rains make it possible to grow two crops a year. Most of the people of Indochina are engaged in farming. The main products are rice, rubber, tea, and coffee. The greatest cities of Indochina are Hanoi, in North Vietnam, and Saigon, in South Vietnam.

Ancient temples at Angkor

Almost on the border between Thailand and Indochina is a group of remarkable temples. The people who built these places of worship, perhaps eight hundred

years ago, were rich and powerful. They lost their power under attacks by the Siamese. The jungle swallowed up their fields and hid their temples. The greatest temple was in their capital of Angkor. For hundreds of years Angkor remained unknown and hidden from the world. Then the French discovered the city and cleared out the jungle. No visitor to Indochina should miss seeing its great domes and its miles of carved figures.

The Japanese in Indochina

During World War II the Japanese took Indochina from the French and Burma from the British. The Japanese seized large ports like Rangoon and Saigon and then moved inland.

In 1945 the Japanese were defeated, and their troops left Indochina. After the war Indochina gained independence from France. The people of the new nations are trying to learn how to rule themselves.

THE PENINSULA OF MALAYA

South of Burma is a long, narrow peninsula called the Malay Peninsula, or Malaya. It is shaped like the head and neck

Ewing Galloway



Temple dancers pose at the entrance to the temple at Angkor. In most oriental dancing every movement of the hands, arms, and body is important and tells a story. Often the dances dramatize the stories or legends of gods and heroes.

of a snake. In one place it is only forty-five miles wide, but its whole area is as large as our state of Missouri. Travel to various points in Malaya is difficult.

Burma and Thailand reach halfway down the peninsula. South of their boundaries are a number of states ruled by Malay sultans, under the control of the British. Some land on the peninsula is directly governed by the British, as is also the island of Singapore near by.

Life in Malaya

Malaya reaches almost to the equator. Its hot, moist climate creates a jungle in which are found tigers, wild elephants, and many poisonous snakes. Daring men who collect wild beasts for zoos find Malaya a good hunting ground. Large areas of the jungle have been cleared for rice fields and rubber plantations. Other products raised in Malaya are tapioca, sugar, pepper, and coconuts.

Food, shelter, and such clothing as people need in a hot climate are fairly easy to get in Malaya. The people of Malaya live simply. Chinese in Malaya carry on most of the business.

Rubber, an important product

The world's need for rubber is increasing each year. Bicycles, trucks, airplanes, and automobiles need rubber tires. But the making of tires is only one of the many uses of rubber. In the year 1910 rubber cost three dollars a pound! Almost all of the world's rubber then came from the wild trees of South America.

Long before, the British government had imported to England seeds of the rubber tree. Far-seeing officials decided to raise rubber trees in the British tropics. They planted the seeds of the rubber tree



Deane Dickason from Ewing Galloway

A worker taps a tree on a rubber plantation in Malaya. The tapping is usually done in the cool mornings when latex flows more freely. Each tree produces four to five pounds yearly.

in hothouses near London. After a few years the young trees were taken to Ceylon, where they were planted in groves on plantations. The rubber trees grew well in their new home. Rubber plantations were then started in Malaya. The British found that Malaya was even better suited to growing rubber than was Ceylon.

It was not long before Malaya was producing rubber in large quantities so cheaply that South America lost its market for rubber. Now Malaya produces half the world's rubber.

Rubber is made from the milky white juice, called *latex*, of the rubber tree. On the rubber plantations of Malaya thousands of laborers cut small gashes in the



Screen Traveler from Gendreau

The free port of Singapore, whose name means "the city of the lion," is the gateway from India to the Far East. Ships of all kinds, sizes, and nationalities ride at anchor in its fine harbor.

bark of the trees to let the latex flow out. The latex is then caught in cups tied to the trees. The latex goes through machines from which it comes out as slabs or sheets of pure rubber. To make greater profit from the plantations the Malay farmers sometimes grow pineapples between the young rubber trees.

Many of the farmers planted small rubber groves on their own land. When they needed money, or when the price of rubber was especially good, they would tap their trees and sell the latex to some plantation. The government helped them to improve their rubber production and to keep the insects from hurting the trees.

In 1941 the Japanese captured Malaya. They shut off the supply of Malayan rubber to the United States, Great Britain, France, and Russia. These nations, who

were at war against Japan, had to have rubber. South America produced some rubber, but not nearly enough to meet the great need.

Fortunately, scientists had worked out ways of making artificial rubber. The United States government built a number of great factories to produce this kind of rubber. Before long, our country was making enough rubber to carry us through the war. But rubber was scarce for other purposes.

Artificial rubber has been found better than natural rubber for some articles. Because rubber is used for so many different articles, the United States will keep on making artificial rubber at the same time that it buys natural rubber.

When World War II ended, the Japanese were driven out of Malaya. The

rubber plantations on the peninsula are again enjoying good business.

Tin, an important metal

Tin has also made Malaya important. Tin is one of the rarest of well-known metals. Everyone knows how useful the tin can is in preserving food. The can is not made entirely of tin, but of thin sheets of iron covered with a coating of tin. From southern China down into Malaya runs a belt of tin-bearing rocks. In Malaya tin is so plentiful that none of it needs to be taken from deep mines. It is washed out of the sand and gravel brought down by streams, just as was gold in the early days of California. Hard-working Chinese do the labor in these "washings."

Malaya stands first in the world for tin, just as it does for rubber. The United States used to get three fourths of its tin from Malaya. Tin is one of the few metals which we do not have within our own country. After 1941, when the Japanese captured Malaya, we had to get tin from Bolivia. Bolivian tin is good, but it is expensive. During World War II the loss of Malayan tin was keenly felt in the United States.

Malayan natives carry the pails of latex they have gathered to a central collection point.

British Information Services



The founding of Singapore

In the year 1819 Stamford Raffles, the young English governor of a port in the East Indies, visited the Strait of Malacca. This strait forms a passageway between the Malay Peninsula and the island of Sumatra, which is part of the East Indies. Through it traveled most of the ships carrying on trade between China and India and the East Indies.

In the strait lay an island. "What a fine place for a British port!" thought the Englishman.

When Raffles proposed his idea, the British government was not much interested. But he went ahead, made an agreement with the sultan who owned the island, and bought it for Great Britain. It was a great bargain. Raffles founded a city, called Singapore, overlooking the strait. Singapore means "the city of the lion." Singapore became a free port, where goods could be landed by different nations and then shipped again without paying taxes.

Most of the Far-Eastern trade brought profits to Singapore. It lay at a crossroad of travel for ships. Singapore grew into a large city which today has more than

Many natives bring latex to the collecting center and a truck takes it to the factory.

British Information Services



a million people. Almost half the world's tin and more than half the world's rubber passed through its docks. It grew into a very prosperous city.

Malaya in World War II

Before World War II the British decided to build on the island a great naval base, where British warships in the Far East could make their home. That base, where the biggest ships in the world could be repaired, was hardly finished when the Japanese went to war against Great Britain in 1941. Because of this great base the British were not afraid that the Japanese would capture Singapore.

"Our great cannon," the British said, "could blow any enemy fleet out of the water. Behind the island are jungles that no enemy can march through. All we have to do is to man the cannon and to hold the roads that lead down from the north."

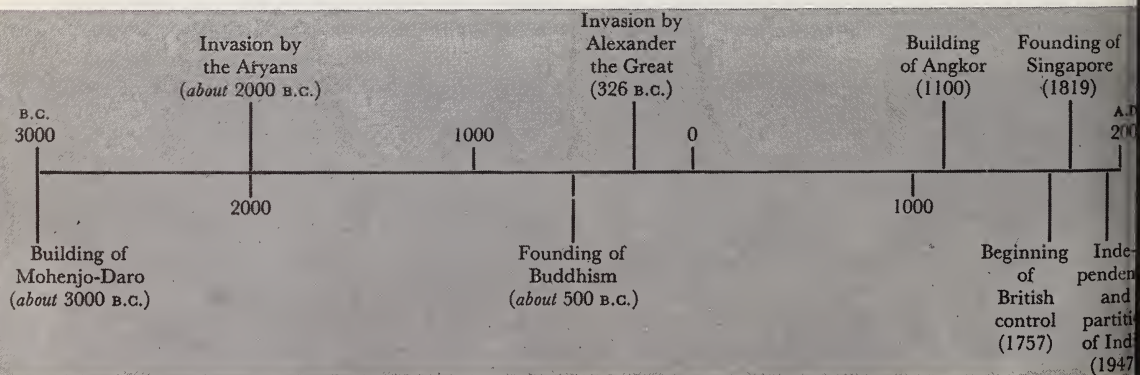
But the Japanese did not attack by sea. Nor did they send their troops over the roads. Instead they trained their men to slip through the jungle. Suddenly they appeared in large numbers behind the

British, and the British had to retreat. Finally, they reached the island of Singapore. The enormous cannon of the city of Singapore all faced out to sea on the Strait of Malacca. They could not be turned in the opposite direction. So the naval base was of no use. Singapore, with its fine buildings, its wealth and its trade fell into Japanese hands. For three and a half years the city of Singapore remained in the control of Japan.

The Japanese wanted the rubber and tin of Malaya. They treated the natives cruelly and aroused the anger of the people against them. In 1945, at the close of World War II, the British regained Malaya.

After the war was over, the people of Malaya, like many other people of the Far East, wanted to be independent. The British listened to the people's request and organized the government into a Malayan Union. Under this plan Malaya had a measure of self-government. In 1947 Britain changed the plan of the union to allow Malaya more self-government. In 1957 Malaya became independent.

Time-Line: India and Southeast Asia (3000 B.C.—2000 A.D.)



A QUICK QUIZ

Words You Should Know

pagoda teak jade latex

A Matching Test

Number a paper from 1 to 4. After each number write the word from the above list that matches the definition.

1. The milky-white juice of the rubber tree
2. A Far Eastern temple with an elaborately carved tower
3. A hard stone, usually green, used for jewelry and fine carvings
4. A hard wood used in building ships and fine furniture

Can You Answer These?

1. Which country is sometimes called "the melting pot of Asia"?
2. When and how did Burma get its independence?
3. Why is travel in some parts of Malaya difficult?
4. Why is Burma called the "Golden Land"?
5. What is Bangkok like?
6. Name Malaya's most important product.
7. In what way did Malaya once influence Bolivia?
8. How did its location help Singapore to become an important city?
9. How did the Japanese capture the strong naval base of Singapore in World War II?
10. What is a "free port"?

Can You Fill the Blanks?

Write on a sheet of paper the word that will complete each sentence correctly.

1. Buddhism is the principal religion of the people of _____.
2. Much of our tin comes from _____.
3. Half of the world's supply of rubber comes from _____.

4. The only country in Southeast Asia which was never ruled by a European nation is _____.
5. The largest city in Burma is _____.
6. Thailand's former name was _____.

Making a Chart

Make a chart in which you give the name of each country of Southeast Asia, the area, population, form of government, and chief products. Use the text and the Reference Tables on pages 464-465. Reread the text and study the maps to be sure your information is correct.

Can You Match These?

In the two lists below match each city with the phrase that describes it.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Rangoon | great naval base |
| 2. Bangkok | capital of North Vietnam |
| 3. Hanoi | site of ancient temples |
| 4. Saigon | capital of South Vietnam |
| 5. Angkor | network of canals |
| 6. Singapore | Shwe Dagon pagoda |

Interesting Things to Do

1. Divide into groups or committees to find out more about one of these: rubber, tin, rice, jade, teakwood, tea. Pictures or samples of the products will help to make your reports more interesting to the rest of the class.
2. During World War II, a road through Burma was used to carry American and British supplies to the Chinese who were fighting the Japanese. A book called *The Burma Road*, by Douglas Coe, reports how the supplies got through. You might like to read it and discuss it in class.
3. Watch for news stories about Southeast Asia in daily papers or news magazines. Report these events to the class, and post the news on the bulletin board.



Cushing

The Great Wall of China, six hundred years old, still stands on China's northern border.



Gendreau

Modern and ancient forms of transportation exist side by side in a Chinese city of today.

CHINA, THE WORLD'S OLDEST NATION

China is a very old country. Its civilization has continued unbroken, while the ancient civilizations of Egypt, Mesopotamia, Phoenicia, and India have all passed away.

THE GEOGRAPHY OF CHINA

China lies in eastern Asia and takes up more than one fifth of the continent. It is bordered on the east by the Pacific Ocean. On the south rise the Himalayas, the highest mountains of the world. On the west lie great deserts. Because the Chinese were so shut in, in early times, they worked out their own way of life. They liked this way of life so much that they did not wish to change.

China is watered by two great rivers, the Hwang Ho in the north and the Yangtze Kiang in the south. The land through which these rivers and their branches flow is about half as large as the

mainland of the United States. It has over three times as many people. China has more people even than crowded India. More than one fourth of the people of the world live in China. Most of them live on the plains drained by the two great rivers.

CHINA'S EARLY HISTORY

We know little about China's early history for two reasons. First, China has not been explored as thoroughly as the other countries we have studied. We do not yet know what may be found. Second, the early records of the Chinese were made on wooden tablets, most of which have rotted away. In contrast, writings on stone or on baked clay, such as Egypt and Mesopotamia used, last almost forever in the dry climate of those countries. What we do know indicates that the Chinese were a highly civilized people at an early period in man's development.

Beginning of Chinese civilization

We have seen that several early civilizations began in river valleys. Chinese civilization, too, developed in the river valley of the Hwang Ho, or Yellow River. This great river rises in the mountains of Tibet, to the west of China. It flows, on a course of twenty-five hundred miles, into the Yellow Sea. It flows through yellow soil which winter winds have brought from the dry plains to the north and west.

The Yellow River is more loaded with mud or silt than is our Mississippi. It drops much silt into its own bed and therefore overflows easily when the waters of the melting snows rush down in the spring. The Chinese have worked hard to keep the river within its banks by building dikes. When the river breaks through the dikes that shut it in, the country is flooded and people die by tens of thousands. Because of this the river is called "China's sorrow." But since people must eat and the soil is rich, the farmers go back to their farms.

From the plains of the Yellow River the Chinese moved south to the plains of a still greater river, the Yangtze. The Yangtze flows through the heart of China. It is the fifth longest river in the world. Ocean steamers can come inland as far as Hankow, more than six hundred miles from the sea. Near the sea the Yangtze is three miles wide, truly a wonderful and busy waterway!

In the flat valleys or plains of their two great rivers the Chinese were left free for hundreds of years to work out their own ideas. They preferred peace to war and became excellent farmers and craftsmen. Finally, the Chinese came to believe, as many other nations have thought about themselves, that they were the most civilized people on earth.

China's system of canals

Like the Egyptians and the Babylonians, the thrifty Chinese made great use of irrigation. For this purpose they dug both canals and ditches.

They were the first people to use their canals for carrying freight and passengers. The Grand Canal of China, seven hundred miles long, runs north from the Yangtze to the mouth of the Yellow River. It is probably the world's longest waterway entirely made by man. China has thousands of miles of canals, especially in the rainy south, over which boats pass regularly. Europe, and later America, learned from China how useful canals could be.

The people of China

The people of China are very different from those of India. The yellow skin, the narrow or almond-shaped eyes, and the broad faces of most Chinese give them a Mongolian appearance. The Mongols are

At this Chinese dinner table all members of the family use chopsticks. Notice that they are able to hold the wooden sticks in one hand and pick up bits of food between them.

Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway





Look carefully at this map of China. Can you see how mountains and deserts kept China apart from the rest of the civilized world for so many centuries? Does the map also tell you why most of the cities are located in the eastern half of the country? Find the Great Wall and the Grand Canal.

a people of the dry plains and deserts west of China. Several hundred years ago Mongol warriors moved into China, conquered it, and settled down there. The Mongols ruled China for more than one hundred years. During this time they mixed with the native Chinese people. The Chinese today resemble their Mongolian ancestors.

The Chinese language

The Chinese language has no alphabet, for it is not a letter but a syllable language. Instead of learning twenty-six letters, as we do, the Chinese must learn more than two thousand characters. Each character represents not a sound but a

word of one syllable, and no word in Chinese has more than one syllable. Chinese books are written in columns of single characters. Pages are read from right to left, instead of from left to right as with us. If you know a Chinese person ask him to show you one of his newspapers.

Not many years ago a Chinese scholar worked out a set of one thousand new, or "basic," characters. By using these, a person can learn to read and write simple Chinese in a few months. This will make it possible for more people in China to get an education.

The Chinese have always valued education. In early times the Chinese government established a free national school sys-

tem, with an official in charge of instruction. This is the plan which the United States has today.

The Chinese thought that all public officials should be highly educated. The educated man was one who knew the best Chinese writings and could pass an examination in them. The examinations were held throughout the country at regular times. Only those who passed them could hold public office.

CONFUCIUS, A GREAT TEACHER

About 550 B.C., in the land along the lower course of the Yellow River, a boy named Kung was born. When Kung was three years old, his father, who was a soldier, died. His mother, although she had very little money, gave him a good education. At that time China was in great disorder. There was no strong central government, and crimes were seldom punished. Kung did not wish to be a soldier like his father. He wanted to do something else for his country.

"Master Kung"

Good government, Kung thought, was badly needed in China. Government could not be good unless it was carried on by wise rulers. He spent much time traveling about the country, with a group of followers, studying and learning. By the time he was thirty years old, Kung was known as a learned man and a great teacher. People called him Kung-fu-tse, or "Kung, the Master." This Chinese name, given a Latin form, became Confucius.

Master Kung felt that the old ways were good ways. He collected the poems and laws of early China and the sayings of the wise men who had passed away. He taught that men always should use special



Gramstorff Bros.

Confucius was a great teacher of Old China. His writings still guide millions of Chinese.

forms of politeness and should be calm under all conditions. Kung also taught special respect for parents.

Master Kung was kindly, and he was not proud. He did not claim that his wisdom came from heaven, nor did he ask persons to be his followers. But during his long life more than three thousand men became followers of Confucius and were guided by his teachings.

Here are three of his wise sayings:

"I am not concerned that I hold no office, but I am concerned how I may fit myself for one."

"Meet evil with justice. Meet good with good."

"What you do not like when done to yourself do not do to others."

The influence of Confucius

Famous as he was during his life, Confucius was even more honored after his



F. G. Mayer, New York

Much of the jade that the Chinese value so highly for fine carvings comes from Burma.

death. Finally one of the emperors ordered that the books of Confucius should be the foundation of China's religion. For

about two thousand years his writings were the textbooks of the schools. Nearly every Chinese boy memorized them. Although he is not worshiped as a god, the teachings of Confucius have become sacred. Every Chinese honors him.

The influence of Confucius through so many years made the educated Chinese dignified, thoughtful, and polite. They respected learning and liked to surround themselves with works of art. To this day many Chinese try to follow the advice of their great teacher.

But the teachings of Confucius had a bad effect as well as a good one. Master Kung had insisted that each person should pay honor to his parents, his grandparents, and all his ancestors as far back as they could be traced. This developed into a kind of religion called *ancestor worship*. The Chinese were so influenced by the idea of ancestor worship that they had little interest in new ideas.

Ancestor worship made people think so much about the past that they did not make progress. The Chinese believed that their ancestors possessed all wisdom and that they should not change their customs. Although they were naturally an intelligent people, they refused to think along new lines. They did change a little as time went on, but very slowly. China, therefore, became one of the backward nations.

ANCIENT CHINA'S GIFTS TO THE WORLD

We have learned that China has long been a civilized country. Now let us see how China influenced the world.

INFLUENCE ON NEIGHBORING LANDS

The ways of living of the Chinese were much admired by neighboring peoples.

Among these were the Koreans and the Japanese.

On Japan and Korea

In very early times the Chinese learned that there were islands to the east. There was a story that dwarfs lived on these

islands. About the time of Christ, a Chinese emperor sent out a group of explorers. They came back with the news that these islands were called Cipango, or Japan, and that the people were quite civilized.

The Japanese adopted many customs from their neighbors, the Koreans, who had also learned their ways of living from the Chinese. So all three peoples came to have many common customs. Then the Japanese began to visit China and to invite Chinese to Japan. In a few hundred years the Japanese had adopted ways of living, most of which were copied from China.

In Tibet and Mongolia

To the south of China lie the forests of Indochina, Thailand, and Burma. Chinese ways and Chinese ideas found their way into those lands. West of China is Tibet, a cold, dreary land on the highest plateau in the world. Here also the Chinese ways made their entrance. Even the wandering herdsmen of Mongolia on the north learned Chinese customs, though they had little use for such manners. Find these countries on the map.

CHINESE ART AND BUILDING

The Chinese were skillful workers with their hands. They developed their own styles in art and building.

Jade and porcelain

Chinese jewelers discovered that the stone called jade was fine material for carving. They made beautiful jade jewelry. Ancient Chinese jade vases are treasures which museums and art lovers are proud to own.

The Chinese were the first to make *porcelain*. Porcelain is the delicate dinner



F. G. Mayer, New York

Porcelain is one of China's famous products. This old porcelain plate shows the delicate workmanship always seen in the finest china.

ware which is so very thin that it is sometimes called "eggshell" china. By holding a porcelain cup up to the light, you can see the tea grounds through the side of the cup.

Bamboo and pagodas

The Chinese made good use of the giant, treelike grass known as *bamboo*, which grows abundantly in the Far East. The hollow stem of the bamboo is so hard and durable that it is used in building and for furniture. Children in China play with bamboo toys. Bamboo cooking utensils, fishing rods, canes, parasols, and even playing cards are other examples of the ways in which the Chinese put this useful plant to work.

The Chinese have built many pagodas, chiefly as memorial buildings. The usual Chinese pagoda is built like a tower and has many stories. Each story has a roof

built like a porch and is decorated with ivory, bone, or stone work.

Chinese lacquer work

In China there grows a small tree, something like our sumac, called the varnish tree. Its sticky juice makes a good coating for wood. The Chinese word for this is *lacquer*. Chinese workmen used a brush to put several coats on the wood. The layers of lacquer formed a hard, smooth surface which could be painted or even carved. After this, they covered the surface with a coat of clear lacquer to preserve it.

The finest Chinese lacquer had so much gold in it that the furniture and boxes covered with it have a rich appearance. Perhaps a museum in your town contains some lacquered Chinese articles. If so, you can see how much beauty lacquer can give when used by an artist.

OTHER CHINESE GIFTS

The tea plant was first grown by the Chinese. Tea made from its leaves has since become the drink of many nations.

The Chinese were the first people to use silk. They learned how to unwind the threads of the *cocoon*, or wrapping of silk which the silkworm spins for itself. They then used the threads from the cocoon to weave cloth. After they began to grow silkworms, the Chinese discovered that of all foods the silkworms liked mulberry leaves best. From that time on all people who have raised silkworms feed them on mulberry leaves.

For many years the Chinese kept to themselves the secret of this soft, beautiful material, silk. Because so much labor and skill were needed for making silk cloth it was expensive. Only the rich people wore

silk. Other people wore gowns of hemp (cotton came much later), dyed blue with indigo. We are told that missionaries, who knew the beauty and value of silk, secretly took back from China to Europe some silkworm eggs. They hid the eggs in hollow walking sticks. After this, people in Europe, too, began to raise silkworms and to manufacture silk.

The people of China invented gunpowder, also. What an important effect gunpowder was to have upon the world! The Chinese used it mostly for making firecrackers, which they used to celebrate holidays and, as they believed, to drive away evil spirits. They still shoot firecrackers to celebrate special festival days.

PRINTING IN CHINA

The earliest printing was done in China. Gutenberg was long known as the father of printing. But we now know that the Chinese had invented printing five hundred years before Gutenberg's printing press began to turn out books.

Beautiful eight-sided pagodas like this are common in China. This one is near Hong Kong.

Bristol from Three Lions



Chinese paper and ink

The earliest writing of the Chinese was done either with a brush pen on silk or on bamboo. Silk was delicate and costly, and books made of bamboo were clumsy. Not long after the time of Christ, the Chinese began to make paper from rags and rope. They also made a kind of ink which we today call "India ink." It is the only really black ink made. Do you think it should be called "China ink"?

Chinese books

The early Chinese printers used wooden blocks to print playing cards and books. China had movable type, too, but since the Chinese language had thousands of characters the movable type was not convenient to use. Four hundred years before books were printed in Europe, China was putting out many books. One Chinese book was an encyclopedia in one hundred fifty volumes.

Chinese printers also made paper money. At a time when Europe used only metal money, the Chinese used paper money and found it convenient.

THE STORY OF THE SOYBEAN

Thousands of years ago the Chinese emperors are said to have blessed the spring planting of certain beans. These were soybeans. Soybeans are one of China's greatest crops.

The soybean as food

As more and more people grew up on the river plains, there was less room for beef cattle or dairy cattle. More food can be produced on a farm by raising vegetables than by raising cattle. Yet people need the muscle-building material that meat and milk give. Soybeans contain this



Keystone View Co.

The odd-looking tool on the bench is a mill for grinding soybeans. A group of Chinese mothers and their children watch the operation.

same material. People can live and keep strong on such food without meat.

Fortunately for the people crowded into the river valleys of China, the soybean crop was not affected by the weather. In the dry lands of North China and in hot, damp South China soybeans flourish.

Other uses of the soybean

The bean itself, though hard like a nut, contains a large amount of oil. Many of the Chinese press out this oil and use it like kerosene for lighting their homes. When paper or cloth is soaked in bean oil, it lets light come through. Such paper is used instead of glass in the windows of many Chinese houses. Soybean oil takes

the place of other oils and fats in Chinese cooking. The Chinese have almost no dairy cows, but they use soybean oil as we use butter. The dark-colored, salty soybean sauce is found on all Chinese tables.

Today millions of acres in the United States are planted in soybeans. We use the oil in paints and soaps. We feed the bean cake, and the good hay which the dried plant makes, to our dairy and beef cattle. Crackers and bread are made from soybean meal mixed with flour.

Other uses of the soybean

We have found that soybean meal, mixed with other materials and chemically treated, makes a new kind of substance called *plastics*. Plastics can be molded and stamped into so many light but strong articles that they can scarcely be numbered. Soybean meal can also be made into fibers which are much like wool and woven into cloth.

Perhaps you can discover other things that come from the ancient Chinese.

MODERN CHINA

In early times, as we have learned, the Chinese had little contact with the rest of the world.

CHINA OPENED TO TRADE

About the time of the first settlements in North America trading ships from several European nations visited China. They were given the right to use the port of Canton and to trade with southern China. China had great natural resources, but it was a backward country. As time went on, European nations wanted to increase their trade with China. After two wars China was forced to open its ports to European merchants and to permit Englishmen to live there. The island of Hong Kong, just off the China coast, was given to Britain. The United States was also given the right to trade in certain ports.

The open-door policy

A few years before the beginning of World War I, the United States helped protect China from further demands by European nations and Japan. Japan had taken Formosa and Korea from China. Naturally, the Chinese did not feel friendly

toward the foreigners who were taking pieces of their country. The United States was thus the first nation to come to the aid of China.

The United States thought that China's ports should be open for trade to all nations. It outlined a plan called the *open-door policy*. The open-door policy was adopted. At this time the Chinese leaders thought that China should be made into a modern nation. They wanted China to be able to take its place among the other great nations of the world. Other Chinese wanted to cling to old ways and drive out the foreigners.

THE REPUBLIC OF CHINA

In 1912 China changed from being ruled by an emperor to a republic. Dr. Sun Yat-sen became president. The first capital of the new republic was Nanking, on the lower Yangtze. Then Peiping (or Peking), the old capital of China, became the seat of government again. After Sun Yat-sen died, Nanking again became the capital. Nanking means "southern capital." Peking means "northern capital." Peiping means "northern peace."

With the change to a republic China did not become a united nation. Many generals, or *war lords*, raised armies that lived off the people of the parts of the country in which they were stationed. These war lords often fought each other. Torn by these civil wars, China was far from being happy as a republic.

The government was controlled by the *Kuomintang*, or National People's Party. When Sun Yat-sen died, the leadership of the Kuomintang passed into the hands of younger men. In 1927 Chiang Kai-shek, who had been a fellow worker with Sun Yat-sen, became president of the republic and commander in chief of the army. He worked hard to make China a modern country, that is, a "New China."

The Japanese invasion of China

For a number of years the Japanese, with many people crowded into their small islands, had wanted to spread out on the mainland of Asia. They first took over Korea, the peninsula between the Sea of Japan and the Yellow Sea. Next, they

Hilly Chungking became China's capital during the war. The Yangtze flows below the city.

Guillumette

invaded Manchuria, a part of North China. Then they began, in many ways, to try to get control of the part of China just south of Manchuria and along the Yellow River.

Year after year Chiang Kai-shek saw the Japanese gaining more and more power over China. He tried to get the war lords to help him and to build up a national army under his command. In 1937, just when he thought that all of China's eighteen provinces were ready to work with him, the Japanese struck.

Japanese power was too great for the poorly equipped Chinese. All the important seaports—Shanghai, Canton, Hong Kong—fell into Japanese hands. They seized most of the railroads. At Peiping and at Nanking the Japanese set up *puppet governments*. A puppet government is one in which the leaders behave like puppets. They move and speak as they are told to do. "This is the New Order in the Far East," said the Japanese. "Obey us, and you will prosper!"

But the Chinese did not believe what the Japanese said, for they saw what the Japanese did. They saw that the Japanese were really making slaves of the Chinese. The Chinese armies continued to fight the Japanese in the name of "Free China."

Chungking, a wartime capital

The Japanese captured many cities. But the interior of China, the great China that lay back of the seacoast, was still free. Chiang Kai-shek set up his capital at Chungking, far in the interior. Find Chungking on the map on page 118.

Many Chinese chose to leave their homes in eastern China and go west rather than live under Japanese government. Teachers and students carried away the



books of their universities and set up their schools again in places which had never before seen books or teachers. The Chinese took the machinery of their mills. They tore up railroads and carted westward not only locomotives and cars, but even the rails and the ties. Fifty or sixty million people made this great move.

In the upper valley of the Yangtze, a rich and beautiful region with good climate stretched a thousand miles in every direction. Here New China found a home. Since the region was cut off from the ocean, Chiang Kai-shek opened roads to the south and west. One of these roads, leading west through Turkestan, was the old Silk Road. Over this road camel caravans, loaded with silk, jade, and lacquered goods, had moved toward Europe in old Roman days. Chiang sent his engineers throughout central China to find coal, iron, copper, and oil.

The sympathies of Britain and the United States were with Chiang and the brave Chinese people, struggling with poor equipment against the well-prepared Japanese. During World War II the Allied Nations, particularly the United States, sent help to China. But the lack of roads and railroads made it difficult to reach the new capital. Our airmen flew supplies in by air. Japanese planes bombed Chungking many times, but their armies did not reach the city. Thus New China lived on and grew stronger, not only in Chungking but in many other busy cities and towns.

NORTH CHINA

China is made up of two distinct regions, North China and South China. The dividing line is about halfway between the Yellow River and the Yangtze. A highland separates the two river valleys.

The people of North China

In some ways North China has played a more important part in the nation's history than South China. The Northerners are a sturdier people, taller and heavier, than the Southerners. Peking, the capital, was in the north, and men who wanted positions in the government had to have an education. For this reason the Northerners were better educated than the people of the South.

The Northerners travel more by land than do the Southerners. Because they live in a rather dry country, they use camels and donkeys. The dryness, however, changes suddenly to floods if the Yellow River happens to break through its dikes.

Climate and products of North China

North of the highland the climate is rather dry. The people who live there have to raise crops which grow quickly during the spring rains and which later on can stand long weeks of dry weather. Such crops are wheat, beans, *sorghum*, and *millet*. Sorghum and millet are grass-like plants that produce small, round seeds which can be eaten as food. There are many varieties of each of these plants, but all can get along with little rain.

Because of the long spells of dry weather, the North China region is generally yellow or brown in color. Dust usually lies deep in the roads or flies about in clouds. The scanty growth of grass there often turns brown early in summer. When the earth has a brown look, it means the crops are not growing. Indeed, the danger of starving to death frequently threatens the people of this northern region.

Wood is precious in North China. Through the years, the people of this region have cut down nearly all their trees

and have not replanted enough to take their place. Because of this great mistake there is little wood for burning. It is too valuable. Then, too, the rain which falls upon the hillsides runs off at once because there is no layer of leaves to hold the moisture. As a result, there are harmful floods, which destroy crops and take lives. Later, the dryness also causes damage.

When President Theodore Roosevelt saw photographs of the bare hills of China, he exclaimed: "We must not let this happen in our country." At once he made plans for the United States to take care of its beautiful and useful forests.

The winter winds of North China are strong and cold, yet the people have little or no fuel to heat their houses. How do the poor people keep warm?

First of all, they wear quilted cotton clothes, as thick as the comforter on your bed and heavier in weight. They wear the same clothes indoors and outdoors. Second, in each house is a *k'ang*, or brick

table, sometimes large enough to fill nearly half the living room. Inside is a fireplace from which openings lead through the *k'ang*. Anything that will burn—leaves, weeds, and stalks of crops—is used to make a fire. The *k'ang* does not give out great heat, but the bricks grow warm.

The *k'ang* is both a stove and a bed. On winter nights the family lie down on the *k'ang*. It is not a soft bed, but it is a warm bed for at least a part of the night. How would you like to have a *k'ang* as your bed?

The Great Wall of China

North of Peiping, from east to west, stretches a long wall known the world over as the Great Wall of China. The wall was built in early times to keep out the wild, wandering tribes of the north. It winds over mountains, up and down hills, sometimes making loops and bends. Later rulers of China extended the wall until it was more than two thousand miles long.

In this part of North China the hills look bare because there are few trees. Although the soil is fertile, the region lacks water. Farmers fear the long dry spells that are frequent here.

Melville Jacoby from Guillumette



Some of the green fields in this valley of South China are flooded rice paddies. Rice is the main crop and most important food in South China. So the many farmers of this warm and rainy region use every possible bit of land for raising this grain.



CNS Photo from Guillumette

This is the longest defensive wall in the world. To imagine what it is like, think of a wall between the United States and Canada stretching from Maine to the eastern border of Montana.

The eastern half of the Great Wall is the stronger part. It was built not long before Columbus sailed across the Atlantic. High, thick, and provided with many towers from which an approaching enemy could be seen, the wall served its purpose well for a long time. Nevertheless, the Mongols finally succeeded in coming into China. Later on, the Manchus, from Manchuria on the northeast, invaded China, seized its government, and held it for more than two hundred and fifty years. The Manchus made the conquered Chinese wear their hair in pigtails.

Peking, the capital of China

For many years every educated Chinese thought of Peking as we think of our capital, Washington. He admired it and hoped to see it some day. After China became a republic, with its capital at Nanking, the name of Peking was changed to Peiping.

All towns of any size in China are walled. Peiping has more walls than most, for it has four distinct parts. It is built, city within city, each surrounded by its own walls. All together, it houses about as many people as live in Los Angeles.

Recently, when a Communist government seized power in China, Peiping was again made the capital. Its ancient name of Peking was restored.

Tientsin, on the Grand Canal

Southeast of the capital, at the northern end of the Grand Canal, stands Tientsin. Tientsin, one of China's largest cities, is about the same size as Peking. Tientsin is also located on a river through whose mouth ships can sail from the ocean to the heart of the city. Through this sea-port most of the trade of Peiping and a large surrounding district is carried on.

SOUTH CHINA

Moving southward across the mountains we reach the Yangtze Valley and are in South China. Here the great cities are Nanking and Hankow.



Screen Traveler from Gendreau

These women are shopping on a street crowded with stores. The long, straight dresses and trousers and jackets are Chinese costumes.

The people of South China

As a rule, the people of South China are smaller in stature than those of North China. They speak a language which the North Chinese cannot understand. For instance, *ho* in North Chinese means "river," so we have the Hwang Ho, or Yellow River. In South China the word for "river" is *kiang*. Many of the Chinese who have come to the United States are from Canton and the region around it.

Climate and products of South China

South China is called "green China" because its climate is warm and rainy. The Yangtze is its greatest river. Just south of that river begins the region in which ice never forms. South China receives the monsoon winds (see page 91), bringing plentiful rain, which is just what rice needs. At the sight of rice fields the traveler knows that he is entering South China. In the North the usual food of the Chinese

worker is a bowl of noodles made from wheat or millet, but the worker of the south has instead a bowl of rice.

Rice produces more food to the acre than does wheat, but it needs much more hand labor. Rice plants are raised in a seed bed, where they grow as thickly as blades of grass. The young plants are carefully uprooted and taken to the rice fields, where they are set out by hand in the mud and water. Bare-legged men and women work under the blazing sun or in the pelting rain. All the labor in the rice fields—the hoeing, the harvesting, and the threshing—is done by hand.

Because of its favorable climate, where rice can be raised, South China has more people than North China. Most of the people of North China are poor and often go hungry. The people of South China are poor also, but they usually have enough to eat because of better crops. Especially in the eastern part of South China, the old and long-settled region, every bit of land is precious.

South China's waterways

South China has many waterways. The roads in China have always been poor. Few of them are paved. Because of this the Chinese make great use of their rivers and canals, especially in the south where there is plenty of rain. China is said to have more small boats carrying freight and passengers than all the rest of the world put together. There are millions of boatmen on the waterways of South China.

On the ocean and its bays, as well as on the broad Yangtze, move the big sailing vessels known as *junks*, with their bamboo sails. The coast of North China is low and has few good harbors. The coast of South

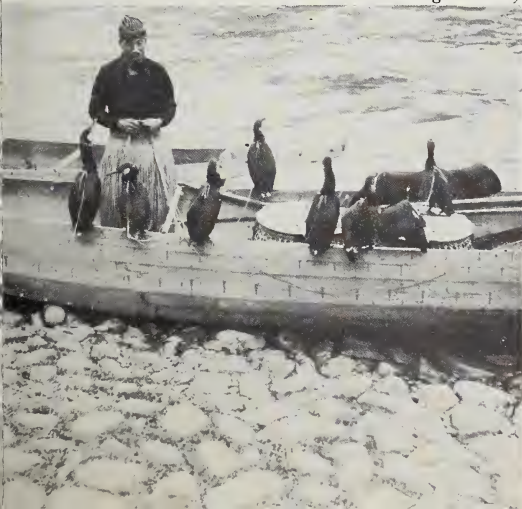
China is high and rocky and has many good harbors. Many of the junks of South China are trim and swift enough to make long sea voyages. A junk can hold a great amount of goods. On the bows of the junks, eyes are painted. The Chinese sailors believe that if a ship has no eyes it cannot see where to go.

Boats swarm on the smaller streams and the canals. They carry freight for long distances. The fishermen cast their nets from boats. Some of the fishermen have trained large, black birds, called *cormorants*, to catch fish for them. The cormorants sit solemnly on the edge of the boat waiting their turn to dive. Each bird knows his name or number. When his turn comes, he swoops down and seizes a fish from the water below. He wears a ring around his neck to prevent him from swallowing the fish. The bird keeps the fish in his mouth until his owner takes it away from him and tosses it into a basket. When enough fish have been caught, the cormorants are given their share.

The owners of many boats dig up the rich mud from the bottom of the water-

Cormorants are used by fishermen in both China and Japan. Here the birds are tied with cords as they perch on the edge of the fishing boat.

Ewing Galloway



ways. They carry their loads of mud in baskets to their fields and spread it on the land. Throughout its long history China has made good use of its waterways.

The domestic animals of South China

South China uses only a few kinds of domestic animals. In the rice fields, nearly up to his waist in water, the farmer plows with the aid of the water buffalo. These buffaloes turn wheels which bring fresh supplies of water, for rice needs a constant flow of slow-moving muddy water.

Along the waterways swim millions of ducks. Ducks can find food where people cannot. In China there are no cowboys, but there are many "duckboys." The duckboy spends his time tending flocks of ducks or driving them to market. He has a whip with a long lash, and he uses it with skill to punish any stubborn bird.

Pigs roam about freely. They are not fed on skim milk, on corn, or on other good food, as they are in many parts of the United States. Instead they eat roots, weeds, and any leftovers that people will not eat. How they manage to live is hard to understand, but pork continues to be one of the Chinese foods.

The Chinese do not care much for dogs and cats as pets. They like to keep birds in cages, perhaps because birds eat less and take up less room than other pets. Chinese gentlemen often take their birds out for an airing in their cages. Crickets are also favorite pets and are kept in little bamboo boxes.

Uses of the tung tree

For many years the United States has been buying "Chinese wood oil." This oil is made from the nuts of the tung tree, which grows in South China. No other oil has

quite the same qualities. Paint or varnish, mixed with *tung oil*, dries very quickly. Paint made with this oil also has a tough surface which is waterproof and will not crack under heat. Even acid will not eat through a good coat of this oil. From the black settlings of the oil, India ink can be made.

Until the Chinese Communists gained control of the government the United States had been buying more and more tung oil from China each year. When our supplies of this oil were cut off many kinds of business were interfered with. Fortunately, in our own gulf states, tung trees had been set out in several places. We now raise a small part of the tung oil we need. But our climate along the gulf is not quite mild enough in winter for the tung tree to

These girls in a Chinese silk factory sort cocoons, looking like small eggs, into three grades — golden, light yellow, and white.

Ewing Galloway



do well. Since we can no longer secure tung oil from China, our industries developed other kinds of drying oils. Today we no longer need China's tung oil.

The importance of the mulberry tree

The mulberry tree is important in silk raising. Along the slopes of the hills above the rice fields countless mulberry trees can be seen in many regions of China. They look more like scrubby bushes than like trees. The Chinese keep them trimmed down to the height of a man. Mulberry leaves are the silkworm's favorite food.

In many a Chinese home silkworms are grown. The worms, lying on large trays, eat almost all the time, day and night. Several times during the twenty-four hours the worms must be given fresh mulberry leaves, and their trays must be cleaned. It is the business of the women and young girls to pick the leaves and to care for the trays.

When the worms stop feeding, they begin to spin a long silk thread round and round their bodies, forming a cocoon. If left alone, the worm will change into a moth and eat its way out of the cocoon. But in so doing, it cuts the thread and spoils the silk. For this reason the worm inside the cocoon must be killed as soon as it has spun its silk. To kill the worm the cocoon is placed in a hot oven, or in a steam bath. Then the silk thread must be carefully unwound from the cocoon. Silk is a valuable product. Because of the silkworm's liking for mulberry leaves mulberry trees are grown wherever silk is produced.

The importance of tea

For many years almost the only product that China exported to Europe and America was tea. The tea plant is really a tree,



Metropolitan Museum of Art

Working with silk has long been an art in China. The Chinese wove beautiful designs of birds, flowers, and animals into silk cloth. Sometimes their weaving told a story. So much work went into costumes like those shown here that only wealthy Chinese people could buy them.

but the Chinese keep it cut low like a bush so that its leaves can be picked easily. For its best growth it needs heat and rain, such as it has in South China, but it likes hillsides or mountain slopes, not the rice lowlands.

Tea drinking is a healthful custom in China, where there is little pure drinking water. For a very long time the Chinese have been fond of tea. In order to make good tea, the water must be boiling. Boiling kills germs. Those who found tea drinking pleasant also found that they were more likely to keep well.

China probably produces more tea than any other country, but most of it is used at home. The Chinese drink tea on all occa-

sions. Most Chinese tea is green tea, stronger than the black tea from Ceylon and India. Tea becomes green or black according to the method of manufacture.

Shanghai, South China's greatest port

On a mud flat along a small river which flows into the mouth of the Yangtze lies Shanghai. Shanghai is the largest city in China and one of the largest in the world. It lies in about the same latitude as Jacksonville, Florida. Shanghai, which once handled all the trade of the wide Yangtze River valley, developed into a great city. Before World War II, when the Japanese seized the city, more steamships visited it than any other Chinese port.

PICTURE MAP of CHINA



The pictures on this map of China show where some of China's most important products come from.

The map shows you that tea, rice, and tung oil come from the south. Wheat, millet, and soybeans are products of the north.

There are also pictures to represent iron and coal. As yet China does not produce large amounts of these minerals but there are important supplies of them in the earth.

There are some pictures on the map which are not products. But each of them, the rickshaw, the junk, or the pagoda, will suggest to you something you might expect to see in China.

Look carefully at all the drawings on the picture maps. You should be able to recognize some of them on later maps where they may not be labeled.

In Shanghai lived many foreigners, attracted by its trade and by other ways of making money. For many years part of Shanghai was governed by foreign nations and policed by officers who represented these foreign countries. Most of the Europeans lived in the *International Settlement*, as it was called. But large numbers of Chinese lived in the International Settlement area as well. The clean riverfront avenue, called the Bund, with its great modern buildings, looked like a European city. But back of that were more than three million Chinese living

their lives in the Chinese way. After World War II the Chinese regained control of the city.

The island of Hong Kong

Many people think of Hong Kong as a city, but it is not a city. Instead it is a rocky island at the mouth of Si (or West) River. Hong Kong is also used to mean not only this island but also a district on the mainland.

Hong Kong is the seat of an important British colony. The British, who secured Hong Kong about one hundred years ago,

kept it until the Japanese drove them out in 1942. The beautiful city on the island is called Victoria. Its fine harbor forms the southern gateway to China. The city rises in a series of tree-covered shelves to the topmost hill, called the Peak. The Japanese were forced to give up Hong Kong at the end of World War II. The British took control again.

The river port of Canton

Nearly a hundred miles inland from Hong Kong, on a waterway called the Pearl River, is Canton. This city is about twice the size of St. Louis. At one time all Chinese trade with Europe and the United States was carried on by merchants in Canton. Now the harbor of Canton is so shallow that ocean steamships cannot reach the city. The business offices for foreign trade moved to Victoria. However, most of the goods coming in and going out of the Si Valley pass through Canton as well as through Victoria.

Canton is a city of canals. Along these canals countless boats move. Bangkok, as we have learned, has many boat dwellers,

but Canton has still more. It is believed that they number more than one hundred thousand. Foreigners who go into the old part of Canton need a guide, for in these narrow, crooked streets they would soon lose themselves. But in the modern sections there are broad, straight avenues.

CHINA'S GOVERNMENT TODAY

For many hundreds of years China's main trouble was that the Chinese did not think of themselves as a nation. They thought of themselves as belonging to a family, or perhaps as belonging to their own town or city. But they did not think of China as a great nation to which each Chinese citizen belonged and for which he could do his part.

Even after China became a republic the Chinese were not united. Military officers, called war lords, raised armies and fought, and kept the people divided.

During World War II, because of the trouble brought by the Japanese, people from all parts of China mingled together. To resist the Japanese, the people united and China rose as a nation.

Ewing Galloway

This picture of the Bund in Shanghai would look like any large American city if it were not for the Chinese rickshas. Fourth largest city in the world, Shanghai is also China's greatest port.





Ewing Galloway

Large ships cannot enter the harbor of Canton, but thousands of small boats bring rice, tea, and other products from the near-by plains. Many of the people who live in houseboats here on the Pearl River earn a living by carrying passengers and goods or have floating stores or hotels.

As we consider China today, it is important to remember that the Chinese have suffered great hardships for many years. They were at war with the Japanese continuously from 1937 until the end of World War II.

Before that, in 1911, a group of Chinese, led by Sun Yat-sen, had overthrown the empire and set up a republic. This group called themselves the Nationalists. But all the Chinese did not believe in the new republic, and there was much unrest. Sun Yat-sen failed to unite China.

Thus the people of China endured revolution and war for a period of more than thirty years. After such hardships the Chinese people were tired and unhappy. The young Chinese had never known anything except war.

The rise of the Communists

After World War II there was more fighting. Civil war broke out between the government forces, called the Nationalists, and groups of Chinese *Communists* from North China. These men were called Communists because they believed in the kind of government which had been set up by Communists in Russia. You will learn about the Russian Communists later on in this book.

During the war the Chinese Communists had won the support of the farmers in North China. Most of these farmers were very poor. Life had always been hard for them. The Communists said that they would break up the large areas of land belonging to the war lords and give it to the farmers. The farmers believed the

Communist promises to help them. Many people in China did not like the Communists, but they did not work together to defeat them.

The defeat of the Nationalist armies

After a time the Communist armies began to gain victories. The Nationalist armies were pushed back farther and farther as the Communists captured important cities and seaports. Chiang Kai-shek, who had led the Nationalists, was forced to resign. But the new Nationalist leaders could not stop the Communists either. Soon the capital at Nanking fell. The Communists then set up their own government. The Nationalist government moved to Chungking, a city in the interior of China.

Before long Chungking too fell, and the Nationalist armies were forced to give China to the Communists. The Nationalists then moved to the island of Formosa, off the coast of China (now called Tai-

wan). Chiang Kai-shek again became the Nationalist leader.

Communist China and the Korean War

The United States did not approve of the way the Chinese Communists conducted their affairs. They put many persons from other lands into prison, including missionaries and teachers. They did not allow people to enter China. They are reported to have killed or sent to slave labor camps millions of Chinese who did not wish to become Communists. For these reasons the United States was not friendly to Communist China. We refuse to consider it the rightful government of China.

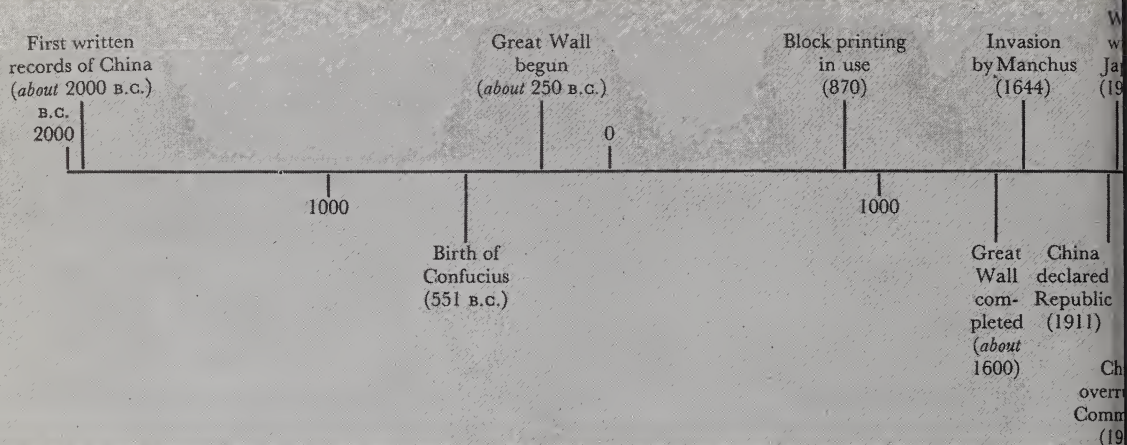
In 1950 Communist China sent thousands of its soldiers to fight the United States and other nations of the United Nations who were trying to protect the independence of South Korea. This action increased the bitterness of feeling between the governments of the United States and of Communist China.

Ewing Galloway

This Chinese woman keeps her *sampan*, or river boat, as neat and clean as hands can make it. Many Chinese have no home other than their small boat and spend their whole lives on the water. There are probably more boats in China than in any country in the world.



Time-Line: China (2000 B.C.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words and Terms You Should Know

cocoon	porcelain	war lords
junk	tung oil	ancestor worship
millet	sorghum	puppet government
lacquer	cormorant	open-door policy
plastics	Kuomintang	International Settlement
bamboo	Communist	

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 17. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

- Oil made from the nut of the tung tree used in paint or varnish
- Chinese generals whose armies took what they needed in conquered areas
- A government whose leaders do what they are told by a foreign government
- The juice of a tree used to give a smooth, hard surface to wood
- One who believes in the kind of government of the Soviet Union and of China
- A fine, thin kind of chinaware
- Opening ports for trade to all nations
- A giant, treelike grass used in building, for furniture, and for other purposes

- The National People's Party
- Light, strong materials made from other chemically treated materials
- A grasslike plant that produces small seeds that are good for food
- Another grasslike plant that produces seeds that are good for food
- A large Chinese river boat
- The European section of Shanghai
- A large bird trained to catch fish
- The wrapping of threads that the silk-worm spins about itself
- A religion in which a person honors his forefathers

Can You Answer These?

- What do we know about early China?
- In what river valley did civilization in China first develop?
- What rivers does the Grand Canal of China connect? How long is the canal?
- Who was Confucius? What did he teach?
- In what way did ancestor worship cause China to become a backward nation?
- How do the Chinese use the soybean?
- Why are mulberry trees raised in China?

8. Name some of China's gifts to the world.
9. What two early Chinese inventions made paper money possible?

Learning from Maps

1. During World War II it was difficult to obtain three valuable products from the Far East. These were rubber, tin, and tung oil. Look at the two picture maps and find which countries produce them.
2. Locate Pakistan on the map of India. Why is it divided into two parts?
3. Find the Great Wall on the map of China. About how long is it?

Using a Time-Line

Continue the time-line that you began in Unit 3. Did any important events in this unit happen about the same time as events on the time-lines for Unit 3?

Making an Outline

An outline is a list of the different parts, or headings, of a subject. It helps you to see the plan of a book, or a unit, or a part of a unit. An outline also helps you remember materials. Below is an outline of the first part of Unit 4. Copy it, reread the text, and complete the outline.

- I. The Land of India
 - A. The Geography of India
 1. India, a land of contrasts
 - 2.
 - B. The Early History of India
 - 1.
 - 2.
 - C. The Caste System
 - 1.
 - 2.
- II. Ancient India's Gifts to the World
 - A. A New Religion
 - 1.
 - 2.
 - B. Other Gifts of India
 - 1.
 - 2.

III. Through the Crowded India of Today

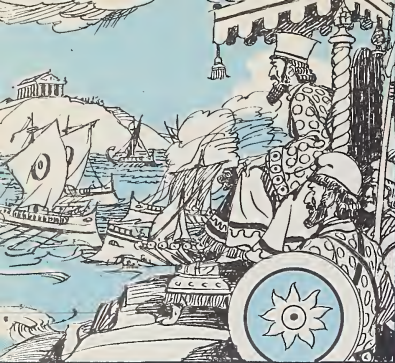
- A. A Trip through India
 - 1.
 - 2.
 - And so on
- B. India in Recent Times
 - 1.
 - 2.
 - 3.

Interesting Things to Do

1. Collect examples of products that are grown or made in Southeast Asia. Arrange them as an exhibit. Include rice, rubber, tin, wood, and others.
2. Find pictures of Chinese art in magazines or books. Show them in class.
3. Prepare a list of words derived from names of places. In the last unit you were introduced to *muslin*, *damask*, *mocha*, and *Bible*. Now look up the word *madras* in a dictionary and add it to your list.
4. If you like to read, you will find Jean Bothwell's books on India exciting. *The Fables of India*, by Joseph Gaer, is a collection of Indian beast fables. Kurt Wiese's *You Can Write Chinese* explains Chinese writing. Read one of these and report to the class.

Things to Think About

1. In this unit you read how President Theodore Roosevelt, looking at pictures of China's bare, treeless hills said, "We must not let this happen in our country." Unfortunately, many of our forests were cut down in our early history. Find out how this happened. What is being done for our forests today?
2. During World War II artificial, or man-made, rubber and silk (in the form of rayon) were used instead of the natural materials. What happened to the market for these artificial materials after the war? Do such materials ever take the place of natural ones?



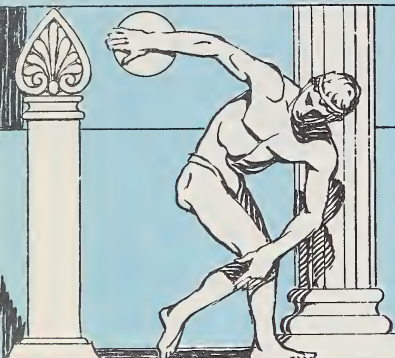
The Persian king Xerxes viewing the Battle of Salamis—480 B.C.



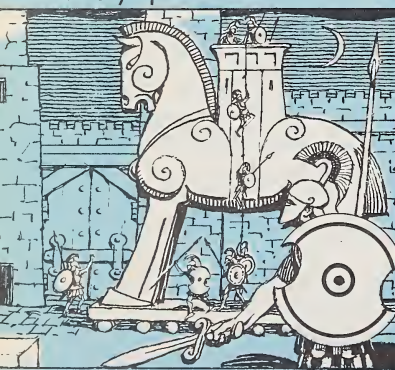
Socrates pleading his own case before an Athens jury—399 B.C.



Alexander the Great starting out to conquer Persia—334 B.C.



First Olympic Games—776 B.C.



The Trojan War—about 1100 B.C.



Greece and the Balkans

5.

If you look at the map on page 145, you will see three peninsulas extending south into the Mediterranean. One is at the western end of that sea, another in the center, and the third at the eastern end. The third peninsula is called the Balkan Peninsula, because the Balkan Mountains are its most important range. The word *balkan* in Turkish means “mountains.” At the southern tip of the Balkan Peninsula is a mass of land which looks like an arm with the fingers of the hand pointing south. This is the peninsula of Greece.

To the east of the Balkan Peninsula is the Black Sea. On the west is the Adriatic Sea. To the southeast is the Aegean, and on the southwest is the Ionian Sea. These bodies of water are arms of the great Mediterranean Sea.

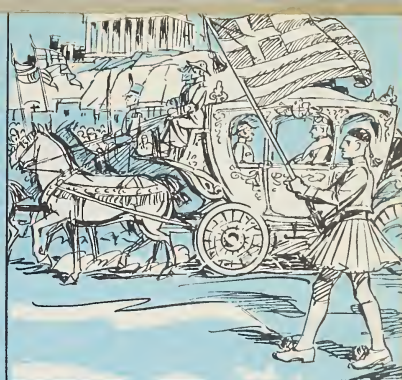
Three highways cross one another on the peninsula. On them are three im-



Roman legions completing the conquest of Greece—146 B.C.



Ottoman Turks taking over the Balkan lands—about 1400 A.D.



Greek independence celebrated and the new king crowned—1833

Greece and Its Neighbors

important cities: Belgrade on the north, Istanbul on the east, and Salonika on the southeast.

Look again at the map. Note that Belgrade is on the Danube River. This is a good location because ships can travel downstream to the Black Sea and upstream far into Central Europe. Istanbul, once known as Constantinople, also has a fine position on the waterway leading from the Black Sea to the Aegean. On the southeast Salonika is the seaport for the central part of the peninsula.

The Balkan Peninsula is the home of Greece, Albania, Yugoslavia, and Bulgaria. It also includes European Turkey, and part of Rumania. These six countries are called the Balkan countries, or often just the Balkans.

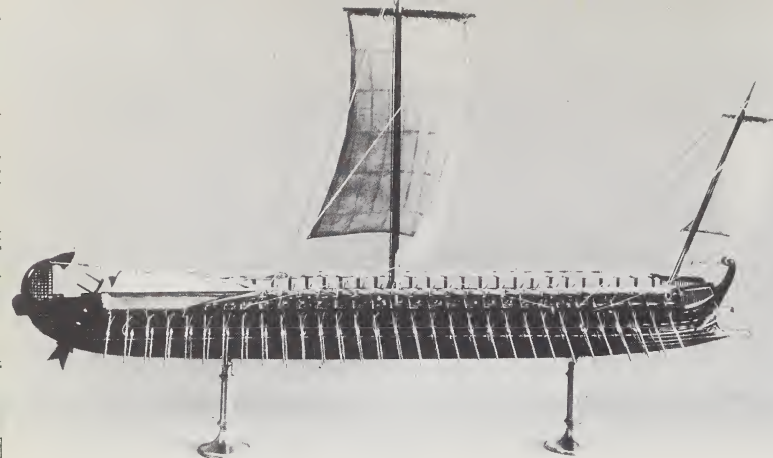
Through the northern part of the Balkan Peninsula flows the mighty Danube.

Along the Danube are fertile plains, but south of the river the mountains begin.

In the days when the peoples of northern Europe were still primitive, Greece was highly civilized. We owe a great debt to ancient Greece for its art, literature, and government. So we shall study ancient Greece carefully and then learn about Greece and the other Balkan countries as they are today.

Our study of Greece and other Balkan lands will answer such question as:

1. Who were the ancient Greeks, and how did the land of Greece affect them?
2. How did Athens become the leading city in Greece? Who were the conquerors of Greece?
3. Why do we remember ancient Greece?
4. What is modern Greece like?
5. What are the Balkans like today?



This model of a Greek ship, called a *trireme*, has both sails and oars. The oars were the usual form of power because the sails could only be used when the wind was coming from directly behind the ship.

Gendreau

THE GREEKS AND THEIR LAND

Our study of ancient Greece begins with the story of the fair-skinned northern barbarians who rode into the Greek peninsula and made their way south. They conquered the people living there and learned from them better ways of living, especially the use of ships. Then they sailed southward, crossing the Aegean Sea, until they reached the island of Crete.

EARLY TIMES IN AEGEAN LANDS

We have learned that the people of Crete had a fine civilization in early times. We cannot read the writing that the people of Crete left on their clay tablets. But we know that they were good sailors, traders, and skilled workers. The king's palace at Knossos had terraces to admit light and air, fine columns, a grand staircase, and running water in the bathrooms. The kings of Knossos ruled an empire in the eastern Mediterranean.

The fall of Knossos

About the year 1400 B.C. misfortune fell upon the king of Knossos and his city. The palace and many of the houses were

burned by an enemy from another land. So sudden was their attack that many had to leave their work and flee. Some people think these raiders were barbarians from the peninsula of Greece. The use of ships had enabled them to destroy the city of Knossos. It also enabled them to destroy the famous city of Troy.

The coming of the Greeks

About the time Knossos was destroyed many tribes migrated southward.

By the year 1000 B.C. the Greek peninsula and the islands of Aegean, including Crete, were occupied by the new people. They were fair-skinned and blue-eyed. We call them Greeks, but they spoke of themselves as Hellenes. The land which we call Greece, they called Hellas. The Hellenes learned much from their neighbors. But they were an intelligent people, and they developed a fine civilization of their own. The Hellenes were really the first Western people. That is, in their thinking they were much like the people who now live in western Europe and the United States.

As we study the Hellenes, we shall find much to admire in their government, citizenship, art, and science. In all these ways they were far ahead of the other peoples we have studied. They created much that has become a part of our life today.

HOW GREECE DEVELOPED

The land of Greece shaped Greek life. The map of Greece (page 158) shows many bays and a ragged coastline. No spot in Greece is more than forty miles from the sea. It is not strange that the Greeks became a seafaring people.

Notice that the mountains on the north extend into every part of the peninsula. Only one fifth of Greece can be farmed. Small areas are walled off from each other by rocky barriers. Would these barriers be likely to unite the Greeks or keep them apart?

Greece has little fertile land. The land in the plains can be used for grain. But the woods that once covered the upper slopes of the mountains have been cut away, and only bare rock remains. On the lower slopes sheep and goats graze. During the dry Mediterranean summer, when grass does not grow well, even these

animals have a hard time to get food. They move about, seeking pasture. This keeps the shepherds and sheep dogs busy watching them. On the hillsides grow many olive trees. Their fruit yields a rich, sweet oil.

As you study Greece, keep three things in mind—the irregular, rocky coast, the mountain walls dividing the land, and the lack of fertile soil. This will help you understand the life of the Greeks in the past and at present.

The Greek city-states

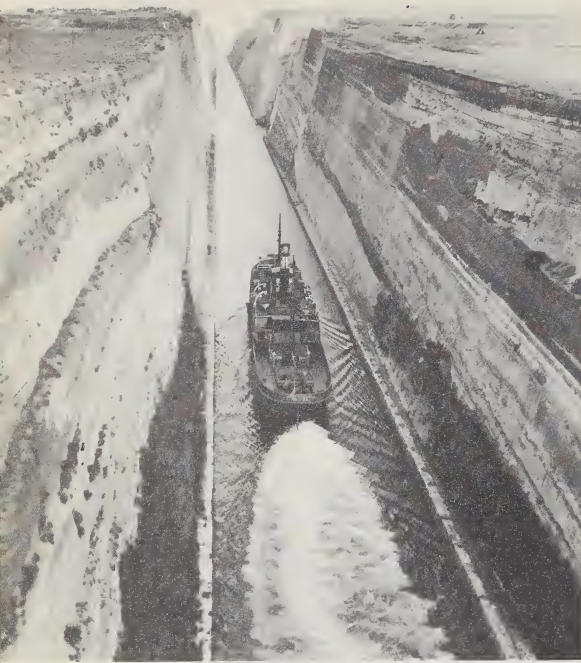
The barbarians from the north invaded all Greece. When they learned to live with the people already there, Greece developed into a land of a hundred or more little city-states. Each had its own independent government. The city-states were separated by mountains.

Every Greek loved his city. Travel was difficult. People in one city-state did not often visit people of other states. Because the cities were so separated, they were likely to be suspicious of one another. Ancient Greece was made up of many small city-states. There never was a Greek nation.

A rocky mountain barrier walls off a plain in southern Greece. The many mountain ranges which cut off communication and the poor soil of most of the country have held back progress in Greece.

Bischof from Three Lions





James Sawders-Combine

A canal has been cut across the isthmus which lies west of Athens, separating northern and southern Greece. Although the canal was built for trade it is too narrow for large ships.

In spite of their lack of union, they were proud to be Hellenes. The Hellenes had a beautiful, musical language. Their language differed a little from city to city, but they could understand one another. Though the Greeks had a common language, they could not unite. The mountains kept them apart.

The religion of the Greeks

The Greeks not only had a common language, but they also believed in the same gods. These gods and goddesses, the Greeks thought, lived on the top of Mount Olympus, in the northern part of Greece.

Zeus was the father-god of this group who dwelled on Mount Olympus. He was powerful, but he had a difficult task to

keep his strange family in order. Among Zeus's family were Ares, god of battle; Apollo, god of sunlight and music; and Athena, goddess of wisdom.

The Greeks pictured their gods as beings with supernatural powers. That is, the gods of Olympus were supermen and superwomen. They protected those they liked and did harm to those they disliked. The Greeks thought it well, therefore, to keep on good terms with their gods and goddesses. They offered gifts to them in their temples and held festivals in their honor.

Greek settlements in other lands

The land of Greece was beautiful and seemed to say to the people, "Stay at home." But the sea, which was at their door, seemed to say, "Try a voyage." On the Aegean Sea were hundreds of islands.

The Greeks learned to build ships like those of the Phoenicians. They set out during the summer, going from one port to another. As the years went by, the Greeks reached all the islands in the Aegean. They settled on the islands and across the Aegean in Asia Minor (or "little Asia"). There they learned the ways of the civilized Middle East. Near the Black Sea they founded Byzantium, now known as Istanbul.

To the west of Greece is Italy, shaped like a boot with the island of Sicily like a football at the toe. The Greeks explored this land, and later colonists began to settle in Italy. The town of Naples was founded. Its Greek name was Neapolis, or "New Town." On the island of Sicily was the settlement of Syracuse, which became a very fine city. Marseille, the largest Mediterranean seaport of France today, was once the Greek city Massilia.

EUROPE

Plains
Plateaus
Hills
Mountains

Capitals of Countries

One inch stands for 360 miles

BELG. = Belgium
LUX. = Luxembourg
NETH. = Netherlands
SWITZ. = Switzerland

Warm ocean currents
Cold ocean currents

145



EUROPE

Plains
Plateaus
Hills
Mountains

Capitals of Countries

One inch stands for 360 miles

0 360

BELG. = Belgium
LUX. = Luxembourg
NETH. = Netherlands
SWITZ. = Switzerland

Warm ocean currents
Cold ocean currents

ATLANTIC OCEAN

ATLANTIC DRIFT

NORTH ATLANTIC DRIFT

145

EUROPE

Plains
Plateaus
Hills
Mountains

Capitals of Countries

One inch stands for 360 miles

0 360

BELG. = Belgium
LUX. = Luxembourg
NETH. = Netherlands
SWITZ. = Switzerland

Warm ocean currents
Cold ocean currents

ATLANTIC OCEAN

ATLANTIC DRIFT

NORTH ATLANTIC DRIFT

145

EUROPE

Plains
Plateaus
Hills
Mountains

Capitals of Countries

One inch stands for 360 miles

BELG. = Belgium
LUX. = Luxembourg
NETH. = Netherlands
SWITZ. = Switzerland

Warm ocean currents
Cold ocean currents

ATLANTIC OCEAN

ATLANTIC DRIFT

145

Greek ships and Greek traders proved even better than the Phoenicians at sailing and trading.

THE OLYMPIC GAMES

The Greeks held many sacred festivals, which were holidays for the people. Offerings were made to the gods, and athletic contests were held.

How the games started

Some of the festivals became so popular that visitors from many parts of Greece took part. The greatest of these festivals was held every four years at Olympia, in western Greece, honoring Zeus. The *Olympic games* were held for more than a thousand years, until Greece came under the rule of Rome.

How the games were held

A young man who wished to take part in the games at Olympia first proved his ability in contests in his own district. If he passed these, he received special training for ten months before the games.

The Olympic games lasted five days. There were long and short races. Two-horse and four-horse chariot races were an exciting part of the program. Boxing was popular, but there was no fighting by rounds. The rivals kept fighting until one was exhausted or knocked out.

In order that the young men might display all-round strength and skill, the managers of the games arranged a five-part contest. Each athlete in this contest had to take part in the broad jump, javelin casting, the two-hundred-yard dash, the wrestling match, and throwing the *discus*. A discus was a circular plate of stone or metal. When a young man had won three out of five contests, he was the winner.

At the end of five days the winners received prizes. What do you think was their reward? Just a wreath of leaves, from a sacred olive tree which grew behind the temple of Zeus. However, when the athlete reached home, banquets celebrated his victory. Statues of him were made. Poets wrote in his praise. Often he received a large sum of money from his home city.

During the month of the Olympic games the priests commanded that there be peace. Nothing must interfere with the festival. Thus people from widely separated cities could meet in a friendly fashion. The games helped draw the Greeks together.

The Olympic games today

In the year 1896 the Olympic games started again. Athletes from many nations took part in them. It was hoped that the games would make nations more friendly. Olympic games were held in France, the United States, England, Sweden, Belgium, Holland, and Germany. During the world wars of the twentieth

An ancient Greek pottery maker made this odd drinking cup in the shape of a horse's head.

British Museum



A victor in the Olympic games returns in triumph to his native town. The townspeople welcome him and present him with olive wreaths in token of his recent victory at Olympia.



Bettmann Archive

century the Olympic games were not held. But in peacetime the games were started once again.

Track and field meets held by schools today remind us of the Greek games that encouraged men to be strong.

THE IMPORTANCE OF ATHENS

Among the city-states of Greece were two of great importance, Sparta and Athens. Sparta was in the south. Athens was northeast of Sparta.

GREEK WAYS OF LIVING

Each city-state developed its own customs and had its own ways of governing itself. But Athens and Sparta had very different ways of living.

Life in ancient Sparta

In Sparta the soldiers ruled. Only the soldiers had a part in the government. Other people managed the farms, carried on various trades, and took orders from the soldiers. Because there were many servants and laborers to do the work, the Spartan warriors could spend all their time on military matters.

The Spartans had little desire to read or write. They had no art and no litera-

ture. Their thoughts were on keeping themselves fit for warfare. The Spartan boy learned to endure hardship and pain without complaint. He wore no shoes, and he wore only a single garment in winter as well as in summer. For his food he depended on what he could beg or steal. He was taught to steal and was punished only if caught. If a slave seemed too intelligent, the Spartans killed him. Sparta conquered a number of the other city-states. But an Athenian wrote, "Other states admired Sparta for her power, but no others wished to be like her."

Life in ancient Athens

The customs of Athens differed greatly from those of Sparta. The Athenians practiced athletics not to fit themselves for battle but to develop their bodies and enjoy sports. They did, however, learn to be good soldiers who could



F. G. Mayer, New York

This ancient Greek vase was made during the period when the Greeks made their finest pottery. It shows a four-horse chariot race.

defend Athens in time of need. Athenian boys learned to read, write, and sing songs written by famous poets. The Athenian had a free and happy life. Even Athenian slaves were well treated.

Athenians preferred to elect their rulers. Sometimes a strong and determined man took over the government by force. The Greeks called such a ruler a *tyrant*. Some of these strong men governed well, but the sons who seized the power after them often ruled cruelly. In this way the word tyrant has come to mean a harsh and cruel person.

Other Greek city-states had customs resembling those of Athens with small differences. Athens, however, developed the highest civilization in Greece.

THE GOVERNMENT OF ATHENS

Almost every city of Greece had a government whose officials were elected. Such a government is called a *democracy* (meaning "people-rule"). Athens was one of the most democratic Greek cities. All the men over eighteen years of age met several times a year on a hillside in Athens to discuss the affairs of their city. They discussed matters freely and elected their leaders. In the United States we have a similar idea of government.

Solon's wise rule

The Greek leader who gave Athens its real beginning in democratic government was an army hero, named Solon. Solon was elected head of the government when times were so bad that a revolution threatened. Many small farmers had gone so deeply into debt that they had become slaves. Solon drafted new laws freeing all debt-slaves and forbade slavery for debts in the future. He canceled all debts on land. He also made it possible for poor men as well as nobles to sit in the Athenian assembly.

Thus Solon laid the broad foundation of democracy in Athens. From this you can see why Solon was called one of the Seven Wise Men of Greece.

Trial by jury

Solon improved the chances for justice by providing that anyone who had lost a lawsuit could have his case tried by a *jury*. A jury is a group of impartial persons who listen to both sides of a case and give their decision about it.

We who live in the United States have the right of *trial by jury*. The idea of the jury trial comes from Athens, but the Greek juries were different from our juries.

Instead of having twelve persons sitting in a courtroom to judge a case, Athens had a large number of persons seated on stone benches under the blue sky. If the case was an important one, there might be a hundred or more jurymen listening at the same time. When the arguments on both sides of the case had been heard, the jurymen voted in secret. Here was democracy practiced in a large way, in which citizens had a chance to do their part.

THE PERSIAN WARS

The Athenians came into conflict with the Persians, who had built up a great empire in western Asia and North Africa. The people of the Greek cities on the coast of Asia Minor did not forget they were Greeks. They traded with Greece and were eager for news from Greece. Even when Persia took over these cities, the Greeks living in them continued to feel like Greeks.

When the cities of Asia Minor rebelled against Persia, Athens sent ships to help them. So Darius, the Persian king, decided the Athenians must be punished for their part in the rebellion.

The defeat at Marathon

In 490 B.C. a Persian army landed at Marathon near Athens. Ten thousand Greeks, mostly Athenians, met these invaders. The Persians, with their sharp-shooting archers, were supposed to be unbeatable and had twice as many soldiers as the Greeks. When the Greeks rushed with their sharp spears against the Persians, the Persians broke and fled to their ships. This victory raised the confidence of the Greeks.

The news of the victory at Marathon was carried to Athens, twenty-two miles

away, by an Athenian soldier. The soldier ran the entire distance and died after delivering his message. The word *marathon* is now used to mean any long-distance race.

Athens captured by the Persians

Ten years later another Persian king, Xerxes, tried to defeat the Greeks. Xerxes gathered a large army and marched them into Europe over a bridge of boats across the narrow waterway near Byzantium. After a long journey the large army came into Greece. Many of the Greek cities surrendered without fighting. However,

Statues like this, showing a woman in long robes, were made long ago in Greece. They show how women dressed in ancient Greece.

F. G. Mayer, New York





This Greek family group is listening to one of the poems of Homer. Notice the papyrus scroll on which it is written. What other characteristics of ancient Greek ways of living can you see in the picture?

Culver Service

Athens and Sparta refused to give up without a struggle. The Persians overran the country and took Athens. But the Greek fleet, composed chiefly of Athenian vessels, sailed away to a near-by bay between the island of Salamis and the mainland.

The final defeat of the Persians

An able Athenian leader named Themistocles made a plan to save Greece. To carry out his plan he had to persuade the Persians to sail their fleet into the Bay of Salamis where the Greek ships were. He sent a man who pretended to be a deserter from the Athenians to the Persian admiral.

"The Athenians intend to sail away and escape," the Athenian said.

Hastily the Persian ships set sail and crowded into the bay to keep the Athenian ships from escaping. As soon as the Persians entered the bay, the Greeks attacked. Caught by surprise, the Persians could not resist the attack. On a golden throne on the heights overlooking the bay Xerxes, the Persian king, sat waiting for the defeat of the Greeks. He was sadly disappointed. By the end of the day the water was thick with the wrecks of Persian vessels.

Xerxes returned to Asia with most of his army. The remaining troops were ordered to march against Athens and burn it if it would not surrender. Still the Athenians would not give in, and the Persians burned the city. The next year, aided by the Spartan army, the Athenians defeated the Persians and drove them from Greece forever. Great was the glory of Athens, which had taken the chief part in the long struggle.

THE AGE OF PERICLES

After the war with Persia, Athens had peace for about fifty years. A young nobleman, named Pericles, became head of the Athenian government. Because Athens reached its highest development under Pericles, this period is called the Age of Pericles.

The Athenian League

Athens became the leader of the Greek cities. With Athens at their head about two hundred cities formed a league, or union, to protect themselves. The members of the Athenian League assembled a powerful fleet. Athens took yearly payments from the cities and built the ships.

The rebuilding of Athens

In the Age of Pericles, Athens, which had been burned by the Persians, was rebuilt. The hearts of all the Greeks felt freer. The peace which followed the war gave them a chance to carry out many new ideas. For a long time Greece had loved freedom and beauty. Now with Pericles as a leader, the Athenians set about making their city a beautiful one.

In the center of Athens, rising hundreds of feet above the narrow streets that surrounded it, was a steep hill. The top of this hill was called the Acropolis. On the Acropolis, under the direction of the artists and builders employed by Pericles, many fine temples were built. The Athenian citizen felt proud that his city had such beautiful public buildings.

The Parthenon, a Greek masterpiece

Greatest and finest of the public buildings on the Acropolis was the *Parthenon*,

a white marble temple to the goddess Athena. Graceful columns formed a porch around it. On the outside walls of the temple was a *frieze*, or band of carved marble, that went all around the building.

The pictures in the frieze showed Athenians as they moved in a procession to worship the goddess of Athens. So lovely was the frieze that the civilized world treasures today the fragments which remain and makes copies of its figures. Huge, sculptured figures in rich colors—red, gold, and blue—ornamented other parts of the building. The city of Nashville, Tennessee, has a copy of the original Greek Parthenon.

Greek sculptors were interested in creating beautiful statues. Their statues represented people with perfect bodies in graceful poses. Most of the statues made by the Greeks have been lost to the world. Those which do remain are the most beautiful of their kind ever made by man.

The Parthenon once looked like this. In one room stood a gold-and-ivory statue of Athena by the famous sculptor, Phidias. This picture shows a copy of the Parthenon in Nashville, Tennessee.

Gendreau



Athens, the birthplace of drama

The Athenians enjoyed plays. Their theater was on a hillside which had curved rows of stone seats facing the stage. In the morning they would see a *tragedy*, or serious play, showing the punishment which comes from doing wrong. In the afternoon the people would see a *comedy*, or amusing play. The Athenians liked both kinds of plays, but the tragedies, or serious plays, won higher prizes than comedies did.

In good weather Athenians spent much time outdoors. Rich men and workmen alike believed in having much leisure, or free time. Leisure to Athenians did not mean idleness. They discussed art and politics as eagerly as they engaged in sports. "A sound mind in a sound body" was the ideal of the Greeks.

THE FALL OF GREECE

Many fine Greek cities grew up on the shores of Asia Minor. The people of these cities traded with Athens and with the other cities on the mainland. They looked

In India a great and powerful Indian prince surrenders to the young Alexander the Great.

Brown Bros.



to Athens to protect them. Athens did so for a time, but the later leaders of Athens were not always wise or fair.

Instead of treating the other Greek cities justly, Athens took advantage of them. They were forced to pay whatever taxes were demanded. Finally, some of the Greek cities rebelled against Athens and its allies. After Athens was defeated, the cities kept on fighting among themselves until all were exhausted.

Conquest by Macedonia

About one hundred years after the death of Pericles, Philip, ruler of Macedonia, came from the north with his well-trained army and conquered Greece. When Philip died in 336 B.C., his son Alexander became king of Macedonia. By skillful use of the strong army his father had trained, Alexander kept Greece under his control and conquered the lands to the east as far as India. Alexander's boyhood teacher was Aristotle. Under this great teacher Alexander learned to like the Greeks. He spread Greek culture in all the lands that he conquered.

Conquest by Rome

Alexander's empire did not hold together after his death. Soon a new conqueror appeared on the Mediterranean. In 146 B.C. the armies of Rome, from the near-by peninsula of Italy, overran Greece. Greece lost its freedom and became a part of the Roman Empire.

GREECE IN MODERN TIMES

When the Turks (about whom we have read in Unit 3) advanced into Europe, they conquered Greece. But unlike many other people overrun by the Turks, the Greeks did not become Moslems like their



THE EMPIRE OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

At the height of Alexander's career his empire stretched from Greece to India. His ambition was to make Europe and Asia one country. But after Alexander's death his great empire was divided.

conquerors but kept their own religion. The Greeks were very unhappy under Turkish rule. They worked for freedom

unceasingly. Finally in 1829 Greece threw off the Turkish yoke. They established an independent nation under their own king.

GREECE'S GIFTS TO THE WORLD

The Greeks had strong bodies, skillful hands, inquiring minds, and a love of beauty. All these things helped them create a fine civilization.

SOME FAMOUS GREEKS

Some of the most influential people of the world lived in ancient Greece.

Homer, the blind poet

Homer, the blind poet, chanted his tales to the music of the lyre. From his two long story-poems, the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, we have learned much about the ancient Greeks, their myths, their history, and their ways of living. A long poem that

tells the story of a great hero and his stirring adventures is called an *epic*. Homer's epics delighted people of all ages from his time until the present.

Sappho, a woman poet

Sappho was another famous Greek poet. Only one of her poems has come down to us complete. We know her chiefly from the writings of other Greeks who admired her enough to quote from her works. Unlike Homer, whose poems were long and told a story, Sappho's poems were brief songs of love and nature. Sappho spent most of her life on one of the Greek islands, as head of a school for girls.

Sophocles, a writer of plays

The Greeks liked to go to plays. The greatest of their play writers was Sophocles. His plays were tragedies because they were on serious subjects. He was the first writer of plays to show how a person's actions can change his life. If misfortune comes, Sophocles showed that it is often because the person has made the wrong choices. Before this, men and women in Greek plays had been at the mercy of luck or fate. Because of his deep understanding of people Sophocles's plays seem natural and real today.

Aesop and his fables

Aesop is remembered for the *fables* he wrote. A fable is a short tale in which animals are the main characters. The animals usually have the power to talk. The fables teach lessons. In one of Aesop's fables a mouse persuades a lion not to kill him. Later the lion is captured and tied up by hunters. The mouse frees the lion by chewing the ropes that bind him. The lesson is: "Sometimes the weakest can help the strongest."

Socrates, a great teacher

One of the greatest teachers the world has ever known was a Greek named Socrates. Socrates taught people to seek truth as the most important thing in life. He thought that no person is really bad. He believed that goodness is based on knowledge and that wickedness is due to ignorance. But some people in Athens felt that Socrates's teachings were not good for the young men whom he taught. They brought charges against him. He was tried and condemned to death. The great teacher spent his last hours talking with his friends. Then, when night came, he drank



The Metropolitan Museum of Art

WINGED VICTORY OF SAMOTHRACE

This beautiful statue came from the Greek island of Samothrace in the Aegean Sea. It was found broken in pieces and was put together bit by bit. The head and the arms are still missing.

a cup of poison, which the Athenians used in executions. This caused his death.

Socrates was a seeker after truth. His beliefs did not die with him but were passed on through his pupils to the world.

Hippocrates, a famous doctor

In 400 B.C. there lived a man who became one of the world's most famous doctors. He was a Greek, and his name was Hippocrates. Before Hippocrates's time medicine was practiced only by the priests. The hospitals were located in the temples of the god of medicine. The priests in these hospitals often used charms to try to make people well. Sometimes they used strong drugs which did more harm than good.

Hippocrates showed that illness came from natural causes. He studied the effect of drugs on certain diseases, and he kept a record of what happened. In this way he and his followers knew what to do when others had the same disease. His students took a vow, called the Oath of Hippocrates, in which they pledged themselves to do all they could for the sick. For hundreds of years, medical students took this oath. In some schools they still do.

LOVE OF FREEDOM AND BEAUTY

Because the Greeks liked new ideas and loved beauty and freedom, they made the world a better place in which to live.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

jury	tyrant	Parthenon
comedy	frieze	democracy
tragedy	fable	Olympic Games
discus	marathon	trial by jury
epic		

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 13. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A short tale, in which animals talk and which teaches a lesson
2. Athletic contests held in ancient Greece and revived in modern times
3. A circular plate of stone or metal, thrown by athletes
4. In Greece a ruler who seized power; now, a cruel person with power
5. A government in which the people rule by electing their officials
6. A group of impartial persons who listen to both sides of a case and give their decision about it
7. A long-distance race run by an Athenian to announce a Greek victory

Democracy as a form of government was a gift of the Greeks. Citizens discussed public questions freely. They could vote for their officers and take actual part in governing. They were the first to have jury trials. They respected intelligence and encouraged people to express ideas.

To the Greeks life was something to be enjoyed. They liked poetry, art, and music. They saw beauty in the world about them and put that beauty into works of art and literature. Much of their literature and art is among the finest the world has ever known. For what they accomplished in art, literature, and government we owe much to the ancient Greeks.

8. A trial in which the guilt or innocence of an accused person is decided by a group of his equals
9. A serious play with an unhappy ending
10. The temple to the goddess Athena on the Acropolis at Athens
11. An amusing play
12. An ornamental band on a building
13. A long poem about a great hero

Can You Answer These?

1. Why were the Greeks a seafaring people?
2. Why was ancient Greece made up of many city-states?
3. In what ways were Spartans and Athenians alike? In what ways did they differ?
4. How did Solon improve democracy?
5. What two important battles did the Greeks win over the Persians?
6. What caused Athens to lose its importance? What happened to Greece soon afterward?
7. Why was Hippocrates famous?
8. In what ways did the ancient Greeks show that they loved freedom?
9. Describe two kinds of Greek plays.
10. What did Pericles do to help Athens?

LIFE IN GREECE TODAY

George and Alice Boyd, whom we met in India, visited Athens. They became the friends of two Greek children, Mavros and Zoe, who were eager to act as guides.

A VISIT TO ATHENS

The first place George and Alice wished to see was the Parthenon. They climbed the steep hill of the Acropolis.

The ruins of the Parthenon

When they reached the top of the hill, Alice said, "I'm surprised that so much of the Parthenon has been destroyed. Where are the beautiful sculptures?"

"The destruction took place a long time ago," Zoe answered. "Athens was captured by the Turks when they overran eastern Europe. Later the city-state of Venice, in Italy, fought the Turks. During the war the Turks used the Parthenon

to store their gunpowder. Then Venice attacked Athens and shelled the city from its fleet in the harbor. A shell exploded the powder in the Parthenon and ruined the wonderful building.

"The temple stood for a hundred years without being repaired," Zoe continued. "Then the British representative, who thought the beautiful art work should be taken care of, urged his government to buy it. The government did so, and many carvings from the temple were sent to England. I wish we had them back."

Piraeus, the seaport of Athens

Athens lies on a plain about five miles from the Aegean Sea. To carry on its ocean trade, Athens uses the port of Piraeus.

The four young people went to Piraeus. As they stood on the dock, Mavros said

The ruins of temples and of other buildings of ancient Athens stand on the Acropolis shown at the left. Buildings of the modern city of Athens are clustered around the base of this famous hill.

Ewing Galloway



A Greek farmer uses a primitive plow on his farm near a small village. Most Greek farmland is planted in vineyards or in olive and fruit trees.



Ewing Galloway

proudly, "Most of those ships are owned and manned by Greeks. See those bags of currants, barrels of olive oil, and boxes of raisins! Greek ships carry many of our products."

"Aren't currants and raisins the same?" George asked.

"Both are made from grapes," Mavros said. "But our currants come from small, black, seedless grapes. Currants are named for our city of Corinth."

"What is that little boat?" George asked. "Is it a fishing boat?"

"Those men are sponge fishers," his friend answered.

George laughed. "What bait do they use?" he asked.

Mavros laughed too. "Sponges aren't caught on a hook and line," he said. "You have to dive for them. At one time these waters were the best sponge fisheries in the world. But sponge fishing has not been good in the Mediterranean since the great sponge fisheries were found in Florida."

Favorite Greek foods

After the young people returned to Athens, Mavros and Zoe asked their

friends to stop at their home. A maid brought them afternoon refreshments—little cups of thick Turkish coffee, small cakes, and *halva*. Halva is a sweet flaky paste made of ground sesame seed, oil, and honey.

"We don't use much sugar in Greece," Zoe said. "We have plenty of honey, which takes the place of sugar."

"I'm sorry," said Alice, as the coffee was passed, "but my mother doesn't like me to drink coffee. May I have a glass of milk?"

"Yes, if you like goat's milk," Zoe replied. "We don't have many cows here, for there isn't enough pasture. The goats are driven along the streets of Athens every morning and milked there. There are as many goats in Greece as there are people."

"I have never tasted goat's milk, but I'll be glad to try it," Alice answered.

"You'll find goat's milk served in almost every home along the Mediterranean," Mavros remarked. "We do not have the cool, moist climate necessary for good grass. But goats can live on dry, thorny bushes, while cows would soon die."



This map of the Balkan Peninsula shows you why geography has been so important to this area. Which countries are likely to be interested in shipping and fishing and which in farming? Why?

At the hotel George and Alice asked their father to order a Greek meal. When it was served, the main dish was roast lamb, stuffed with rice, currants, and pine kernels.

"If you stay in Greece," their father said, "you have to like lamb. Lamb and kid, or young goat, are the usual meats."

ATHENS TODAY

In a great half circle about the old city lies the new city. Athens today has more than one million people. It has fine public buildings and great streets leading out from the central square, called the Square of Harmony. The most magnificent of the new buildings is the palace, made of Greek marble. The palace, where the royal family lives, tells us that Greece is a kingdom, and Athens is its capital. But Greece has a constitution which safeguards the rights of the people. The beautiful new



Ewing Galloway

A Greek soldier on guard at the king's palace wears a colorful uniform, but his gun is modern.

buildings and the democratic government remind us that the Greeks still love freedom and beauty.

THE BALKAN COUNTRIES

The Balkan peoples are greatly separated. The mountains, as in Greece, cut these lands into thousands of valleys. In one valley all the people are Catholics who belong to the Greek Church. Across the mountains, in the next valley, all are Moslems. Such differences cause a great variety of languages and customs.

Differences of religion do not need to divide a nation. And a mixture of peoples, as in the United States, is often a benefit. In the Balkans, however, most of the people are farmers who are poor and uneducated. They do not travel. They read very little. The mountains separate the small communities. The people are backward and have often been at war because they do not understand one another.

THE HISTORY OF THE BALKANS

The Balkans have been called the "powder keg of Europe" because many wars have taken place there. Let us see how this happened.

Settlement of the Balkans

The early settlers in the Balkans represented many different kinds of peoples. As you can see from the map on page 158, the Balkan Mountains stand across the gateway from Asia into western Europe. In the past, wandering tribes from the Asiatic plains moved westward north of the Black Sea until they reached the Balkan Mountains. Some went beyond the Balkans, but many stayed in the valleys of the Balkan Mountains.

Under Turkish rule

The Turks came into Europe by a route which led across the narrow strip of water between Europe and Asia, called the Bosphorus. The Turks conquered and ruled the Balkans for more than two hundred years.

As long as the Balkan countries paid their taxes, the Turkish government let them alone. But it did nothing to improve their lot. The people of the Balkans worked so hard to make a living that they had little energy left to better themselves.

Balkan independence

When the Balkan countries fought for their freedom from Turkey, Russia and other countries favored their cause. After nearly a hundred years of warfare Turkey had lost the Balkans, except for a small area near Istanbul.

Even with Turkey out of the way the Balkan countries continued to be poor. They had few factories and little to sell to the rest of the world. Because there was almost no manufacturing or trade, few large cities grew up. Then, too, the spirit of warfare sometimes led the Balkan peoples to turn against each other. Their lack of understanding kept them backward.

The Balkans in World War II

For many years before World War II Germany had been reaching out toward the Balkans. When war came, Rumania and Bulgaria did not resist. The Rumanians were soon fighting on the side of Germany against the Allies.

Greece, Yugoslavia, and Albania were different. These brave peoples defended themselves although they knew that they could not win. Italy, as an ally of Germany, overpowered Albania, but could not



Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway

A costly modern house in Bucharest is built as Rumanian houses have been built for centuries.

conquer Greece. It was the German army that overran Greece and Yugoslavia.

The struggle was not over, however. In both countries, but especially in Yugoslavia, strong bands of *guerrillas*, or civilian fighters, carried on war against the invaders. These bands increased to such forces that they kept large numbers of Germans busy fighting regular battles. The guerrillas greatly aided the Allies.

RUMANIA

Let us now travel to the Balkans, starting with the country of Rumania.

The geography of Rumania

Rumania, which is nearly as large as Oregon, is the most fertile of the Balkan countries. It lies north of the Balkan Mountains and extends along the Black Sea south of the mouth of the Danube River. The Danube is the greatest river of Central Europe, but the Rumanians say, "The Danube flows the wrong way." They mean that traffic on the river moves toward the parts of Europe which have fewer people. Ocean steamers can go up the Danube for about a hundred miles. Smaller steamers can carry freight and passengers as far as the German border. Still there is not enough trade to support a great seaport at the mouth of the river.

The products of Rumania

Rumania produces much grain. The fields are a beautiful sight when the wheat, oats, and barley are ripe. The weather is warm and moist enough for corn. Rumania grows more corn than any other European country. When there is a bad year for grain, however, millions of Rumanian *peasants*, or farmers, suffer.

Rumania also has valuable oil fields. Early in World War II Germany took over these oil fields. Later in the war they were bombed by the Allies to keep Germany from using the oil in its war planes. Rumanian oil is usually piped to a Danube port, but when the river is frozen the oil goes to a Black Sea port.

The government of Rumania

Before World War II, Rumania was a kingdom. Its capital and largest city is Bucharest, which today has more than a million people. It was once called "Little Paris" because of its gay life. World War II put a stop to that. After the war Communists from Russia moved in and took over the government. The king was forced to give up his throne. In 1948 a constitution, modeled on that of the Soviet Union, was adopted. Today Rumania is almost completely dependent on Russia.

BULGARIA AND YUGOSLAVIA

We shall now turn southward to Bulgaria and Yugoslavia.

Bulgarian girls, wearing their national costume, pick the roses to be used in making attar of roses.

Gendreau



The geography of Bulgaria

The Balkan Mountains extend east and west, dividing Bulgaria into halves. The people of this Balkan country have a Mongolian strain mixed with their Slavic blood. Sofia, the capital, is midway between the northern and southern parts.

In northern Bulgaria, where the winters are very cold and the summers are rather dry, the people raise wheat and sugar beets. The southern part of Bulgaria, which is sheltered by mountains, has a mild climate. Here are the famous rose fields, where women and girls pick the scented flowers. It takes thousands of rose petals to make a few drops of the precious liquid, called *attar of roses*. Attar of roses is used in making perfume.

The government of Bulgaria

Bulgaria came under the Communists after World War II. Much of the farming land is owned and run by the Communist government. Bulgaria has only a few factories, also owned by the government.

The geography of Yugoslavia

After World War I, the Allied Powers created a new country from a part of the Balkans, now called Yugoslavia. Yugoslavia, the largest country of the Balkans, is a little larger than Wyoming. Its capital is Belgrade.

The name *Yugoslavia* means "land of the southern Slavs." The Slovenes and the

Croats live in the west, near Italy. Farther east are the Serbs. Their old-time capital, Belgrade, is still the capital of Yugoslavia. From Belgrade, on the Danube, a natural road made of two almost-connecting river valleys leads from Central Europe to the Greek port of Salonika, on the Aegean.

Although Yugoslavia contains some of the fertile and level Danube Valley in the north, most of the country is mountainous. Shut in by steep ridges, each valley community provides for most of its own needs.

The products of Yugoslavia

About seven out of every ten persons in Yugoslavia are farm workers. The chief crops are grain, tobacco, and sugar beets. Great numbers of sheep, cattle, goats, and pigs are raised. The country leads Europe in mining lead and bauxite, the mineral from which aluminum is made.

The government of Yugoslavia

In the early years of World War II, Yugoslavia found itself almost entirely surrounded by lands conquered by the German armies. Early in April, 1941, the German armies conquered the country. The young king, Peter II, fled to England.

But the Yugoslavs did not give up easily. The people banded together secretly and continued to fight the enemy undercover. But these underground groups quarreled among themselves. War broke out between the groups. After a time a Communist leader named Tito gained control. The Russians helped Tito to drive the Germans out of the country.

When the war was over, Tito set up a Communist government, called the People's Republic of Yugoslavia, with himself as head. He barred King Peter from returning to Yugoslavia. For a while under Tito's rule the new nation had close ties with Soviet Russia. But when Russia wanted complete control of Yugoslavia, Tito objected. Relations between the two countries grew very strained. Yugoslavia would not give in to Russia, but it still remained a Communist nation.

ALBANIA

Albania, which is on the west coast of the Balkan Peninsula, is the smallest of the Balkan countries.

The geography of Albania

This small mountainous country lies between Yugoslavia and Greece. It is just

Ewing Galloway



These Yugoslavian farmers are busy shelling corn. In Yugoslavia seven out of ten persons work on farms. Some still wear the old Slavic costumes seen here.

a little larger than Maryland. Albania is one of the most primitive of all countries in Europe. Oxcarts, horses, and donkeys carry people and freight over the rough mountain roads. Many of the rivers have no bridges. People must cross the rivers in small canoes. Railroads are still new in Albania, for the rough country makes road building difficult. But in recent years air service has been developed between Albania and some of the other nations of Europe.

The products of Albania

Small as the country is, less than one tenth of the land can be cultivated. Cattle, sheep, and goats are raised. Tobacco, fruits, and olives are the main crops. Lack of roads makes it difficult to use the coal, oil, and copper which are found in the mountains. This is part of the reason why Albania is a backward country.

The government of Albania

Albanians have cultivated a warlike spirit from the beginning of their history. Tribe has been at war with tribe for hundreds of years. This has prevented Albanians from having a feeling of unity.

Like other Balkan nations Albania was once under the rule of Turkey. But as Turkey's power in Europe grew weak, the movement for independence grew in Albania. A few years after World War I, a republic was proclaimed. In 1928 the president made himself king. His rule was short-lived.

At the outbreak of World War II, Italy invaded Albania and forced the king of Albania to flee. Albania became a battlefield for Italian and Greek forces. In 1946 Albania became a republic, but it was under the control of Soviet Russia.

THE BALKANS TODAY

The mountainous section of Europe now called the Balkans has been for thousands of years the borderland between eastern and western peoples. Back and forth have rolled the tides of conquering nations. Each tide has left some marks on the dwellers in the Balkans until now there is a great mixture of races, languages, and customs. The mountains have kept communities apart and have prevented the people from feeling united.

Most of the families in the Balkans are poor. Only about half of the people can read and write. Many of the things they use are handmade by the peasants. Farms and houses are usually small, and life is hard. The women spend much time in embroidering colorful costumes.

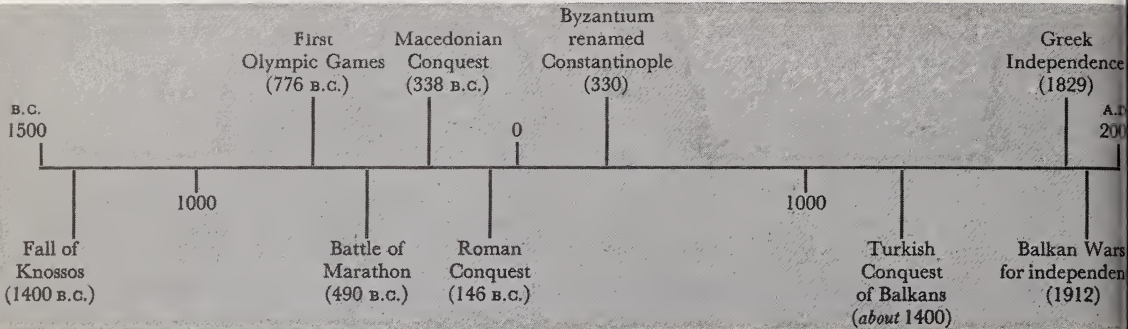
The hard life in the Balkans shows how people suffer when there is little co-operation. People cannot live entirely by themselves. Conditions are much better when there is a free exchange of articles and services. When a group of people is shut off from other people, it is deprived of these benefits. Such a group is likely to be narrow in its thinking as well as poor and backward in its ways of living.

GREECE AFTER WORLD WAR II

In 1944 British troops, aided by the Greeks, drove the Germans out of Greece. A new government was set up. The Greeks, aided greatly by the United States, began slowly rebuilding their land.

After World War II the Greek people voted to put their king back on the throne. The United States helped the Greeks rebuild their war-torn country with food, clothing, machinery, and medicines. Today Greece is a strong friend of the United States and other free nations.

Time-Line: Greece and the Balkans (1500 B.C.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words and Terms You Should Know

halva	guerrillas
peasants	attar of roses

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 4. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A liquid made from flowers, used to make perfume
2. A dessert made of ground sesame seed, oil, and honey
3. Civilians who continue fighting enemies who have seized their land
4. A name used for farmers in Europe

Can You Answer These?

1. What is the Parthenon? What caused it to be in ruins?
2. Why do Greeks raise many goats?
3. Why were there so many Balkan wars?
4. Why do Rumanians say, "The Danube flows the wrong way"?
5. What are Yugoslavia's chief minerals?
6. Which Balkan country has the best farming land?

Learning from Maps

1. Find these places on the map of Greece and the Balkans: Knossos, Sparta,

Piraeus, Mount Olympus, Athens, Danube River, Belgrade, Marathon, Bucharest, and Sofia. Tell an important geographical fact about each place.

2. What does the map tell you about the importance of geography to the Balkan Peninsula?

Who's Who in Ancient Greece

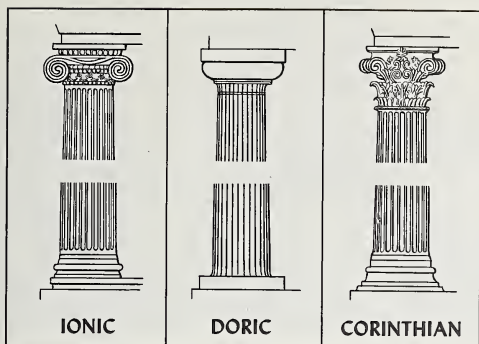
Write the name from the list below that matches each description.

Alexander	Pericles	Solon
Hippocrates	Homer	Aesop

1. A famous writer of fables
2. A ruler whose armies reached India
3. A world-famous doctor
4. The Greek ruler who rebuilt Athens
5. The author of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*
6. The ruler who laid the foundations of democracy in Athens

Interesting Things to Do

1. Divide your class into two groups—one will pretend to be a group of Spartans and the other a group of Athenians. Let each side discuss the advantages and disadvantages of its city.
2. Let each pupil present the name of a candidate for a Greek Hall of Fame. Take a class vote on the final selection.



Linking the Old World and the New

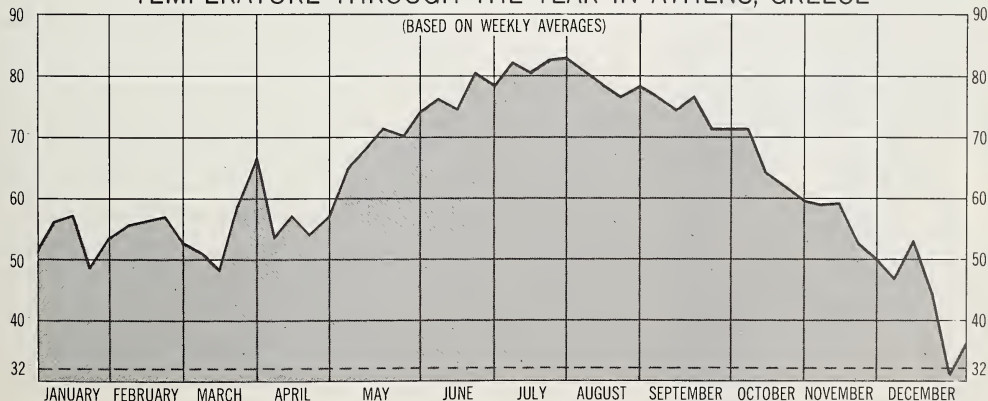
1. The ancient Greeks gave the world fine architecture. In their buildings they developed three types of column which are still used. The Doric column was the oldest and simplest. The Ionic column was slender and graceful. Its capital was adorned with curved scrolls. The Corinthian column had a capital that was decorated with rows of leaves. Compare the picture at left with the Egyptian columns on page 79. Are any of these types used in your community?
2. The government of the ancient Greeks was called a democracy. Today we also call the government of the United States a democracy. How is our democracy like that of the ancient Greeks? How is it different?
3. Find out about recent Olympic games. Report on them to the class.
4. Tell or read your favorite Aesop fable to the class. Draw a picture to illustrate the story or dramatize it.
5. Read about the ancient Greek gods. Sally Benson's *Stories of the Gods and Heroes* is a good collection. Padraic Colum's *The Adventures of Odysseus* and *The Tale of Troy* retell Homer's two famous poems. Retell, draw, or dramatize an incident from one of these books for the class.
6. Compare the time-line for this unit with those of Units 3 and 4. What events happened at about the same time in Greece, in the Middle East, and in the Far East?

Using a Graph

With the help of the line graph on this page, answer these questions:

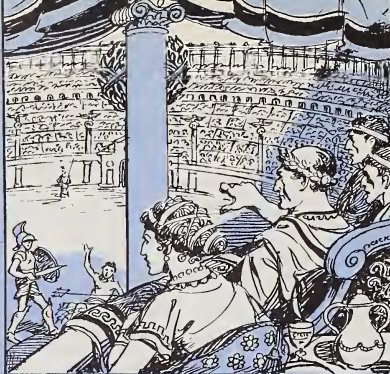
1. What is the highest average temperature in Athens? When does it get that hot?
2. What is the lowest average temperature in Athens? When does it get that cold?
3. Water freezes at 32°F . Does Athens ever have freezing weather? When?
4. When is the temperature above 70° ?

TEMPERATURE THROUGH THE YEAR IN ATHENS, GREECE





Law courts set up to protect rights of all citizens—131 A.D.



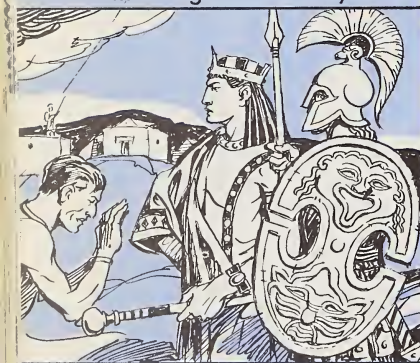
Gladiatorial games celebrating triumph over barbarians—403



Fall of Rome brought about by invading barbarians—476



Roman legions win Italy



Etruscans rule Rome



Italy and its possessions

6.

An American traveler in the north of England was attracted to an old stone wall. He learned that the wall was built by Roman soldiers hundreds of years ago. In the south of England, in the city of Bath, he saw a large pool bordered by ancient columns, also the work of the Romans.

When our traveler visited Nimes in southern France, he saw an outdoor theater, built of stone. It had been built by the Romans eighteen hundred years before and is still used for amusements in Nimes.

In the Spanish city of Segovia our traveler looked up at a large, arched aqueduct built to bring water to the city. The blocks of stone, held together without mortar or cement, were as solid as when first built. The ancient Romans left this wonderful aqueduct to the world.

Later the American traveled to Tripolitania, on the African coast south of Italy.



Peter's Church, designed by Michelangelo—completed 1626



Fascist troops parading before Italy's dictator, Mussolini—1922



Italy being rebuilt after the bombing of World War II—1945

Ancient Rome and Modern Italy

He found Italian workmen digging sand from the foundations of the largest theater the Romans had ever built. "So the Romans were here, too," said the traveler.

Our American next visited the Yugoslav port of Spalato. Here a Roman emperor had built a palace.

"What wonderful builders these old Romans were," thought the traveler. "How did their influence and power extend so far?" The traveler went to Rome to find out.

Rome is the capital of Italy. In ancient times this city-state ruled over the whole Italian peninsula. If you look at the map on page 145, you will see that Italy has a very favorable position. It is the central one of the three great peninsulas which extend southward from Europe. On the north is a wall formed by the Alps. They protect it from the northerly winds and

are a natural barrier of defense. On the other three sides are the waters of the Mediterranean Sea and its branches. You have learned how important the Mediterranean was for trade in early days.

The map shows you that the Italian peninsula is shaped like a boot. At the toe is the island of Sicily. Notice how nearly the peninsula with Sicily forms a bridge across the center of the Mediterranean toward Africa. This is another thing in Italy's favor, for it made trade with another continent easy.

As you study this unit, you will find the answers to these questions:

1. How did Rome begin?
2. What was the Roman Empire like?
Why did Rome lose its power?
3. What do we owe to ancient Rome?
4. What is modern Italy like?



James Sawders

This ancient Roman aqueduct still stands just outside Rome. These stone structures once brought water to Rome from distant mountains.



Ewing Galloway

In this picture of modern Rome a broad avenue leads from the Victor Emmanuel monument to the Colosseum. Between them is the Forum.

THE RISE OF ROME

The Greeks built many cities in southern Italy and Sicily. But it was a small village on the banks of the Tiber River which grew until it became the center of the Roman Empire.

THE FOUNDING OF ROME

If you could have visited Italy about the year 1000 B.C., you would have seen a group of tribes living on the central plains. These people were the first Romans.

The legend of Rome's founding

In Rome there is a bronze statue of a she-wolf and two baby boys. The story, or legend, told by the old Romans was that the boys, who were twins, had been abandoned by their cruel granduncle. They were found by a wolf that mothered them. After a time shepherds discovered them and cared for them.

When Romulus and Remus grew up, each gathered a band of followers and de-

cided to build a settlement. As Romulus and his men were putting up a wall, Remus jumped over it to show how poor a defense it would be. In a rage Romulus killed him. The followers of Remus then joined Romulus and his men. They built a village and called it Rome, after their leader.

The real beginning of Rome

This legend gave the year 753 B.C. as the date when Rome was founded, but it was not true. We are not sure exactly when Rome began. However, we know that when Greece was already highly civilized the Italic tribes were simple farmer folk. They called the district where they lived Latium. The language they spoke was *Latin*. This small tribe and its language were to become famous.

A small river, the Tiber, separated Latium from the land of the Etruscans, who lived to the north. Sixteen miles up

the Tiber from the sea the Italic people set up a market place where they could trade with the Etruscans. This was the beginning of Rome, a city built on seven hills. After a time the people of Latium fell under the power of the Etruscans.

Rome under Etruscan rule

Compared to the Greeks of that day, the people of Latium were rough and backward. The coastline of Italy (see page 170) is smooth compared with that of Greece. Italy, therefore, has few good harbors. Although Italy has a long backbone of mountains, the Apennines, it has much more farming land than Greece. The Italic people became farmers and raised flocks and herds.

Even after the Etruscans conquered Rome, the Romans and other Italic tribes continued to speak Latin. Under the Etruscan kings the people of Rome learned civilized ways. Rome gradually became an important city.

In the south of Italy were many prosperous Greek settlements. On the large island of Sicily, south of Italy, was the fine Greek city of Syracuse.

After two hundred years the Etruscan kings were driven out of Rome. Rome was then free to develop its own ideas.

ROME AS A REPUBLIC

The Romans thought the government should not be a one-man job. They believed in elections. The government they set up was called a *republic*.

During times of peace Rome was ruled by two *consuls*, who were the highest officials of the government. The consuls were elected by the Assembly, a group made up mostly of small farmers and workingmen. In time of war disagreements between the

consuls would be dangerous to the republic. The Romans, therefore, provided that during a war there would be only one ruler. This ruler would have full, or absolute, power. He was called a *dictator*. The dictator had to be chosen by the people, and his power could last for only six months.

Rome also had a Senate, chosen from the nobles and richer landowners. The Senate had great power. All the laws and all men who wanted to be elected to office had to be approved by the Senate.

The growth of Rome

The neighboring tribes who quarreled with the Romans found that they were brave soldiers. One after another the tribes surrendered to the Romans. However, the conquered peoples were treated fairly, and many were granted the rights of citizens. In three hundred years after the republic was founded, Rome controlled all of central Italy.

The Romans now had disputes with the Greek cities in Italy and Sicily. They conquered them in a brief time. Thus the whole peninsula of Italy came under Roman government. The Romans could be cruel in war, but they did not govern cruelly. The conquered people found it easy to live under Roman government. They became friends and allies of Rome.

The good Roman roads

The Romans were good road builders. To connect the various parts of Italy with Rome, the Romans built many roads. They built such good roads that some parts of them are still in good condition. The first step in road building was to dig a ditch the width the road was to be. In the bottom of the ditch was put a deep



This map shows you that Italy resembles a high-heeled boot kicking a football, the island of Sicily. Italy is cut off from the rest of Europe by the Alps, which form a high mountain wall. The broad plain along the Po River in the north is Italy's best farming region. This is also a great industrial region because swift streams from the mountains supply water power for the Italian factories. Sardinia and Elba, off the coast, belong to Italy, but Corsica is a French island.

layer of broken stone. On top of the stone the builders poured cement made with lime. This was to make a firm foundation. On the cement they laid carefully fitted flat blocks of stone to make a strong surface for the road.

The best known of these ancient highways is the Appian Way. Because a number of roads centered in Rome, there arose a saying, "All roads lead to Rome."

Easy travel made trade increase, and gradually the people of Italy came to de-

pend on Roman power and to admire Roman ways. They used the Roman coins and spoke the Latin language. They thought it a great honor to be a Roman citizen.

The Roman people

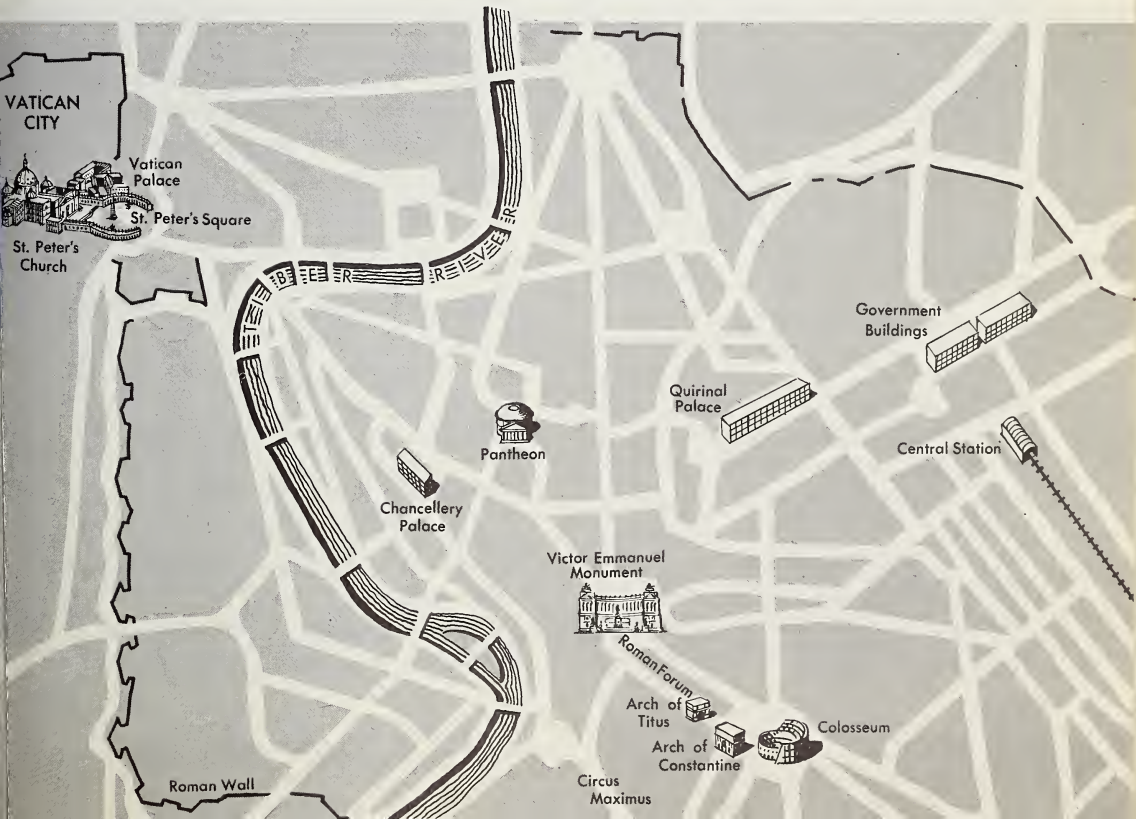
The Romans were a practical people. The Greeks were artistic and imaginative, but the Romans were not. The Greeks liked discussion. The Romans did not care for discussion unless it led to action. A good Roman was serious, brave, and responsible. He could be depended upon to do his duty in peace and in war. Can you name some Americans who would have been good Romans in ancient times?

If you walked about the city of Rome, you would see the places shown on this map. You would find reminders of ancient Rome such as the Colosseum, the Forum, and the Pantheon. St. Peter's Church stands as a reminder of Rome's importance in Europe after the rise of Christianity. Modern Rome is represented by the magnificent monument to King Victor Emmanuel. Find these places on the map of Rome. Notice how the famous Tiber River, crossed by its many bridges, winds through the city.

The stories that Roman parents told their children show the good qualities of the Romans.

One of their favorite stories was about Cincinnatus, who was a good farmer as well as a great general. Cincinnatus was called from his plowing to command the army in a time of great danger. After he had won the victory, Cincinnatus went back to his plow. Our city of Cincinnati, Ohio, preserves the name of this ancient Roman today.

Another story which was told to Roman children was about Mucius. Mucius was a soldier who, when taken in battle, burned off his own hand rather than betray his comrades to the enemy.





Bettmann Archive

This stone carving of a Roman school was found on a tomb. The teacher sits between the two pupils who are reading from sheets of parchment. The pupil at the right seems to have come late to school.

Roman children also heard of Coriolanus, the general who was driven unjustly from his own city. After a time he came back at the head of an enemy army and captured Rome. He allowed the city to go unharmed at the prayer of his mother. Coriolanus did this although he knew that sparing the city would bring about his own death.

Loyalty to one's city, one's friends, and one's parents was strong in every good Roman. Under such conditions, Rome became a united and powerful nation.

Patricians and plebeians

The nobles, or *patricians*, of Rome and the common people, or *plebeians*, carried on a long struggle. The patricians, who were rich, wanted not only most of the property but also most of the rights and privileges. At first the two consuls were always chosen from the patricians, as were the members of the Senate. Although all citizens took part in the Assembly, the most power belonged to the patricians.

Finally the plebeians managed to get the right to elect officers, called *tribunes*, to protect their rights. By shouting, "Veto!"—which means "I forbid!"—the tribunes could prevent unjust decisions. The *veto* power is used in our government today. The plebeians also demanded that the laws should be written down and made public so that every man could know his rights. It was a glad day for them when the first plebeian consul was elected. After that it was a regular practice that one consul should be a plebeian. Later, a few plebeians were elected to the Senate each year. After many years the plebeians gained so many rights that they were more willing to co-operate with the patricians. Liberty had brought true union.

The armies of ancient Rome

The ancient Roman army was made up of capable men who were strong, well paid, and well equipped. Never were there soldiers under stricter training. Disobedience or cowardly conduct could be

punished with death. Yet each soldier was proud of his *legion*—the large division of troops to which he belonged—and was determined to win victory. The standard which each legion loved and protected was the eagle.

Wherever a legion halted, it fortified its camp. Thus the soldiers were secure

from sudden attack and could choose their own time to fight. The Roman legion was equipped and trained chiefly for attack. The chief weapon of the Roman soldier was the short sword. As long as the legions were made up of patriotic Roman citizens, they went on from victory to victory. Rome was supreme in Italy.

BUILDING THE ROMAN EMPIRE

By the year 265 B.C. Rome ruled the whole peninsula of Italy. The Romans then became interested in trading by sea.

CONQUEST OF THE MEDITERRANEAN

In sea trading Rome had a powerful and dangerous rival. This was Carthage.

Carthage's rise to power

Many years before Rome was founded, the Phoenicians decided to plant a colony on the African coast, near the western end of Sicily. It was an excellent spot for trading to the west and to the east. Here, near the present city of Tunis, grew up the great city of Carthage.

Carthage was a city-state, surrounded by fertile fields where grain and olives were raised. Its stout walls protected an area three times as great as Rome. The ships of Carthage traveled everywhere through the Mediterranean. Through trade the city-state became wealthy and powerful. Carthage grew until it had settlements on many of the islands in the Mediterranean and in southern Spain. If a strange ship came into any of the many harbors which the people of Carthage claimed, the Carthaginian ships would sink it.

Although Carthage was proud and powerful, Rome was superior in important

ways. Carthage had a cruel religion which brought fear into men's hearts instead of hope. Labor was carried on by slaves, who served a few rich nobles and merchants. The patricians of Rome quarreled, but the lords of Carthage were far more jealous of one another than were the Romans.

The war against Carthage

When the Romans began to send out trading ships, they learned what an enemy Carthage could be. Carthage held the western part of Sicily. With all of Sicily in its power, Carthage could prevent Roman ships from sailing between the eastern and western ports of Italy. The wars between Rome and Carthage began as a struggle for control of Sicily.

In these wars, which lasted more than a hundred years, Rome completely conquered and destroyed Carthage. Northern Africa, with its rich grain fields and fruit trees, became Roman. So did Spain, with its silver and copper mines. No nation could now dispute Rome's power in the western Mediterranean. Rome gained all the profits of trade that had once belonged to Carthage.

While the wars with Carthage were going on, Rome had quarrels in Greece and Asia Minor. When each of these disputes was over, the Romans usually gained

more territory. Gradually Rome came to rule over the eastern Mediterranean lands and peoples also (see the map on page 175). The old Roman republic grew until by the time of Christ it had become a great empire. It was governed from Rome by an emperor.

ROME AS AN EMPIRE

One of the greatest Roman leaders was a general named Julius Caesar. He was governor of Gaul, a province which included a large part of northwestern Europe. The fierce people of Gaul did not want the Romans to interfere with their freedom. But in eight years of war Julius Caesar conquered them. What is now France was once a part of ancient Gaul.

Caesar wrote the history of his battles against the Gauls. This book is still used as a Latin textbook, but Caesar wrote it to tell what a fine general he was.

Julius Caesar says farewell to his faithful soldiers after a victorious military campaign.

Bettmann Archive



The rule of Julius Caesar

Julius Caesar led his legions into Rome and made himself the head of the Roman government. The senate made him dictator for life. The old Roman republic was dead. Although Caesar did not call himself king, that is what he really became.

Caesar ruled well. He laid out many fine roads. He improved the government of the cities and made business safe throughout Italy. He introduced a new calendar, called the Julian calendar. He gave rights as citizens to more persons, even to the conquered peoples who obeyed Roman law. In the midst of his work, however, he was murdered by a band of jealous Romans.

The rule of Octavian

Before Caesar died, he provided that his adopted son, Octavian, should follow him. Octavian was eighteen years of age at the time of Julius Caesar's death. Octavian took the name of Caesar and got himself appointed as a general. Then, just as Caesar had done, he led his army into Rome and forced the senate to make him consul. He defeated his enemies. He was little more than thirty years of age when he became the master of the Roman world.

Under Julius Caesar, Rome had become the center of a great empire which centered in the Mediterranean. On the east the empire extended into Asia Minor and Syria. To the north it included what is today France, a large part of Germany, Belgium, and the Netherlands. Julius Caesar's armies went to Britain and brought part of the island under Roman rule.

The senate gave Octavian the title of Augustus, meaning "grand." They also



THE ROMAN EMPIRE UNDER AUGUSTUS

The Roman Empire continued to expand during the years after the death of Augustus. Britain was conquered and also an area north of the Danube, present-day Rumania. In Asia Minor the frontiers were pushed eastward. Marching over well-built roads, the army defended the empire.

called him *imperator*, meaning "commander." From that Latin word we get our English word *emperor*, which of course means "ruler of an empire."

Augustus, as he was now called, added new lands by conquest. This gave the empire more easily guarded borders, such as oceans and large rivers. He pushed the eastern *frontiers*, or limits, of the empire to the Black Sea, the Euphrates River, and the Arabian Desert. The frontiers reached to the Danube and the Rhine on the north, to the Atlantic on the west, and to the Sahara on the south. Like Julius Caesar he was a good ruler. He put honest and capable men into office. He wanted to make the conquered peoples respect and honor Rome for its good government in all parts of the empire.

Under Augustus, Rome was strong but not warlike. During this time Rome built many fine buildings. The government was honest, and the people prospered. Writers produced great works, especially in poetry. This period, the Augustan Age, is sometimes called Rome's "Golden Age." It is no wonder that Augustus is considered one of the world's greatest rulers.

Roman government and law

The Romans worked out good ways of governing their empire. They were always ready to fight, if necessary, to defend their empire. Still the early emperors thought that peace was better than war. So long as the different parts of the empire paid taxes, their free men could become Roman citizens. And the Roman soldiers



Bettmann Archive

Roman roads were among the world's best. They were straight, cutting through the mountains and crossing the rivers and valleys by bridges. The roads were paved with hard stone. The center was built higher than the sides to allow water to drain off. These roads were very costly to build. The road shown here is the Appian Way.

would protect their land. For almost two hundred years the "peace of Rome" rested on the world. Never before or since have civilized people had so long a vacation from war.

Many European cities of today date back to the Roman Empire. In Italy we find Naples, Florence, and Milan. France has Marseille, Lyon, and Bordeaux. Spain boasts of Barcelona and Toledo. England has London, Chester, Bath, and York. The emperors encouraged cities to imitate Rome and put up fine buildings. Everywhere in the empire appeared proof of the power of Rome.

The citizens of the Roman Empire respected law. When people learn to obey laws instead of armies, they have taken a great step forward. The long period of peace gave the arts and sciences a chance to develop. Rome learned from other countries, and they in turn learned from Rome.

ROMAN WAYS OF LIVING

The Romans are remembered today for their good roads, their fine buildings, and for their sports and amusements.

Roman roads and buildings

The Romans were great builders. Their buildings were useful yet beautiful. We have seen that the Roman engineers made good and lasting roads. They also built arched bridges, great sewers, and aqueducts which brought water from far away. Four of these old aqueducts still supply Rome's many fountains. Everywhere the Romans went they left their mark. They even managed to build walls out into the sea. These walls, or *breakwaters*, improved harbors and provided shelter for ships. But the real glory of Roman architects and engineers was in their public buildings. They constructed wonderful temples and arches, outdoor theaters, and public baths.

The *forum* in Rome was the open space where markets were held and public festivals were carried on. This forum was surrounded by fine public buildings. As the city grew, five more forums were built in Rome. Every important city in the Roman Empire was likely to have at least one forum. Are important buildings in modern cities that you have seen arranged around a forum?

In parts of the United States we have imitated the arches raised to celebrate the victories of Roman generals or rulers. New York City has an arch of this kind. The arch that was erected in honor of the Emperor Constantine still stands in Rome.

The invention of *concrete* by the Romans allowed them to build quickly and cheaply. To make concrete they ground up a kind of rock found near volcanoes and made cement of it. Then they mixed the cement with small stones. The mixture, after being poured into molds, hardened into artificial rock, or concrete. Slaves or soldiers could easily make concrete under the direction of engineers.

In Rome one may still see a well-preserved temple called the *Pantheon*. Built as a temple to all the gods, it has served as a place of worship for more than two thousand years. It is now used as a Christian church. The Pantheon is famous for its large concrete dome. The Romans used the dome in erecting big buildings because it permitted clear space below it.

As great crowds were expected to use the public buildings, the Romans made them large. The materials that went into these structures became more and more costly. On the inside, colored marble, gold

decorations, statues, and carved designs made the buildings splendid.

Roman amusements

Many of the Roman sports and spectacles were held in large buildings open to the sky, called *amphitheaters*. An amphitheater was built in a circle, with rows of seats around it. Its central space, where the events took place, was the *arena*. The amphitheater of Rome was called the *Colosseum* because of its great, or colossal, size.

In the later days of the Roman Empire, there was little work to be had. Amusements were held in the amphitheaters to entertain idle citizens. Food was also provided. The emperor's purpose in doing this was to keep the citizens quiet. This also encouraged them to vote for the leaders who provided the food and games.

Grain was distributed free to the people. Roman holidays were celebrated by parades, plays in the theater, and contests in the Colosseum. In the arena armed men, or *gladiators*, fought in pairs or in groups. The gladiators struggled with fierce animals, and animals destroyed each other. The empire was searched to find the fiercest beasts and the most powerful

Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway

The Pantheon was once a Roman temple in honor of all the gods. It is now a church. Note the Egyptian obelisk rising from the fountain in the square. Rome has many beautiful fountains. In the picture one woman carries a bundle in typical Italian fashion.



men. Such fearful shows proved that Rome was on the downward path. The free food and entertainment came to be called "bread and circuses." The once sturdy and independent Romans were satisfied with this, showing that they had undergone a great change.

When we think of a circus today, we picture a large tent or building in which seats are placed in rows, one above another. The seats face an open space where actors perform. In Rome, however, a circus was a long race-course surrounded on three sides by rows of seats and divided lengthwise by a wall through the middle. The Circus Maximus, or Great Circus, of Rome held more than three hundred thousand people. Here the great chariot races took place.

The chariot races excited the crowds. With four to six horses in a team, the two-wheeled chariots thundered around the track. The charioteers lashed their horses and those of their rivals. A collision was likely to mean death for one or both of the charioteers. Our circus amusements or rodeos, with all their thrills, would seem rather dull to the Romans.

The Roman baths

As Rome grew rich, its well-to-do people liked being clean. Many homes had bath-

rooms. Those who could not afford bathrooms in their homes paid for baths in public buildings.

In these great buildings there were hot and cold showers and pools in which to bathe. The conversation halls, gymnasiums, and rooms for eating, drinking, and lounging could be used either before or after the bath. Outside were parks and open-air pools.

The Romans set the fashion of being clean. Throughout the other cities of the empire the well-to-do people also took their daily baths. The desire to be clean is fine, for cleanliness helps to prevent disease and gives a feeling of self-respect.

When the Roman Empire grew weak, most of the aqueducts were not kept repaired. As a supply of water became harder to get, the idea of being clean became less important to people. In the later days of the empire, bathtubs in houses could rarely be found, and public bathhouses were few. Many years passed before the world again reached the Roman level of cleanliness.

ROME'S DEBT TO GREECE

The Romans did not admire the Greeks either as fighters or as rulers. But they respected them as thinkers and admired their art.

Bettmann Archive



Two charioteers run a close and exciting race in this thrilling spectacle in the great Circus Maximus. In addition to chariot races wrestling and games were held in the open stadium.

Ruins of the arches and temples of ancient Rome stand in the Forum, once the public meeting place for the citizens of Rome. Beautiful statues, temples, and shops filled the area. In later years the Forum fell into decay. Recently scientists, digging in the ruins, rediscovered many ancient arches and columns.



Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway

Greece's influence on Rome

After they had conquered Greece, Roman generals brought many beautiful Greek statues back to Italy, where they were copied. Thousands of educated Greeks were taken to Rome as slaves. The sons of rich Romans were taught by Greek slaves.

A new age began in Rome. Romans traveled to the East, where the people had learned Greek ways. They came back to tell how elegantly the rich people lived and how beautiful the public buildings were. Well-to-do Romans began to adopt Greek ways. Educated Romans learned to read Greek. They found that life could be practical and also enjoyable.

What Roman art was like

The Romans copied Grecian art. Their fine temples to the gods were beautiful, with statues and columns copied from the Greeks. The chief gods and goddesses they honored were the same as those the Greeks worshiped except that they had different names. The Romans called Zeus, the father of the gods, Jupiter. Ares, the god

of war, they called Mars. Athena, the goddess of wisdom, was Minerva. Can you find the Latin names given to other Greek gods or goddesses?

What Roman literature was like

The Romans imitated Greek poetry and plays. Before they met the Greeks, the Romans had no poems or theaters. Now they began to translate, or put into the Latin language, Greek books they admired. The Romans opened a theater to present Greek plays. After a time they presented plays by Roman authors.

The *Iliad*, a long story-poem, or epic, by the Greek poet Homer, was greatly admired in Rome. The Roman poet Vergil, who lived a short time before Christ, wrote an epic about the founding of Rome. This epic was called the *Aeneid*.

THE FALL OF ROME

After conquering and holding a great empire for hundreds of years, Rome's government began to weaken. From the countries it conquered, Rome at first took great riches. But most of the wealth went to

a few citizens, who invested their riches in large pieces of land. To work these estates, they bought slaves captured in war. The farmers on small properties could not raise crops as cheaply as could the owners of the big estates with their slaves. These poorer farmers were often forced out of business.

Weakening of the empire

During the time of the empire when the world was at peace, the supply of slaves fell off. Then the rich landowners did not have enough workers on their estates. They agreed to give people land to farm in exchange for rent. But after the workers had settled on the estates, the landlords had laws passed forbidding them to leave the land. Each estate became a little community in itself, raising and making most of the things it needed. This hurt the trade of the cities.

In some ways it was hard for the Romans to govern their large empire properly. Though the empire had good roads, the only way to travel rapidly was to use horses. Even with relays of fresh horses every few miles messengers could cover only a hundred miles a day. The

borders of the empire were very far from Rome.

By this time the independent farmers who could once be counted on to enlist in time of war were not to be found. Many soldiers of the regular army were not patriotic. The emperors were forced to hire half-civilized persons from distant lands to fight. Rome was losing power.

Division of the empire

At last Constantine, who became emperor in 324 A.D., thought so little of Rome as a capital that he established another one. The new capital was Constantinople, formerly Byzantium, on the Bosphorus. Now the Roman Empire was divided into two empires. The Eastern Empire had its capital at Constantinople. The Western Empire had its capital at Rome.

The Roman emperors became weaker. Barbarians from the north came in, plundering and settling down within the borders of the empire wherever they pleased. About five hundred years after the birth of Christ, there was no longer a Roman Empire. Though the Eastern Empire continued for another thousand years, the old Roman Empire broke up in disorder.

ROME'S GIFTS TO THE WORLD

Although the Romans copied the Greeks in many of their ways of living, we owe certain things to the Romans alone.

EVERYDAY GIFTS OF THE ROMANS

In our everyday living, we are reminded of our debt to the ancient Romans.

Roman capital letters and numerals

Rome gave us our capital letters. The words the Romans engraved on their

buildings are clear, even though we may not be able to tell exactly what they mean. The letters in such words as ROMANVS SENATVS are familiar to us because we use these capital letters today. (Note, however, that there is a V where we would have a U.)

Roman numerals and letters are used today to show the date on some public buildings. We sometimes see the numbers I to XII on the faces of clocks. You know

that these numbers mean 1 to 12. We also learn that L means 50, C means 100, D means 500, and M means 1000. Thus MDCCLXXVI would stand for 1776. Try to read the dates in Roman numerals on buildings in your city.

The Roman calendar

The names of our months come from Rome. When you study Latin, you learn that *septem* means "seven," *octo* means "eight," *novem* means "nine," and *decem* means "ten." But September is not the seventh month of our year, nor is December the tenth.

To explain this we have to go back to Julius Caesar. He decided that Rome should use the Egyptian way of counting the months, but he had the year begin in March. Now you can see why the Romans called September the seventh and December the tenth month. The month of July was named for Julius Caesar, and the month of August for Augustus Caesar.

The importance of Latin

In many of the western countries that Rome governed, Latin became a part of the language. The people mixed their own speech with Latin, and so a new language resulted. The French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese languages, which developed in this way, are so much like Latin that we call them the *Romance* (or Roman) *languages*. Learning any one of the Romance languages helps us to learn another.

Many English words came from Latin or from one of the Romance languages. Persons who know some Latin can usually understand, speak, and write English better than those who do not. To compare some of our English words with their



This Roman statue of the Egyptian goddess, Isis, shows her dressed in Roman clothing.

original Latin forms is an interesting game. For instance, from the Latin word *labor*, which means "work," we get "laborer," "laborious," and "laboratory." Can you think of any other English words that have Latin roots?

THE INFLUENCE OF ANCIENT ROME

The world cannot forget ancient Rome. The Romans of the old republic and the empire left behind many monuments and

many gifts. Rome made such wide conquests that it could no longer hold its territory together. From the fragments of the Roman Empire came most of the present nations of Europe. Our own language,

which has many words that came from Latin, reminds us that Rome once ruled. Our architects, our lawyers, our statesmen still make use of Roman ideas in building and in law and government.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

Latin	concrete	gladiator
legion	emperor	Colosseum
veto	frontier	Pantheon
arena	patrician	breakwater
forum	plebeian	amphitheater
tribune	republic	Romance languages
consul	dictator	

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 20. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A noble of ancient Rome
2. A Latin phrase meaning "I forbid," used in Rome to prevent unjust legal decisions
3. A country governed by the people through their chosen representatives
4. A wall to break the force of waves and protect a harbor or beach
5. A large, round building with rows of seats around a central space
6. An open space where markets were held and public meetings were carried on
7. Artificial rock made by mixing cement and sand with small stones
8. Languages, such as Italian, French, or Spanish, which developed from Latin
9. The central space of an amphitheater where contests or shows were held
10. Border lands of a nation or empire
11. A large division of Roman troops
12. A temple that honored all the gods
13. An armed man who fought in Roman amphitheaters to amuse the people
14. A Roman officer elected to protect the rights of the plebeians

15. The ruler of an empire
16. One of the two highest officials of the Roman Republic
17. The language of the ancient Romans
18. A common person of ancient Rome
19. In ancient Rome, a leader given absolute power temporarily in emergencies
20. The huge, open building in the city of Rome used for shows

Can You Answer These?

1. How have the Alps helped Italy?
2. How did the Romans build their roads?
3. How was Rome able to become a united and powerful nation?
4. How long did the wars between Rome and Carthage last? What caused them?
5. When were consuls replaced by a dictator? How and why was this done?
6. Where did the expression "bread and circuses" originate?
7. Why did Rome fall?

Can You Choose the Right Answer?

Complete each sentence by selecting the correct answer from the choices given below.

1. Rome was built on the: (a) Danube (b) Tiber (c) Po
2. The Roman Empire extended eastward to the: (a) Euphrates (b) Amazon (c) Yangtze
3. The Roman Empire was hard to govern because it: (a) produced many different things (b) had great forests (c) covered a large area
4. Rome copied Greece in: (a) literature and art (b) road-making (c) empire-building

MODERN ITALY

Italy is a rugged, crowded land. In a space about twice as large as Florida live almost one third as many people as there are in the whole United States. In addition to the Italian peninsula, the Republic of Italy includes the islands of Sicily and Sardinia.

THE GEOGRAPHY OF ITALY

Italy is often called "sunny Italy." Yet it does not really lie far to the south. Rome, in central Italy, is in the same latitude as Boston, which we regard as a northern city. Yet travelers have always gone to Italy in winter to enjoy the sunshine and mild climate.

Climate of the peninsula

Besides having protection by the Alps on the north, Italy benefits from the warm waters of the Mediterranean. Parts of Italy, especially near the higher peaks of the Apennines, are rainy and cold during the winter. But blue skies are the rule even during the winter season. Usually Italian homes do not have modern heating systems. Italians keep warm with pans of glowing charcoal, which can be moved from room to room. Even during the cold months they depend on sunshine for warmth.

The valley of the Po River in northern Italy has a summer climate much like that of our own corn belt in the Middle West. The weather is hot, and there is plenty of rain. There are sudden changes from wet to dry and from hot to much cooler. The rainfall allows grass and fodder crops to grow well. This, in turn, makes it possible to keep many cattle. Various kinds of Italian cheese are made from their milk. Wheat and corn grow well in northern

Italy. In irrigated fields much rice is grown. Grapes are also an important product of this region.

The region south of the Po valley has what is called a Mediterranean climate. This Mediterranean climate is mild like that of southern California and has very little summer rain. Hot weather makes the hills dry, so there is not enough moisture to produce grass for dairy cows. The chief grazing animals are sheep and goats. The fields are planted largely with crops that can grow in dry weather. The gray-green olive trees, the spreading grapevines, and the dark-green orange trees are familiar sights. It is sunny, dry, and dusty in southern Italy.

What Sicily is like

Sicily was an important island to the people of ancient Greece, Carthage, and Rome. Today Sicily has lost much of its importance. Its finest harbor is on its northwest coast, at Palermo.

Along the coast are lemon and orange groves such as we might see in southern California. Sicily supplies most of the lemons for European markets. When our

When the grapes are ripe on this sunny Italian hillside, everyone turns out to help pick them.

Hamilton Wright





Three Lions

A Sicilian peasant paints a colorful picture on the side of his cart. Many Sicilian carts are decorated with painted scenes or designs.

lemon crop is poor, we sometimes import Sicilian lemons. Rising above the lemon and orange groves on the upper slopes of the Sicilian hills and mountains are olive trees. Below the mountains is a vast plateau, mostly covered with wheat fields.

At the seaport of Messina, Sicily almost touches the mainland of Italy. South of Messina stands the great volcano of Etna, the highest active volcano in Europe. Snow lies on its great crater, or opening, most of the year. Wherever there are active volcanoes we may look for earthquakes. Messina learned this fact to its sorrow, for a terrible earthquake once ruined the city.

Active volcanoes deposit sulphur inside their craters. Today the world cannot get along without this yellow mineral. From

sulphur we get sulphuric acid, which is used in certain kinds of manufacturing. Many Sicilians used to be employed shoveling out the Mount Etna sulphur. Today fewer men work in these mines because there is less demand for Sicilian sulphur. We have great sulphur deposits along our Gulf of Mexico. These give us all the sulphur we need in the United States and supply much of the rest of the world.

THE CITIES OF ITALY

Italy today has many important and famous cities. Most of them were important, too, in the days of the Romans.

Naples, a great seaport

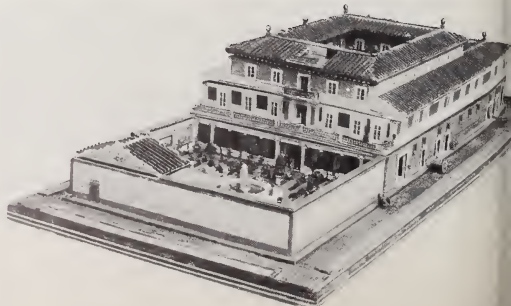
From Palermo an overnight trip by steamer takes us to Naples, a city of more than a million persons. The visitor chiefly remembers Naples for its beautiful bay and people, with their love of bright colors and music.

Many Italians in the United States have come from southern Italy, of which Naples is the center. In our country, where they found more opportunities to better themselves, they have been successful along many lines. The children of some of these new citizens have become famous in art and music.

In Naples we see long strings of macaroni and spaghetti drying on frames. Macaroni and spaghetti are made from

This model of a Roman house at Pompeii has lovely gardens and an open court in the center.

Metropolitan Museum of Art



One of Italy's favorite foods, macaroni, is dried on the roof of a factory in Naples. Some factories have drying rooms now, but most Italians still like sun-dried macaroni best.



James Sawders-Combine

hard wheat, part of which is raised in Italy. The United States used to ship wheat to Italy, but in recent years the Italian government decided that Italy should raise all of the wheat it uses. By building fertilizer factories and by showing the farmers how to increase their crops, Italy became almost independent of our wheat.

Not far from Naples is Mount Vesuvius, a volcano that is more famous than Etna. While Etna seldom erupts, Vesuvius always shows some sign of the heat that is within it. A red glow hangs over the crater by night. By day a tiny cloud of smoke rises.

Vesuvius, long thought to be dead, came to life with a roar in the time of the Roman Empire. It poured out clouds of red-hot ashes and cinders. Rain falling on the ashes turned them into rivers of mud. Two near-by towns, Pompeii and Herculaneum, were buried. The citizens who could not escape were smothered to death.

Since that time Vesuvius has been active on many occasions. At one place a town was destroyed three times but was rebuilt each time. The people of this place wish

to remain on their farms. They cannot believe that some day fiery masses of cinders and ashes may again burst forth from the crater of Vesuvius. They remain because the region around Vesuvius is one of the most fertile sections of Italy. Lava, the hot liquid rock which comes from a volcano, helps to make rich soil. The ashes from the volcano also make good fertilizer.

Two buried cities

Before we leave this part of Italy, let us go to Pompeii. Here in the year 79 A.D. was a town of twenty thousand people. Then the hot ashes from Vesuvius covered the town. For fifteen hundred years Pompeii was forgotten. Then scientists began to dig away the layers of lava, cinder, and ashes which had protected the ruins of Pompeii. More than half of the buried city has now been uncovered. A visitor may see the ruins of the old public square with many of the surrounding buildings as they stood almost two thousand years ago.

The discoveries at Pompeii add much to our knowledge of ancient Roman ways.

We know that the Romans liked games, for the amphitheater of Pompeii was large enough to hold all the people of the town. The wall paintings show the kind of art they enjoyed. The stone pathways are the same streets the Pompeians used.

The city of Herculaneum was covered more deeply with ashes than was Pompeii. Two small towns now stand where Herculaneum was. Because of this, less digging has been done on that spot. But the discoveries there have uncovered more art treasures than in Pompeii. Learned men all over the world study the paintings found in the ruins at Herculaneum.

Rome, the Eternal City

Rome has lasted more than twenty-five hundred years. Vast crumbling ruins still

A cloud of smoke rises high in the sky during the 1944 eruption of Mt. Vesuvius. A similar eruption buried Pompeii and Herculaneum.

Ewing Galloway



stand within the modern city, recalling the Rome of ancient days. We see aqueducts, arches, baths, temples, and forums. Chief among all these ruins is the Colosseum, a great amphitheater completed in 80 A.D.

Today Rome is a city almost as large as Detroit. It is important as the center of the Italian government, education, and religion.

Rome appeals to us in many ways. Our interest may be in ancient Rome, in Rome of the Middle Ages, or in modern Rome. It may be in Rome as the art center, Rome as the home of the Roman Catholic Church, or Rome as the capital of modern Italy.

Vatican City, the home of the Pope

Within Rome is a tiny independent state, about the size of an average city park. This is Vatican City, where the Pope, who is the head of the Roman Catholic Church, lives. The Pope is the ruler of Vatican City. From there he sends messages to Roman Catholics all over the world.

In Vatican City is St. Peter's Church, the largest church in the world and the special church of the Pope. To it come pilgrims and visitors from every country. In the center of the great circular area in front of the building stands an Egyptian obelisk. This obelisk was brought to Rome soon after the birth of Christ and moved to St. Peter's many years later.

The great dome of the church was designed by the famous sculptor, painter, and architect—Michelangelo. It was the crowning work of his life. When the job was assigned to him, he would accept no pay. He wished to do the work for the glory of God. Michelangelo never lived to see the splendid gilded dome rise



Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway

St. Peter's is the world's most famous church. It stands on the spot where St. Peter is believed to have been put to death. It took 120 years to build. The dome can be seen for miles around.

against the sky, but the plan and the model were his.

Next to St. Peter's is the Vatican, the home of the Pope. It is a group of palaces, chapels, and courts built at various times during several hundred years and joined by staircases and galleries. Between the buildings are gardens. The Vatican is the largest palace in the world. In it are famous art treasures and a great library. These are visited by people from all countries of the world.

In the Vatican we see the paintings of Michelangelo and of Raphael, one of the world's most famous artists. Raphael's nature corresponded to his work. Beautiful

in features and delicate in body, he won friends by his great talent and by his high moral character. Large groups of his pupils escorted him daily to the Vatican to watch him paint.

For hundreds of years Italy was divided into a number of small parts. Some were city-states, such as Florence, Venice, or Genoa. The Pope ruled a part of the territory called the Papal States. At last the feeling of the Italian people for a united Italy grew so strong that in 1870 all of Italy became a single kingdom. Rome was made the capital of the new nation, but Vatican City, within Rome, was reserved for the Pope.

Florence, a great art center

North of Rome lies Florence, which is probably better known for its art than any other city in Italy. Both Michelangelo and Raphael came to Rome from Florence. In Florence there are great galleries of paintings and statues. Such valuable possessions are a source of income to Florence and to Italy, for many tourists gladly pay a small fee to see them.

Venice, the queen of the Adriatic

At the head of the Adriatic Sea lies Venice. On a hundred low islands the skillful Venetians built a city-state. By 1200 A.D. it had become the wonder of the world for its power and splendor. The Venetians drove thousands of timbers into the mud to make the foundation of just one palace.

Today many of the islands have been united. Canals still separate some of them. The Grand Canal is so wide and deep that ocean-going ships can reach the main part of the city. Arriving in Venice, the visitor takes a long flat-bottomed black boat, called a *gondola*, to go from the railroad station to his hotel. In a gondola also he goes sightseeing along the Grand Canal. The boatman, called a *gondolier*, rows the boat. The gondolier describes the old palaces which they pass. Boats of many other kinds also use the canals of Venice. If the traveler wishes to go ocean bathing, he will take a gasoline-driven launch to the famous Lido beach.

Some persons think that all travel in Venice must be by boat. However, hundreds of bridges connect the islands, and most places can be reached on foot. The narrow streets and bridges do not permit the use of horses or automobiles. The beautiful domed Cathedral of Saint Mark

stands in the center of the city. The glass factories for which Venice is famous must be visited by gondola or launch. They are on an island somewhat removed from the main part of Venice.

Milan and the Italian lakes

Westward from Venice is the valley of the Po River. Our train or automobile follows the general course of the stream. We pass many a city, surrounded by fields of rice, wheat, or corn. We see how thickly this valley is inhabited. After a time we reach Milan, a city of more than a million persons.

Milan and its companion city of Turin are very old. The cathedral of Milan is built of white marble. It is famous for the more than two thousand statues which adorn its many spires. These cities today profit from the electric power furnished by the streams of the near-by Alps Mountains. Silk, motorcars, and books are some of the things manufactured here.

MADONNA OF THE CHAIR

This painting by Raphael is round because he made his sketch for it on the top of a barrel.

Metropolitan Museum of Art



A Venetian gondola crosses the Grand Canal before St. Mark's Square. The large building at the right is the marble palace of the Doge, who was once the ruler of Venice. In back of the palace can be seen the dome of the cathedral, and at the left is a bell tower.



James Sawders-Combine

On the Italian side of the Alps are several lovely lakes, known for thousands of years as delightful resorts. Mountains rise steeply from their shores. Fine hotels and beautiful houses with gardens stand on the edge of the water. The largest of the lakes is called Maggiore, meaning "greater." Lake Como is usually considered the loveliest of these lakes. Find them on the map on page 170.

Genoa, Italy's greatest port

South of Milan, on the Mediterranean, is Genoa, a city the size of Milwaukee, Wisconsin. Genoa is the largest and busiest Italian port. It imports coal, oil, iron ore, cotton, and cereals for the industrial centers to the north. Its chief exports are silk and cotton goods, oil and wine.

In Genoa, Christopher Columbus was born. The house in which he is said to have been born still stands. The same lighthouse that signaled safety to ships in Columbus's time still overlooks the harbor. Americans are interested in Genoa because

of Columbus and because it is Italy's nearest port to us.

Carrara, the home of fine marble

Near Genoa, on the coast at Carrara, quarrymen blast out blocks of pure white marble. There is no better marble for statues than this Carrara stone. We used to import Carrara marble. Now the white and colored marble in the United States satisfies our needs for statues, monuments, and buildings.

ITALY UNDER FASCISM

In 1922 a new leader arose in Italy. He was Benito Mussolini. Mussolini became a dictator. He changed the government according to ideas known as *Fascist* and organized the Fascist party. The word *Fascist* comes from the Latin *fasces*, meaning "bundles." In ancient Rome this referred to the bundle of rods with an ax, carried before Roman public officers as a sign of their authority. After World War I, many Italians thought that Italy needed



Ewing Galloway

THE LAST SUPPER

This painting by Leonardo da Vinci is considered one of the world's greatest. It was painted on the wall of a Milan convent and has now faded. Da Vinci was a genius, brilliant as a painter, sculptor, architect, musician, and art critic. A scientist too, he drew plans for a flying machine.

a government with more power and closer union. They decided to call themselves Fascisti, or Fascists.

Led by Mussolini, the Italians hoped to see their country become as powerful as it had been under the Caesars. However, the Italian leaders overlooked the fact that Italy has almost no coal or iron for manufacturing. The people in the southern half of Italy had received little education and therefore were backward. Except for the beautiful and fertile valley of the Po in the north, Italy had little farm land. Many people had to live in a small area, and most of them found it hard to make a living.

Mussolini became an all-powerful ruler. No one—not even the king—dared oppose him. However, Italy made some progress under Mussolini. Mountain streams from the Alps supplied electric power to run factories. Swamps were drained, and farmers went to live on this new land. Bet-

ter ways of raising crops were taught, and schools were established for the country people.

But Mussolini was not satisfied to make Italy prosperous by peaceful methods. He wished to make his country great by conquest. He dreamed of taking from France the colony of Tunisia in Africa and the island of Corsica. He also had his eye on other African lands.

The conquest of Ethiopia

The Fascists came into power in 1922. Ten years before, Italy had taken from the Turks the province of Libya, in Africa (see the map, page 435). Libya extends along the Mediterranean for hundreds of miles. It reaches inland until in the Sahara it meets French territory. Libya is almost twice as large as Egypt, but most of it is desert. Only with great and expensive irrigation works could it make a good home for Italians.

Italy also had land in Africa along the Red Sea and some near the Gulf of Aden. But these desert regions in eastern Africa are even worse for settlement than is Libya.

Between the two regions is Ethiopia, a country larger than Texas and California combined. Much of Ethiopia is a high plateau. Although Ethiopia extends southward nearly to the equator, the height of the plateau makes the climate mild instead of hot. Ethiopia has much good land for grazing and for farming. It was Ethiopia that Mussolini selected as his first prize.

Ethiopia was not a modern country. Most of the people of Ethiopia were poor and backward. The most civilized Ethiopians lived in the capital, Addis Ababa. Addis Ababa has a single railroad which connects it with a French port five hundred miles away on the Gulf of Aden.

In this capital ruled a Christian emperor who claimed to have the blood of King Solomon in his veins. His subjects wore white clothing, and his warriors were armed with swords and old-fashioned rifles.

In 1935 the Italian army landed in Africa and attacked Ethiopia. The Ethiopians were brave, but they were poorly armed and they were not trained. With

Ewing Galloway



James Sawders-Combine

Hair from a lion's mane adorns the head and shoulders of this native Ethiopian chieftain.

modern weapons, good airplanes, and skilled engineers to build roads, the Italians had little trouble defeating the tribesmen. Ethiopia became an Italian possession. Italy then had a solid block of land from the Red Sea to the Indian Ocean.

Many countries, who disapproved such warlike behavior, protested against Italy's action. They disliked the way in which Mussolini had brought about the war. The British were also concerned about another thing. The waters of the Blue Nile (see page 435) came from Ethiopia.

A group of Arabs and their camels cross the sand dunes of the vast Sahara. Much of the Italian colony of Libya was useless country like that in the picture.



If the Italians wished, they could shut off the water so greatly needed by Egypt, in which the British had an interest.

Little did Mussolini care for the objections of anyone. He thought his new colony would make the Italian people think that the heavy taxes they paid to support the army were worth while. But Mussolini could not persuade many Italians to make their homes in faraway Ethiopia. Conquering Ethiopia was an expensive undertaking. But it made Mussolini feel that he was the ruler of an empire and that Italy was on the road to greatness.

MOSES

The famous sculptor Michelangelo carved this statue of Moses. Can you see the great life and strength that the figure shows? Can you name other works of art by Michelangelo?

Metropolitan Museum of Art



Gendreau

The Leaning Tower of Pisa was not intended to slant. One side sank into the soft earth while it was being built. It sinks a few more inches each year, but it is still safe to climb.

Italy in World War II

Italy soon lost its new-found power. When World War II began, Italy joined Germany. In May, 1939, these two countries had formed a league called the Axis. Against the Axis powers were the Allies, made up of Great Britain, France, the United States, and many other nations.

In 1941 British troops conquered the Italians in Ethiopia. The Ethiopian emperor was restored to his throne. Ethiopia became an independent nation again.

In 1943 the Germans and Italians were driven back through the Libyan desert. Libya was lost to Italy, and the Axis troops retreated into Tunisia and then to Sicily. Mussolini's "empire" in Africa had vanished. He had brought loss to Italy instead of gain.

The Allied armies then conquered Sicily. Again the Axis troops retreated. By crossing the Strait of Messina they

reached the mainland. But the Allies pursued them northward through Italy, capturing Naples, Rome, Florence, and Genoa. Weary of war, the Italian people turned against Mussolini. He was held as a prisoner and finally put to death.

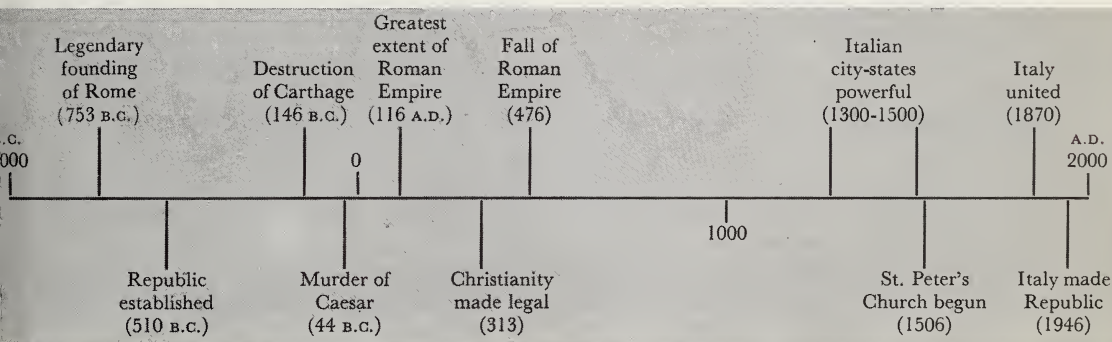
ITALY TODAY

After the war was over, the Allies took charge of Italy. They sent food to the people and helped them rebuild their

country. They made it possible for free elections to be held so that the Italians could vote for the kind of government they wanted. The people remembered that the king had worked with Mussolini, so they voted to make Italy a republic. The king left the country.

Today Italy has a strong, stable government. The United States has helped Italy to build up its industries. The Italian republic is one of our best friends in Europe.

Time-Line: Ancient Rome and Modern Italy (1000 B.C.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words You Should Know

fascies gondola
Fascist gondolier

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 4. After each number write the word from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A Latin word meaning "bundles"
2. A long, narrow boat used on the canals of Venice
3. A man who rows a gondola
4. A kind of government in which all power is centered in the head of the nation and all who disagree are put down by force

Can You Answer These?

1. What two big islands belong to Italy?
2. Why do people like to visit Italy?
3. How are Italian homes heated?
4. Why is olive oil used so much in Italy?
5. Why can many different crops be grown in the Po Valley of northern Italy?
6. Why did other nations object to the Italian conquest of Ethiopia?
7. What became of Mussolini's empire in Africa during World War II?
8. Why do farmers continue to live near volcanoes that may erupt?
9. Where is Vatican City? Who lives there?
10. What two towns were buried by lava from Mount Vesuvius in ancient times?

Learning from Maps

1. Look at the map of Italy on page 170. In which part of the country would you expect to find more people engaged in farming: in the north along the Po River, or in the southwestern tip of the peninsula? Why?
2. In what ways is Sicily like California? Compare the latitude, mountains, and amount of rainfall of the two regions. List as many ways as you can.
3. What Italian city is an important port on the northern Adriatic? On the southern Adriatic? About how far apart are these two cities? Use the scale of miles to measure the distance.
4. What volcano is near Naples? On the island of Sicily?

Using a Time-Line

1. Arrange in proper time order these names: Julius Caesar, the Etruscans, Michelangelo, Vergil, Cincinnatus, Augustus, the Fascists, Romulus.
2. Can you read these dates: MCDXCII, XLIV (B.C.), and CDLXXVI? What important event occurred in each year? Write these dates in Arabic figures. Which of these numbering systems is easier to use?

Can You Match These?

Number a paper from 1 to 8. After each number write the word or words from the list that match the definition.

Mount Etna	Papal States	Genoa
Pompeii	Michelangelo	Ethiopia
Raphael	Vatican Palace	

1. Italian lands once owned by the Pope
2. Largest seaport in Italy
3. The residence of the Pope
4. A celebrated painter
5. A plateau country in Africa
6. A great sculptor, painter, and architect
7. A Sicilian volcano
8. A city buried by volcanic eruption

Can You Fill the Blanks?

Copy and complete each statement below by supplying the name of an Italian city.

1. A city in Sicily founded by the Greeks is _____.
2. The capital of Italy is _____.
3. A seaport near Mount Vesuvius is _____.
4. A city that is famous for its collections of paintings and statues is _____.
5. A city noted for its canals is _____.
6. Christopher Columbus was born in _____.

Interesting Things to Do

1. Compare the Golden Age in Greece under Pericles with the Golden Age in Rome under Augustus.
2. The Romans worshiped the same gods as the Greeks but had different names for them. Make a chart of the gods and goddesses, giving Greek and Roman names.
3. Find out and tell the class the origin of the names of the months of the year.
4. Bring to class a list of ten English words which came from the Latin language. After comparing your list with those made by your classmates, make one complete list as long as you can.
5. Italian foods are popular in many parts of our country. Collect recipes of typical Italian dishes or menus from Italian restaurants. You might plan a class party featuring a typical Italian meal.
6. In recent years the number and variety of products manufactured in Italy and imported to this country have increased. This is particularly true of clothing and machines for home and office (sewing machines, typewriters, calculators). If you see advertisements for such products, show them to the class.
7. If you like to read, look for a copy of the Italian story *Pinocchio*, by Collodi. Tell the story to the class.

8. Italian music is very popular. Arrange a record program of songs from operas.

Linking the Old World and the New

1. A great many of our English words are related to Latin. Some English words have kept the same spelling and meaning they had in Latin. This is true of the following: *index, arena, error, axis, exit, labor*. What does each of these words mean?

Some Latin words which are related to English are spelled a little differently. Examples of these are: *familia, senatus, theatrum, templum, lanterna*. Can you guess what English word came from each?

2. In studying the early history of America, we learned about three famous Italians: Christopher Columbus, Amerigo Vespucci, and John Cabot. What did each do?
3. Americans of Italian birth or ancestry have contributed greatly to life in our country. A few who achieved success in their chosen fields were: Enrico Fermi, atomic scientist; Arturo Toscanini, musical conductor; Fiorello H. La Guardia, public official; Joe DiMaggio, baseball star; and Gian-Carlo Menotti, composer. In an encyclopedia or *Current Biography* find out about one of these men or any other person of Italian ancestry who has contributed to life in America.
4. We have learned that many gifts have come down to us from the ancient Ro-

mans. Make a list of as many of these gifts as you can think of. Tell why each is important.

Things to Think About

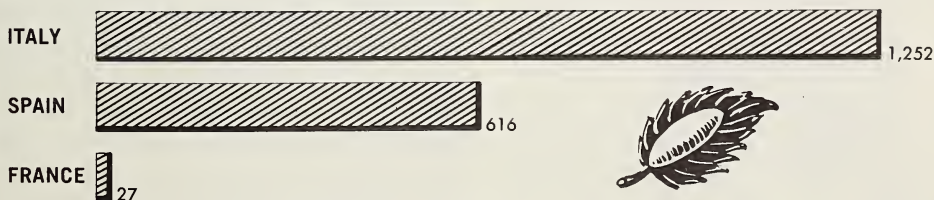
1. The Romans had no automobiles, but they were able to travel about on their highways more easily than could many of your great-grandparents when they were young. Why was this true? Why are good roads vital to the community?
2. Thus far in your study you have read about a number of great empires. Compare the rise and fall of Assyria, Egypt, Athens, Rome, and modern Italy under Mussolini. What conclusion can you draw?

Using a Graph

In Unit 3, page 86, a line graph was used to show the growth of oil production in Iraq. Here is another type of graph in which bars are used to show comparisons. A bar graph is useful, for example, to compare the amounts of production of a crop or of goods in different areas. Study this bar graph and answer these questions:

1. What product is compared here? The output of what three countries is shown? In what year?
2. Did Spain produce more than half or less than half as much silk as Italy?
3. How many pounds of silk did France produce? (One ton is two thousand pounds.)

PRODUCTION OF RAW SILK, 1955
TONS





Knights fighting with lances in a tournament in the Middle Ages



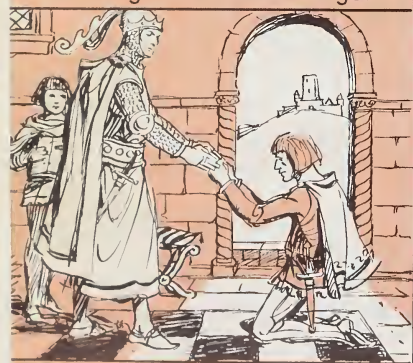
Master craftsman and his apprentice making armor



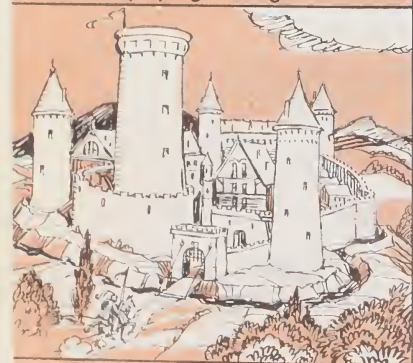
A busy market place before guild hall in the Middle Ages



A village in the Middle Ages



A vassal paying homage to a lord



A castle in the Middle Ages

7.

After lasting for hundreds of years the great Roman Empire fell apart, marking the end of the ancient world. The period between ancient and modern times, lasting one thousand years, is called the *Middle Ages*. The first half of this period was a time of such great disorder that it is sometimes known as the Dark Ages. After that, western Europe began to build a more civilized way of life. We call this second five hundred years the later Middle Ages.

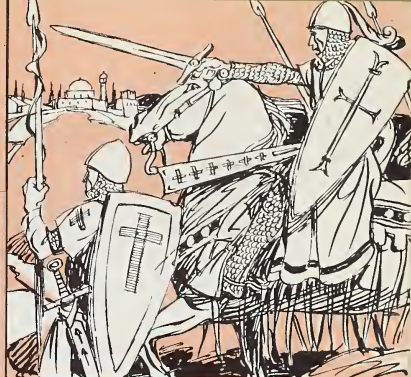
Let us see why the first half of this period was a period of disorder. For many years the Germanic tribes from the north had been pushing into the empire. Now they roamed about with no Roman legions to keep the peace. Sometimes they were cruel to the people whose lands they entered. Sometimes they took the land and the wealth. These barbarians cared little for education, art, or fine buildings. They



A fair in a town during the Middle Ages—1600



Monk copying a manuscript on a sheet of parchment



First crusaders on the way to capture Jerusalem—1096

Life in the Middle Ages

liked to fight and hunt, to eat and drink heartily. They were strong and brave, but they were not civilized. Wars wasted the land, making life and property unsafe all over western Europe.

In most parts of the old Roman Empire during this period many splendid buildings and fine statues were destroyed. Libraries were burned. Grass grew in the streets of many Roman cities. The Roman roads were not kept up, for there was no one to repair them. It was a lawless period.

To bring order, a new way of life grew up in which people were divided into two main classes. The upper class was made up of nobles and some men of the Church. The lower class was made up of the common people. The nobles were warriors, whose business was fighting. To belong to the upper class a man had to have wealth. This was usually in the form of

land. Nearly everyone who owned land was a noble. Some of the clergy belonged to the upper class because they, too, owned land. The other group was the common people, or peasants, who lived on the land and did the work. In time of danger they were protected by the nobles. This way of life was called *feudalism*, or the *feudal system*.

As we study feudalism, we shall answer the following questions.

1. How did the feudal system help to bring order and better government to Europe?
2. What led to the growth of towns and cities?
3. What were the crusades and what did they give to civilized life in Europe?
4. What gifts did the Middle Ages give to the world?

LIFE UNDER THE FEUDAL SYSTEM

The feudal system was widespread in western Europe and lasted a long time. Its purpose was to give the people protection in an age of disorder.

HOW THE FEUDAL SYSTEM WORKED

Between the years 500 to 1000, Germanic tribes from the north fought their way south. They came in search of homes and a new way of life. As they settled down, western Europe divided into various states, ruled by kings. The kings were unable to govern their kingdoms in an orderly way. They had no regular armies to send against enemies. Even if they had armies, there were few roads they could use, and roads were hard to build.

How feudalism began

The kings appointed certain men to defend certain parts of their kingdoms. As payment for their help, the kings gave them portions of land. In return for this, these nobles promised to send soldiers to help the king in times of danger. Each noble, in turn, divided his land. He was called a *landlord*, or a *lord*. The men to whom the lord gave land promised to help the lord if called upon. Each man who received land was the lord's *vassal*. The vassal came to the lord's aid when needed. The land that was granted in this way was called a *feud* or a *fief*.

Results of feudalism

Feudalism was based on co-operation. Each lord was to get help from those who had received fiefs from him. In turn, everyone who received a fief had a right to be protected by the troops of the lord. If the system worked well, everyone from

king to peasant would get help and give help when needed.

However, the system did not always work smoothly. In many cases the great lords, living far from the king, felt so important that they did as they pleased. They felt they were superior and could treat the common people as they liked. Sometimes these lords attempted to rule even the king.

After the Germanic tribes had swarmed into western Europe, other invaders came. From the east came hordes of Slavic peoples. Norsemen from Norway and Denmark sent their fleets to make raids on the coasts and rivers. From the regions north of the Black Sea came bands of Huns on horseback. From the south came the Arabs who had conquered North Africa. They crossed the Mediterranean, entered Spain, and brought with them the religion of Mohammed.

The people of Europe should have been united to protect themselves against the newcomers. But Europe was not united. Often there was war between the kings and lords. It sometimes seemed as though the feudal system, which was intended to create order, was actually causing disorder. This was not true. The feudal system brought order to separate regions, and in this way it improved conditions in a time of great disorder and danger.

LIFE IN THE CASTLES

The lords, or nobles, built strong castles for themselves. In these castles they kept men, called *knights*, who could defend the castles or could follow them to war. The knights helped the lord enforce his will upon the peasants.



Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway

This medieval castle had the hill and the river for protection. Notice the great stone tower with a flag flying. Such a fort could rarely be captured until the invention of gunpowder made it useless.

What the castles were like

Many of the castles built in the Middle Ages are still standing. Some are used as homes today. They are often richly furnished and are surrounded by beautiful gardens. Other castles have fallen into ruin and are visited only because of their historical importance.

Castles were usually built on a spot that was easy to defend. They were built of stone on rocky cliffs or steep hills. In time the castle became a fort.

The main tower of the castle was called the *donjon* (from which we get the word *dungeon*). There were smaller towers and a number of other buildings, all inclosed by high walls. The walls were surrounded by a deep ditch, or *moat*, usually filled with water. The entrance to the castle was over a *drawbridge* crossing the moat. The drawbridge could be drawn up by

chains to keep enemies from crossing. In an attack, guards in the towers defended the gateway, and a *portcullis* of heavy bars was lowered to close the gate. When the portcullis was down, no one could enter the castle. Around the roof were balconies, protected by walls or *battlements*, which had openings at certain points. The fighters could stand behind the battlements and defend the castle. At the same time they could see an approaching enemy.

Castles are beautiful, but they are uncomfortable places in which to live. The small windows made the rooms dark. The stone walls sent out a chill even in summer. The windows were hung with heavy embroidered drapery, called *tapestry*, to keep out drafts. Tapestry, woven in bright-colored patterns or with historical scenes also adorned the walls. Everyone had to wear heavy woolen clothing during a great part



Bettmann Archive

These two knights are trying to unseat each other with their lances. People came from near and far to see these medieval tournaments. The lords and ladies sit in the box you can see at the far right.

of the year. The water supply was usually scanty, and fires sometimes filled the rooms with smoke. The Romans would not have admired the feudal lords and ladies for their cleanliness.

Duties of the lord of the castle

The lord of the castle always had to be prepared for war. He never knew when his aid would be needed by his king or another lord. Also he might engage in some personal quarrel. He had to learn to do three things well: wear armor, ride a horse, and use weapons.

The lords of the early castles wore armor made of overlapping links of iron. The armor was heavy and clumsy to wear. But in fights it gave the wearer a great advantage over those without armor.

To keep fit for warfare, the young nobles were trained to jump, wrestle, and ride. As they grew older, they exercised with real weapons. They also kept in practice by having contests, called *tournaments*. In a tournament each rider tried to throw his opponent from the saddle. Often two groups of riders would dash at each other for a hand-to-hand battle. Large crowds of people would watch a tournament.

The training and duties of a knight

The sons of the lords trained to be knights. A young man of noble blood began his training at the age of seven as a page in some great lord's castle. He waited on the table, ran errands, and learned good manners. When he was sixteen years old, he became a squire and followed his lord in the hunt and in battle.

When the lord thought that his squire was able to perform the proper duties, the young man was made a knight. The new knight promised to be gentle and courteous to women and to protect weak and helpless people. The age of knighthood belongs to a long-ago time. But we still think of knightly, or gentlemanly, behavior as consisting of three things—bravery, consideration, and courtesy to everyone.

VILLAGE LIFE IN FEUDAL TIMES

Most farms in the Middle Ages were large estates owned and worked by a number of families. In England they were called *manors*. Few farmers owned land. Instead, most of them were shareholders, or *tenants*, on a manor. The lord's residence was a fortified manor house or a large, strong castle.

The tenants lived in cottages in a village or group of villages. For safety and convenience the villages were near the castle or manor house. Thus the villagers could carry out the orders of the lord. In an attack they could seek the shelter of the castle and help in its defense.

The manor, an independent community

The tenants on the manor produced all the food, clothing, tools, and other goods they used. They ground their grain into flour at the lord's mill and baked it in his ovens. They wove cloth, tanned leather, and made tools and firearms. Officials supervised the work. Every village had a church, which was the social center of the community, and a priest.

Freemen and serfs

There were two classes of tenants in the Middle Ages. A few tenants enjoyed free

use of parts of the land, for which they paid rent to the lord. They were *freemen*. The freemen could stay on the manor or leave if they wished. Most of the tenants, however, were *serfs*, who were neither slaves nor freemen. They could not be sold like slaves because they were not owned by the lord. Instead the serfs belonged to the land on which they lived. They had the right to live on the manor but could not leave without permission.

How the land was divided

Beyond the village were fields, marked off by stakes. Parts of the land were set aside for the use of the lord. Every family had its own garden. The rest of the land of the manor was shared by the lord and the tenants jointly. Every tenant could use certain plots of land on which he raised grain. To be fair, the chief men of the village divided the fields into long strips

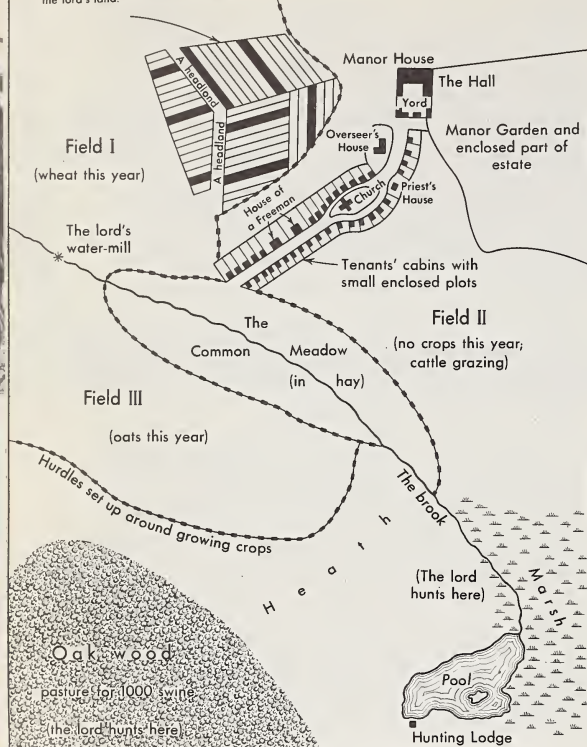
THE VIGIL

All night long before he became a knight, the young squire prayed in the church and kept watch over his armor. When morning came, he knelt before his lord, who touched his shoulder with a sword and declared him a knight. Sometimes a man was knighted for bravery on the battlefield.

Courtesy of the New York Public Library



Section of field showing strips: all the three fields would be divided in this way. The dark strips belong to one holding; as it is evidently a large one, it may be the lord's land.



A manor was usually a community in itself. The manor house was the most important building, standing at a distance from the village of serfs' and freemen's houses. Strips are drawn in one field to show you how all three fields were divided. The dark strips were the lord's land. The overseer was the official appointed by the lord to run the manor for him.

so each family shared good and poor land. The land was distributed over again each spring.

Farther away from the village and its farming land were meadows for grass and hay. All cattle and sheep owned by the villagers were pastured in the meadows. This land was used by all the villagers. One third of the land of the manor was left unplowed each year. Thus it could gain back some of the richness it lost when

planted in grain. On this land the animals could pasture. Back of the fields lay woods that also belonged to the lord. The villagers were allowed to cut some of the wood for fuel.

A visit to a village home

Jacques was a twelve-year-old village boy of old France. He lived in a one-room house in a group of similar houses at the foot of the hill below the castle. The houses were small, dark, and dreary. The water the family needed had to be carried from the village well.

Back of the house stood a shed for the two oxen. On a small, fenced-in patch of ground grew onions, turnips, carrots, and cabbages.

Jacques was too young to chop wood. He was not strong enough to cut grass or grain. But he could drive the oxen and tie up the grain in bundles. He could also load wood into a cart.

Jacques and his family went to bed soon after dark, for they had arisen at day-break. They worked hard all through the good weather so they would have food in winter. Few of the village people became prosperous. Most of them made only a bare living. They did not read in their free time because no one in the village knew how to read. Usually even the lords could not read. The priests were almost the only ones who could do so.

If you were to ask Jacques about himself, he would say: "I belong to my lord in the castle. This land is his. We cannot leave it without his consent. If we did, where would we go? Other lords would not want us, for they already have tenants on their land. No lord would give us shelter in his castle if an enemy appeared. We are serfs, and we belong to this land."

The life of the serf

The serfs had a lowly place in feudal life. Though the life of a serf was hard, the wise lord knew that it was profitable for him to treat his serfs fairly. Men are loyal to the master who treats them well. The manor system enabled the worker to live safely and to look after his land.

Jacques had never been away from the estate on which he had been born. But Jacques's father had visited a few other estates and had talked with other serfs. He said: "Our lord is a good master. We have to give half our time to raise his crops, cut his wood, and cart his stone. We have to bring him part of the crops we raise on our village land. We have to keep the roads and our houses in repair. But he feeds us well when we do extra work for him. He does not ride over our crops when he hunts. He is not always looking for chances to punish us for faults."

Serfs cultivate the lands of a great French lord. The castle of Chantilly with its many towers and surrounded by a high stone wall stands in the distance. This small picture was painted sometime during the Middle Ages.

Metropolitan Museum of Art



The life of the freemen

On nearly every manor there were some persons who were freemen. These men rented a portion of the land, or perhaps they owned a few acres of land within the lord's estate. Men who served the lord faithfully sometimes received from him a grant of land as a reward.

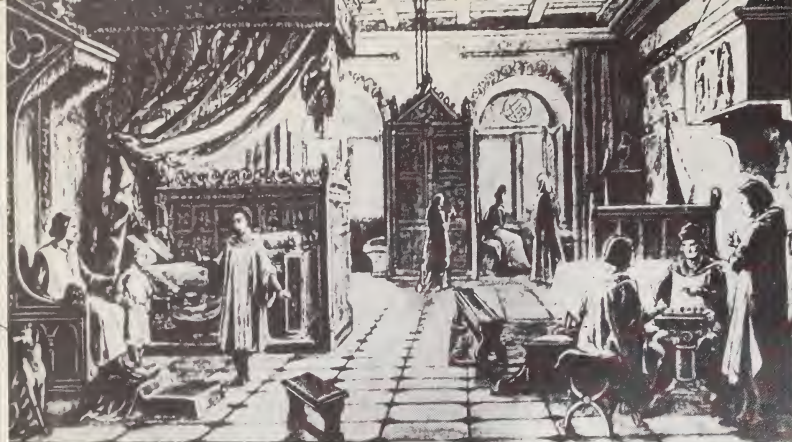
If freemen rented land, they could give it up and move away. If they owned land, they could sell it or pass it on to their children. In time of war the freemen joined soldiers of the nearest lord, but they were under the lord's command only while fighting. Afterwards they were free.

As time went on, freemen became more numerous and serfs fewer. Lords in France and England found that freemen, who gained benefits from their work, worked better than the serfs, who profited little from their labor. In Central Europe, however, the peasants did not become free for a long time. In Russia the serfs were not freed until 1861, the year in which our War Between the States began.

HOW FEUDALISM ENDED

The feudal system lasted a long time. It tended to pass away when kings grew strong enough to assume power over the lords and to maintain order. The manor lost its importance when, in the later Middle Ages, cities flourished. As in the days of the Roman Empire, trade increased, and people were paid in money instead of services.

Today only a few things remain to remind us of the feudal system. In Europe there are societies whose members are called knights. It is an honor to belong to them. In our language certain words, such as knight, squire, vassal, and chivalry, remind us of this by-gone age.



Bettmann Archive

This room in a medieval castle is used for many purposes. The lord sits at the left talking to his children. In the window two ladies are talking and at the table the men are playing a game of chess.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

moat	knight	feud (fief)
tenant	tournament	portcullis
serf	drawbridge	Middle Ages
manor	battlement	freeman
vassal	tapestry	landlord (lord)
dungeon	feudalism	

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 17. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. An iron grating that could be let down over the gateway of a castle
2. The period of about one thousand years between ancient and modern times
3. A shareholder on a manor
4. The way of life in Europe in the Middle Ages which was based on co-operation between lords and their vassals
5. A contest between knights
6. In the Middle Ages a worker who belonged to the land on which he lived
7. A bridge across a ditch of water surrounding a castle, which could be raised to keep out enemies
8. A person who could stay on a manor or was free to leave if he wished
9. The main tower of a castle
10. A large estate

11. A low wall or railing, with open spaces, on the roof of a castle or fort
12. A heavy, embroidered fabric used as a wall hanging
13. Land given by a lord to a vassal
14. A deep ditch, usually filled with water, surrounding the walls of a castle
15. A warrior in the Middle Ages
16. The king or nobleman to whom a vassal owed allegiance
17. A man who received land from a lord to whom he promised help when needed in return

Can You Answer These?

1. Why was the first half of the Middle Ages a lawless period?
2. What was the purpose of feudalism?
3. Explain how feudalism was based on co-operation.
4. Why were tournaments held?
5. How were knights supposed to behave at all times?
6. How did serfs differ from slaves?
7. How did serfs differ from freemen?
8. Why did freemen work better than serfs?
9. In what ways was a manor like a village? How was it different?
10. How was a castle made strong to stand against attack by enemies?

TOWNS AND CITIES IN THE MIDDLE AGES

After the fall of Rome many of the small towns of the Roman Empire disappeared. The few great Roman cities in western Europe grew smaller and lost most of their trade. The roads were poor and there were so many robbers that people had little desire to travel. These were chiefly stay-at-home times. Towns and cities cannot grow without trade and travel.

THE REVIVAL OF TOWN LIFE

Between the years 1000 and 1100 trade in Europe began to increase. Although land travel was difficult, sea travel improved. Population was increasing. Merchants visited the more civilized parts of Europe, and workmen made articles that the merchants could carry and sell.

Because of the increase in trade and travel old towns flourished again and new ones arose. New cities were founded when a king wished to establish a new capital. Sometimes a new town grew up around a fortified frontier post.

Let us look at an example of the way the feudal system was replaced by town life. In the late Middle Ages a powerful nobleman had an estate in what is now Belgium. A large number of people lived in his castle. Many persons visited him, some on business and for a friendly stay. Others, who were merchants, sold him goods of various kinds. Because it was not convenient to entertain all these people in the castle, the lord built inns to shelter and feed the travelers. Merchants then opened shops near by. In a few years a busy town had grown up across the river from the castle. The lord controlled the town, and the people paid him rent.

Towns began to grow in number and size. Trade increased. Trade creates more trade, for man has never yet found a limit to his wants. The coining of money made trade simpler. The people of the town began to grow wealthy. They surrounded their cities with walls.

The people in towns began to feel important and wanted to be independent of the nobles. By paying sums of money and by fighting, they gradually gained their freedom. Finally, many towns became entirely free to direct their own affairs, and most of them were ruled only by the king.

When a town gained certain privileges, these facts were written in a document called a *charter*. The lord had to swear that the facts were correct, and he had to put his name or his seal to the charter. Many serfs gained their freedom by running away. If they could make things, they could support themselves and thus find safety and work in a distant town. Since all townsmen were free men, if a serf was allowed to remain he became free.

Markets in the Middle Ages

The people of the towns made and sold things, whereas most of the people of the manor grew things. The more the townsfolk could sell, the more prosperous they were. The towns did not have the forums of the old Roman cities. But each town had one open space, the *market place*, where people met to buy and sell goods.

Once a week the country people came to the nearest town to sell their produce in the market place. When this was sold, they in turn bought town goods. Refreshment stands were set up in the market place. Peddlers mingled with the crowd.



Ewing Galloway

Guild halls, built in the Middle Ages, still stand in Ghent, Belgium. This city was once a great commercial port. Bells in the tall clock tower were rung to call the people of the city together.

It was a busy, jolly time which brought profit to everyone. The larger towns had several market places. In many lands market days are still very common.

Fairs in the Middle Ages

Besides the markets, which helped trade, there were *fairs*. The fairs were important occasions, lasting for a week or longer. They brought together people from many distant lands.

A town had to get permission from its lord to hold a fair. For this it paid him money. Each town held its fair at the same time each year so that the traveling merchants could plan in advance to be there. A merchant could spend the whole year either selling his goods at a fair or preparing for a fair.

The fairs were so big that they usually were held on open ground outside the town walls. Every year merchants from all over western Europe traveled to the fairs. It was an education for the people to see the interesting articles that were brought from a distance. At the fairs trading was made easier, men welcomed strangers, and stay-at-homes learned about other lands.

The guilds

When towns grew and trade became important, the town officers could not direct trade properly. The richer merchants of some towns joined together in groups called *merchant guilds*. They elected officers and drew up rules which they enforced. Sometimes a merchant guild took part in the town government.

While the merchants were starting merchant guilds, the skilled workmen formed groups called *craft guilds*. All the men who did one kind of work joined together in a guild. There were guilds for bakers, metal workers, weavers, shoemakers, and many others. The earliest craft guild was the candlemakers' guild of Paris.

The member of a craft guild was a *master*, a skilled workman who could follow his trade independently. When a young man wanted to learn weaving, he had to hire himself as an *apprentice* to a master weaver. The apprentice lived in the master's house while he learned the trade. The apprentices generally had a hard life. They did the hard jobs for everyone.

After the apprentice period, if the master notified the guild that the apprentice had done well, the young man became a *journeyman*. After that he received daily wages. The journeyman, being a skilled worker, could hire out to a master in a guild. He could wander from town to town, learning from many masters.

When the journeyman gained enough experience and saved a little money, he applied to the guild to be declared a master. He had to prove his skill by showing his masterpiece, which was some beautiful article that he had spent years creating. In the weaver guild, for example, the masterpiece might be a piece of tapestry, a robe, or an altar cloth.

All the masters of one craft in a town lived near one another. The guild decided the hours the shops could be open. Inspectors belonging to the guild saw that the masters sold only goods of proper standard. The guild set the prices, so one master could not undersell another.

For a long time the guild system worked very well. The customer received products

of good quality, and the master had a fair chance in business. The guild helped young men become masters. It encouraged skillful work and made the workman proud of his job. Beautiful guild halls were built. These were ornaments to their towns or cities for many hundreds of years.

THE GROWTH OF CITIES

There were differences between the town and the city in the Middle Ages. The city, because of its size, was stronger than the town. Some Italian cities, such as Venice, Genoa, and Florence, were free cities during this period and never came under the power of a feudal lord. They became city-states, governing large areas of land outside their walls. Beautiful buildings, statues, paintings, and ornaments were produced for the cities.

The citizens of important towns and cities had rights and privileges not enjoyed by the serfs. The guilds made the people feel pride both in their town or city and in the work which was carried on there. Two great ideas developed in the Middle Ages. One was that good work is more deserving of honor than noble birth. The second was that co-operation makes communities strong.

Some kings realized that the towns and their workmen were opposed to the lords. The lords tried to keep their power by weakening the king. So the kings began to favor the cities and towns in order to weaken the power of the lords. After a time the towns grew so strong that their citizen armies fought and defeated the lords and their knights in battle. Gradually the power of the lords decreased, and the power of the kings, supported by the towns, increased. With the growth of cities our modern world was beginning.

THE CRUSADES AND WHAT THEY ACCOMPLISHED

We have learned that the Moslems conquered the Middle East and North Africa. They held Palestine, or the Holy Land. To Jerusalem, the sacred city of the Christians, traveled many pilgrims. They made the long, hard journey to pray at the Holy Sepulchre, the supposed tomb of Christ. For many years the Moslems allowed pilgrims to visit Jerusalem in peace.

THE STORY OF THE CRUSADES

Moslem armies began to move westward again. Conquering as they came, they reached Asia Minor and threatened to take Constantinople. With the Eastern Empire in danger, the emperor in Constantinople asked the Pope at Rome for help.

How the First Crusade began

The Pope had heard that the Turkish Moslems, who now held Palestine, were ill-treating Christian pilgrims. He agreed that the Eastern emperor ought to have help. In 1095 he called on the people of western Europe to wage war against the Moslems. He asked them to rescue the Holy Land from the Turks so the Holy Sepulchre could be in Christian hands.

In churches all over western Europe the people heard the Pope's message. In France a number of lords raised armies. Thousands of men cried out, "God wills it!" They sewed crosses on their coats and set out for the Holy Land. They were called crusaders, from a French word meaning "to take the cross."

The capture of Jerusalem

The crusaders traveled in groups by different routes to reach the Holy Land. Their armies captured Jerusalem. The Holy Sepulchre was theirs. Most of the crusaders went home when Jerusalem was captured. Those who remained set up a kingdom in the Holy Land and three other neighboring states.

The little Christian kingdom did not last. Although Jerusalem was governed by Christians for nearly a hundred years after the First Crusade, war between the Christians and the Moslems never ceased.

Other crusades

When the people of Europe realized that the Moslems were so strong that they might win back the Holy Land, they started the Second Crusade. But the

Bettmann Archive



English crusaders under King Richard I, called the Lion Hearted, depart on the Third Crusade. Kings of England, France, and Germany led this important crusade, but they did not succeed in capturing the city of Jerusalem.



This map shows the main routes followed in two of the crusades. In the First Crusade the routes were overland to Constantinople, then across Asia Minor to Jerusalem. Notice how the crusaders followed different routes after leaving Constantinople. Trace the route of the Third Crusade.

armies from the different countries did not march together, and the Moslems defeated them one by one. Not long after this, the Moslems recaptured Jerusalem and the cities around it.

The Third Crusade began. One of its leaders was Richard of England, called Richard the Lion-Hearted because of his bravery and daring. Richard was captured and put in prison, and the Third Crusade failed also.

Other crusades followed, until there were eight in all. But the Christians were never able to regain the Holy Land.

RESULTS OF THE CRUSADES

The crusades lasted more than two hundred years. They are sometimes called the Holy Wars of the Middle Ages.

How the crusades encouraged trade

The Italian cities of Venice, Genoa, and Pisa sent out trading ships before the time of the crusades. But when ships carried thousands of people with provisions for the crusaders in the Middle East, the trade of these cities increased greatly. The ships coming back from the East brought valuable goods which most of the people in Europe had never seen before. During the crusades there were periods of peace. Then Moslem traders and Christian traders did business with each other.

Almost every prosperous family in western Europe became acquainted with articles from the East. Many articles had been brought by land or sea from the Far East. There were ivory, jewels, and spices. There were fine silks and splendid rugs.

Trade with the East brought riches to many European cities and merchants, and made thousands of homes more beautiful and comfortable.

What Europe learned from the crusades

The crusades taught Europeans about foreign lands. Before the crusades no one knew a great deal about lands that lay beyond the forests or the sea. The crusades took lord and squire, fighting man and peasant, sailor and priest, to new countries. Western Europe had awakened to discover that there was a world beyond its borders.

The crusades helped Europeans understand people of other lands. The people of western Europe had thought that the Moslems were not to be respected. They found that these "unbelievers" fought well and many were just as courteous as the crusaders themselves were.

The crusaders learned new methods of warfare in the East. The battering-ram and the siege tower were used to attack walled cities. The catapult hurled rocks and heavy spears over the walls. The crusaders first saw these used by the Eastern emperor's men at Constantinople.

When these three machines were used to attack castles, it was clear that stone castles must be built instead of wooden ones. Only a few of the most ancient castles are in good condition today. Some rulers in France and England saw to it that most of the strong castles were pulled down. This would prevent the nobles from using them as forts if they rebelled against the king.

A crusader found that the homes of Constantinople and of the Middle East taught him much about comfortable living. The people there had many customs which he could practice to his advantage.

THE GIFTS OF THE MIDDLE AGES

The Middle Ages were the beginning of modern times. They laid the foundation for much that is important today.

CHURCHES AND CATHEDRALS

The Middle Ages owed much to ancient times, especially to Greece and Rome. But the invaders who came down from the

north and broke up the Roman Empire brought new blood, new energy, and a new way of life in Europe. It expressed itself in new art forms in building.

The Romanesque cathedral

When the crusades began, the Roman, or *Romanesque*, style was used in building

H. Armstrong Roberts



This fortified gateway to the city of Lubeck, Germany, was built in the Middle Ages. Lubeck was a great European port.



James Sawders-Combine

The low, domed stone cathedral at Pisa is built in the Romanesque style. Notice the small windows and the round arches over doors and windows and on the front of the building.

churches and *cathedrals*. A cathedral is the church where a very important church official, called a *bishop*, holds services. The Romanesque churches and cathedrals had stone walls, with round arches above the doors and windows. At first, the roofs and beams were wooden. But the flames of candles or torches caused many fires in the upper parts of the buildings. Later the roofs were made of stone.

Stone ceilings require strong walls to prevent the extra weight of the roof from pushing them apart. Architects built extra pillars to support the walls. They protected the windows by keeping them small. A Romanesque church was dark and gloomy on the inside.

The Gothic cathedral

French architects worked out a new way of building churches. They developed a pointed arch instead of the round arch used by the Romans. The ceiling now rested on pillars as high as the walls. The arches were held by stone ribs built into the tall pillars. The walls did not support much of the weight of the ceiling. To strengthen the walls, the architects used

a *flying buttress*, or heavy stone prop, placed outside the building. The flying buttress was one of the cleverest devices ever invented in building.

Supported by flying buttresses, the walls of the church could now be made taller and thinner. The architect could put in as many windows as he wished. Some churches had so many large windows with colored, or stained, glass that it was sometimes said they had walls of glass.

Churches built with pointed arches gave the appearance of stretching upward toward heaven. This appearance was increased by towers and tall spires on many of the roofs.

The people of western Europe took great pride in their churches. All the people of a city helped put up the building. They gave their labor and their skill to

The beautiful Gothic cathedral in Rouen, built in the thirteenth century, is one of the best examples of this style. What features of the Gothic style do you recognize in this picture?

Ewing Galloway





In the early Middle Ages little trading was done in Europe because most communities supplied their own needs. But after the crusades trade increased. The Italian cities of Venice and Genoa grew powerful by controlling the trade with the East. Their ships picked up the goods brought to the Eastern end of the Mediterranean by Arab traders. Silk caravans followed a special route. Find this on the map. What cities of Europe and Asia shown on the map were important trading centers?

adorn God's house. It was the one building in every community which belonged to everybody. Nothing was too fine for it.

Most of the persons who went to church in the early cathedrals could neither read nor understand the Latin of the church services. The finest cathedrals, therefore, were really Bibles in stone. On the outside, the people could see many sacred teachings represented in pictures or statues in a way that they could understand and remember. Beside these, the worshipers might see statues of the apostles and other persons in the Bible.

Most of the windows of the cathedrals were made of stained glass. This kept out the glare of light and added to the beauty of the church. No glassmakers of today have been able to equal the marvelous shades of red and blue made by the glassmakers of the Middle Ages. Their rose windows—large, round windows with delicate patterns—are very beautiful, especially when the sunlight or moonlight shines through them.

The new style of construction was called *Gothic*. The Goths were Germans who had settled in many parts of western Eu-

rope. The Gothic style of building became very popular. It became the fashion to construct most churches and other buildings, too, in Gothic style.

Many of the Gothic cathedrals of the Middle Ages are still standing. France has more than any other country, but there are beautiful Gothic cathedrals in Spain, Italy, England, and Germany.

Today we often use the Gothic style, especially in churches and in college buildings. Have you seen Gothic architecture?

THE GROWTH OF TRADE

The crusades failed to achieve their purpose. They did not permanently restore the Holy Land to the Christians. But they had good results in trade.

Trade with the East

The crusaders acquainted people with the products of Eastern countries. Sugar, rice, oranges, lemons, pepper, and cinnamon were brought to Europe by the crusaders. Other Eastern goods came too—perfumes, medicines, silk and cotton cloths, porcelain dishes and cups, fine rugs and carpets. Thus, as a result of the crusades, the people in Europe enjoyed luxuries they had never before imagined.

The growth of business in Europe

With the rise of the cities and towns there was trade by land and sea. On land the old Roman roads were used again. The businessman became an important citizen. The guilds pointed the way to our trade unions. People began to use the Arabic numerals instead of the clumsy Roman numerals.

THE GROWTH OF LEARNING

In the Middle Ages there were persons who wanted to live apart from others to devote themselves to a holy life. Such men were called *monks*. Groups of monks lived in buildings called *monasteries*. Women who wanted to lead a religious life became *nuns*, or sisters. The nuns lived in *convents*.

The beginning of universities

The monasteries of the Middle Ages were quiet places where monks could read, study, and copy books by hand. Later, centers of learning, called *universities*, were established. In the universities religion, law, and medicine were taught. Latin became the language used by educated men of various countries. People began to study the old Roman writers.

Bettmann Archive

For a long time during the Middle Ages the only schools were those held in the monasteries where the monks were the teachers. Both monks and the sons of lords were taught in these schools. The students sat on narrow benches below the teacher's high desk.



The writing of books

After reading ancient books, many persons were inspired to write books themselves. They wrote histories and books about journeys into strange lands. They celebrated in stories and poems the lives of saints and the deeds of heroes, such as King Arthur. They also wrote amusing stories, or fables, in which animals were the principal characters. Some of these were "Reynard the Fox" and "Chanticleer," the story of a vain rooster.

The beginning of modern languages

Some modern nations had their beginnings in the latter part of the Middle Ages. In England, France, and Spain the rulers grew powerful and molded their countries into nations with feelings of unity and patriotism.

A number of new languages developed which were a mixture of Latin and the speech of the Germanic peoples. Such

The large book shown below is a Gutenberg Bible, one of the first books printed from movable type. The tiny book, which is called the "Thumb Bible," was printed in Scotland.

Underwood and Underwood



mixed languages are Spanish, Portuguese, French, and Italian. Because they are based in part upon the speech of the Romans, they are called Romance languages.

In northern Europe a group of Germanic languages developed. German, Dutch, the Scandinavian languages, and English belong mainly to this group.

NEW INVENTIONS

There were many causes of the breakup of the Middle Ages. Among these were new inventions which brought changes.

The invention of gunpowder

Gunpowder was invented in the Middle Ages. Gunpowder helped destroy feudalism by making the foot soldier with his gun the equal of the knight. By 1350 three German towns had factories making gunpowder to supply a growing market.

Improved methods of sailing

Men's knowledge of geography was greatly increased by improved methods of sailing. Two new instruments aided their discoveries: the *compass* and the *astrolabe*. The compass, whose needle always points to the north, enabled sailors to know the direction in which they were going. The astrolabe measured the height of the sun in the sky. From this sailors could reckon latitude and know how far north or south of the equator they were. With these new instruments men were able to sail more safely and draw better maps and charts. Thus the way was prepared for the discovery of the New World.

The invention of printing

Another invention which brought important changes at the close of the Middle



Ewing Galloway

Gutenberg shows how his printing press works.

Ages was a method of printing from movable type. Up to this time books had to be copied by hand on *parchment*. Parchment, a writing material made of sheepskin, was very expensive. Few men could afford these books.

The Chinese had invented wood-block printing hundreds of years earlier. But the Europeans developed their own method, using metal type. The first European book was printed in Germany about 1450. The new invention made it possible to print hundreds of copies of books in a short time. Rag paper had been developed a few years before, so there was good, cheap material to print on. Books were printed in many different languages. The

reading of books was to become the privilege of the many, not of the few.

THE RENAISSANCE

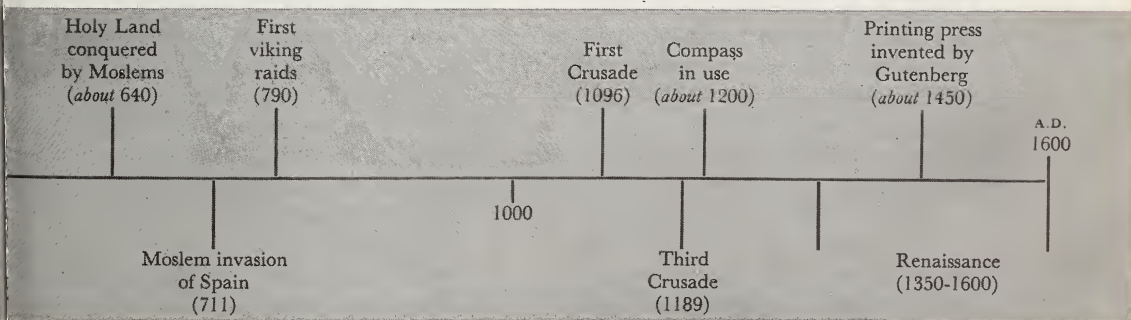
The spread of ideas resulting from inventions and discoveries was part of a movement in Europe known as the *Renaissance*. This word means "rebirth."

During the Renaissance men read eagerly the masterpieces of ancient Greek and Latin literature. They tried new ideas in painting. They carved statues in marble and patterned their architecture after the ancient Greek temples. The paintings were more natural than those of ancient times. The artists observed the flowers, trees, and scenery about them and put those things into their pictures.

The revival of interest in the writings of Greece and Rome began in Italy. From Italy teachers of the "new learning" went to other countries of western Europe. Italy thus became the teacher of Europe, as Greece had many years before.

The Renaissance lasted from about 1350 to 1600. It marked the end of the Middle Ages and the beginning of modern times. We shall take note of its influence as we follow the separate stories of the European nations.

Time-Line: The Middle Ages (476 A.D.—1600 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words and Terms You Should Know

monk	cathedral	apprentice
fair	charter	flying buttress
compass	parchment	Renaissance
master	astrolabe	craft guild
Gothic	monastery	merchant guild
bishop	Romanesque	market place
nun	university	journeyman
convent		

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 22. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. The residence of a group of nuns
2. A heavy stone prop placed outside a building to support and strengthen it
3. A writing material made of sheepskin
4. A style of building that used round arches above doors and windows
5. A statement signed by the lord of a region listing the privileges gained by a town
6. An instrument used by sailors to measure the height of the sun in the sky
7. A worker who had completed his training as an apprentice
8. A school where religion, law, and medicine were taught in the Middle Ages
9. An important church official who heads a church district
10. The period of time beginning about 1350 in which artists, scientists, and writers in Europe began to work in new ways
11. An organization of merchants to see that trade rules were obeyed
12. A worker who promised to serve a master workman for a certain time in order to learn a trade
13. An instrument with a needle that always points north
14. An association of craftsmen who do the same kind of work

15. A woman who lives a holy life together with other religious women
16. A very highly skilled workman
17. The residence of a group of monks
18. A gathering of buyers and sellers at a stated time and place for trade
19. A large or important church, where a bishop holds services
20. A man who devotes himself to a holy life
21. An open space in a town where people buy and sell goods
22. A style of building with pointed arches, tall pillars, and flying buttresses

Can You Answer These?

1. How did people live on the manors in feudal times?
2. Who was an apprentice?
3. What is a masterpiece?
4. What is meant by a guild hall?
5. How did guilds help their members? How did they help their customers?
6. What is meant by a free city?
7. Why did kings favor cities and towns?
8. How did the early crusades begin?
9. How did cities like Genoa and Venice benefit from the crusades?
10. What was the Renaissance? When and where did it begin?

Learning from Maps and Pictures

1. Look at the map on page 212. Imagine that you are a medieval merchant traveling from Hamburg to Peking. Trace the route you might follow. Through what cities would you pass?
2. Study the diagram of the manor on page 202. Locate the manor house, the church, the overseer's house, and the priest's house. Why are the houses of the tenants near the manor house? Locate each of the fields. Why does Field II have no crops this year? Who may hunt in the oak wood?

3. On page 211 compare the Romanesque cathedral with the Gothic cathedral. List the features that help you recognize each style of building.

Can You Choose the Right Answer?

Complete each statement by selecting the proper word or phrase that makes it true. Write your answers in complete sentences on a sheet of paper.

1. The Germanic barbarians liked to:
(a) make pottery (b) fight and hunt
(c) weave brocades
2. In the early Middle Ages the people of western Europe had to stand together because: (a) they wanted to discover new lands (b) they desired better laws (c) their countries were being invaded by enemies
3. Tournaments were held: (a) to keep the knights in training (b) to raise money for charitable purposes (c) to amuse the peasants
4. A knight had to promise that he would: (a) study his books faithfully (b) make a visit to Rome (c) protect weak and defenseless people
5. A freeman: (a) was part of the lord's property (b) could move about as he pleased (c) paid no taxes
6. The towns had charters which:
(a) showed that they were large places
(b) did honor to the lords (c) gave them certain privileges
7. Fairs were good things during the Middle Ages because: (a) they kept away the barbarians (b) they taught stay-at-home people about other lands (c) they called for the building of more castles
8. The guild system worked well because it: (a) made the good workman proud of his job (b) employed many apprentices (c) made money circulate fast
9. The crusades encouraged trade by:
(a) capturing Jerusalem from the Turks
(b) building strong castles in the Middle

East (c) causing many ships to make voyages

10. The Gothic style of cathedral was:
(a) heavy and had round domes (b) was tall with pointed arches and many windows (c) was painted in bright colors

Interesting Things to Do

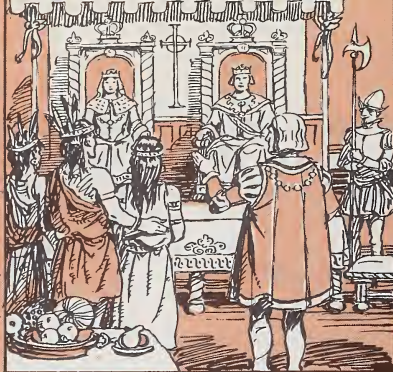
1. Pretend that you are a squire taking your classmates, as townsmen, around the strong castle of your lord. Make them feel, by your explanations of the various parts of the castle, that you are an excellent guide.
2. If you like to read, you will enjoy Howard Pyle's *Men of Iron*, a book that tells the story of how a boy became a knight. Describe in class the steps by which the hero became an "Iron man."
3. Take a trip with some of your friends to a museum which has a collection of arms and armor of the Middle Ages. Report to the class on what you learn. If there is no museum that you can visit, consult books on the Middle Ages.
4. With a group of your classmates write and present a play called "A Day in the Life of an Apprentice." Include as characters the apprentice, his master, a journeyman, the master's wife, and a girl servant.

Things to Think About

1. Men from Europe traveled far from home during the crusades. They met different people and gained new ideas which changed their lives. With modern means of transportation people today visit all parts of the world. Does travel help to bring understanding among peoples? Explain your answer.
2. The Renaissance was a time in which people began to do new things in art, science, and literature. Do you think the period in which we are living is like the time of the Renaissance? If your answer is Yes, explain your position.



Ferdinand and Isabella driving the Moors out of Granada—1492



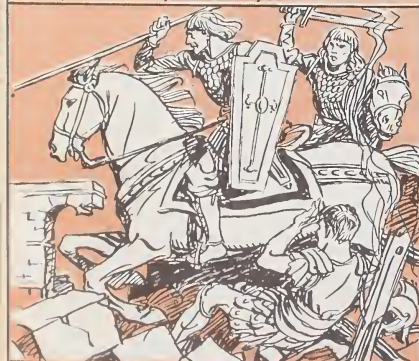
Columbus welcomed at Spanish court after first voyage—1493



Cortés enforcing Spanish on the Aztecs of Mexico—



Spain conquered by Moors—711



Visigoths in Spain—about 415



Spain, Portugal, and colonies

8.

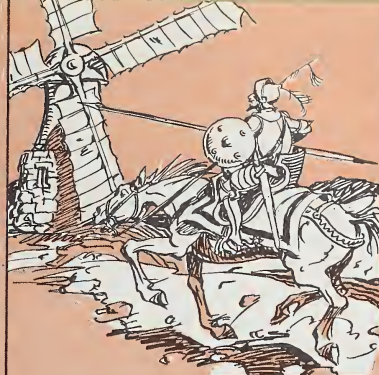
After the early crusades came an increase in knowledge, inventions, and trade. Through explorations under the flag of Portugal, Europe found a new route to the Far East. Then Europeans learned of the New World west of the Atlantic.

Although Columbus was an Italian by birth, he sailed in the service of Spain when he discovered America. Because of his discoveries and those of Spanish explorers who followed him Spain claimed most of the New World.

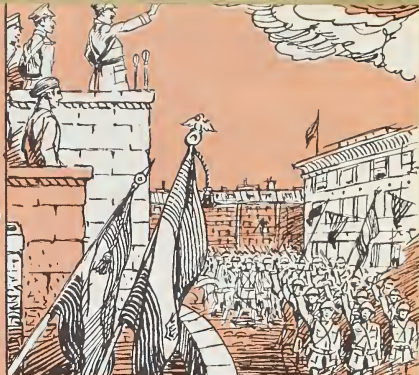
Spain and Portugal make up the Iberian Peninsula, named for the people who lived there in the time of the Romans. The map on page 223 shows that the two countries form a square block of land. Bodies of water around the Iberian Peninsula almost separate it from the rest of Europe. On the land side a range of mountains, the Pyrenees, forms a wall between the penin-



defeat of the Spanish Armada by the English—1588



A scene from the Spanish novel *Don Quixote*—published in 1615



A parade of Spanish soldiers before Dictator Franco—1939

Spain and Portugal

sula and France. So difficult is it to cross these mountains that until recently no railroad went through them except at the ends. There the mountains slope down to the Mediterranean on the east and the Bay of Biscay on the west.

Along the Mediterranean coast, where irrigation can be used, fruits are plentiful. The coast on the north along the Bay of Biscay is rainy and cold.

Most of Spain is so high and dry that it is poor farming country. Its central plateau is dreary and bare. There are small gardens watered by irrigation. In some parts there are fields of wheat. Large tracts of land seem good only for flocks of sheep and goats. The mountains are barren. Winters are cold on this central plateau, and summers are hot. Spain, in general, cannot be called a comfortable country to live in.

Portugal occupies only a small part of the peninsula, but it has a favorable location. The Atlantic makes the climate more temperate, brings rainfall, and favors trade. The climate is rainy and mild in winter. In summer it is hot and dry, except along the ocean. With a long sea-coast, Portugal has many fishermen. It is a pleasant country, without the great differences of climate that Spain has.

Our study of Spain and Portugal will answer the following questions:

1. What is the early history of Spain and Portugal?
2. How did Spain and Portugal become nations?
3. What are Spain and Portugal like?
4. What have Spain and Portugal given to the world?
5. How are Spain and Portugal governed?



Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway

The great Rock of Gibraltar stands at the western entrance to the Mediterranean Sea. This lofty rock, on the Spanish side of the Strait of Gibraltar, has been a British naval base since 1815.

THE EARLY HISTORY OF SPAIN AND PORTUGAL

Spain and Portugal have a long history. They have not always been independent nations. Let us follow the history of these countries on the Iberian Peninsula.

THE PENINSULA IN EARLY TIMES

At its greatest extent the Roman Empire stretched westward beyond the Mediterranean and included the Iberian Peninsula. The people who lived there were related to the Gauls, the early inhabitants of what is now France.

The kingdom of the West Goths

When Rome was losing its power, the West Goths, a Germanic tribe, swept down from the north and conquered the peninsula. They set up a kingdom, and the native people became their serfs. The

kingdom of the West Goths lasted for three hundred years.

The Moslems, who controlled the coast of North Africa (page 52), looked across the Strait of Gibraltar to the shores of Spain. They decided that Spain would be a good place to start conquering Europe. They realized that the leaders of the West Goths were jealous of one another and could not unite against a strong army. It should not be hard to defeat them.

The Moors in Spain

In 711 the Moslems crossed the strait and won a great battle. In a few years the Moslems had conquered almost the entire peninsula. The towering rock where the Moslems landed is now called the Rock of Gibraltar.

Moslem victories were made easy because the West Gothic leaders were not united. The serfs had been treated so unkindly that they had no desire to fight for their masters. The West Goths had to retreat to the mountains of northwestern Spain.

Encouraged by their success, the Moslems crossed the Pyrenees and marched north through France. Their army was defeated by a strong Christian army. The Moslems returned to Spain and never again invaded France.

For five hundred years the Moslems, or *Moors* as they were called in Spain, held power over that land. The northern part of the peninsula was too cold for them, so they stayed in the south. Their rulers made the land more civilized than any other part of Europe at that time. The Moors had learned what the wise men of Greece and of Alexandria knew. Their own wise men developed this learning still further. Let us see what these invaders brought to Europe.

The gifts of the Moors

The Moors had a style of building new to the Western world. They used colored tiles and pointed archways with lattice-work of stone or wood. Their architecture

was used later in Spanish America. This included the southern part of the United States, which was settled by the Spanish.

Do you know that *algebra* is a Moorish word? The Greeks knew about algebra, a method of figuring which uses letters, such as x and y , as well as numbers. It was the Moors who developed and improved algebra. Some day you may study algebra.

The Moors had many good doctors. Through mixing various medicines, the Moorish doctors found that the materials they used changed when treated in certain ways. The study of these changes was called *alchemy*. From the word *alchemy* we get the name for our modern science of *chemistry*. You may study chemistry some day, too.

The Moors had fine libraries. The Chinese had been making paper for several hundred years, but the Western world knew nothing of this valuable invention. The Arabs captured some Chinese paper makers, who taught them how to make paper from cotton fibers. The Moors in Spain learned to use flax instead of cotton. In 1250 linen paper was first used.

At Córdoba the Moors had a great university with a fine library. About the year 1200 Córdoba was the largest city in Europe except for Constantinople. Córdoba

Ewing Galloway



The finest example of Moorish art in Europe is the Alhambra, a palace in Granada, Spain. This fountain stands in an inner courtyard of the palace. Why is the courtyard called the Court of the Lions?

had more than half a million people. There were many public baths and libraries. It had a mosque as large as St. Peter's Church at Rome. Not all the people of the city were Moslems, but no one was disturbed because of his religious beliefs. Spain was prosperous under the Moors.

The Moors had great skill in farming and gardening. They introduced many new plants into Spain. These included cotton, rice, sugar cane, palm trees, asparagus, and eggplant. Some of these plants were brought by the Spanish settlers to the New World, where they grew well.

THE DEFEAT OF THE MOORS

While the Moors were peacefully working and studying, the Christians in the northwest of Spain were growing stronger. Gradually, Christian armies moved southward, capturing Córdoba and Sevilla.

After Córdoba fell, Toledo became the center of Moorish learning. The University of Toledo attracted many Christian students from France, Italy, and Germany. They respected the Moorish knowledge of medicine, astronomy, and geography. They learned Arabic so they could read Moorish books. They translated these books into Latin so that they would be understood by the learned men at home.

HOW SPAIN AND PORTUGAL BECAME NATIONS

While the Moors were living in comfort on the peninsula, shipbuilders of the Mediterranean had been building better vessels. Sailors had grown more skillful and daring during this period also.

THE RISE OF PORTUGAL

In 1318 Venice and Genoa sent some ships, by way of the Atlantic, to trade with



Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway

This patio is in a Spanish home in Sevilla. It is built in the Moorish style as are so many buildings in Sevilla. The patio is one of Spain's gifts to the New World. Where in the United States are patios built today?

Moorish Spain was a center of learning for Europe.

In time Toledo also fell to the Christians. But the Moslems continued to rule the Kingdom of Granada, in southeastern Spain, for many years.

the cities in the country now called Belgium. These ships stopped for supplies at Lisbon, Portugal.

Portuguese explorations

At this time spices were bringing high prices in Europe. They came from the Spice Islands of the Far East, which we now call Indonesia. Find the islands of

Indonesia on the map on page 452. Arab traders brought precious spices and other valuables from the East. They then sold them to the merchants of Venice and Genoa, who grew rich from this trade.

The Portuguese Empire

The Portuguese had a good seacoast and many sailors. They were eager to trade in the Far-Eastern goods. Venice and Genoa had taken most of the northern Mediterranean trade. The Moslems held the Mediterranean lands on the east and the south. The Portuguese set out to find a way to the Spice Islands by sailing south around Africa. In their path were four groups of islands—the Azores, Madeira,

the Canaries, and the Cape Verde Islands. Under Prince Henry, called the Navigator, the Portuguese took possession of these islands. All of these still belong to Portugal except the Canary Islands, which are held by Spain.

No one yet knew how far south Africa extended. For many years seamen traveled along the coast, each one going a little farther than the one before had dared to go. In 1488 one explorer succeeded in sailing around the cape at the southern tip of Africa before he had to turn back. When he returned to Lisbon to tell his story, the king said, "We will call the cape the 'Cape of Good Hope.'" Why was that a good name?

Although it is surrounded by water on three sides and on part of the fourth, the Iberian Peninsula has few natural harbors except in the northwest. Lisbon, however, as the map shows, is one of the finest ports in the world. Notice the three lines of mountains which divide the peninsula into sections. Most of the cities are in these lowlands between mountain ranges or along the coast.





Mels from Cushing

The people of Portugal are still a seagoing people. Here a small fishing boat ties up at a dock in Lisbon. Beyond can be seen a few of the ships that crowd this fine harbor.

The Portuguese in India

In 1497 the Portuguese explorer, Vasco da Gama, sailed around the Cape of Good Hope and on to the west coast of India. There he established trading stations. Ships from Portugal soon reached the East Indies, and trade with these islands began. Portuguese colonies were also founded in Africa. Portugal was the greatest sea power of Europe.

The Portuguese in the New World

In 1500 a Portuguese captain discovered the coast of Brazil. Brazil was explored and settled by the Portuguese. This is why the people of Brazil speak the Portuguese language.

THE RISE OF SPAIN

The Moors lived in Spain for more than eight hundred years. But the Christian

armies waged constant war upon them. They gradually took over the peninsula and formed three separate Christian states: Portugal, Aragon, and Castile.

The fall of Granada

In 1469 King Ferdinand of Aragon, who ruled eastern Spain, married Queen Isabella of Castile, ruler of central Spain. The armies of the two rulers combined and moved against Granada, in the south of Spain. Granada, the last stronghold of the Moors, fell before the armies of these two rulers. In 1492, with the surrender of Granada, Moorish rule in Spain ended. Spain was soon to become one of the great nations of Europe.

Spanish explorations

While the Portuguese continued their explorations, Spain was fighting the Moors. When the Moors were driven out, the Spanish rulers helped Columbus in his plan to reach the Far East by sailing west. When Columbus discovered land beyond the Atlantic Ocean, he thought he had reached the Far East. But it was really an unknown half of the world—a new world—which he opened to Europe.

The Spanish in the New World

Spanish adventurers rushed to the New World, seeking wealth and power. They explored and settled part of North America, most of Central America, and much of South America. Brazil was settled by the Portuguese. The Spaniards found much gold and silver for the treasury of Spain.

Ponce de León, who discovered Florida, was Spanish. So were Cortés, the conqueror of Mexico, and Hernando de Soto, who found the Mississippi River. The first white men to see the Grand Canyon of

Colorado and the first settlers of California were Spanish.

Magellan, a Portuguese who sailed under the Spanish flag, was the first explorer to reach the Far East by sailing west. He discovered the Philippine Islands but lost his life there. The return of his ship to Spain proved that the earth is round.

After Columbus made his discovery, more than a hundred years passed before the first permanent English settlement in America was started at Jamestown. But Spaniards had built hundreds of towns in America. They had set up missions to teach and civilize the Indians.

Spain has left its mark on parts of the United States—on Florida, Louisiana, Texas, New Mexico, and California—as well as on Mexico and Central and South America. Many buildings in our South and Southwest are Spanish in style. Today, from the Rio Grande to Cape Horn, except in Brazil, Spanish is spoken by most of the people. In most of the West Indies the people speak Spanish.

THE DECLINE OF PORTUGAL

For about one hundred years after the discovery of America, Spain was powerful on both land and sea. But Portugal's

power had begun to decline, or grow less. In 1581 Spain took Portugal and ruled it for sixty years. Meanwhile the Dutch attacked the East Indies and took most of the islands which the Portuguese had settled. Portugal regained its independence but never regained its former place of power in the world.

THE DECLINE OF SPAIN

In time, Spain lost its power also. The precious metals which Spain found in the New World were used for wars, not to create real or lasting wealth. Gold and silver coins are convenient to use in exchange for goods. But real wealth consists of land, buildings, food, clothing, and all sorts of other usable materials. Spain spent most of its gold to build ships and armies and became very powerful for a time. But after a while the mines of Mexico and Peru began to produce less gold and silver. Then, too, Spain has never been a naturally rich land. It was hard to collect taxes in a country which had little trade or manufacturing and which lacked good farming land.

The defeat of the Spanish Armada

England now challenged Spain. The Spanish king, Philip II, fitted out a great

The defeat of the Spanish Armada took place in the summer of 1588. Here a ship of the English navy attacks a Spanish vessel.

Bettmann Archive



fleet, or *armada*. He called it the Invincible (unconquerable) Armada. In 1588 this mighty fleet of one hundred and thirty-two war vessels sailed up the English Channel. Here Spanish troops from the European shore opposite England were waiting to be taken on board.

"The English fleet can easily be destroyed," thought King Philip, "and my soldiers will soon conquer England."

But the English were ready for the Armada. They battered and crippled the

Spanish fleet. They frightened the Spaniards so greatly with fire ships that the Spanish soldiers on shore never were taken aboard. The fighting lasted for a week. The Spanish vessels which survived tried to return to Spain by sailing around Scotland. But they ran into a storm, and many were wrecked. Less than half the ships of the Armada returned home. The danger to England was past. Spain had begun to lose the power which it had during the days of exploration and discovery.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words You Should Know

Moors	chemistry
armada	alchemy

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 4. After each number write the word from the above list that matches the definition.

1. The science that deals with the nature of substances and the changes that they undergo
2. A large fleet of war ships
3. A study, carried on in the Middle Ages, that had to do with the changing of materials, like metals, into other metals
4. The name given to the Moslems in Spain

Can You Answer These?

1. Which bodies of water border on the Iberian Peninsula?
2. In what year did the Moors conquer Spain? From what area did they come?
3. About how long did the Moors rule Spain? How did their rule come to an end?
4. What new plants did the Moors bring into Spain?
5. Why did Portugal and Spain become interested in exploration?

6. How did finding a sea route around the Cape of Good Hope help Portugal?
7. Why was the Spanish Armada built? What happened to it?
8. What lands in the New World did Spain and Portugal settle?
9. What important event happened in Spain in the year that Columbus discovered America?
10. When was Portugal considered the greatest European nation on the sea?

Can You Find the Right Order?

Rewrite the facts below in the order in which they happened. Next to each, write the date which applies. The time-lines will help you with this.

1. The Moors conquered Spain.
2. Britain defeated the Spanish Armada.
3. Córdoba was the largest city in Europe west of Constantinople.
4. The Cape of Good Hope was discovered.
5. King Ferdinand of Aragon married Queen Isabella of Castile.
6. A Portuguese captain discovered Brazil.
7. Spain was conquered by Rome.
8. Vasco da Gama sailed around the Cape of Good Hope to India.
9. Columbus discovered the New World.
10. The Moors surrendered Granada.

SPAIN AND PORTUGAL IN MODERN TIMES

Spain was involved in many wars in the one hundred and fifty years that followed the defeat of the Armada. During this time it lost most of its overseas possessions, including those in America. These were dark years for Spain. But the patient and proud Spanish people continued to live in much the same way as they have lived for hundreds of years.

THE CITIES OF SPAIN

Spain has many large, interesting cities. Let us imagine that five Spanish cities are telling us about themselves.

Madrid, capital of Spain

Madrid, the capital, is also the largest city in Spain. With its suburbs it is about the size of Detroit.

"I am set in the center of my country," says Madrid. "The country around is barren and very cold in winter. But when summer finally comes, it is very hot. I have beautiful modern buildings, and my citizens are proud of me."

Barcelona, great manufacturing city

Spain's most important business center and second largest city, Barcelona, speaks next.

"I am the great Mediterranean port on the northeast coast of Spain. My people manufacture many things. I have many more industries than Madrid. I have also been a center of education for many years.

"I am located in the province of Catalonia. My people are so proud of this province that they call themselves Catalans, not Spaniards. Our language is more like French than Spanish. The street signs are written in both the Spanish and the

Catalan languages. But the Catalan words are always placed above the Spanish words. Before you leave Barcelona, be sure to see the statue of Columbus, near the harbor. When Columbus returned from his first voyage to America, he came here to report to the king and queen."

Valencia, a garden city

The country around Valencia resembles a huge garden. As rain seldom falls in this region, the good crops seem strange. The streams from the mountains are caught in large reservoirs. These reservoirs, built by the Moors, fill the irrigation canals. The water is distributed fairly among the farmers.

"The climate here is mild," Valencia says. "With irrigation we can raise almost

A policeman armed with a rifle stands at an intersection in Madrid. In all Spanish cities policemen armed like this stand at traffic crossings and near banks and public buildings.

Evans from Three Lions





George Pickow from *Three Lions*

The tall, graceful Giralda tower is the bell tower of the Sevilla cathedral. It has twenty-two bells. The cathedral was built on the site of a mosque of which the Giralda was a minaret.

anything. We have even raised rice, whose fields have to be flooded. Our orchards of almond, apricot, and orange trees are famous. The Valencia orange is also raised in the United States. We have date palms here and large crops of corn and wheat. Our farmers practice *crop rotation*. That is, they do not plant the same crops in the same field year after year. Instead they vary the crops to keep the soil fertile. Crop rotation also gives us a variety of products."

Sevilla, city of Old Spain

Sevilla is the queen of the South. "I am not very large," says Sevilla, which is about the size of Oakland, California. "But I represent the history and the character of Spain better than any other city. Here are beautiful homes, built in the Spanish

fashion around inner courts, or gardens, called patios. Our people are devoted to bullfights.

"My cathedral," continues Sevilla, "has high pillars that support the roof. In the cathedral is a tomb held up by four large figures made of stone. It is the tomb in which Columbus's body once rested.

"The Alcazar, built as a palace for the Moorish rulers, was one of the glories of Sevilla. It was damaged by gunfire in a war in recent times. Beside our cathedral you will also see the Giralda bell tower, landmark of the whole town. The Moors used it as the minaret of a mosque. Now Christian bells ring out from it."

Toledo, city of central Spain

Toledo, too, has its message of past glory. "I stand on what is almost an island in the middle of Spain," Toledo declares. "The Tagus River flows on three sides. The land around is almost entirely desert. I was built as a fortress. For four hundred years the Moors used me as a stronghold. They manufactured fine swords here.

"I am not as important as I once was, but many travelers think no other Spanish city is as interesting as I am. The city of Toledo, Ohio, is much larger than I am."

THE CITIES OF PORTUGAL

Let us now visit two important cities of Portugal. First we shall see Lisbon.

Lisbon, capital of Portugal

At the mouth of the Tagus River is Lisbon, the beautiful seaport capital of Portugal. Lisbon, like Rome, is built on seven hills. The hills of Lisbon, however, are higher than those of Rome. Its gardens are greener, and its streets are steeper.

The Moors introduced the use of colored tiles, which decorate the many houses. Many sidewalks also have colored stones laid in patterns.

Portugal took no part in World War II. It is a small country, and it had no strong army or navy to defend itself. Lisbon became the only peaceful port for travelers who wished to cross the Atlantic Ocean. The city was often crowded with refugees, waiting to leave Europe by steamship or airplane.

Oporto, city of vineyards

The Douro, another important river, flows through northern Portugal. At the mouth of the Douro is Portugal's second city, Oporto, meaning "the port." When Lisbon was held by the Moors, Oporto was the chief city of Christian Portugal.

Above the city, along the river, are many vineyards. Oporto is famous for its port wine, named from the city where it is made. After many years the sands washed down by the Douro made the river so shallow that ocean vessels could no longer reach the city. This made it necessary to build a harbor a few miles from Oporto.

THE PRODUCTS OF THE PENINSULA

Both Spain and Portugal have many interesting products. We shall learn about some of the more important ones.

Farm products of Spain and Portugal

Much of the land of Spain and Portugal is mountainous, but there are few forests on the mountains. Wheat fields make the valleys of Portugal and central Spain green in the spring and golden in early autumn. The sun beats down in summer, and in winter winds blow across barren regions. The lack of trees is partly due to



George Pickow from Three Lions

The pavement of Lisbon's Black Horse Square is made of mosaic, or colored stone inlaid in patterns. The square is named for the statue of a king in the center. In the background are government buildings and a triumphal arch.

small rainfall and cold, dry winters. The Spaniards have never learned to plant trees for shade and for the protection they give the soil.

Oranges, grapes, olives, and almonds make up a large part of Spain's exports. Spain's crops of sweet oranges go to the British Isles and other markets. Oranges are grown along the lowlands in southern Spain and on the western coast of Portugal as far north as the latitude of Philadelphia.

The white or purple grapes that Spain sends abroad are called Málaga grapes, from the name of the city on the Mediterranean. Grapes are also exported from Almería, which is east of Málaga. A popular wine is made from grapes grown at Jerez, south of Sevilla. In former times the name of this town was pronounced



This picture map shows the principal products which are raised in the Iberian Peninsula. Notice the kinds of products grown along the eastern and western coasts. Why are few of them grown in the central and northern parts of the peninsula? What city has the largest factories?

shĕr' ěs. From this came *sherry*, the English name for this famous wine.

In late winter the coast from Barcelona southward and the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean are pink with the almond blossoms. The delicate almond flowers are like peach blossoms. The almond tree, like the peach, is easily nipped by frost. Spaniards eat the kernels of the green fruit as dessert. Spanish children would not think it was Christmas unless they had candy made of almond paste. When you eat almonds, remember that the early Spaniards brought almonds to southern California.

Both Spain and Portugal are famous for cork. The cork-oak trees sometimes live to be hundreds of years old. Every ten years the bark of the cork oak can be stripped off. To strip the cork off does not hurt the tree but really benefits it. Besides being used for stoppers in bottles, cork makes good life preservers. Ground up with linseed oil, cork is also spread on burlap or canvas to make linoleum.

Other products of Spain and Portugal

Iron ore is mined near the northern coast of Spain. The ore is shipped from the city of Bilbao to England, where it is smelted. In return, the English ships bring to Spain cargoes of coal, for Spain has few coal mines.

In the south there are copper mines, not far from Palos, the town from which Columbus sailed on his first voyage to America. These mines were known to the Phoenicians. The copper from these mines blackens the water of the river which flows past them so that the river is called Rio Tinto, or "ink river."

Almadén, north of Córdoba, has important *mercury* mines. Mercury, or quicksilver, is used in thermometers. Glass is silvered on the back with mercury to make mirrors. Mercury is also used in setting off certain kinds of bombs.

Portugal is a mountainous country. Like Spain it has little coal and iron. It does have many swift mountain streams which furnish electrical power. Since Portugal

Olives are being picked in this Spanish grove. The olive will grow on land too hilly or with too poor soil for other crops. The olive tree was brought to America by the Spaniards and is grown in California.



Black Star

is a seacoast country, fishing is an important industry. Wine is also an important product of Portugal. Port wine, first made in Oporto, is a special wine for which Portugal became famous. In fact, grape growing for wine making is the country's chief industry. Other important products are sardines, cork and citrus fruit.

The domestic animals of Spain

One of Spain's domestic animals is the donkey, whose stout back bears loads and whose sure feet can carry it over steep mountain trails. It is a cheerful, tough creature that can live on poor food. Spain, like other rather barren countries, makes great use of the donkey.

Spain has many sheep, but few cattle. Sheep can find food on rocky, dry ground and need little water. Southeast of Madrid

a special kind of sheep is raised, the *merino*. These sheep are small in size and can get along on small rations. They have a heavy coat of fine wool. Spain prized its merino so highly that in early times none could be exported except by permission of the king.

Everywhere in Spain, except where vegetables are raised, there are goats. Old men and women and children look after small herds of goats along the roadsides or on the rocky hills. Even in important cities each morning goats are driven through the streets, so that housewives may get their supply of fresh milk. The goat is hardier and healthier than the sheep, and its milk is still more nourishing than cow's milk. Even where the land is poor and dry, goats are able to find enough to eat.

Many bulls are raised for the great national sport of bullfighting. The Spaniards enjoy bullfights as much as the people of the United States enjoy football and baseball games. Every large city in Spain has its bull ring. Only the fiercest bulls are chosen for the bullfights. The man who fights and kills the bull is called a *matador*. To the Spaniards the matador stands for courage, skill, and grace. Most Americans, however, do not think a bullfight is pleasant to watch. They find it too cruel a sport to be enjoyable.

A young Spaniard leads his donkey carrying a great load of bark stripped from the cork oak.

Gendreau





Evans from Three Lions

Spanish farm workers ride home after a day's work in the fields. The small donkey, after working all day, is allowed to plod along behind while the large one pulls the cart.

SPAIN'S AND PORTUGAL'S GIFTS TO THE WORLD

George and Alice Boyd, whom we met in India and Greece, visited Spain. Their visit taught them much about Spanish customs, art, and literature.

SPANISH WAYS OF LIVING

The people of Spain, separated as they are from the rest of Europe by mountains, have developed their own way of life.

Spanish architecture

"When I think of Spain's influence I think first of Spanish ways of building," George said. "I know that the idea of the patio, or inner courtyard, comes from the Spaniards. The fine old missions in our west, especially in California, are built in Spanish style.

"I remember also the ranch life in our Southwest. Ranchers use many Spanish words and expressions. We have all heard of 'mustangs,' 'rodeos,' 'lassos,' 'lariats,' and 'chaps' (the leather pants which cowboys wear). The Spaniards first brought horses to America."

"Most important, I think," Alice said, "the Spaniards introduced to the New

World sugar cane, cotton, and oranges, which the Moors had brought to Spain."

THREE FAMOUS SPANIARDS

Two Spanish artists, Velázquez and Murillo, are known to people of all civilized countries today. George and Alice visited the Prado Gallery in Madrid.

Two great artists

The finest collection of Velázquez pictures in the world is in this gallery at Madrid. A young Spanish girl in the gallery told the young visitors about this artist.

"Velázquez was born in Sevilla, and began his painting there. When he was twenty-three years of age, he went to Madrid. The Spanish king liked his pictures so much that he made him the court painter. Velázquez painted more than eighty portraits of the king and other members of his family. Every one of his pictures was well done. He used beautiful colors, and he portrayed light and shadow in a way that is almost impossible for others to imitate."

George, Alice, and their young Spanish guide moved into another part of the great gallery. They saw pictures made by another famous painter, Murillo.

"Murillo was also from Sevilla," said the girl. "When he was a boy, he was poor. He began his work by painting religious pictures for the fair at Sevilla. These pictures attracted the attention of Velásquez. Murillo went to Madrid, where Velásquez gave him a room in his own home.

"Murillo painted many fine pictures on religious subjects. But he never forgot the time when he was a poor boy in Sevilla. His pictures of ragged street children, and flower girls are the delight of art lovers today."

A great Spanish writer

That evening, George and Alice told their father what they had learned. Mr. Boyd said, "It is well to remember these two artists. But Spain also had a great writer who wrote a book that will live forever. His name is Cervantes, and the book is *Don Quixote*. Let me tell you about this book.

"Don Quixote was an old gentleman who lived in a poor region of Spain. As he had little else to do, he spent his time reading stories of old-time knights and their marvelous deeds. He thought about them so much that his brain became muddled. He decided to set forth on a quest like the knights he had read about and admired.

"With lance in hand, Don Quixote mounted his bony horse and set out. Short, fat Sancho Panza, a peasant, went along on a mule as Don Quixote's armor bearer, or squire. Don Quixote had many accidents. He mistook windmills for giants, inns for castles, and country girls

for high-born ladies. Faithful Sancho, who saw things as they really were, had a hard time trying to serve his master."

In this amusing story Cervantes meant Don Quixote to represent the old-fashioned ideas to which Spain was still clinging. He saw that a nation must make progress for its own good. Spain was rapidly losing its power. The people were growing poorer, while the king thought only of show and of celebrating past glories. This book, if understood, could have given the country a valuable lesson. *Don Quixote* is still read today because of its humor and the picture it gives of the life and the times of the knights.

A GREAT PORTUGUESE WRITER

Portugal, though a small country, has one writer who became world famous. This was the poet Luiz de Camões, who lived at the time when Portugal was an important nation. He wrote a long story-poem, called an epic, celebrating Portugal's history and heroes. One of his heroes was Vasco da Gama, whose voyage around Africa to India in 1497 helped make Portugal a great trading nation.

This fine painting by Velásquez shows a little Spanish princess surrounded by her maids of honor. Velásquez himself is the artist in the picture. The figure near the right is a dwarf.

Metropolitan Museum of Art





Evans from Three Lions

This peasant home in the south of Spain probably looked much the same in Don Quixote's time. At this farm the family eats at a dining table set in the shade outside the house.

SPAIN AND PORTUGAL TODAY

You have studied about the decline of Spain and Portugal and how they lost most of their colonies. But each still possesses a few colonies in different parts of the world.

THE COLONIES OF SPAIN

Spain's colonies today are few and not very important. The time when Spain controlled great regions in foreign lands has passed.

In Africa

Having lost its possessions in the New World, Spain reached out across the Mediterranean to Africa. Separated from Spain by the Strait of Gibraltar is Morocco. For many years Spain carried on war with Morocco before a part of this North African land was brought under control. Spanish Morocco is the homeland of the Moors. Its position on the Strait of Gibraltar added greatly to Spain's defense in the Mediterranean. But this region is no longer a part of Spain. In 1956

Spanish Morocco was granted independence, but its people are friendly to Spain.

The city of Tangier also lies across the Strait of Gibraltar. It is so important because of its location that until 1956 it was governed by men appointed by various nations, instead of by Spain alone.

Farther south on the African coast, along the Atlantic, is the Spanish colony of Spanish Sahara. Few white people live there. Spain also holds a little land on the Gulf of Guinea.

The Canary Islands

Spain owns the Canary Islands, a group of islands near the coast of Rio de Oro. The vegetation of the islands makes them a true flower garden. The brown or green wild canaries of the islands have been changed by breeding into the yellow caged pets found in our homes.

THE COLONIES OF PORTUGAL

Portugal's colonies, though larger than Spain's are not so important. Portugal

was powerful in India from 1500 until 1600. After 1600 Portugal lost most of its Indian possessions to the Dutch, the English, and the French. Portugal now has three of its old trading stations in India. These are on the western coast. Only one of them, the district of Goa, is well known to the outside world. It exports wood, spices, rice, and coconut products.

In the Far East

On an island off the southeast coast of China is the Portuguese port of Macao. The province consists of the city of Macao and several offshore-islands. It is a trade and fishing center. Because its harbor is rapidly filling up with soil, its trade has shrunk. The white residents of Macao are far fewer in number than the Chinese. The only Portuguese land in the East Indies is part of the Island of Timor, near the northwest coast of Australia.

In Africa

Portugal owns, on the eastern coast of Africa, the large colony of Mozambique, or Portuguese East Africa. Mozambique is nearly ten times as large as Portugal and extends for nearly fifteen hundred miles along the Indian Ocean. On the western coast of Africa Portugal holds Angola, which is larger than Mozambique. Neither is greatly developed. Mozambique supplies Portugal with raw sugar, while Angola grows coffee and raises cattle.

Several small islands in the Gulf of Guinea are probably more valuable to Portugal than its other colonies combined. These islands near the equator have heavy tropical downpours and a blazing sun with little breeze. White people gasp for breath in such a hothouse.

This climate suits the cacao tree. All along the Gulf of Guinea cacao is an important crop. Thousands of tons of cacao seeds are exported from these Portuguese islands every year. Europe takes all the cacao the islands can produce. From cacao seeds cocoa and chocolate are made.

SPAIN IN RECENT TIMES

Spain remains a poor country. Even though Spain is thinly settled, there is not enough fertile land to go around. A large number of the Spaniards are poor and have little education.

The nation has seen many battles and much suffering. However, even though the Spaniard is poor, he is proud and considers himself the equal of anyone. Spain has remained weak because it does not easily take up progressive ways of living.

The revolution of 1931

In 1931 there was a revolution in Spain which overthrew the Spanish king. The country became a republic. The new government did not run smoothly, and a few years later two groups of Spaniards fought each other. Such a war within a country is called a *civil war*. Spain suffered much loss of life and damage. At the end of the war Spain emerged under the rule of a general of the army, Francisco Franco. General Franco has ruled Spain as a dictator. Spain has been slow to recover from the effects of the civil war.

Spain since World War II

After World War II, the United States needed the help of Spain in the defense of the free nations of Europe against communism. Today the United States is lending Spain money, military equipment, and other assistance in return for the use of

Spanish airfields. This will enable us to provide a stronger defense of European countries against any possible attack.

PORTUGAL IN RECENT TIMES

Portugal became a republic in 1910. Portugal did not fight in World War I or World War II.

Portugal's government

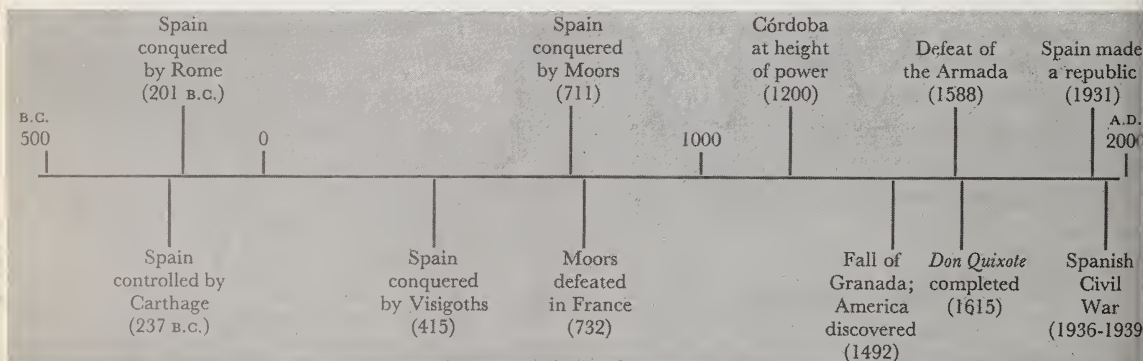
Today the people of Portugal elect a president and a National Assembly. Only men who can read and write, or who pay

certain property taxes, may vote in elections. Women may vote only if they have gone through high school or when they act as head of a family. The result is that there are few registered voters in Portugal. The candidates named by the government always win.

Portugal after World War II

Portugal today has important trade agreements with Great Britain and other nations. It is building new industries and trying to improve its farming methods.

Time-Line: Spain and Portugal (500 B.C.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words and Terms You Should Know

sherry	mercury
merino	civil war
matador	crop rotation

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 6. After each number write the word or term from the above list which matches the definition.

1. A heavy, silver-white metal, also known as quicksilver
2. Planting different grains or grasses in the same field from year to year in order to keep the farm land fertile

3. The English name for a kind of wine that had its origin in Spain
4. A war within a country fought between two groups of fellow countrymen
5. The man who fights the bull in a bullfight
6. A small, hardy sheep with fine wool

Can You Answer These?

1. What are the main exports of Spain?
2. How do the people of Barcelona differ from those of other Spanish cities?
3. What are the chief minerals of Spain?
4. In what three ways is cork useful?
5. What form of government has Spain?

6. How is Portugal governed?
7. What is Portugal's chief industry?
8. Why is the river near Palos called Rio Tinto, or "ink river"?
9. Why did the United States recently arrange to use Spanish airfields?

Learning from Maps

1. Look at the physical map of Spain and Portugal and answer these questions. What mountains separate Spain from France? What strait separates Spain from Africa? How much of the peninsula is mountainous? How much is plateau? Check your answer by referring to the map of Europe on page 145. What parallel of latitude passes through central Spain?
2. Study the picture map of Spain and Portugal and list the chief products. What minerals are shown? Where is manufacturing done?

Can You Find the Right Answer?

Choose the correct ending in each of these sets and write it on a sheet of paper.

1. Part of the central plateau of Spain is: (a) a good place for lumbering (b) a manufacturing district (c) a wheat-growing region
2. From the Moors in Spain we received: (a) the printing press (b) the telescope (c) a way to make linen paper
3. Seamen sailing under the Portuguese flag discovered: (a) the West Indies (b) Brazil (c) the Philippines
4. The city of Lisbon is: (a) on the Douro River (b) ornamented with beautiful tiles (c) a Mediterranean port
5. Murillo was: (a) a famous writer (b) a great scientist (c) a painter

Interesting Things to Do

1. Imagine that you accompanied one of the Spanish or Portuguese explorers. Tell the story of your adventures.

2. Many places in the United States have Spanish names. Here are a few examples: Rio Grande, El Paso, Los Angeles, and Santa Fe. Locate these on a map. Add other places and locate those.
3. Make drawings or collect pictures of scenes showing life in Spain and Portugal. The scenes might show a public square in Madrid, a bullfight in Sevilla, the picking of oranges near Valencia, the stripping of cork from trees, and the herding of sheep. Assemble the drawings into a panorama.
4. Spanish people like to dance and sing. Arrange a program of Spanish songs and dances. Use phonograph records, or have someone sing the songs or play them on an instrument.

Linking the Old World and the New

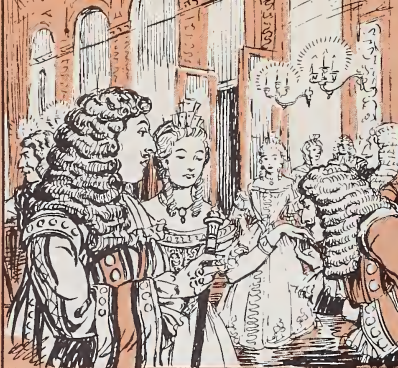
1. In the early history of our country many areas were explored by the Spanish. Who were some of the famous Spanish explorers and what did each discover?
2. Here are some words which came to us from the Spanish language: bronco, barbecue, canyon, corral, patio, adobe, plaza, tornado. Look up each of these words in a dictionary. Can you think of other words in our language that came from the Spanish?

Things to Think About

1. Under the Moors, Spain was more civilized than any other part of Europe. How do you explain this?
2. Spain received much gold and silver from the New World during the hundred years that followed the discovery of the New World. It used most of these riches to carry on wars. But by 1600 Spain had begun to lose its power. Would Spain have been better off, perhaps, if it had used its money for the good of the Spanish people and of the Spanish colonists in the Americas? Give reasons for your answer.



Joan of Arc leading French soldiers at Orleans — 1429



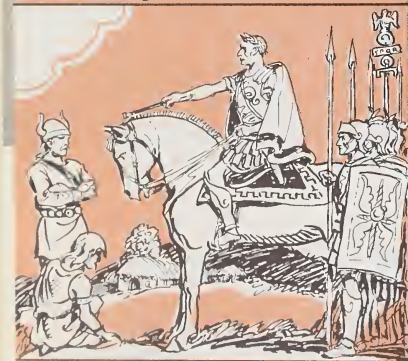
Louis XIV holding court at his new palace of Versailles — 1682



The execution of Louis XVI the French Revolution — 17



Charlemagne crowned — 800 A.D.



Caesar in Gaul — 58-51 B.C.



France and its possessions

9.

France is a square-shaped country, with Paris, its capital, in the center. France has three coasts. The coast that faces the English Channel has many harbors and ports. Another coast stretches along the Atlantic to the Bay of Biscay. The third coast lies along the Mediterranean. Because of its long coast lines, France has a large sea trade.

Into the English Channel flows the Seine River. The Seine is not large, but the French have made it useful by building locks and dams. Two other rivers, the Loire and the Garonne, flow into the Bay of Biscay. On the Banks of the Loire are vineyards, wheat fields, and beautiful old castles. The Garonne is long, but ships can use it only for a short distance near its mouth. The Rhone River rises in the mountains of Switzerland, flows across France, and empties into the Mediterra-



Napoleon retreating from the burning city of Moscow—1812



German soldiers taking over Paris in World War II—1940



American and British soldiers landing in France—June, 1944

France and the French Colonies

nean. This mighty river has enough power to turn many mills.

North of the Rhone, the Jura Mountains separate France from Switzerland. South of Lake Geneva the Alps begin. The snow-capped Alps form a wall between France and Italy. Today there are railroad tunnels under the mountains, and trains run all the year.

The map on page 244 shows that most of France is lowland. Here it has been easy to build roads, railroads, and canals which make travel and transporting goods easy. France has some highlands. Both highlands and lowlands have forests.

France is on the crossroads of western Europe. The map shows that the lowlands in the north of Europe form a broad, easily traveled path. A person could travel from eastern Russia to the English Channel without crossing mountains. From the

Mediterranean the Rhone Valley offers an easy road northward across France.

Easy routes of travel from north, east, and south to northern France made this country a center of trade in the Middle Ages. France was rich enough to build more fine churches and cathedrals than did any other nation. The visits of merchants brought ideas which made the French a well-informed people.

But the trade routes across northern France also made it easy for armies to march on them. We shall see that many battles took place in that region.

This unit will answer these questions:

1. How did France become a great nation?
2. How do people live in France?
3. For what things is France famous?
4. What are the French colonies like?

FRANCE AS A NATION

France has had a long history. Our study of France begins during the early years of the Roman Empire.

FRANCE IN EARLY TIMES

In Roman times the country now known as France was part of a land called Gaul. The barbarian Gauls lived in huts among great forests. Julius Caesar, the Roman general, conquered this wild region. Gaul became a Roman province.

Gaul as a Roman province

Roman civilization spread over the land. Forests were cleared away. Roads stretched from sea to sea. The people practiced Roman arts and customs. Many cities that were important then, such as Bordeaux, Lyon, and Marseille, are important today. The capital of Gaul was Lyon, where the Saône River meets the Rhone and four great Roman roads met.

For four hundred years Gaul belonged to Rome. When Rome's power faded,

barbarians invaded Gaul. One tribe, the Franks, set up a kingdom north of the Loire. Gradually the Gauls and the Franks became one people with one language. The land was called Francia, or the name by which we know the nation today, France.

Charlemagne, king of the Franks

The land of the Franks covered most of the country which is France today and a part of western Germany. Charlemagne became the king of the Franks. The English form of Charlemagne is Charles the Great.

Charlemagne was a strong, wise Christian king. He had a desire to bring order and unity to western Europe. He wished to make it into a great civilized empire such as Rome had been.

For nearly fifty years Charlemagne worked and fought to carry out his plan. He united the peoples of western Europe and made them keep peace. He marched

A row of beautiful poplar trees lines a French canal. Such water highways are important to transportation in France. Canals are also useful to fishermen like the one standing at the left.

Ewing Galloway





Gendreau

An ancient church crowns the top of this hill town. The town is built on a rock which was once separated by water from the coast of France.



Ewing Galloway

An air view of the modern city of Paris shows twelve avenues looking like the spokes of a huge wheel. The famous Arch of Triumph is the hub.

into Spain and fought the Moors, who were Moslems. Ferdinand and Isabella drove the Moors from Spain more than six hundred years later.

Charlemagne had great respect for learning. He spoke several languages, but he never learned to read or write. While he lived, he kept order in his wide lands. When he died, his empire was divided. But Charlemagne, the great king, is remembered in the stories written about him long after his death.

The coming of the Normans

After the break-up of Charlemagne's empire daring Northmen, or Normans, sailed up the Seine to rob and plunder. They came from the lands which are now Denmark and Norway. They settled in the part of France now known as Normandy. They were called Normans.

FRANCE IN THE MIDDLE AGES

In the Middle Ages the land of the Franks was divided into many feudal

states. Each count, duke, or baron liked to be master of his own lands.

France as a kingdom

In 987 a group of French lords chose one of their number, Hugh Capet, as their king. Hugh Capet arranged for his eldest son to succeed him as king. The Capet family were kings of France for eight hundred years.

Although Hugh Capet had been elected king, he had trouble with some of the lords. He cleverly avoided claiming too much power and he made sure of his power before he quarreled with any noble. Under the Capet kings, France gradually grew stronger.

When the French king died in 1328 without leaving an heir, the English king claimed the throne of France. A long war, known in history as the Hundred Years' War, between the English and the French followed. At times it seemed that France would become a vassal state of England. But a peasant girl helped rescue France.



In the W. A. Clark Collection of The Corcoran Gallery of Art

When Joan of Arc first came to the court the king disguised himself in plain clothing to test her. In the picture above she points directly at the king whom she recognizes in spite of his disguise.

Joan of Arc, savior of France

Joan of Arc was born in a village far from Paris. When she was not quite seventeen years old, she heard a voice which she believed was from Heaven. This voice told her to leave home and help her country. She dressed as a boy and rode through the winter weather for nearly three hundred miles. Finally, she reached the castle where the timid heir to the French throne lived. She persuaded him to let her lead a small army to the city of Orléans on the Loire. Orléans was the last French stronghold in the northern half of France which had held out against the English.

At Orléans the French troops followed Joan into battle, and the English were defeated. After that Joan was called "the Maid of Orléans." The French felt a new spirit of hope and bravery. Victory followed victory. After the English were

driven out of Reims, Joan saw Charles VII crowned in the cathedral of Reims. Joan, who had been wounded twice, now wished to go back to her quiet village. But the king would not permit this.

A year after her victory at Orléans, Joan was captured by the English invaders. After a year in prison she was tried as a witch. At her trial she declared that the voice which guided her was from Heaven. She was condemned and burned at the stake in the city of Rouen, in northern France. As one of the English soldiers turned away from the terrible scene, he exclaimed, "We are lost. We have burned a saint!"

The work that Joan started was finished twenty years later. The English were driven out of France. Joan had not suffered in vain. Today throughout Europe and America the story of her life is proudly

told. So long as there is a France the Maid of Orléans will be remembered. Our city of New Orleans is named after the city that Joan saved for France.

FRANCE AS A MODERN NATION

The Hundred Years' War was a terrible time for France. But during that period the French learned to work together and to be proud of being Frenchmen.

The reign of Louis XI

When Charles VII, whom Joan had helped to crown died, his son Louis XI succeeded to the throne. Louis carried on ably the work of making France great. There was nothing kingly about Louis's appearance and manners. He liked to wear old clothes, and he chose people who were not of noble blood as his advisers.

Louis XI knew that a great France must be a united France. He reduced the power of the feudal lords. When a noble opposed him, Louis had him killed or imprisoned. He set up a postal service throughout the country. Louis established the same weights and measures and laws throughout France. He built new roads and canals.

In Paris Louis founded a school of medicine. In Bordeaux he established a law school. He knew the value of education to a nation.

Louis realized that manufacturing and trade make a nation great. He increased the number of fairs which, as we have learned, were held in Europe in the Middle Ages. To encourage the French to weave their own rugs and tapestries, he forbade his people to import these from the East. He encouraged the raising of silkworms and the weaving of silk. The French copied the methods of silk manufacture from Italy.

During his reign Louis XI increased the size of France. He established peace and order. The kingdom of France now rested upon a strong foundation.

The reign of Louis XIV

After a time another strong king, Louis XIV, came to the throne. During the seventy years that Louis XIV reigned, France grew to about the size that it is today.

Louis XIV was called the "Sun King" because of the splendor in which he lived. The nobles were forced to spend much time at court and to spend money making the court more showy. He built a splendid palace with beautiful gardens at Versailles, near Paris, where you may still see it. He encouraged painters, sculptors, and architects to beautify Paris and his palaces.

Other European rulers of the time admired the "Grand Monarch." They also

The palace of Versailles has magnificent gardens and fountains. Many people like to visit it when the fountains are playing. In the distance part of the palace itself can be seen.

James Sawders-Combine





Natural barriers on France's borders protect the country everywhere except in the north, which is a broad rolling plain. What are these barriers to invasion on the east, the west, and the south?

learned French, which became the fashionable speech in most of Europe. They copied the rich court dress of France, and France became the center of styles. They gathered about them artists and writers, as Louis XIV did.

The expensive style of Louis's court, however, meant crushing taxes for the

country. The nobles at court had little time to think of the good of their peasants.

After the death of Louis XIV, France's power declined. Louis XIV had kept a large army and waged many wars to extend France's boundaries. These wars and the money spent in supporting an elaborate court weakened France. The kings who

succeeded Louis XIV continued to live in ease and to spend money freely. The glory of the court meant great suffering for the people.

France was drawn into wars against England over its possessions in America and in India. In the end France was beaten and lost all its colonies on the mainland of North America. New France (later called Canada) fell to England. France also lost to England almost all of its lands in India.

The French Revolution

Seventy-five years after Louis XIV died, the people of France revolted and swept away the power of the king and his nobles. Louis XVI, who was then king, Marie Antoinette, his queen, and many others lost their heads under the knife of the *guillotine*. The guillotine was a new kind of death machine. "Liberty, equality, and fraternity" (brotherhood) became the watchword of the new republic.

The rise of Napoleon

The French Revolution was a long, hard struggle carried on with bloodshed and violence. The new republic was weak. There was trouble also from outside France because the kings of some other countries were afraid that they also might lose their thrones. To prevent this, these rulers joined together in an effort to destroy the work of the revolution. They waged war on France.

After much disorder and bloodshed a young general, Napoleon Bonaparte, took control of the government. Napoleon had great military skill, and he inspired his troops to win many battles. He made himself dictator. Then at the age of thirty-five he was crowned emperor of the

French. He continued to win victories. Although he controlled most of Europe, England continued to oppose him.

Napoleon kept on fighting just for the sake of power. He planned to invade England but was prevented by the British fleet. Then he marched into Russia and captured Moscow, one of its greatest cities. But the Russians burned the city leaving the French army without shelter. The French had to retreat.

The fall of Napoleon

On the slow journey back across the icy plains most of the French army perished. This was the beginning of Napoleon's downfall. Countries that he had conquered rebelled. He was defeated at Waterloo in 1815. Napoleon spent the last years of his life as a prisoner of the English on a lonely island in the South Atlantic. This was his punishment for having tried to be the conqueror of Europe. In recent times Adolf Hitler, dictator of Germany, took Napoleon as his model in his plan to control all of Europe and in his march into Russia.

After the overthrow of Napoleon's rule, France had different forms of government.

In the dead of winter Napoleon's army retreats from Moscow across the snowy wastes of Russia. In World War II another dictator met defeat by the Russian armies and the Russian winter.

Bettmann Archive





At the height of his power Napoleon controlled most of Europe. Some parts of this territory became part of the French Empire. Others became allies, and still others Napoleon controlled because he appointed their rulers. Look at the map and find which countries were independent states. Which were allies of Napoleon? Which were ruled directly and which controlled by him?

Finally, under Napoleon III, grand-nephew of Napoleon Bonaparte, France became an empire again. In a war with Germany in 1871, Napoleon III was badly beaten. France again became a republic. It remained at peace with the world until the great conflict known as World War I began in 1914.

France in World War I

In 1914 the Germans invaded France by way of the northern plains. Great Britain at once came to France's aid against the Germans. Other European countries joined in the struggle. The countries who fought Germany were known as the Allies. Although the sympathy of the

United States was with France, nearly three years passed before we sent our armies to help. About a year and a half later, in 1918, the Germans surrendered.

France in World War II

France was invaded again in World War II. In 1940, a little more than twenty years after the end of World War I, the German armies again overran France. In a few weeks' time the armies of France were beaten, and the country was occupied by the Germans. For four years France was a beaten country. German troops occupied Paris and northern France. A new French government, appointed by the Germans, carried out German orders.

In 1944 American and British troops landed in great force on the French beaches in Normandy. After desperate fighting France was freed from German control. The French once more governed themselves. They and their country had suffered much, but all rejoiced that beautiful and historic Paris had not been greatly damaged.

France today

France, as a battlefield in two world wars, suffered great loss of life and damage to its cities and its land. Rebuilding

the country was a difficult task. The United States provided money to help the French, for we realized the importance of France to freedom in Europe.

France has also had problems of government since the war. It is not a united country. It has six major parties, all of which have different plans for running the country. This has kept the French government weak. There have also been uprisings among some of the people of France's overseas possessions. All of these things present problems which the French are not finding easy to solve.

A VISIT TO FRANCE

If we could take a trip to France, we would want to visit both the country and the city. One of the best ways to get a

glimpse of French life would be to visit Normandy, in northern France. Find Normandy on the map on page 244.

A farmhouse in Normandy has a thatched roof to shed the rain. The small farmer is the backbone of French life. His hard work and savings have given France the reputation of a thrifty nation.

Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway





Mildred Troup, New York

At the top of Notre Dame this odd stone figure looks down on Paris. Below is the Seine and far away is the Eiffel Tower.

A VISIT TO NORMANDY

Madeleine Duval lives in the old province, or district, called Normandy. Her home is near the city of Rouen. She thinks that Normandy is a pleasant part of France. It is like a large garden, and the French people love gardens.

The climate of Normandy

Although Normandy is in the lowland of France, it is not flat. There are many hills and valleys. The winds from the Atlantic bring plenty of gentle rain. Thus the summer is seldom hot, and the winters are mild and rainy. The moisture and the mild climate make everything grow well.

A glimpse of a farm in Normandy

Madeleine's home is in a village with about one hundred houses. Her father is a farmer, like about half the people of

France. The French raise less on their land than some countries do, but they make up for it by not wasting anything. They are a thrifty people.

Mr. Duval drives along the village street to his farm on a work day. The village is surrounded by farms, but few farms have houses on them. All through Europe we find this arrangement. Most of the farmers live in villages, where they have more social life and do not have far to go to church. They sometimes walk or ride several miles to work on the land.

On his farm Mr. Duval has plenty of pasture, a big orchard of apple and pear trees, and fields of wheat and potatoes. The French like wheat bread and eat more bread than do any other people of Europe. Every week Mrs. Duval bakes many crusty loaves, each one as long as a baseball bat. The French like potatoes, too, and they have invented a way of cooking them called "French fried." But if Mr. Duval can get as much bread as he wants, he is willing to do without potatoes.

The products of Normandy

Normandy is famous for cows, horses, and apples. The mild, rainy climate is good for the pasture land of Normandy. The pastures are used for cattle. The products of cattle raising are meat, milk, butter, and cheese. Mr. Duval's herd of cows have grown fat and sleek feeding on grass and clover. Mr. Duval drives a row of stakes into the ground and ties each cow to a stake. The cow crops the grass in a neat half-circle around her. When the cow has eaten the grass as far as she can reach, Mr. Duval moves her to a fresh bit of pasture. Thus the pasture is not wasted.

Madeleine and her mother milk the cows after the herd is driven home. Mrs.

Duval churns the cream into butter and sells it. Mr. Duval takes part of the milk to a little cheese factory in the village. The French are fond of cheese. Every good restaurant in France serves cheese and fruit for dessert.

Normandy is a fine country for apples which are used to make cider. At restaurants in Normandy there is always cider on the table. You will have to ask for water if you want it. Mr. Duval also likes a drink made from pear juice.

Mr. Duval is a good dairyman. Like all Normans, he is thrifty and takes good care of his cows. To shelter them in winter there are hedges dividing his fields to break the wind. In other places bundles of straw are used for shelter.

Through one pasture runs a stream, with willow trees bordering it. The tops of the trees are cut off so that there will be new branches, or shoots, each spring. Some of the shoots are used in the weaving of mats. Others are made into baskets.

When Mr. Duval comes home at night, Madeleine greets him and pats the big horses he has been driving. Normandy is famous for its strong Percheron horses. These are descended from the war horses which carried armored knights in battle. Although the French farmers could produce more by using modern machinery, they feel it is too expensive for a small farm. They cling to their horses in the north and to their slow, strong oxen in the south.

Behind the Duval house is a big courtyard surrounded by a stone wall. Here are stables and sheds and also a garden. Mrs. Duval cooks a large kettle of soup made of meat, many different vegetables, and sometimes even cider. The soup with Mrs. Duval's good bread is the family dinner.

A big cage, or hutch, in a shed holds rabbits, which are Madeleine's special care. Rabbits are easy to raise, for they live on cabbage stalks and left-over green things. There is often rabbit stew or rabbit pie for dinner.

A Normandy fair

Every Thursday the town near Madeleine's home has a fair. The traveling merchants put up their booths. They sell all sorts of inexpensive articles. Farmers bring their livestock to sell at the fair. There are amusements also. Madeleine likes to ride on the *carrousel*. A carrousel is a merry-go-round. She is thrilled at the Punch-and-Judy show. "What good times we have at our fairs!" she exclaims.

A VISIT TO PARIS

Mrs. Grant, from Chicago, went to Paris on a shopping trip. Paris is famous for making things that are fashionable, attractive, and artistic. Mrs. Grant thought that her two children, Carol and Henry, would like to see the French capital.

Life in Paris

Henry and Carol found life in Paris very pleasant. After they ate their breakfast

One of the most famous places in France is the beautiful Paris opera building. It is surrounded by stores and sidewalk cafés.

French Government Tourist Office



of crisp rolls, sweet butter, and hot chocolate, they went shopping and sightseeing with their mother. In purchasing fruit, they learned that French scales show weight in *kilograms* instead of in ounces and pounds. A kilogram is a thousand grams, or two and one fifth pounds. When they bought ribbon and lace, they also learned that the French use the *meter* (a little more than thirty-nine inches) in measuring length. For long distances they use the *kilometer* (one thousand meters), which is about five eighths of a mile. This system of weights and measures is called the *metric system*.

They visited the Louvre and went to the tomb of Napoleon. When they visited a factory, they saw workmen making tapestry. Sometimes they entered the big stores. At other times they gazed at the jewelry, porcelain, and fine glassware in the shop windows on the *boulevards*, or

broad avenues. The boulevards of Paris are famous throughout the world.

In the afternoons and evenings, the outdoor restaurants, called *cafés*, were filled with people sitting at little tables near the sidewalk. Some read newspapers as they sipped coffee or chocolate. The French like wine with their meals but prefer coffee or chocolate after dinner.

"Do you notice how polite the French are in their speech?" Mrs. Grant asked. "They say 'Oui, Monsieur' (Yes, sir), 'Non, Madame' (No, ma'am), and 'Merci' (Thank you) much more than we do. French children are taught to speak politely on all occasions."

Sights along the Seine

Henry and Carol soon were able to find their way around Paris. They learned that the Seine, which winds through the heart of Paris, is a friendly river. Many tugboats

The map of Paris shows you several famous landmarks of the city. The Seine River flows through the middle of the city as the Tiber River does in Rome. An island in the river once held all of Paris. Find this island on the map. What other city has a building also called the Pantheon?



This air view shows the island in the middle of the Seine which once held the entire city of Paris. Many bridges now connect it with the rest of the city. At the upper right is the cathedral of Notre Dame with its towers and its square in front. If you look carefully you can see the Sainte - Chapelle with its spire near the middle of the island and below the lower bridges.



Ewing Galloway

and barges pass along the Seine, and cargoes are unloaded along the shore. Some of the principal streets of Paris run along the river, and many fine buildings border the Seine. Parisians looking down upon the Seine from the numerous bridges find the view pleasant. In some places rows of boxes are fixed to the stone walls that border the river. They are used as showcases by merchants. Here customers buy secondhand books, colored pictures, old music, old coins, and old china.

On an island in the Seine stands the cathedral of Notre Dame, or "Our Lady." Here is the Sainte-Chapelle, or "holy chapel," built by King Louis IX, who is called Saint Louis. As Henry and Carol entered the chapel, they looked in amazement at the wonderful stained glass. The many windows appear to take the place of walls. The light which comes through the beautiful red-and-blue glass fills the room with rainbow colors.

Along the river, below Notre Dame, stands the palace of the Louvre. Since there are no more kings in France, the

Louvre has become an art museum with world-famous collections. Beyond the Louvre's beautiful gardens is the Place de la Concorde, or "Square of Peace." Here there is a great fountain. Around it are statues that represent eight important cities of France. We shall learn later why these cities are important and what each one of them is like today.

From the Place de la Concorde a wide avenue leads to the Arc de Triomphe, or "Triumphal Arch." Napoleon began this arch to celebrate his victories. The open space where the arch stands is called the Place of the Star since twelve streets meet at this point.

An avenue leads west to the famous park along the Seine, the Bois de Boulogne, or Boulogne Woods. Parisians think that this long avenue from the Louvre to the Bois is one of the finest city highways in the world. Across the river from the Bois de Boulogne stands the Eiffel Tower. This steel structure is the highest point in Paris. From the top of it one can see the whole city spread out below.

The government of France

France is a republic, with the seat of its government in Paris. Under the constitution, adopted in 1946, France's government has two branches, or *houses*. These are called the National Assembly and the Council of the Republic.

The Assembly is elected by all the people. It is the more important of the two houses because its members make the laws.

France has both a president and a leader who heads the National Assembly. The two houses elect the president of France. He is chosen for seven years. But, unlike our President, the president of France has little power. He receives important visitors and chooses the *premier*, or Assembly leader.

The premier really is the head of the government. He is chosen by the president from the most powerful party in the

Can you see on the map below where most of France's heavy industry is located? What city is in this area? Find Normandy on this map. What products come from there? In what part of the country are most of France's vineyards?



government. France has many political parties. Its premiers are likely to change often. Sometimes, when agreements cannot be reached on an important matter, a new premier may resign within a few days. The people like to say, "French governments change, but Frenchmen are always the same."

OTHER CITIES OF FRANCE

France has many famous cities. Let us see what some of them are like.

Marseille, France's greatest port

Marseille is the greatest port on the Mediterranean Sea. Next to Paris, it is France's largest city. It is the seaport for the Rhone River, but the delta of this river was so marshy that ships could not use it easily. So the port had to be built about twenty-five miles east of the Rhone's mouth at a protected point where cliffs form a harbor.

Marseille has drawn much trade from the French colonies in North Africa. Because southern France produces many olives, Marseille has always dealt in olive oil. Now it trades in many other vegetable oils also, and from these it makes great quantities of soap. A canal makes it possible for fair-sized boats to travel between Marseille and the Rhone.

Toulon, great naval port

East of Marseille is Toulon, protected from north winds by steep mountains. Here France has dockyards and harbors for its Mediterranean fleet. In World War II, the Germans tried to take the French vessels at Toulon. But the captains bravely sank their ships to keep them from going into enemy hands. Some of these gallant officers went down with their vessels.

Sun bathers fill the beach at Cannes, a French resort not far from Nice on the Riviera. Splendid hotels and a beautiful harbor for sailing and other water sports attract visitors from all over the world.



French Cultural Service

Nice, city on the Riviera

Nice is on the eastern Mediterranean coast of France. This coastal region is called the Riviera. *Riviera* means "sea-shore." Not all places on the Riviera are sheltered from cold winds. Nice, however, has a favorable position and has become a famous winter resort. From Nice it is easy to reach Corsica, a rocky island belonging to France, where Napoleon was born. Corsica is so near Italy that the speech of the people is more Italian than French.

Up in the hills above the Riviera are fields upon fields of flowers—roses, violets, carnations. In the near-by city of Grasse are many factories where the flowers are made into the fine perfumes for which France is famous.

Lyon, great silk center

Lyon, the third largest city in France, is important for silk weaving. During the Middle Ages the raising of silkworms in the warm Rhone Valley gave Lyon a start in the silk industry. But caring for silkworms requires a great amount of time and effort. Lyon began importing raw silk from China, Japan, and Italy. With these materials Lyon became a great silk-weaving center. Many other industries have

sprung up, but the making of silk, both artificial and pure, is still Lyon's greatest industry. The shining silks manufactured there and in near-by villages are used all over the world. The silk weaving keeps thousands of looms humming.

Strasbourg, center of trade

Strasbourg is a gateway between France and Germany. The ownership of the land between the Rhine and the mountains west of that river has long been disputed by France and Germany. Germany declared that the people in that region, which included Strasbourg, were German because they spoke German and had German ways. But France declared that its natural boundary was the Rhine. Ever since Louis XIV took Strasbourg and its province of Alsace, the dispute has gone on.

Strasbourg is on a trade route. The trade along the Rhine and the trade across the Rhine meet at Strasbourg. When the Germans conquered France in 1871, Strasbourg fell into German hands. The people of Strasbourg kept the statue which represented their city in the Place de la Concorde in Paris covered with black cloth for nearly fifty years. After World War I Strasbourg again became French. With great joy the people removed the black



Standard Oil Company of N.J. (Photo by Webb)

This French farmer is using a roller on his fields. France has owed much of its prosperity to its good soil. In normal times France can feed itself and also produce crops for industry and export.

covering from the statue. In 1940 the Germans took Strasbourg again. But they had to give it up when the conquering armies of the Allies moved across Europe five years later.

Bordeaux, city among vineyards

Bordeaux is the port for southwestern France. Built on the Garonne River, seventy miles from the sea, Bordeaux has a fine position as a shipping center. As you see on the map, there is no other large French port near by to compete with it.

Around Bordeaux the banks of the Garonne are lined with vineyards. Immense storerooms along the city wharves contain barrels of wine, brought down to be exported. Ships from South America and western Africa find Bordeaux the most convenient place to discharge their cargoes destined for Western Europe.

Nantes and St. Nazaire

Nantes is a port near the mouth of the Loire River. A ship canal connects Nantes with the port of St. Nazaire. Nantes lost part of its trade because the Loire filled

up and the largest vessels could not come so far up the river. But after the canal was built, Nantes developed into a busy manufacturing and trading city.

St. Nazaire, at the mouth of the Loire, was a small place until steel works and shipyards were built there. In World War I, it was a great base at which the American army landed troops and supplies. Since then a number of the largest vessels of France have been constructed there. In World War II, the Germans used it as a port for their submarines.

Le Havre and Rouen, Seine ports

Le Havre is at the mouth of the Seine. This name means "the harbor." Soon after Columbus discovered the New World, the king of France realized that the mouth of the Seine needed a good port. What had been a little fishing village was turned into the busy port of Le Havre. Today many passenger liners crossing the Atlantic end their voyages there. In large warehouses products from foreign lands are stored at Le Havre before being shipped to other parts of France.

Rouen is also a port on the Seine. It is situated fifty miles upstream from Le Havre. Small ocean-going ships can come right up to Rouen. This makes possible the shipping by water of cheap and heavy materials, such as stone, iron ore, and coal. Cargoes can be carried more cheaply by water than by rail. Rouen takes much of Le Havre's cotton for its own cotton mills. Rouen and Le Havre are busy ports.

Lille, great manufacturing center

In northern France quite near Belgium is Lille, a large manufacturing city. In this region are rich beds of coal. Coal furnishes power to run machines. A number of cities in that district have become centers for the manufacture of iron and steel, for weaving, and for other industries. This portion of France is a very important region in trade and industry.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

meter	carrousel
house	kilogram
premier	boulevard
Riviera	kilometer
guillotine	metric system

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 10. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. The name used in some countries for the chief officer of the nation
2. A machine for beheading persons
3. A unit of length in the metric system, equal to just over thirty-nine inches
4. A merry-go-round
5. A unit of weight in the metric system, equal to one thousand grams, or about two and one-fifth pounds
6. The name used for one branch of the government in France
7. A unit of length in the metric system equal to one thousand meters, or about five eighths of a mile
8. A word meaning "seashore," used to describe part of the French and Italian coast along the Mediterranean
9. A broad avenue or street
10. A decimal system of weights and measures that is based on the gram and the meter

Can You Answer These?

1. How did France become a center of trade in the Middle Ages?
2. What city was the Roman capital of Gaul? Why did the Romans choose this city? For what is it known today?
3. How did France get its name?
4. What did Louis XI do to make France a united country?
5. What was the watchword of the first French republic?
6. Why do so many European farmers live in villages instead of on their farms?
7. On what river is Paris located?
8. Why was Louis XIV called the Sun King?
9. Why is Marseille an important city?
10. During World War II, gallant French naval officers prevented the enemy from seizing their ships at Toulon. How did they accomplish this?

Can You Find the Right Order?

Below are the names of seven persons who were important in the history of France. Decide who lived first, who came next, and so on. Rewrite them in the right order. Tell one important fact about each.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1. Julius Caesar | 5. Louis XI |
| 2. Napoleon Bonaparte | 6. Hugh Capet |
| 3. Joan of Arc | 7. Louis XIV |
| 4. Charlemagne | |

SOME REASONS WHY FRANCE IS FAMOUS

In Paris, Henry and Carol met Charles La Salle, a student. "You're the very person," Carol said, "who can tell us why France is a great country."

"Everyone," Charles answered, "is likely to think that his nation is the best, but few can tell why. French people are taught the reasons why our country is famous. Let me tell you some of them."

FRENCH MANUFACTURES

Louis XIV had a trusted official who came from a family of cloth weavers. This official was responsible for the beginning of manufacturing in France.

Early factories in France

The official saw to it that the factories for making tapestry, which was then in great demand, were given help by the government. Weavers were required to cooperate with dyers, and the government showed dyers ways to improve their colors.

The government was interested in such trades as the making of porcelain, fine enamel work, and bookbinding.

French industry today

France today is a country of small industries. However, the factories of Lyon make fine silks and other textiles. Mills in the northeast manufacture cotton, woolen, and linen goods.

France is famous all over the world for its perfumes, cosmetics, and jewelry. The French have set a high standard for manufactured goods. Today there is still a strong feeling that useful things can be beautiful and that a well-trained workman can be an artist, too.

The French take pride in doing good work. As work is a large part of life, they say, why not do it well? Although there are many factories, France is not a land of factories. In France people still like making things skillfully by hand.

Metropolitan Museum of Art



The painter Renoir was well known for his charming pictures of French life. This painting is called "Madame Charpentier and Her Children." It shows Renoir's skill in painting women and children and his use of light and color to create a pleasant picture.

A black and white photograph of a classroom scene. A teacher stands at the front, pointing to a chalkboard. Several students are seated at their desks, looking towards the front. The chalkboard contains handwritten text in French, including "Géographie", "Anglais", "Maths", and "Histoire". A globe is visible on a shelf in the background.

FRENCH WAYS OF LIVING

a Paris label on a dress, a bottle of perfume, or a pair of gloves means that the article is of high quality.

The schools of France

France has fine schools. The school days are long, and the teachers are strict. Many lessons must be learned by heart. French schoolrooms are often drab. In the grade schools children wear black aprons and carry their books in black boxes. Almost all French boys and girls go to grade school, but they often attend separate schools and study different subjects.

After attending grade school, a student may go to the *lycée*, or high school. After he graduates from the lycée, he may decide to go to college. To be admitted to one of the agricultural or engineering colleges or to the university he must pass hard examinations.

SOME FAMOUS FRENCHMEN

France has had its full share of famous men who have given their talents to their country and to the world.

A famous French writer

One of France's well-known writers was Victor Hugo. Carol and Henry paid a visit to the home of Hugo, which is kept as a museum. A guide told them the story of Hugo's novel, *Les Misérables*, a French phrase which means "the poor people."

In *Les Misérables* the hero is Jean Valjean, an escaped convict who changes his life and becomes a respected citizen. He rescues a little girl, Cosette, from the people who are ill-treating her, adopts her, and looks after her as a daughter. Javert, a police officer, suspects that Jean is the convict he is looking for and follows him. Wherever Jean goes, Javert is able to find him. On one occasion Jean flees through the Paris sewers. We feel great pity for this man who cannot escape the law even though he has become a good man. This is one of the finest stories in any language. No wonder that the Parisians think it a great privilege to visit this house where Hugo once lived.

Famous French artists

France is famous for art. Among the best French artists are those of the Barbizon group. Barbizon, a little village east of Paris, stands at the edge of a large forest. A number of artists who loved nature discovered this place where they could paint country life. Although they painted in different styles, most of them became famous.

One of the leading members of this group was Jean François Millet. Millet was born a peasant. In his boyhood he had worked in the fields with hoe and pitchfork. His pictures, such as "The Gleaners" and "The Man with the Hoe," tell the story of the hard-working peasants and their life on the farm.

Jean Baptiste Corot, another artist of this group, is famous for his landscape paintings. He liked to paint the mists of dawn and the shadows of evening in browns, pale greens, and silvery grays. These give an effect of delicate loveliness. Corot earned a great deal of money, but he lived simply and spent his earnings in helping his friends.

Pierre Renoir was a French artist who liked to paint seashore scenes. He also painted people well. The women in his pictures have bright, gay faces and wear beautiful clothes. Renoir was born in Limoges of a poor family. When he was thirteen years old, he became the apprentice of a painter of chinaware. Later he studied under an artist. Some of his best known works are "At the Seashore" and "Madame Charpentier and Her Children."

Paris is known for its many beautiful statues. One of the finest Parisian sculptors was Auguste Rodin. All of Rodin's

THE THINKER

This statue by Rodin shows how well the sculptor portrayed character. Compare it with Michelangelo's statue of Moses on page 192.

Metropolitan Museum of Art



THE GLEANERS

The French artist, Millet, painted many scenes of farm life. "The Gleaners" shows a usual custom among the peasants. After the grain has been harvested the poor people may come into the fields and pick up the grain that is left.



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

statues expressed a strong idea. Rodin's "The Thinker" represents a primitive man seated on a rude bench, deep in thought. It is one of the most famous of modern works of art. Rodin's former studio in Paris is now an art museum.

A famous French scientist

One of the greatest scientists of all time was Louis Pasteur. He discovered that invisible organisms, called *bacteria*, cause changes in liquids and foods, and so they become spoiled. Pasteur also discovered that bacteria cause many diseases.

Through experiments he learned how to kill many forms of bacteria and thus saved

the lives of many people. He helped the silkworm raisers, the farmers, and the vineyard owners, whose businesses were being harmed by disease or blight. We enjoy the results of Pasteur's research every day when we use pure *pasteurized milk*. Milk is pasteurized by heating it to a certain temperature to kill the harmful germs. Thanks to Pasteur many diseases are now held in check. He helped to make the world a better and safer place for people and for animals.

At the Pasteur Institute in Paris today scientists carry on Pasteur's experimental work. This school has been called the "world's greatest life-saving institute."

THE FRENCH COLONIES

Before the world went into what we call the factory age, some nations could get along without colonies. France was one of these countries, for it could supply its people with most food and necessities.

THE NEED FOR COLONIES

About the year 1700 European nations began to build factories to supply the world

with different kinds of goods. As a result, they found that they needed colonies to furnish the raw materials which they use in their factories.

Areas to be colonized

The areas that the European nations desired as colonies were parts of the earth not thickly settled. The resources of lands,

like those of the New World, were undeveloped. Under European control such regions would produce valuable raw materials to be used in manufacturing various goods. The European country would also be able to sell goods to the natives.

French colonies in the New World

The French made their first settlement in the New World about the same time the English did. As the colonies of these countries grew, there were clashes over territory. For many years England and France fought in both the New World and the Old World. At the end of the struggle, France had lost Canada, Louisiana, and also its possessions in India.

FRENCH COLONIES IN AFRICA

France grew powerful again. It built up new possessions on the continent of Africa. The first of these colonies was Algeria in North Africa.

Algeria, a French possession

Algeria was one of the Arab countries on the south shore of the Mediterranean. These Arabs were never really at peace with the Christians on the other side of that sea. They were known as the Barbary States. In the 1800's they became the home of pirates, who spread fear by capturing ships and raiding seashore settle-

ments. They seized ships, kept the cargoes, and sold the passengers and crews as slaves. The rulers of the Barbary States also made the civilized nations pay money, or tribute, to get these pirates to leave their ships alone.

For a time France paid tribute of this kind. But finally the ruler of Algeria went too far. He struck the representative of the French government. The French sent a powerful fleet and landed an army. Algeria became a French colony.

The Atlas Mountains extend through northern Algeria and Morocco. Between the mountains and the sea is a strip of land which receives rain in winter and spring and produces abundant crops. South of the mountains is a great desert called the Sahara.

The strip of land along the coast of these countries produces great quantities of wine and cork. There are large beds of phosphate rock, which furnish fertilizer to France and Spain. Vegetables provide a large amount of trade. There is also a kind of grass, called *alfa*, which makes good paper. Alfa can also be woven into rope and baskets.

In 1946 Algeria was made a part of the French republic. It was given the right to send its own representatives to the government in Paris. Its capital is in Algiers, a city on the Mediterranean.

James Sawders-Combine



An Algerian street car runs on tracks but it is pulled by horses. Arabs in native dress ride on the running board. Cloths about their heads shade their eyes from the sun and can be drawn together to protect the face from blowing sand on the desert.



The French Empire is one of the largest in the world. Its territories are scattered over many parts of the globe. It has an area and a population larger than France itself. In what continent does France have the greatest territory? Does France possess any land in the Western Hemisphere?

The part of Algiers along the water front looks like a French city, with broad streets, good shops, and fine buildings. The old Arab city on the slopes above keeps its narrow streets and native ways. Many French make Algeria their home. They speak of themselves as Algerians and call the Arab inhabitants just "natives."

Today France is having serious trouble with its North African possessions. The reasons for this are many. France suffered greatly in World War I and World War II and is not as strong as it once was. The North African natives are demanding their independence. However, the French living in North Africa believe that the French government should use force to put down any native attempts at independence. France thus faces a serious situation for which it has not yet found an answer acceptable to both France and the people of North Africa.

Morocco, a former French colony

Morocco is divided into two parts by a range of mountains. The ocean winds bring rain to the western part. Most of the people live in this section. Beyond the mountains to the east the land grows dryer until it becomes the great desert of Sahara.

Morocco was divided between Spain and France in 1904. Most of the region was poorly developed and backward. The French government tried to keep order among the native people, who when left to themselves are often given to violence.

After World War II the people of Morocco demanded the right to rule themselves. There was bitter fighting. France granted Morocco independence in 1956. Spain followed and granted independence to Spanish Morocco later the same year.

Morocco is ruled by a sultan. The capital is at Rabat, a seaport on the Atlantic coast in northwest Morocco.



James Sawders-Combine

A narrow street in Fez is lined with shops selling many different kinds of goods. The small shop at the left sells sweaters. The people are wearing native costumes and two of the women are veiled in Moslem fashion. Notice the network above the street for protection from the sun.

On the Atlantic also is the port of Casablanca, the largest city of Morocco. Here American troops made their first landing when they began to free the lands which the Germans had overrun in World War II. Casablanca means "white house," but almost any Arab city can be called white because the buildings are usually white-washed.

The old capital of Morocco was at Marrakech, a name which the Europeans changed to Morocco. You have probably heard of *Morocco leather*. The leather workers of Marrakech make their fine leather into slippers, saddles, belts, and pocketbooks.

Fez, an inland city, lies in a valley made green by abundant supplies of water. Here the red brimless cap known as the *fez* first was made. The *fez* is worn by men in lands that were once Turkish.

Tunisia, a former French colony

Tunisia, which is a Mediterranean land, is like Algeria in its products. Lying near Italy, it has more Italian settlers than French. France developed Bizerte, Tunisia's nearest point to Italy, into a strong naval station. Tunis, the capital, used in its buildings some of the material from ancient Carthage, which lies only a few miles

away. American soldiers visited the ruins of Carthage during World War II and recalled the defeat of the proud Phoenician city by Rome in ancient times.

Tunisia came under French control in 1881. Settling the area required much fighting and great expense. The French constructed highways and some railroads. They drilled wells and increased the area of irrigated land. They established schools for the natives. They encouraged wandering tribes to settle down and begin to farm.

Like other native peoples in North Africa, the Tunisians also demanded the right to govern themselves. In 1956 they won their freedom. Tunisia is now an independent nation ruled by its own king.

French West Africa

France controls about half of Africa. Most of the French colonies touch each other, although in some places colonies of other European nations are sandwiched in between.

South of Algeria, and reaching west to the Atlantic, is the colony of French West Africa. It is not exactly certain where Algeria and French West Africa meet, for the boundary line is in the desert where few people live. As the French control both sides of the line, robbers that give

trouble cannot escape by crossing the unmarked boundary. French West Africa is very large but, because of the desert land it contains, is not yet very important.

Near the equator, on the Atlantic, is the colony of Senegal, a part of French West Africa. Here is Cape Verde, meaning "green cape." Cape Verde was discovered by the early Portuguese explorers as they sailed southward along the African coast. For many weeks they gazed upon the barren sands of the shore. Finally, when a cape covered with green trees came into view they realized that the desert had been passed. They called it Cape Verde, and it still bears this name.

Senegal, like our southern state of Virginia, raises many peanuts. There is abundant grass for sheep and cattle. Senegal also ships out quantities of hides and skins of domestic animals and of wild beasts. Rubber, millet, and corn are also grown.

Near Cape Verde, on an excellent harbor, is the port of Dakar, capital of French West Africa. In these days of air travel, Dakar is important because it is the nearest point to South America. To what South American country is Dakar nearest?

French Equatorial Africa

As we continue around the curve of the African coast, we pass French Guinea. We then come to the Ivory Coast with its reminders of elephant hunts. Soon we reach French Equatorial Africa, with the Congo River as its southern boundary.

Along the Congo

The Congo is one of the great rivers of the world. It flows through the thick tropical forests that lie along the equator. A most valuable tree grows in these tropical forests. This is the oil palm. The oil palm

does not need to be cultivated. It grows wild in the forests by the millions and bears great bunches of yellowish fruit. The fruit has a sweetish taste and contains much oil. The oil is almost as good for food as olive oil. The hard center, or nut, of the fruit contains a kernel which, when crushed, yields oil also.

Palm oil can be churned with skimmed milk to make margarine. The greatest use of palm oil, however, is in making soap. America and Europe import huge amounts of palm oil for use in soap. Since this palm grows wild in great numbers, we can be sure of a constant supply of the valuable oil.

Madagascar and French Somaliland

Off the eastern shore of Africa lies the island of Madagascar, one of the world's largest islands. It is nearly as large as

Natives crowd the public market square in Dakar with produce to sell. Dakar is the commercial gateway to a vast area in French West Africa.

Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway





Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway

This vehicle in the capital city of Madagascar looks much like the rickshas in China. But there are some differences. This has a roof and uses two men, one to push and one to pull.

Texas. Half of the island is mountainous. Much of it is covered with forests, and the rainfall is heavy. On the highlands the climate is mild and pleasant.

The island produces a great deal of rice, coffee, and *vanilla*. On the vanilla vine, which grows wild, hang long pods, called beans. From vanilla beans a pleasant-tasting extract is made. Your mother probably has a bottle of vanilla extract which she uses to flavor desserts and candy. The temperate grasslands of Madagascar give pasture to herds of cattle.

Madagascar also has rich *graphite* mines. Graphite furnishes the lead for pencils and is used in making stove blacking and paint.

A portion of the African coast on the Red Sea belongs to France. It is called French Somaliland. The tall Somali natives who live along the hot, dry southern end, or "horn," of Africa are somewhat like Arabs in appearance, but much less civilized. From French Somaliland the railroad runs into Ethiopia. It is hard to enter the inland country of Ethiopia in any other way except by means of this railroad.

INDOCHINA, A FORMER FRENCH COLONY

Earlier we took a quick glance at Indochina (see the map, page 91). We have

learned that this land lies in the monsoon regions. It resembles Burma and Thailand in having a wet and a dry season, with downpours of rain in the wet season. A climate like this is good for rice growing.

What Indochina is like

Where there is much rain, there are large rivers. The Mekong is the largest river. Saigon is the most important city in the south. Indochina has many waterways, and the natives carry on much of their travel and trade by boat. Hanoi in the north is another valuable port.

Indochina has many teak trees. Teak is a heavy wood, so heavy that unless it is very dry it will not float upon water. Because it is a sturdy wood, teak is in great demand for building houses in the Far East and for the woodwork of ships. The leaves of the teak tree are valuable, too. They provide a useful purple dye.

Ancient ruins in the jungle

Surrounded by the jungles of Indochina stand the ruins of large buildings, once a part of the city of Angkor. These deserted palaces and temples, built long ago, were not discovered until 1860. Their huge, sculptured walls and towers, in pyramid form, tell us that they were built by a

highly civilized people. One of these, a great temple, marked the center of the city. Angkor covered a large area and had many pools and basins, showing that irrigation on a large scale made the people prosperous.

When Angkor was conquered by surrounding tribes, the irrigation canals were allowed to dry up. For hundreds of years the jungle swallowed them up. We now believe that similar cities are waiting to be uncovered, but it is hard to explore the jungles. The vegetation is dense. Crocodiles lie in the rivers. Tigers, leopards, and panthers prowl on land.

Indochina today

During World War II, Indochina passed into the hands of the Japanese. After the Japanese were driven out and the French returned, they found the country in the midst of a bloody revolution. The people wanted self-rule. Led by a Communist group, a part of Vietnam broke away from France. After several years of cruel fighting Vietnam split into two parts, North Vietnam and South Vietnam. In 1954, when the war ended, France gave Cambodia, Laos, and South Vietnam their independence. North Vietnam is a Communist country.

FRENCH ISLANDS IN THE PACIFIC

In addition to its colonies in Africa and in Asia, France owns several clusters of islands in the South Pacific.

Discovery of New Caledonia

The most important of France's Pacific islands, New Caledonia, which lies northeast of Australia, is a tropical land. The British captain who discovered the island was reminded of the mountains of

Scotland, so he called it New Caledonia, which means "New Scotland." But the French, not the British, now own the island. The principal town is Noumea.

What New Caledonia is like

New Caledonia is a valuable island. Though it borders the tropics, during most of the year the island has a climate like that of Florida in winter. Its mountains hold great stores of minerals. It is said that no other piece of land of equal size is so rich in minerals. But one metal, nickel, makes the island famous.

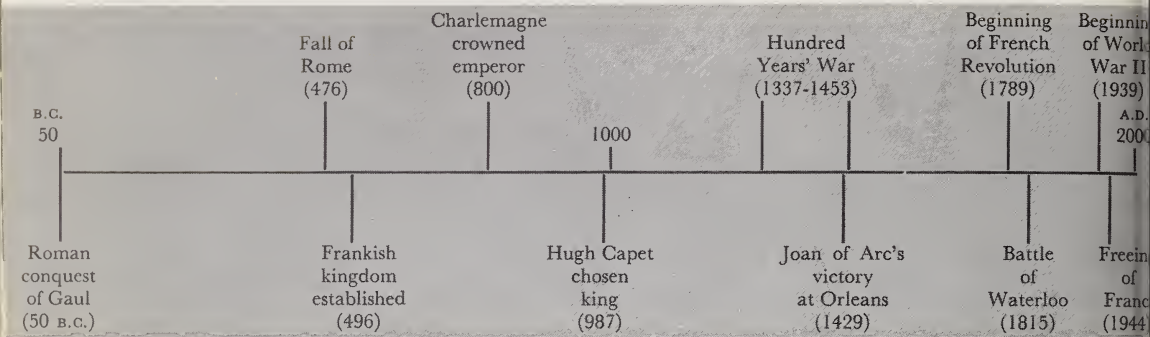
Nickel, which is a hard metal, is very useful when mixed with softer metals. For example, nickel is combined with steel to make the armor plate of ships. Our five-cent piece is made of nickel mixed with copper. We call the coin a "nickel" because it takes its silver-white color from that metal. Nickel is not common in the world. At one time New Caledonia produced more of this metal than any other region. Although the island is still important in mining nickel, Canada is now the world's top nickel producer.

IMPORTANCE OF THE COLONIES

The French colonies cover an area much greater than that of the home country. In the New World, France still owns some islands off the coast of North America and French Guiana in South America.

France is proud of these colonies. Expositions have been held to show the people at home how much the colonies produce and what their way of life is like. But the French do not like to leave France and settle in the colonies. France has not developed its colonies as much as the British have, but it still feels that they are very important to French prosperity.

Time-Line: France (50 B.C.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words and Terms You Should Know

fez	Morocco leather
chef	bacteria
menu	vanilla
lycée	pasteurized milk
alfa	graphite

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 10. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A French school like high school in the United States
2. A mineral used in the lead in pencils and in making paint
3. A brimless cap with a tassel, once worn in all Turkish lands
4. A cook in a restaurant
5. A kind of bean from which a pleasant flavoring extract is made
6. A list of the kinds of food served in a restaurant
7. A fine leather
8. Invisible organisms that cause changes in liquids and foods
9. A kind of grass from which paper, rope, and baskets are made
10. Milk that has been treated by heat so that harmful germs in it have been killed

Can You Answer These?

1. What lands did France lose to England in the New World? In Asia?
2. How did Algeria become a French colony?
3. Why is Le Havre an important French port?
4. In what French possessions are large quantities of palm oil produced? What is the oil used for?
5. What are some of the reasons why France is famous?
6. What city is famous for its fashions?
7. How is France ruled?
8. What are France's leading exports?
9. What countries were formed from French Indochina?
10. Why are the French colonies so important to France?

Can You Match These?

Below is a list of persons and places mentioned in this unit. Match them with their correct descriptions.

Victor Hugo	Lyon
Louis Pasteur	Strasbourg
Pierre Renoir	Marseille

1. The gateway between France and Germany
2. A great French scientist

3. A famous French artist
4. A large city famous for its silk
5. A well-known writer
6. A large Mediterranean port

Learning from Maps

1. Look at the map of France and answer these questions. What mountains form France's boundary on the southeast? On the east? Find and name four principal rivers. How much of France is lowland? Check your answer by looking at the map of Europe on page 145.
2. On the picture map of France note the number of places in which fruits and grains are grown. Make a list of these. What does France manufacture? What minerals does the nation have? What animals are raised there?
3. On the map of Paris find the Seine River. Find the island in the Seine. What church is located on the island? Find a government building. Where is Eiffel Tower? Find a famous palace.

Using a Time-Line

Place in the proper order of time the following statements: King Louis and Marie Antoinette were guillotined, Napoleon invaded Russia, Julius Caesar conquered the Gauls, Louis XI did many things to improve France, Louis XIV built the palace of Versailles, American troops drove the Germans out of Normandy, Joan of Arc led the French armies. Add these dates to your time-line.

As you study the time-line at the end of this unit and earlier units, compare it with the time-lines of earlier units to see whether events of importance are happening in different countries at about the same time.

Are you keeping a class time-line? Be sure to include dates for men of science, artists, and writers as well as historical events.

Making an Outline

Reread the text of Unit 9. Then make an outline like the one you made for Unit 3.

Interesting Things to Do

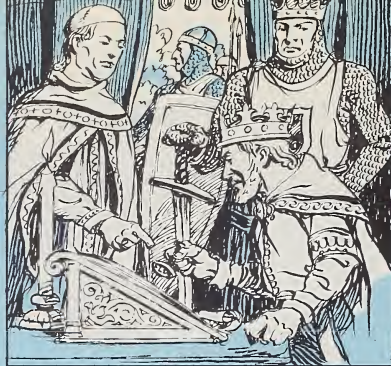
1. Many people who live in the French colonies have been trying to gain their independence. Choose two groups of pupils in your class. Let one group present the ideas of the colonists who want full freedom. Let the other explain the viewpoint of the people of France.
2. In an earlier unit you started making a list of words derived from names of cities. From Units 8 and 9 add these words: sherry, port, and fez.
3. The stamp and coin collectors in the class may wish to exhibit their collections from France.
4. Watch for French words in advertisements in newspapers and magazines. List the words and what they mean.
5. Many of our childhood stories, songs, and games originated in France. The fairy stories of "Cinderella," "The Sleeping Beauty," "Puss in Boots," and "Little Red Riding Hood" were all written by Charles Perrault, who lived during the days of Louis XIV. Arrange a program of tales and songs.
6. Many Americans like to visit France. Imagine that you are to spend a month in France. What would you want to do and see? How would you travel?

Linking the Old World and the New

1. What well-known statue did the people of France give to the people of the United States in the year 1884? Why was it given?
2. In New Orleans, Louisiana, and in the province of Quebec in Canada, the French language and customs are still used by many people. Why is this so?
3. The Frenchman Ferdinand de Lesseps, who built the Suez Canal (page 83), wanted to build a similar canal in the New World. He started work on the canal, but could not finish it. The canal was later completed by the United States. Where is this canal? What is it called?



William the Conqueror being crowned king in London—1066



Barons watching King John put his seal on Magna Carta—1215



King Edward I addressing the Model Parliament—1295



Anglo-Saxon invasion—449 A.D.



Roman conquest of Britain—43 A.D.



Great Britain and Commonwealth

10.

From the seaport of Calais in France, one can look across twenty miles of water and see the white cliffs of Dover, in England. On the map on page 276 note how the Strait of Dover leads into the North Sea on one side and into the English Channel on the other. The British Isles are thus separated from the main part of the continent of Europe.

England, Wales, and Scotland make up the island of Great Britain. Ireland is to the west. Scotland and Wales were once independent countries but are now joined with England.

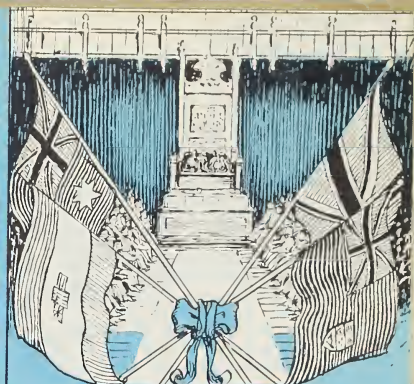
In its early history Ireland had many clans, or tribes, each with its own chief. Then English noblemen brought soldiers to fight in the Irish clan wars. Finally, England claimed the island. Today Northern Ireland is under the British government. The southern part is indepen-



Francis Drake being knighted
by the queen of England—1581



Women workers in factory early
in Industrial Revolution — 1770



House of Commons passing the
Statute of Westminster—1931

Great Britain and the Commonwealth of Nations

dent. It is called the Republic of Ireland. Great Britain and Northern Ireland together are called the United Kingdom.

The uneven coastline of the British Isles has many bays and harbors. Harbors make it easy for people to be fishermen, sailors, and traders in foreign lands.

The maps on pages 12 and 13 show that London, capital of Great Britain, is about 52° north latitude. In North America this line goes through the northern point of Newfoundland and the southern point of Hudson Bay. These parts of North America are frozen in winter.

London, however, usually has little snow. Near London the grass remains green all winter. Millions of people live in the British Isles. But Newfoundland and the Hudson Bay region, because of their long, cold winters, have few inhabitants. What causes this difference?

Most of the winds that blow over the British Isles come from the southwest. They pass over the ocean before they reach the land. The ocean is warmer in winter and cooler in summer than is the land. The winds take their temperature from the ocean. They make the winters warmer and the summers cooler in the British Isles and also on the coast of western Europe.

This unit will answer these questions:

1. What was the early history of Britain?
2. What ideas of government and freedom did the English develop?
3. How did Great Britain become a powerful nation?
4. What is Great Britain like today?
5. How did Ireland gain independence? What is Ireland like today?
6. What is the British Commonwealth of Nations? How did the empire grow?

THE EARLY HISTORY OF BRITAIN

When Julius Caesar conquered Gaul, he heard of the Brythons, or Britons, a people who were related to the Gauls. He led his armies across the channel and won some battles. But the Romans did not stay in Britain at that time.

BRITAIN IN ROMAN TIMES

One hundred years later Roman armies invaded Britain again. They took possession of the island as far north as what is now Scotland. For three hundred years Britain remained a Roman province, peaceful and civilized for the most part. Wild tribes from the mountains of Wales

and Scotland raided the Roman country, but Roman soldiers drove them back.

Many towns grew up in peaceful Britain. Some towns had names ending in "caster," "cester," or "chester." This meant that a Roman camp (*castrum* means "camp" in Latin) had been placed there. On the map of England we find such names as Lancaster, Chester, and Manchester. Can you find these names on a map of the United States?

Across the northern part of the island the Romans built a wall to keep out the barbarians. The Britons felt safe under Roman protection. They even learned the

Students at Eton wear top hats and a special style of clothing. In England a college sometimes means a private school to which boys go before they enter a university such as Oxford or Cambridge. Eton is England's most famous school. Many distinguished statesmen and soldiers studied there.

Combine





British Information Services

The city of Bath in western England was important in Roman days. The Romans discovered mineral springs there which are supposed to have health-giving qualities. In later times Bath became a fashionable health resort. The picture shows one of the ancient Roman baths still in existence.

Latin language. They built forums, temples, and public baths in their cities.

When Rome began to have trouble near home, its legions were withdrawn from Britain. They were needed to fight the barbarians which threatened Rome. Then fierce tribes from what is now Scotland swarmed over the wall that the Romans had built. From Ireland came other warriors who overran Britain.

ANGLO-SAXON BRITAIN

Danger threatened Britain also from the south and east. About the year 450 A.D. many ships, crowded with fair-haired warriors, were raiding the eastern coast of the island. They came from lands that now are part of Denmark and Germany. These invaders were the Angles, the Saxons, and the Jutes.

Settlement of the island

The Britons resisted, but the ships kept coming. Some of the warriors were eager

only for plunder, but many liked the country and settled there. In time, most of Britain was occupied by these invaders. The Angles settled in the central part of the island. The Saxons and the Jutes settled in the southern part.

Many Britons fled to the mountains and forests in the region now called Wales. Others mixed with the conquerors. The cities fell into ruin because the invaders lived in the open.

These Northern warriors developed a written language, which was called Anglesish, or English. About the year 600 a Roman priest, named Augustine, came to England. He was well received by King Ethelbert, whose wife was a Christian. Slowly Ethelbert's people began to learn the ways of Christianity. We call the English people of this time the Anglo-Saxons. Many persons of Anglo-Saxon blood live in England today.

The Britons who found safety in mountainous Wales are called Welsh. Even

today the Welsh are a people apart. Many of them still speak their ancient, difficult language. Their towns have such names as Llangwnadl, Pwllheli, and Blaenau Ffeshniog, which are hard to spell and to pronounce. The Welsh are a musical people, and their singing festivals are famous.

The raids of the Northmen

About two hundred years after Augustine had brought Christianity to England the land of the Anglo-Saxons was invaded. Northmen from Denmark and Norway began to attack England. The Saxons feared these Northmen in their swift ships with the dragon's head at the prow. They prayed, "Deliver us, O Lord, from the fury of the Northmen."

ENGLAND UNDER ALFRED THE GREAT

Alfred the Great checked the Danes and united the rest of England into a single kingdom. What areas on the map were not controlled by Alfred? What English city became his capital?



The Northmen, or Danes, as they came to be called, were fierce fighters. The Danish battle-axes drove the Anglo-Saxons into retreat. After defeating the Anglo-Saxons, the Danes occupied a part of the land. The Anglo-Saxons mixed better with the Danes than they had with the Britons. In England today many cities have the Saxon ending of "ham" or "ton." Some of these are Birmingham, Durham, Boston, and Southampton. Towns with names ending in "by" show that the Danes founded them. Locate Whitby, Derby, and Rugby on the map on page 276.

The great King Alfred

After a time a great leader appeared among the Saxons in the person of Alfred. King Alfred built England's first fleet. He forced the Danes to stay in the north-eastern part of England. After the Danes settled down, they became Christians and merged with the English. King Alfred, who was himself a man of learning, had the Anglo-Saxon laws written down. He also improved the courts. Before he died, his country was at peace. He is known as Alfred the Great, the only king of England to have this title.

ENGLAND UNDER THE NORMANS

Soon after the Danes and the Saxons settled their quarrels, a new invader appeared—William, Duke of Normandy. Some of the Northmen, or Normans, had settled, as we know, on the coast of France. Their land was called Normandy. Here the rough Northmen had quickly adopted the French language and customs.

The Norman conquest

Duke William was master of Normandy. He also claimed the throne of England.

In 1066 he fitted out a powerful army to conquer England. He landed his troops at Hastings, on the south shore of England. There he met the army of Harold, king of England. The Normans were victorious, and Harold was killed. William then marched to London and was crowned king in Westminster Abbey. He is known as William the Conqueror.

The influence of the Normans

William kept about half of England as his own property and divided the rest of the land among his followers. All of his followers had to swear loyalty to him. Under William, England grew strong.

The Normans were the rulers of England. They made Norman-French the language of the government. They acted in a proud manner, but they brought many new ideas to the country. However, the Anglo-Saxons kept many of their own ways. In time, the Normans mixed with the Anglo-Saxons and became English. The language of the island became a mixture of Anglo-Saxon and Norman-French.

The coming of the Normans changed the English style of building. Castles and churches were now built of stone instead of wood. Many craftsmen and traders came from Normandy to work there.



ENGLAND UNDER WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR

After the Battle of Hastings England was ruled by William of Normandy. Find Normandy on the map. What other French province did William control? What city became his capital?

ENGLISH IDEAS OF GOVERNMENT

William and most of the Norman kings who came after him were able and powerful. They ruled with a strong hand, and they drew England together.

THE GROWTH OF DEMOCRACY

As time went on, the king's court became more English in its ways. The English nobles began to demand more rights.

The English jury system

About one hundred years after William's time King Henry II had a new idea in government. To find out who was guilty of a certain crime, he questioned people who lived near the place where the crime had been committed. The men whom he selected had to swear to tell the truth. From the Latin word *juro*, which means



Bettmann Archive

King John places the royal seal on Magna Carta at Runnymede on the banks of the Thames. In the charter the barons included the rights of freemen and thus won the support of all England.

"I swear," these men were called jurors, or jurymen.

In our courts today jurymen listen to both sides of a case when there is a dispute or when a suspected criminal is being tried. Then they decide which side is right. We call this a trial by jury. In England and in the United States we think that a trial by jury, which developed from the jury system of Henry II, is one of our chief rights.

The Great Charter

Henry's son John thought that because he was king he could do as he pleased. Some of his *barons*, or great lords, banded together to stop his high-handed way of ruling. Their army defeated him. King John then agreed to give the barons the rights they demanded.

In a meadow not far from London, the barons met the king. There they presented him with a list of their demands and

forced him to place the royal seal upon it. This document was called *Magna Carta*, or the "Great Charter."

The Great Charter meant that the king had to respect the rights of the great lords. The charter stated that some of the privileges given to the barons must be granted to the common people also. The English have always considered the Magna Carta "the cornerstone of English liberty." King John himself never recovered from his anger at having to lose so much power. When he died of a fever the next year people said, "Magna Carta killed him." Never again has a king of England been given the name of John.

English representative government

When the early kings of England wished advice, they called together some of the nobles and the high church officers. This body of advisers was called the Great Council. Later the council came to be called a *parliament* (from the French word *parler*, "to speak"). After a time representatives from the counties, or shires, and from the towns were invited to attend the meetings. This was a new kind of parliament, because it was made up of representatives of the common people as well as of the upper classes.

The members of Parliament met in two groups, or houses—the House of Lords and the House of Commons. So it is in Great Britain today. It is Parliament that really governs Great Britain. The queen is respected and honored. She serves the nation in many useful ways. But the real problems of government are worked out by the *prime minister* and his advisers. The prime, or "chief," minister is the head of the leading party in the House of Commons in Great Britain.

In this picture of the House of Commons in 1793 the prime minister, who is standing near the center, addresses the members. An officer called the Speaker of the House sits in the great chair. One of the greatest gifts which have come to us from Britain is the democratic form of government. How is the British form of government like ours? How is it different?



Courtesy of the New York Public Library

ENGLISH GOVERNMENT TODAY

Trial by jury, government by their chosen or elected representatives, a two-house Parliament, change of prime ministers when necessary, all these things are

prized by the British people. The British have a ruling family and noblemen with titles, but they feel that their government is just as democratic as ours. Many of our ideas of law originated in England.

GREAT BRITAIN AS A WORLD POWER

Before England defeated the Spanish Armada (see page 226) Spain was the most powerful nation in Europe. But after the defeat of its navy Spain lost its power, and English sea power began to grow.

BRITAIN AS A GREAT SEA POWER

At the time of this great sea battle Queen Elizabeth was on the throne of England. The queen and her advisers knew that their fleet had saved them, so they spent a great deal of money on ship-building. This was the beginning of Great Britain's power on the sea. After the battle with the Spaniards England enjoyed during Elizabeth's long reign a period of peace.

In times of peace people have time to think and to write. Many poets and

writers of plays appeared. Among these were Edmund Spenser, Ben Jonson, and William Shakespeare. Most people today agree that Shakespeare is the world's greatest writer.

English colonies in the New World

During this period many nations were sending explorers and settlers to the New World. Sir Walter Raleigh was one of Queen Elizabeth's friends who sent expeditions to America. Raleigh did not succeed in founding a permanent colony, but others who followed him did.

In 1607 Jamestown was founded in Virginia. Several others followed soon.

Superiority of the English ships

Not only did England have a strong navy but also a *merchant marine* (another



Plains

Hills

The BRITISH ISLES

One inch stands for 90 miles

0 90

ATLANTIC OCEAN

SHETLAND ISLANDS

ORKNEY ISLANDS

HEBRIDES

NORTH

SEA

Prime Meridian

NORTHERN IRELAND

IRELAND

(EIRE)

Dublin

Shannon R.

Lee R. Cork Cobh

IRISH SEA

Glasgow

Edinburgh

Newcastle

Durham

Whitby

Lancaster

Leeds

Manchester

Liverpool

Bradford

Chester

Stoke-on-Trent

Sheffield

Boston

Rugby

Birmingham

Derby

WALES

Cardiff

ENGLAND

Thames

River

London

Dover

Southampton

Hastings

Strait of Dover

Calais

English Channel

CHANNEL ISLANDS
GUERNSEY
JERSEY

FRANCE

ATLANTIC

OCEAN

name for trading ships), which sailed on many seas and carried rich cargoes. The merchant marine of the Netherlands was also strong. There was a long struggle between the English and the Dutch, as the people of the Netherlands are called. In the end England won.

Then France, under Louis XIV, tried to take the leading place in sea power. But Britain's navy proved superior, and France, too, had to yield.

For about two hundred and fifty years Great Britain had the strongest navy in the world and many trading ships. From this we can see why Great Britain was called "the mistress of the seas." Great trading associations such as the East India Company sent their big vessels to India and China. They brought back tea and silk, spices and drugs, cotton goods and jewels. Through its navy England took possession of many foreign regions.

THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION IN BRITAIN

For a long time England was a sheep country. In the early days a great deal of English wool was woven into cloth in the homes of the people. A large amount of wool was sold to the skillful weavers of the Netherlands, who made better cloth.

Troubles in the Netherlands caused many good weavers to come to England for safety. They carried on their trade in their new home. England's woolen cloth became so good that other nations were glad to buy it. In those early days all the spinning and weaving was done in the homes of the workers. This was also true of other trades, and the work was done by hand.

New inventions

When the United States was becoming an independent nation, a number of new inventions changed the life of the people of Great Britain and of the world. As a result of these inventions, hand tools were replaced by machinery. This machinery was driven first by water power, then by steam, and later by electricity. New machines brought many changes in the way people lived and worked. This period of change is called the *Industrial Revolution*.

An important invention of the Industrial Revolution was the *spinning jenny* in 1764. For many years people had been using the spinning wheel. This twisted the fibers of wool into one long thread of yarn at a time. The spinning jenny was a machine which could spin a number of

Sir Francis Drake was a great English seaman. He was the first Englishman to sail around the world. Here Queen Elizabeth is making him a knight after his return. Later Drake helped in the defeat of Spain's Invincible Armada.

Bettmann Archive





Three Lions

A foot pedal is used to operate an old-fashioned spinning wheel which turns fiber into thread.

threads at a time. Although the first spinning jenny was turned by hand, it was a great step forward. With it one person could spin as much as sixteen persons could by hand.

The use of water power

When the spinning jenny was improved, it needed more power than human hands could furnish. Wheels turned by falling water provided that power. Soon, along many streams, dams were built. The water, flowing through a narrow channel, turned a splashing wheel. The wheel as it turned moved shafts which ran the machines.

The spinning machines soon turned out yarn or thread more quickly than the weavers could use it. A new weaving machine, or loom, was made. It was also driven by water power. As improvements

followed, a race began between the spinners and the weavers to turn out the most material. This resulted in a great amount of cloth.

The beginning of the factory system

The machinery used was heavy and expensive. Buildings along the streams were put up and fitted out with machines. Workers operated these machines. The building was called a *factory* because it manufactured, or made, goods. A manager directed the whole factory, and *foremen*, or overseers, watched the progress of the workers.

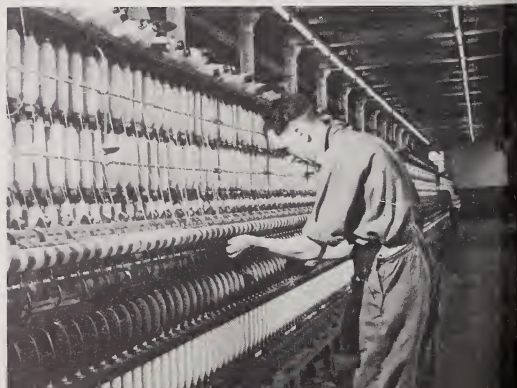
Soon almost all the British spinners and weavers of Britain were laboring in factories. Sometimes there were hundreds of workers in one building. The factories could turn out more and cheaper cloth than had ever been made before. The factory owners made large profits.

The rise of steam power

Water power has much force, but steam power can be used in more places and to a greater extent. People had been thinking about steam power but had not used it much, except for pumping water out of mines. Then James Watt invented the steam engine. At once the factory owners

Today cotton spinning is done by machine as this picture of a British cotton factory shows.

British Information Services





Hunt and Winterbotham Mills, Ltd.

This is a wool-dyeing factory in Bradford, England. The man in front is taking dyed wool from a tank. The man at the back is about to dye a pile of wool which has just been washed.

saw that a factory could be run by steam anywhere, not just along a water course.

Steam engines need coal to heat the water, and England had plenty of coal. The coal fields lay mostly in the same districts in which the cloth was being made. Many new factories, using steam power, sprang up, especially in northern England. Now not only cloth but also many other things were made in factories.

Because coal is heavy to carry, the first factories run by steam were built near the coal fields. Soon the railroads, using steam-driven locomotives, carried coal to distant parts of England. England built many factories and became a great manufacturing nation.

Because people need to live fairly near their work, towns grew up around the factories. New factories were opened in old cities and towns. Factories brought more and more people to live in towns and cities. Today only one person of every five in Great Britain lives in the country.

The importance of Britain's coal

Coal played an important part in making Great Britain rich and powerful. Without coal the British could not have run the machines and locomotives necessary for business. Without coal Great Britain could not have had its fleets of steam-driven war vessels and cargo steamships. Coal gave the nation its manufactures and trade.

One of England's coal fields lies near the city of Newcastle. It has so much coal that it has given rise to a famous saying. When a person talks about doing a useless thing, he says, "That would be carrying coals to Newcastle." In southern Wales is the seaport of Cardiff, from which hundreds of ships take out cargoes of coal each year. Near the city of Glasgow, Scotland, there are also coal and iron mines. Glasgow is the center of steel and shipbuilding industries in the British Isles.

British coal goes to many countries. Ships come into British ports with raw

materials from both tropical and temperate countries. The raw materials are used in factories. Ships must carry cargoes in both directions to make their voyages profitable. It is also necessary for them to carry a certain amount of heavy cargo if they are to ride the stormy waves safely. Heavy weight in the bottom of the ship is called *ballast*. As ballast, British ships often carry extra coal, which can always be sold. The rest of the cargo can be made up of lighter manufactured goods.

British coal keeps the machines in factories turning. It also helps Britain pay for raw materials needed in the factories.

The importance of iron ore

In industry coal and iron make a fine team, and Great Britain has both. The iron mines of England are found in the center and the northern part of the country. Fortunately, coal to stoke the furnaces for melting the iron and limestone is found near the iron mines. Limestone makes the iron melt more easily.

Long ago the iron workers used charcoal from the English forests to keep their furnaces going. Then, as wood grew scarce, they found out how to make coal into coke. Coke is even better than coal in the manufacture of iron.

GREAT BRITAIN TODAY

ENGLISH MANUFACTURING CITIES

Great Britain has many manufacturing cities. Factories that make the same kind of goods are likely to be built in one region. The spinning and weaving of cotton cloth is centered in the northwest of England. Manchester, with the towns around it, is the greatest cotton-cloth district in the world. Many of these smaller towns limit their activities to a single type of work. For example, one city has factories that make fine thread. Another makes coarser thread. In some factories the cloth is woven. In others it is bleached. In still others it is dyed or patterns are printed on it. Because of this the lives of millions of people have been said to "hang on a cotton thread." The factories near Glasgow also weave cotton.

All the raw cotton must come from abroad. The United States sends great amounts of cotton to the port of Liverpool, which is near Manchester. Great Britain prefers its workers to make the fine grades of cotton cloth, which sell for a higher

price. India is now weaving much cotton of coarse grades.

A range of hills divides the cotton-weaving district of England from the wool-weaving district. Leeds and Bradford are the chief woolen-cloth cities, with many smaller towns around them. More than half of the wool needed comes from Africa, Australia, and South America. England makes such good woolen cloth that many an American traveling in England has brought some cloth home. Usually he has his own tailor make his suit because he prefers American styles.

Scotch woolens are also very good. In the old days every Scottish tribe, or clan, had its special pattern worked out with cross-barred colored threads. In the United States we also use these patterns, which we call *plaids*. In Scotland each clan had its own plaid, and the members of a clan could be recognized at once by the clothes they wore. Many Scottish people still like to wear scarfs bearing their own plaid.

The iron-and-steel districts

South of the two great weaving districts of England is a part of the country called the Midlands. The map will show you the reason for this name. The districts are dark with smoke and bristling with factory chimneys. Here is Birmingham with its million people. This city is an iron-and-steel center like our Pittsburgh. Hardware and automobiles, machines, tanks, and guns pour out of the factories of Birmingham and also the smaller towns near by. This city has been important in industry since early times because of the iron mines in the area around it.

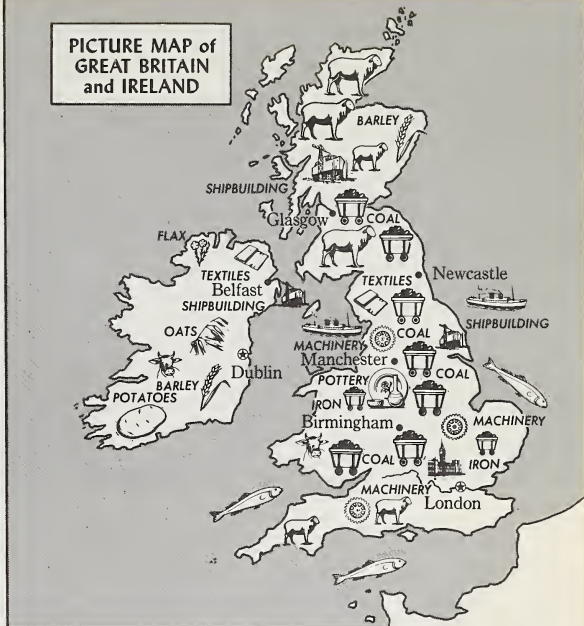
Sheffield, halfway between Birmingham and Leeds, has been a famous steel-making center for hundreds of years. In early days its steel went into knives and swords.

This Scotsman wears a kilt, or short woolen skirt, of the Stewart plaid. He is playing the Scottish musical instrument called a bagpipe.

Gendreau



PICTURE MAP of
GREAT BRITAIN
and IRELAND



Look at the map and tell why Great Britain has long been an important industrial nation. What industries do both Great Britain and Ireland owe to their positions as islands?

Later the steel was used also for razors, scissors, and doctors' instruments. In recent years it has made steel for building ships and for armor-plating them.

The pottery districts

Halfway between Sheffield and Birmingham are a number of towns which make much pottery and china. They are united under the name of Stoke-on-Trent. Modern kitchens, dining rooms, and bathrooms use the different kinds of pottery which this district manufactures. "Wedgwood" and "Spode" are two famous brands of fine china. Can you add the names of any other kinds of English china?

LONDON, THE CAPITAL

In the southeastern part of England a marshy stream provides a waterway to the outside world. This river is the



British Travel Association

The British Parliament buildings seen at the left stand on the bank of the Thames. Here the House of Commons and the House of Lords meet to make Great Britain's laws. The buildings have more than one thousand rooms. The clock is called Big Ben.

Thames. Not far upstream the Thames suddenly grows shallow. It was at this point that the town, which is now the capital of Great Britain, first began.

When William the Conqueror came to England, London was already a good-sized town. He built the famous Tower of London just outside the walls of the town as a means of defense. Because London was the great gateway to England, facing the mainland of Europe, the city's trade increased rapidly. Today buildings have spread from the center of the old city over a wide area. This area holds about one sixth of all the people of Great Britain. No other spot in the world except Tokyo, Japan, and the area surrounding it is so thickly populated.

A visit to London

Our young friend Tom Tweed offers to show us around London. We are glad to have his help. The rumble of many busses through the narrow streets and the traffic moving on the left instead of the right confuse us somewhat. The big, polite, helmeted "bobbies," or policemen, would readily give us information, but we prefer to have Tom as our guide.

Because Tom wants to be sure we see all the important historical places in London he gives each of us a map of the city like the one on page 284. It is fun to locate these places on the map as we make our tour of London.

The heart of London, or "The City"

"Let's start in the part of London called 'The City,' which is in the eastern section of London," says Tom. "This district, about a mile square, is called 'The City' because the original walled town of London stood here. The dotted lines on our map outline this section. Each year London's seventy-eight labor organizations, called guilds, elect a citizen to be the *lord mayor*. When the lord mayor takes office, he drives in a procession through the streets of London to be presented to the king. The king himself cannot enter 'The City' without the permission of the lord mayor."

The first great building that we visit in "The city" is the ancient Tower of London. Here we view the collection of armor and also the jewels worn by the rulers of Britain when they are crowned. They are carefully watched over by Her Majesty's

Guard. We inspect the rooms where Sir Walter Raleigh was imprisoned.

After visiting the tower, we walk to the Bank of England. Tom explains that this bank is the center of the great money dealings of the whole British world. It means about the same as Wall Street does to the United States. Near by are the main offices of the important insurance companies, manufacturing firms, and shipping houses.

Before we leave this part of London we visit St. Paul's Cathedral. St. Paul's is one of the world's finest cathedrals. Its great architect, Sir Christopher Wren, is buried there. An inscription on his tomb says, "If you wish to see his monument, look around you." This mighty church, with its dome like that of St. Peter's, is a wonderful monument to its designer. But it is not the only one. Wren designed more than fifty churches in London, many of them small but beautiful. After World War II the British restored nearly all of Wren's churches that had been damaged. They could not bear to lose such treasures.

As we wait to board our bus, Tom points toward the Tower.

"Beyond the Tower," says Tom, "lies the East End, London's huge manufacturing district. On the other side of the Thames, below here, stands the Royal Observatory of Greenwich. The meridian of Greenwich (see page 10) is the starting-line by which most nations calculate longitude. Throughout the world everyone is supposed to know that meridian."

London docks

We take a bus going south along the Thames River. As we ride, we watch the men loading and unloading ships. Tom explains that when the narrow Thames

became too crowded with ships, new basins were dug along the river. Here are the London docks, many miles of them, lined with storage sheds and warehouses.

Houses of Parliament

From our map we can easily guess that we are now headed for the Houses of Parliament. These gray buildings with their square towers stand on the edge of the Thames. Here the lawmakers of Great Britain meet. We hear the chimes of Big Ben, the clock on the tower. The sound of this great bell can be heard each hour over a large part of London.

Westminster Abbey

Leaving the bus, we have just a short walk to Westminster Abbey. The Abbey towers can be seen from a great distance.

The great Tower of London, which stands on the Thames River, was built by William the Conqueror. This very strong, old fortress of feudal times has never fallen to an enemy.

British Travel Association



This church was begun during the Middle Ages. Like other churches of this period it is built in the form of a cross. Today it is famous as a burial place with splendid monuments of British kings and queens and of other important persons. We enter the Abbey, and Tom shows us around.

We see the grave of Charles Dickens, author of *A Christmas Carol*, a story that we enjoy especially at the Christmas season. Dickens was a poor boy who rose to fame as a writer. His stories bring both laughter and tears. By showing the hard life of the poor, he helped awaken the English to the hardships suffered by the poor at that time.

We see also the grave of Alfred Tennyson, author of such well-known poems as "The Brook" and "The Charge of the Light Brigade." Here, too, are the tomb of the British Unknown Soldier and a bust of William Shakespeare.

"William Shakespeare," Tom explains, "stands first among English play writers. He was born nearly four hundred years ago. But his plays, such as *Hamlet* and *Julius Caesar*, are still studied in school and produced in many theaters.

"Many persons can recite parts of Shakespeare's plays by heart. They talk about some people in his plays, like Macbeth, King Lear, and Romeo and Juliet, as though they were real people. The humor and wisdom of his writings are as true and enjoyable today as they were when the plays were first performed.

"Of Shakespeare's plays," Tom goes on, "I like *The Tempest* best. *The Tempest* is the story of Prospero, the duke of Milan, and his small daughter, Miranda. They have been forced to leave Milan by his brother, the king of Naples. They put out to sea and find refuge on an enchanted island. There Miranda grows up to be a

London is one of the world's largest cities. It is the capital and an important trade center. In World War II large parts of the city were bombed, but most of the famous landmarks still stand. This map of London shows many of these places of interest. Find those mentioned in the text. What two London parks are shown? What is the City? What places are within or bordering on it?





British Information Services

Westminster Abbey is a great national church. From the time of the Norman conquest all but one of England's rulers have been crowned here.

beautiful young woman. A shipwreck, caused by a violent storm, or tempest, brings to their shore the king of Naples, the handsome prince Ferdinand, and others. Miranda and Ferdinand fall in love. When Ferdinand proves his love for Miranda, Prospero consents to their marriage. He forgives his brother, and all set sail for Naples to prepare for the wedding."

In the Poets' Corner of the Abbey is a bust of the American writer, Henry Wadsworth Longfellow. Tom reminds us that Longfellow wrote the exciting poem, "The Ride of Paul Revere." Do you know this poem about our early history?

After viewing the statue of Abraham Lincoln, standing near the Abbey, we enter St. James's Park. Facing this is Buckingham Palace, where the queen lives. This part of London, the West End, is the fashionable part of the city.

The National Gallery

We stop off at one of the restaurants near the park to have tea before we head north to see the paintings in the National Gallery. Tom says, "We are proud of such portrait painters as Thomas Gainsborough and Joshua Reynolds. They made many interesting people live forever on canvas. Both artists were fond of children and painted them well.

"Gainsborough painted landscapes, too. He loved the English countryside and showed it in many fine scenes."

Before we leave the gallery, Tom guides us to the paintings of Turner. Turner's

THE BLUE BOY

The boy in this portrait by Gainsborough is wearing a blue satin suit. In 1928 the painting was sold to an American art lover.

Ewing Galloway



works are among the finest in English art. Turner loved to paint the water, and he used the canals of Venice in some of his best pictures.

We board a bus for the British Museum, which will conclude our tour today. In the museum we see many treasures of ancient lands. We are most interested in statues brought to England from the ruins of the Parthenon (see page 156).

As we leave the bus and say good-bye to Tom, we remember that there are cities named London in the United States and in Canada. We are sure that these cities must feel proud to have the same name as the British capital.

THE FARMING AND DAIRY REGIONS

The eastern part of England, where there is not as much rain as in the west,

Sheep raising is one of Britain's leading industries. England has long been famous for woolen products. This farm is near London.

British Information Services



is a fine wheat-growing region. However, the farmers there cannot grow wheat as cheaply as it can be imported from Canada. Many of them have turned to dairy-ing instead, so Great Britain produces only a small part of the wheat it uses. In spite of the number of cattle and sheep raised there, the island provides only half the meat it needs.

In Great Britain, where many people live in a small space, there is not enough land to grow all the food that is used. So most of the food is brought in from foreign countries. The food they import is paid for through the sale of manufactured goods to other countries. Britain has many dairy cattle, but it cannot produce enough butter and cheese for its own needs.

If the island of Great Britain were blockaded so that no food could be imported, its people would starve in a few months' time. Fortunately, the British fleet, and in later years, the air force have always been able to protect the island so that vessels could bring in the needed food. A sign in one of the London inns says:

"For what we are about to eat,
Thanks to the Almighty and the Fleet."

BRITISH SPORTS

The British are a plucky people. They carry their love of fair play into sports as well as into more serious affairs.

Importance of good sportsmanship

In Britain much importance is given to good *sportsmanship*. Sportsmanship means the willingness to sacrifice oneself for the sake of the team, to do one's best, and to give the other side a fair chance. If defeat comes, it is met with a smile. One who has developed these qualities in athletics can usually be trusted to do his best

The batter has just hit the ball in this English game of cricket. These players have dressed up in the formal costume worn to play cricket over one hundred years ago. An organized cricket match was held in England for the first time in 1700.



British Information Services

in other situations in life. That is why many schools of England require all boys to take part in school sports.

Cricket, the national game

Scotland gave the world the game of golf, but England invented the game of *cricket*. Cricket is played with bats, ball, and wickets, usually between sides made up of eleven players each. Compared with a baseball game, a cricket match, which may go on for three days, seems slow.

Cricket, though played by the English all over the world, has never appealed greatly to people of other countries. Yet the game has come to stand for sportsmanship. Englishmen watching the game call out, "Well played!" at a good hit or a good catch. When a player tries hard but fails, he hears, "Well tried!" The game is played so politely that the word *cricket* is often used to mean "conduct becoming a gentleman." Thus, when an Englishman sees someone being unfair, he says, "That's not cricket."

GREAT BRITAIN IN WORLD WAR II

In 1939 Adolf Hitler, the German leader, sent his troops to attack Poland, a country to the east of Germany. The British, who had promised to help Poland

in case of attack, declared war upon Germany. The British also sent armies to help France when it was invaded by Germany the next year. The Germans, who had long been preparing for war, made short work of the French army. They trapped a large British force at Dunkirk, on the north coast of France. To free the British troops and bring them home people in Britain used every boat they could find. The men, women, and boys of Britain risked their lives sailing across the channel in small boats, but they brought most of the British army safely back home.

If Hitler had sent his armies across the English Channel at this moment, he might have beaten the British. However, like Napoleon, he waited and his chance was lost. The British kept up the fight on sea and on land. German planes bombed London, but this did not discourage them. "There'll always be an England," they cried. By "England" they meant, of course, the whole United Kingdom.

English, Scottish, Welsh, many Irish, Canadians, South Africans, Australians, New Zealanders, all joined to oppose the enemy. When the United States was attacked by Japan, we also joined Great Britain in the war against the Axis Powers: Germany, Italy, and Japan.



British Combine

Although the area around St. Paul's Cathedral was badly damaged by bombs, the beautiful cathedral itself still stands. The surrounding buildings have not been rebuilt. Instead a clear space will be left to provide a better view of the cathedral. When it was first built by Wren, St. Paul's had such an open space around it.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

baron	sportsmanship
ballast	spinning jenny
cricket	Magna Carta
plaid	prime minister
factory	merchant marine
foreman	lord mayor
Parliament	Industrial Revolution

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 14. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. An overseer
2. The trading ships of a nation
3. A team game popular among the English people
4. The heavy weight carried in the bottom of a ship to keep it steady
5. The willingness to play a game fairly and to do one's best for the good of the team
6. A title given to a high officer of the city of London
7. A kind of cloth in which the pattern is worked out with cross-barred colored threads

8. The Great Charter, in which King John granted important rights to the barons and freemen of England
9. A machine that could spin a number of threads at one time
10. A title of a lord in feudal times
11. A building where goods are made
12. The period in the late 1700's when machinery began to replace hand tools
13. The chief officer, or head, of the British government
14. The British lawmaking body

Can You Answer These?

1. What tribes invaded England and settled there in early times?
2. Why was King Alfred called Alfred the Great?
3. How did the Normans change England?
4. Why was Great Britain called the "mistress of the seas"?
5. What are Britain's chief industries?
6. Who invented the steam engine? How did this invention help factories grow?
7. How did coal help to make Great Britain rich and powerful?
8. Why must Great Britain import food to feed its people?

IRELAND: THE EMERALD ISLE

Facing the winds and waves of the Atlantic, the island of Ireland is the farthest west of any large division in Europe. The native Irish are related to the native Scots, and the Irish language is similar to the Scottish.

THE HISTORY OF IRELAND

A short time before the Angles and Saxons came to Britain a priest named Patrick came to Ireland as a missionary. He and other missionaries brought the Christian faith to the Irish people. Patrick is a well-beloved saint, and Patrick is a favorite name in Ireland. A story told about St. Patrick is that he drove the snakes out of Ireland into the ocean.

English rule in Ireland

About a hundred years after Duke William of Normandy came to England, an Irish chief was driven from his land. He went to England to ask help of the English king, Henry II, but the king was in France. However, some of Henry's lords came to his aid and sent their men to defeat the chief's enemies. In return, the English lords received large estates in Ireland.

When Henry II went to Ireland later, he found it easy to persuade the English lords in Ireland to swear loyalty to him. He granted lands to his friends among the English nobles, and many of them settled in Ireland. Later on, the English kings began to call themselves king of Ireland as well as king of England.

The English kings wished to make Ireland as much as possible like England. Since the Irish were clansmen and cattle raisers, not townsmen and farmers, the two ways of life did not agree. The Irish re-

belled. England then sent English settlers to take over the lands of the rebels.

Later, people from Scotland settled in North Ireland, in the province of Ulster. Their religion was like that of the English who founded our Plymouth and Boston. It was different from the Catholic religion of the rest of the island.

Irish rebellions against the English

The English and the Irish people did not get on well together in Ireland. One reason was the difference in religion between the two countries. Harsh laws were made against the Irish Catholics. Although there was an Irish Parliament, only Protestants could be elected to it.

Some of the Irish plotted to set up an Irish republic with the aid of French ships and French troops. When their plan failed, England did away entirely with the Irish Parliament. The result was that all the laws for Ireland were made by the British Parliament, in London. But this has been changed in recent years.

Irish land came to be held by *absentee landlords*, that is, owners who did not live on their estates. If the people who rented the land could not pay the rent, the manager of the estate had them put out of their homes. Most Irishmen were poor and depended on the potato crops for a large part of their food. Some actually starved to death when their crops failed and rotted in the fields year after year.

Many people left Ireland and went to the United States. Between 1845 and 1900 the number of persons living in Ireland dropped by nearly half. Those who left the country and their relatives who stayed were unfriendly toward England. After a

time, however, the English passed laws which did away with the absentee landlords. Ireland then became a country of small landowners like France.

After 1900 a party grew up in South Ireland whose members wished to separate Ireland entirely from Great Britain and to make it a republic. They wanted to revive the old Irish, or Gaelic, language. These Irish called themselves the party of *Sinn Fein*, which in Gaelic means "we ourselves."

Most of the people of Northern Ireland, however, depended on manufacturing and on trade with Great Britain. They refused to help the Sinn Fein members of southern Ireland, who depended mainly on farming and stock raising.

The Irish Free State

After World War I the Irish declared their country independent and chose a president. The British government objected. For more than two years there was fighting between the Sinn Feiners and the British troops.

At last Britain yielded and agreed that southern Ireland should be an independent

country, like the Dominion of Canada. It elected a president and parliament and called itself the Irish Free State. Dublin was the capital. Six counties of Northern Ireland chose to remain under the British government and to send their representatives to the Parliament in London. After World War II, southern Ireland became a republic, cutting its ties with Great Britain.

Thus, after nearly eight hundred years of quarrels and rebellion, most of Ireland is now independent. A very large part of Ireland's exports continues to go to Great Britain. But the new nation now has a chance to work out its own ideas. It is called the Republic of Ireland.

A VISIT TO RURAL IRELAND

Michael O'Connor and his sister Grania live in the country near the city of Cork. Their house is a long, one-story stone building with three rooms. The whitewashed walls shine brightly in the sun. On many days, however, the sun does not shine. For the western winds bring much rain to most of Ireland. Michael and Grania are used to wet weather. They know that the rain and the mild climate keep the grass green

This peat bog in Ireland is surrounded by mountains. The farmers are cutting peat and putting it in piles. When the peat has dried out, donkey carts carry it away to be used for fuel.

After an Original Painting by T. E. Spence





Gendreau

An Irish farmer and his wife, holding their small donkey, stand in front of their home. This small cottage, like most farm homes in Ireland, is white-washed and has a thatched roof to shed the rain.

all winter. Because of this, Ireland is sometimes called "The Emerald Isle."

Peat, an important source of fuel

Ireland has little or no snow in winter, but many days are chilly. The kitchen fireplace of Michael and Grania's home provides warmth as well as a place for cooking. In the shed is a large pile of brownish material, called *peat*. A few pieces of peat, laid on the fire, furnish much heat. The children like to smell the spicy smoke from the burning peat.

Near by is the *peat bog*, or soft ground from which peat is dug. Decayed vegetable material, such as grass or moss, has formed the spongy matter called peat. After peat is dug from the peat bog, it is dried and sometimes made into bricks. If the peat had been pressed down and heated by underground layers of rock, it would have turned into coal in a few hundred years. But Ireland has little coal. Ireland is like a saucer, with mountains around most of the edge and flat ground in the middle. It has many lakes and many bogs.

One misty morning our young Irish friends hear their mother say: "Take the donkey now, my dears, and bring us a few loads of peat. The heap is getting low."

The children untie the donkey from his stall in the barn and hitch him to a cart. Then they set out for the peat bog.

Soon they see the brown bog. Around the bog, dark-brown piles of peat are stacked up to dry. A few peat-diggers are cutting out more peat with spades. "Isn't it lucky," Michael says, "that since Ireland has little coal and few forests, we have these wonderful peat bogs?"

The great river Shannon

The O'Connor cottage is small, but it is lighted with electricity. The electricity is produced by water power from the Shannon River. The Shannon is the longest stream in Ireland. A great dam across the Shannon furnishes the water power to make all the electricity Ireland needs.

Ireland's important cities

Cork is on the Lee River. At the mouth of the Lee is the port of Cobh. Cobh formerly was called Queenstown. But in their new patriotic feeling the Irish changed the English name to an old Irish, or Gaelic, one.

In the Irish Republic many towns and streets have Gaelic names. Today Gaelic is taught in the public schools.



Combine

Fine Irish linen is spread out on the grass to bleach, or gain whiteness from the sun. The linen is used for handkerchiefs, table linens, and other fabrics. Ireland is famous for its handmade linen goods.

While visiting Cobh one day, Michael meets a boy from Belfast. Each has to boast about his own part of Ireland. "Southern Ireland is much more beautiful than Northern Ireland!" Michael exclaims.

"Yes, it is, especially around the Lakes of Killarney," the boy from Belfast admits. "But the northern part is more prosperous.

We manufacture many things in Northern Ireland. But Belfast has two specialties. We build many ships, which carry British cargo to all parts of the globe. We also weave the good Irish linen known all over the world. Today the Irish weavers of Belfast can use all the flax the island can raise and all it can import as well."

THE BRITISH EMPIRE AND THE BRITISH COMMONWEALTH

By 1940 the people of Great Britain had had more than eight hundred years of settled government. In that time no enemy had successfully invaded the island. Even Napoleon, with his great army and powerful fleet, had done no more than to plan an attack on Britain.

BRITAIN IN MODERN TIMES

Great Britain had built up the strongest navy in the world. The British were proud to sing, "Britannia rules the waves," and to feel that this was true. Under the protection of the fleet, British merchant vessels visited all the ports of the world. Great Britain was the leader in the Industrial

Revolution and needed many markets for its products.

Forming the British Empire

When vessels driven by steam came into use, there had to be coaling stations on all the seas. To provide the needed coaling stations, Great Britain began raising its flag over a number of islands in far-off parts of the world. It made treaties, or agreements, with certain countries that were only partly civilized and received parts of their land. It sent expeditions to explore unknown regions and claim them for Great Britain. Great Britain also arranged with certain native rulers to give

their countries protection in return for special trading rights. Such countries, which depend upon an outside nation for their defense, are called *protectorates* of that nation. All these colonies and protectorates became a part of the British Empire.

Thus the British formed an empire which reached around the earth. "The sun never sets on the British flag," they said. One fourth of the people of the world were ruled by Great Britain.

FORMING THE COMMONWEALTH

For a long time the British government and other strong nations held the idea that colonies existed to bring wealth to the mother country. Colonies were supposed to furnish raw materials for manufacture and to buy the mother country's manufactured goods. This would give chances of employment to the people back home. Great Britain tried to keep its American colonies

from developing their own manufacturing. This was one reason why it lost the thirteen colonies which became the United States.

As some of the other English colonies grew strong, they felt that they should have a hand in directing their own affairs. After some discussion most of them gained their point. Canada was made a self-governing country called a *dominion*. The island continent of Australia and the nearby group of islands which form New Zealand likewise became self-governing dominions. The four colonies which joined together to form the Union of South Africa also became a dominion. The Irish Free State, though not generally called a dominion, was given the same standing in the British family of nations.

The dominions, as a group, belong to what is known as the British Commonwealth of Nations. The word *commonwealth* means "the common well-being."

The British Commonwealth is made up of independent nations which give allegiance to the British Crown. The British Empire consists of areas belonging or entrusted to Great Britain. How many countries belong to the Commonwealth? On what continent does Britain own the most territory?





AUSTRALIA and NEW ZEALAND

One inch stands for 460 miles

0 460 920

Plains Plateaus Hills Mountains

During World Wars I and II all the nations of the British Commonwealth fought on the British side. However, the Irish, who considered themselves an independent republic, did not help the British in World War II. The British Commonwealth is a family of independent nations which are united for their own welfare in matters of defense and trade. The dominions feel that they and the mother country should stay together for the benefit of all. Do you think they are right?

We shall now learn about some of the lands in the Commonwealth of Nations.

AUSTRALIA, THE HIDDEN CONTINENT

While North and South America were being explored and settled, a great mass of land southeast of Asia lay entirely unknown to Europeans. For thousands of years the land of Australia, now called a continent because of its great size, had been cut off from other parts of the world. Its people were few and primitive. They still lived in the Stone Age. Some of the animals were different from those found anywhere else in the world.

The discovery of Australia

The Dutch, in their exploring voyages, learned that there was a large island in the South Pacific. At first they called it Terra Australia, which means "southern land." The Dutch later named the land New Holland. They saw little to attract them there, and the island lay almost untouched until just before our War for Independence.

In 1770 an English officer, Captain James Cook, came to the eastern coast of New Holland. He took possession, in the name of Great Britain, of a great tract of land which he called New South Wales.

Sir Joseph Banks, a student of botany, or the science of plants, was with him. Sir Joseph found so many new plants that Captain Cook called the harbor in which the ship was anchored Botany Bay.

The settlement of Australia

Some years later Great Britain decided to get rid of a group of lawbreakers by sending them out of the country. They sent the men to Australia and built a settlement for them on the beautiful inlet where Sydney now stands. More criminals were sent out later. After they had served their terms, some of them acquired land, began to till the soil, and built up a real colony. New Holland thus became New South Wales under an English governor.

New South Wales, which was the mother colony, had two daughter colonies, Victoria and Queensland. These colonies eventually became states. So also did two other colonies which had been founded by people from Great Britain—South Australia and Western Australia. About 1850 the whole continent was called Australia.

The discovery of gold in California, you will remember, caused a rush from the eastern part of the United States to the Pacific Coast. The discovery of gold in Australia also caused many people from England to throng to the new land. Many who came for gold stayed as settlers. Some settlers raised wheat. Others had large flocks of sheep or herds of cattle. Wool became king in Australia, just as cotton was king in our South.

At last the states of Australia decided to unite. Today Victoria, New South Wales, Queensland, South Australia, and Western Australia, together with the island of Tasmania to the south, form the Australian Commonwealth. A sixth part of

the Australian mainland, the Northern Territory, is not much developed. Australia is a new and successful nation. It is a happy member of the Commonwealth of Nations.

STRANGE STORIES OF AUSTRALIA

Although many Australians live in cities, the "feel" of the continent is an outdoor one. Many of the people are so tall that the English like to call them "cornstalks." The young people usually take every chance to be outdoors. They sail, they swim, they play football and cricket. The beaches, the athletic fields, and the race tracks for horses and dogs always have their crowds of spectators.

At one of the beaches near Sydney we meet a smiling, sunburned fellow, named Jim Jordan. Jim is more than willing to tell us some of the interesting things about his island continent.

"You can't imagine the odd kinds of animals, birds, and trees that we have in Australia," declares Jim. "Have you heard

of beasts that lay eggs, or that jump instead of walking, or of birds that bray?" Here are the stories that Jim tells us.

Australia's strange animals and birds

The duckbill, or *platypus*, is a small water animal. The soft fur of the platypus is as silvery-dark as that of a mole. It has a flat bill just like a duck's, and like a duck it lays eggs. Another animal that lays eggs is the *echidna*, or spiny anteater. When frightened, the echidna curls up like a porcupine to protect itself. It has a long tapering snout with which it can pick up the ants which are its main food.

Australia is the home of the *kangaroo*, an odd animal that carries its young in a pouch. It moves about by jumping instead of walking or running. The largest male kangaroos stand nearly seven feet high and can jump forward at a rate as fast as the average horse can gallop.

Among Australia's strange birds are its swans, which are black instead of white. There is also the *kookaburra*, a kind of

These two koalas look like small teddy bears. Koalas carry their young in a pouch. They sleep in trees in the daytime and at night roam about looking for roots and leaves to eat.

Australian News and Information Bureau



This boy is feeding a kangaroo in an Australian zoo. Notice the young kangaroo in its mother's pouch. It stays there for several weeks until it becomes old enough to take care of itself.

British Combine





Ewing Galloway

This air view shows Sydney harbor, one of the finest in the world. There are many beautiful beaches along the waterfront. The great harbor bridge connects Sydney with its suburbs.

big-headed woodpecker. The kookaburra is often called the laughing jackass because of its cackling, braying laughter.

The trees of Australia

Australia has many kinds of strange trees and shrubs. A large number of these are not found any place else in the world. One of these native trees is the *eucalyptus*, often called the gum tree because of the gum or resin which oozes from it. Some eucalyptus trees grow to be more than three hundred feet tall. They are among the most beautiful and useful of trees. The flowers of the eucalyptus look like white bells. There is no better wood for making ships, railroad ties, telegraph poles, and fences.

The eucalyptus sheds its bark as well as its leaves. From its grayish leaves an oil

is made which is very useful in medicine, especially in the treatment of coughs and colds.

Some varieties of the eucalyptus will grow in very dry ground. Spain and California have imported the eucalyptus and have found it useful and beautiful.

Another well-known Australian tree is the *wattle*. This tree, or shrub, has long graceful branches covered with bright yellow blossoms. The Australians have made it their national flower.

The boomerang, a strange weapon

The natives of Australia invented a strange weapon called the *boomerang*. There are two kinds of boomerangs. One is almost flat on both sides. It is used as a war weapon for throwing. Being made of hard wood, it can knock unconscious a good-sized animal or break a man's arm. In a close fight it can be used as a club.

The other, and lighter, kind of boomerang is one that after being thrown turns and comes back to the sender. This type of boomerang was used by the natives as a plaything. Because it could be made to return so strangely on its course it has been of interest to scientists.

Nine horses pull this harvesting machine in an Australian wheat field. Australian wheat is valuable because it reaches world markets when supplies in other countries are lowest.

Australian News and Information Bureau





Australian Information Office

A herdsman on horseback watches a flock of sheep on a farm near Canberra. There are eighteen times as many sheep as people in Australia. Someone once said that "Australia rode to prosperity on a sheep's back." Can you tell why?

AUSTRALIA'S PEOPLE

Australia is almost as large as our forty-eight states, but it has fewer people than live in New York City and its suburbs.

More than half of the Australians live in the southeastern part, where there are mild winters, warm summers, and plenty of rain. Here we find most of the railroads, the farms, the heavy manufacturing, and about all of Australia's coal lands.

Look at the map on page 294. Draw an imaginary line in a slanting direction from just north of Brisbane on the east coast to a little west of Adelaide on the south coast. This southeast section, almost a triangle in shape, is the area we have just read about. Here are the great cities of Sydney and Melbourne. Each of these cities, with its suburbs, is about as large as Detroit, Michigan. At the southwestern corner of Australia is another fertile region surrounding the city of Perth.

About half of Australia will probably never be thickly settled. One reason for its small population is that great stretches of flat, stony desert lie in its center. The temperature is hot. During the day it rarely falls below 100 degrees.

A second reason is that the Australians did not want their country to have too many new settlers. They thought that the coming of people with other ways of living would bring great problems in government. Since World War II, however, Australia has been trying to get more people to come there to live. It has offered farm land, employment, and homes to attract people from Europe to settle there.

AUSTRALIA'S CHIEF PRODUCTS

If you look at the docks of Australian seaports, you will find some vessels loaded entirely with wheat. Others are packed with bales of strong-smelling wool or rabbit skins. Refrigerator ships hold chilled or frozen mutton, beef, and rabbit meat.

Wheat

Wheat is the great crop of the continent. Nearly three fourths of all the farming land is covered by wheat fields. As we know from experience in the United States, wheat grows best in regions which have a moist winter or spring and a dry summer. This is true of both southeastern and southwestern Australia.

Sheep and cattle

Australia has more sheep than any other country. Sheep can be raised very cheaply because one shepherd with two or three collie dogs can attend to a flock of three thousand. For many years sheep were raised in Australia for wool, not meat.

When refrigerator ships were invented, it was found that meat could be exported at a profit. Instead of the small merinos with their fine wool, the Australians began to raise a heavier kind of sheep with coarser wool but plenty of meat. Sheep raising proved to be so profitable that it spread northward into dry regions. Even in these almost desert lands, the sheep raisers found that by sinking wells they could get supplies of water. It is likely that the sheep industry will be important in Australia for a long time to come.

We must keep in mind that Australia lies in the Southern Hemisphere. As a traveler in Australia goes north, he reaches warmer regions. The northern part of Australia is hot. It has a rainy season and a dry season. In the dry season the pasture is very poor. In this part of Australia sheep do not thrive, but cattle can endure dampness and heat. Cattle need fewer people to look after them than do sheep, so long

as the ranges are not fenced. On these great stretches of pasture lands the life is very much as it was in our oldtime West.

At certain times the stockmen have a roundup. Some of the cattle may go direct to the stockyards of Sydney and Melbourne. Some may be fattened on the pastures near the eastern coast. The poorer stock is often sent to factories that make beef extract and prepare hides for export.

Australia's rabbits

Sometimes animals and plants can be introduced easily into a new land. When English sparrows were brought over to the United States, they multiplied so rapidly that they became nuisances. Soon after the first settlements in Australia a new settler took with him a crate of rabbits. The rabbits escaped from their pen. Rabbits, like guinea pigs, increase very fast. Before the colonists realized it, New South Wales was alive with bunnies.

Ten rabbits can eat as much grass as one sheep. Soon there were millions of rabbits, and they devoured a great deal of pasture. They even ate the bark from the bushes so that these died. It began to look as though rabbits would prevent the raising of sheep, so important to Australia.

Australian Information Office

Melbourne, which is the second largest city in Australia, is viewed here from across the Yarra River. It has many modern buildings and wide streets. This city, near a rich farming area, exports wool, wheat, and other products.





Deane Dickason from Ewing Galloway

These Maori girls are pretending to be in a canoe as they sing a song. Notice the carved wooden posts that decorate the house.

The government of New South Wales has spent great sums of money to get rid of the rabbits. It has built enough rabbit-proof wire fence to go around the world six times. Still there are swarms of rabbits. But Australia has made some use of these animals since it sells rabbits to England for food. Australia also sells rabbit skins to England and the United States, where they are made into felt hats and fur coats.

Australia's mines

The mines of Australia are rich. The first gold from that country, like the first gold of California, came from gravel and sand brought down by the streams. Not many *nuggets*, or pieces of solid gold, that weigh a hundred pounds have ever been discovered. But one nugget weighing one hundred and twenty-six pounds was found in Australia. At thirty-five dollars for an ounce, how much would the nugget be worth?

Little gold can be found in Australian streams now. The gold-bearing rock has to be dug out of the mines. On the desert



Ewing Galloway

This Australian native is about to throw his boomerang. Similar weapons were used in ancient Egypt, and some are still used in India.

of western Australia is a gold-mining settlement, where the ground has been tunneled out like an anthill.

Australia's largest coal fields lie near the largest city, Sydney. It is good coal, and there is enough to export. One of the principal coal-mining cities is called Newcastle after the famous English coal fields.

TASMANIA AND NEW ZEALAND

The Dutch, in their voyages to the Pacific, discovered new lands. Among these were Tasmania and New Zealand.

Discovery by the Dutch

One of the early Dutch captains who explored the southern seas was Abel Tasman. He discovered a large island south of Australia. The island, called Tasmania, is named for him. This fruit-raising, sheep-raising island is now a part of the Commonwealth of Australia.

Sailing on toward the east, Tasman came upon two large and mountainous islands about twelve hundred miles southeast of Australia. The people on these

islands were tall and strong. They looked dangerous to Tasman. When his ship anchored, they came out in large war canoes, each carrying a hundred men, and surrounded the ship. There was a fight, and Tasman was glad to sail away. These islands were a part of New Zealand.

Settlement by the English

After Australia was settled, the English gradually spread out over the islands where Tasman had found the warlike natives. The proud and intelligent natives were known as *Maoris*. They were of the same brown race as the people of the Hawaiian Islands. Often the tribes fought fiercely among themselves and ate the bodies of their enemies. There were conflicts between the whites and the Maoris, but in time peace was made.

The two principal islands of New Zealand are North Island and South Island. Look at them on the map, on page 294. They are a thousand miles long and have about the same area as the British Isles. The islands were settled by English missionaries, who converted the savage Maori tribes to Christianity. In time, these islands were brought under the rule of the British government. Today they are proud to be a part of the British family of nations. They

proved this during World War I, when New Zealanders with Australians fought shoulder to shoulder with British soldiers. A name was coined for their united forces—the Anzacs. In World War II, the Anzacs again proved themselves to be splendid soldiers.

Along the western side of the twin islands are mountains called the Southern Alps. Australia has Alps also, but these ranges of New Zealand are almost twice as high. Some are even snow-capped.

Some of the peaks of New Zealand's Alps are volcanoes that send out steam. North Island has geysers and hot springs like those in our Yellowstone Park. Occasionally there are mild earthquakes.

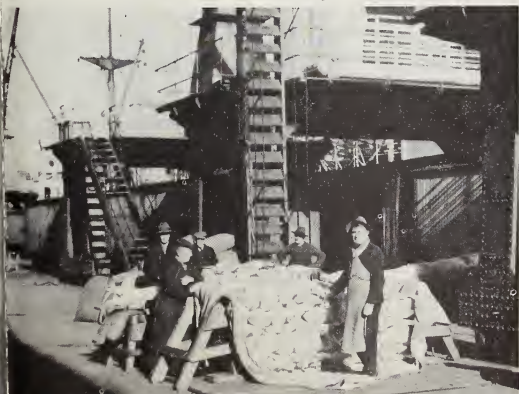
New Zealand, a prosperous country

New Zealand never feels the terror of drought, as does central Australia, because the westerly winds bring plenty of rain. The eastern parts of the islands are drier. Wheat is raised there, but most of the land is in pasture. The mild climate relieves the stock raiser from housing his animals in winter.

This is a fine land for sheep. New Zealand exports more mutton than does any other country, but Australia produces more wool. Dairying is very important.

New Zealand leads the world in the export of mutton. Here frozen meat is loaded on a ship.

James Sawders-Combine

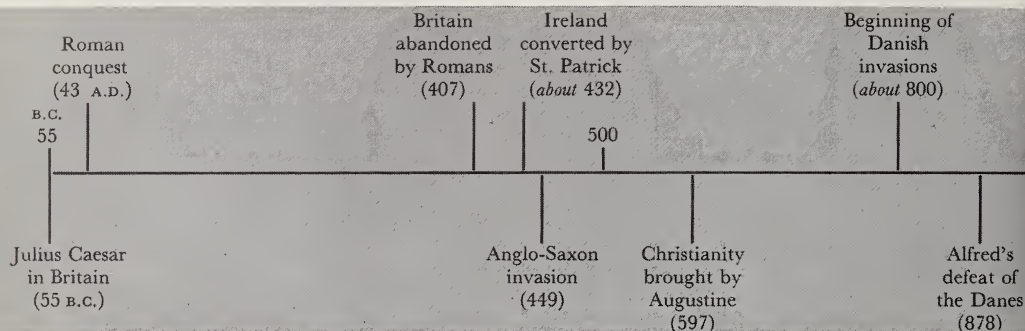


Dairy farming is a leading industry in New Zealand. Most dairy farms are family farms.

James Sawders-Combine



Time-Line: Great Britain (55 B.C.—1000 A.D.)



In proportion to its size, New Zealand has only one person for every thirty in Great Britain. The population is more evenly distributed than in Australia.

CO-OPERATION AMONG COMMONWEALTH NATIONS

Great Britain is often pictured as a lion. While the cubs were young, they were under their parent's protection. Now these cubs have grown into strong, young nations. They are self-governing dominions, each different and separate. The various dominions which make up the British family are known as the British Commonwealth of Nations. But they still wish to be considered members of the British family. Their association with Great Britain is entirely of their own choice. When the United Kingdom declared war against Germany in 1939, each of the dominions made its own declaration of war. Each dominion sends its own representatives to other nations. The dominions receive special privileges in their trade with Great Britain. After World War II, India, Pakistan, and Ceylon, which were part of the empire, became dominions.

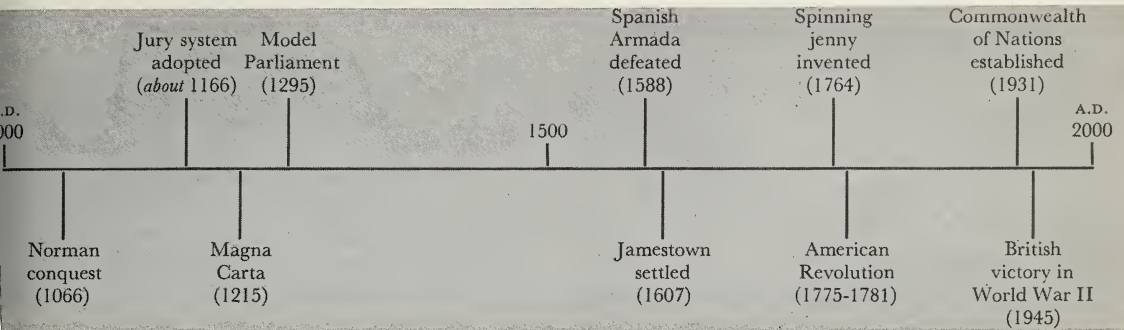
India had been the richest prize in the British Empire. But the British had been

having a hard time in India for a number of years before and during World War II. Finally, in 1947, Britain recognized two new nations as independent parts of the British Commonwealth—the Dominion of India and the Dominion of Pakistan. In 1950 India became a republic, as did Pakistan in 1956. Malaya is also an independent member of the Commonwealth.

The Union of South Africa, a self-governing nation which belongs to the British Commonwealth, is a prosperous land. But it has many problems arising from its mixed population. The people of European descent have not learned to live democratically with the Negroes and the Asiatic peoples.

The Commonwealth is much like a league of nations which the member countries have joined of their own free will. The queen is their honored representative, but the Parliament in London cannot tell the parliaments in Australia, in South Africa, or in Canada what they must do. The Commonwealth proves that mutual trust among nations is stronger than force. The peoples of the British Commonwealth are solving many of their problems. But Great Britain is not now able to play the part in world affairs that it formerly did.

Time-Line: Great Britain (1000 A.D.—2000 A.D.)



REVIEWING MAP SYMBOLS

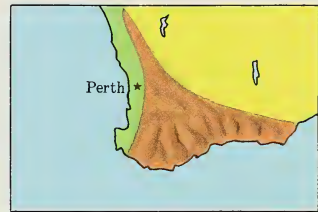
In this unit you have studied many maps. Each map tells its story by means of signs or symbols. The page number with each sign shows where to find a map on which the sign appears. Be sure you know what each sign means. How many of these signs can you find on the maps in this unit?



City, p. 145



National capital, p. 276



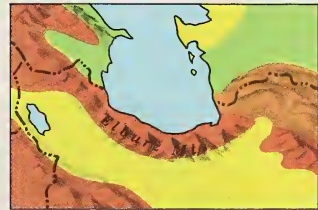
State or colony capital, p. 294



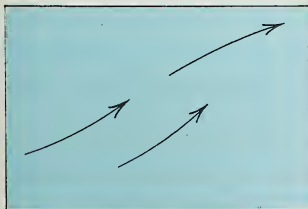
International boundary, p. 145



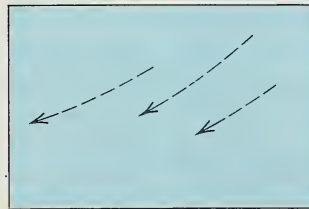
State boundary, p. 294



Mountains, p. 39



Warm and cold ocean currents, p. 145



Site of an ancient city, p. 39

TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words and Terms You Should Know

echidna	Sinn Fein	absentee landlord
peat	boomerang	commonwealth
wattle	kangaroo	protectorate
nugget	dominion	eucalyptus
Maori	peat bog	kookaburra
platypus		

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 16. After each number write the word or term from the list above that matches the definition.

1. A country that depends on a stronger nation for its defense
2. A valuable Australian tree
3. A member of the native tribes living in New Zealand when the English came
4. Spongy matter from decayed vegetable material used as fuel
5. The national flower of Australia
6. A weapon used by Australian natives
7. An Irish political party formed to work for a free and independent Ireland
8. An Australian animal with a long, tapering snout
9. A lump of gold
10. Soft ground from which peat is dug
11. A self-governing member of the British Commonwealth of Nations
12. A landowner who lives at a distance from his estates
13. A small, duckbilled animal of Australia that lays eggs
14. An Australian animal that carries its young in a pouch
15. A large Australian bird often called the "laughing jackass"
16. A word meaning "common well-being"

Can You Answer These?

1. How does the climate of the British Isles compare with that of North America at the same latitude?

2. How did each of the following help in the growth of democracy in Britain:
(a) trial by jury (b) the Magna Carta
(c) laws made by the people's representatives?
3. Why is Patrick a popular Irish name?
4. Why did many people leave Ireland for America between 1845 and 1900?
5. How was the British Empire formed?
6. What is the British Commonwealth of Nations?
7. What part of Australia has the most people?
8. What are Australia's chief industries?
9. What is the eucalyptus tree used for?
10. What minerals does Australia produce?

Learning from Maps

1. On the map of the British Isles, on page 276, locate these cities and tell why each is important: Glasgow, Dublin, Birmingham, London, and Liverpool.

Between what parallels of latitude do the British Isles lie? Between what meridians? About how much of these islands are lowlands?

How far is London from Edinburgh? (Use the scale of miles for this.)

2. Use the map of Australia and New Zealand on page 294 to answer these questions: (a) In what temperature region is the northern half of Australia? The southern half? (b) What imaginary line separates these two regions? (c) Where are most of the cities? (d) In what temperature region is New Zealand?

Making a Chart

Make a chart (like the one in Unit 3) to show the extent of the British Commonwealth of Nations and the British Empire. List each country, the continent where it is located, and whether it is part of the British Empire or the British Commonwealth of Nations.

Interesting Things to Do

1. Read a story or poem or learn a song about one of the nations in the British Commonwealth. Have a British program in which the stories, songs, and poems are given in class.
2. Act out the scene in which the English nobles forced King John to agree to the Magna Carta.
3. Compare an election in the United States with one in Great Britain. How are they alike? How different?
4. London and New York City have about the same number of people. List the advantages and disadvantages that each one has in its location. Put the list on the board and find out if your classmates agree with each item.

Linking the Old World and the New

1. In early times Great Britain was invaded and settled by several different groups of people. Reminders of these early people can still be found in place names ending in "caster," "cester," "chester," "ham," "ton," and "by." List some place names in the United States with the same endings.
2. Many of the liberties which we enjoy in America today have come down to us from Great Britain. Make a list of the democratic ideas of our government which we inherited from the British.

Things to Think About

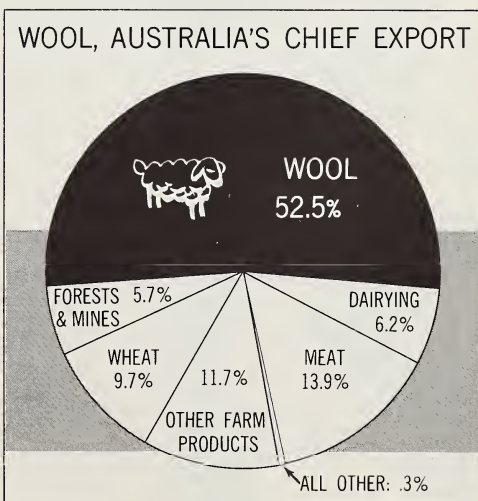
1. The United States fought Great Britain to gain its independence. Yet the countries have been friends and allies for many years. How do you explain this?
2. Great Britain and the United States are alike in many ways. One of these ways is in the form of government. We have a President, who is elected every four years. The British can call an election at any time and change their officers if the people vote to do so. Compare the

two systems. You may have to do some library reading to be able to discuss this question intelligently.

Using a Graph

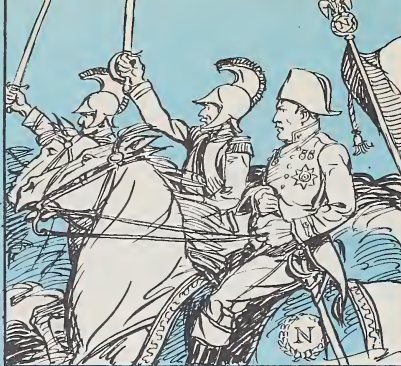
On this page is another kind of graph. This one, you will notice, is in the form of a circle. Because each section resembles a piece of pie, this kind of graph is sometimes called a pie graph. A pie graph is useful, for example, to show how a family spends its income: what per cent, or how much of its whole income (or 100 per cent), is used for food; for clothing. Study this graph and answer these questions:

1. What is Australia's most important export?
2. Is the export of wool more than half of Australia's total exports, or less?
3. Arrange Australia's exports in the order of importance. Next to each export, write the per cent you find on the graph. Find the sum of the exports.
4. Does the export of wheat and other farm products together equal about one fifth, one fourth, or one third of all the exports?





Henry Hudson in the *Half Moon* exploring the Hudson River—1609



Napoleon's defeat at the battle of Waterloo, in Belgium,—1815



Henry Stanley exploring the Congo River in Africa—1879



Bruges, a trading center—1400



Building dikes—about 1200



The Netherlands and Belgium

II.

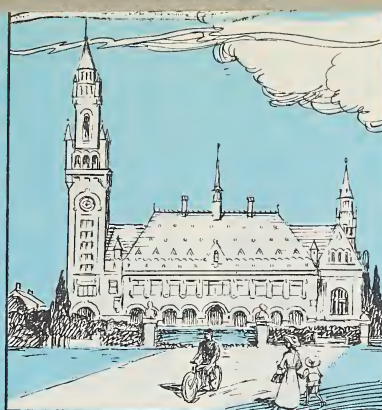
A traveler can eat his evening meal in London, take a train, then a night boat, and be on the other side of the North Sea for breakfast. For such a short trip he can visit either of the two small countries north of France. That is, he may land either in Belgium or the Netherlands.

Look at these countries on the map on page 313. You can see why they are often called the Low Countries. A small part of Belgium is below sea level and has to be protected by *dikes*, or banks of earth, to keep out the waters of the sea. Almost one fourth of Belgium's neighbor, the Netherlands, would be under water if there were no dikes. Another fourth lies at about the level of the waves.

Into the lowland, north of Belgium, flow two main rivers. One is the Rhine from Germany. The other is called the Meuse



the Netherlands East Indies
Dutch colonies—1798-1949



The opening of the Peace
Palace at the Hague—1913



Queen of Netherlands welcomed
home after World War II—1945

Belgium and the Netherlands

by the French and the Maas by the Dutch. In ancient times, as these streams came near the ocean, the ocean tides slowed the river current. The mud and clay in the rivers were dropped to the bottom and blocked the water courses. In this way large stretches of marshy land were formed. This part of Europe is called the Netherlands, meaning "lowlands." Many people call it Holland, which is the name of one of its provinces. The people call themselves Nederlanders but are better known as Dutch.

The map also shows a belt of level land, the Great Central Plain of Europe. This allows easy traveling from Russia across to the North Sea and south into France. Belgium and the Netherlands lie on this natural trade route. Important cities made both countries rich and powerful. At one

time the Dutch were the greatest seafaring people in Europe.

The two countries are of about the same size. Together Belgium and the Netherlands are about the same area as West Virginia. Small as they are, these two countries have played a large part in the history and trade of the world.

The story of the Low Countries will answer the following questions:

1. What is the early history of the Low Countries?
2. What is the modern country of the Netherlands like? Who are some of its famous men?
3. What is modern Belgium like?
4. How did Belgium acquire the Belgian Congo? What does the Congo produce?



Gendreau

The market square in Brussels is surrounded by many beautiful old buildings. During the Middle Ages merchants met here to talk and trade.



Standard Oil Co. (N.J.)

Many Dutch people live near canals like this one in Haarlem. Goods can be shipped cheaply by water all over the Netherlands.

THE EARLY HISTORY OF THE LOW COUNTRIES

As we have learned, the Low Countries lie on a natural trade route in Europe. When cities began to grow during the Middle Ages, many sprang up in the Low Countries. Ghent and Bruges in western Belgium, or Flanders as it was then called, became very important. The cities of what is now the Netherlands—Haarlem, Leiden, Amsterdam, and Rotterdam—became large and important also. But those of Flanders were greater. Find on the map the cities of Bruges and Ghent.

THE HISTORY OF THE DUTCH

We first hear of the Dutch in the long-ago days of the Roman Empire. Julius Caesar found the early tribesmen of the Netherlands living in the midst of swamps. They were patient and hardworking. Little by little they had built dikes, or banks of earth, around the low mounds of land

on which they lived. They cut channels to drain the marshes. In time, the country was able to support a large number of people, and rich cities grew up.

The Netherlands under Spain

The Spanish Emperor Charles V, who was born in Ghent in 1500, inherited the Low Countries from his father and Spain from his mother. From Madrid, his capital, he ruled over vast lands, all of which were Catholic in religion except the Low Countries. Because many of the people were Protestants, he visited harsh punishments upon them.

Philip II of Spain succeeded his father on the throne. Philip decided to root out the Protestant faith. He took away many of the rights enjoyed by the cities. He sent Spanish soldiers to keep order, and he collected heavy taxes from the people. You

will remember that he was the king who sent the Armada against England.

How the Netherlands gained freedom

Philip's harsh measures drove the Low Countries to rebel. War broke out. After many towns had been ruined and many people killed, the southern provinces made peace with Spain. The northern provinces, which today form the Netherlands, were protected by their low and swampy surface. Enemy ships could sail up to their shores, but their troops found it difficult to land there.

The leader of the Dutch was William, Prince of Orange. Because he kept his plans to himself, he came to be called "William the Silent." Under William the Dutch fought so desperately that in the end they gained their independence.

THE HISTORY OF BELGIUM

At one time Ghent was one of the largest cities of northern Europe. Bruges, with its valuable wool trade, was not very far behind. Ghent and Bruges were laced with canals and filled with busy and skillful workers. The cities of Flanders not only grew rich but were also able to defend themselves. The workers of Flanders could fight so well that they once wiped out a

whole army of French knights. From the field of combat were gathered bushels of golden spurs worn by the dead knights. Flanders had been saved by its workers.

The people of the southern provinces did not consider themselves Dutch. In their land once lived a tribe of Gauls, known as the Belgians. The people of these provinces called themselves by this name. The land of the Belgians became the property of one nation after another until Napoleon conquered it for France. But Napoleon was finally defeated by the British and the Germans at Waterloo, in Belgium.

After the battle of Waterloo (see page 245) the land of the Belgians was joined with the Netherlands as one country. However, the languages and customs of the two peoples were different and kept them from feeling united. Moreover, the Belgians thought the Dutch had too much power in the government.

In 1830 the Belgians rebelled. After a period of fighting, the larger nations of Europe made the Dutch agree that Belgium should be a separate country. They also guaranteed that in case of war among Belgium's neighbors, troops were not to be sent over Belgian land. We shall learn later what happened to the little nation during the two great world wars.

THE NETHERLANDS AS A NATION

After the Dutch gained freedom in 1648, they became a nation of explorers and traders. They established colonies in different parts of the world. They built a navy to protect their colonies and their trade.

An English captain, Henry Hudson, was sent out by the Dutch to explore North America. The river he explored is known today as the Hudson River. Along this

river grew up the colony of New Netherland, which the Dutch held until it became the English colony of New York. A little later William of Orange, who was the grandson of the King of England, inherited the English throne.

The Dutch have become one of the great peoples of the world. We shall study their country with great interest.



Netherlands Government Travel Office

In a few places in the Netherlands, people still wear the old-fashioned Dutch costumes. This starched cap is made of white lace.

THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE NETHERLANDS

The Netherlands is a small kingdom about the size of Massachusetts and Connecticut together. Look at the map on page 313, and note how much is lowland.

The importance of dikes

Half of the area of the country has been drained and made into firm ground. The drained lowlands are called *polders*. If the sea were not kept out of the polders by dikes, the waves would roll over land that now supports fine farms and prosperous towns.

The sea has been a foe as well as a friend to the Dutch. In one great storm the waters

of the North Sea burst through the sand hills on the coast. When the storm ended, there lay a bay covering one seventh of the Netherlands. The Dutch called this body of water the *Zuider Zee*, or the "Southern Sea," because it is south of the North Sea.

The Dutch have built more than a thousand miles of dikes. The largest of these is a hundred feet wide. Guards watch them day and night to discover leaks and plug them up. The dikes are so broad and straight that roads and even railroads are built over them.

The importance of windmills

While the dikes keep the sea from overflowing the land in front, water is always coming in at the back. How is this water removed? Across the southwestern Netherlands little ditches stretch in straight lines. The water collects in these ditches. Then it is pumped into higher and larger canals. Finally, it is pumped out into the ocean.

The tulip country of the Netherlands, with its windmills and bright flowers, is one of the most beautiful farming regions in the world.

Netherlands National Tourist Office



The pumping is done by windmills. The Dutch, both clever and thrifty, have been able to make the wind serve them. Each windmill has four arms to which vanes are attached. The vanes turned by the strong winds from the sea furnish power which pumps the water out of the fields. Windmills also grind grain, cacao and coffee beans, and chalk. But the windmills are being gradually replaced. Today electricity, steam, and gasoline provide power for most of the pumping.

The draining of the Zuider Zee

For hundreds of years the Dutch have been adding land to their country. They needed land because the Netherlands have become more thickly settled. They decided to drain most of the Zuider Zee. By building a dam eighteen miles long, they closed off this body of water from the ocean. Then they drained two thirds of the Zuider Zee.

Thus hundreds of thousands of acres were reclaimed from the water and added to the land of the nation. Part of the Zuider Zee, however, was allowed to remain. This helped the fishermen who had used the bay for many years to remain in business. Probably some day the rest of the lake will also be turned into rich farm land.

When the Germans invaded the Netherlands in 1940, the Dutch blew up some of the dikes to try to stop the marching troops. Later the Allies dropped bombs on the German forces in the Netherlands and damaged other dikes. Later in the war, when the Germans were forced to retreat, they blew up more of the dikes.

As the dikes broke, the water poured over the land and caused great loss to crops, cattle, and homes. When the war was over, the patient Dutch set to work



Three Lions

This dike separates the waters of the North Sea and the Zuider Zee. Like many dikes it has a highway along the top. Dikes are usually the highest points in the Dutch countryside.

rebuilding their dikes. After this the salt had to be removed from the soil so that crops could be raised again.

THE OCCUPATIONS OF THE DUTCH

The Dutch have learned valuable lessons from their history and their land. They have learned to work together, to be thrifty and industrious.

How the Dutch use canals

With so much lowland and water, the Dutch have made many canals upon which to move their goods easily and cheaply. Barges carry heavy loads of freight to most parts of the land. There are also ship canals, one of which is wide enough to be used by the largest ship afloat. Many of the towns and cities are on canals. The Dutch are used to having water in front of their doors. Canals are a

cheap means of transportation. Because freight is carried by barges on the canals, the railroads in the Netherlands are used chiefly by passengers.

Dairying in the Netherlands

Although the Dutch raise a great deal of grain, the moist pasture lands are especially good for dairy cattle. A visitor to the Netherlands from dry Spain, where dairy cattle are scarce, remarked, "You put butter on everything." This explains in part why Dutch food is so tasty. The town of Edam is famous for its round red or yellow cheeses. The Dutch are fond of cheese for breakfast. They eat it with gingerbread or honey cakes and coffee.

Flower-growing in the Netherlands

On the western border of the country, the sand of the shore mixes with the moist clay of the fields. Flowers find a favorite soil. Here gardeners raise tulip, narcissus, and hyacinth bulbs, which can easily be shipped to flower growers in other lands. The Dutch sell the seeds of the fine vegetables they produce. No other country

Cheese carriers at the market of Alkmaar wear special costumes. They carry the round cheeses between buyers and sellers on wooden sleighs.

Netherlands Information Bureau

has done so much business in the bulb and seed trade. When the Germans conquered the Netherlands in 1940, flower lovers in America felt the lack of seeds and bulbs. The Dutch could not export bulbs and seeds during the war.

The famous Delft pottery

The soil of the Netherlands has much clay. The thrifty Dutch, like the dwellers in Mesopotamia, put the clay to work. They build their houses of brick. They also make beautiful pottery. The city of Delft became famous for its blue-and-white dishes, plates, vases, tiles, and statuettes. The designs were copied from the Chinese, with whom the Dutch once did much trading. Have you seen any Delft pottery? The Dutch also make tiles in bright colors and many designs. They use them to decorate fireplaces, floors, walls, and gardens.

Diamond cutting in the Netherlands

The Dutch are skillful diamond cutters. The diamond that we think of as a flashing precious stone is really a dull sort of pebble when first found. Diamonds have to be cut

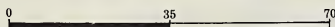
These girls, wearing old Dutch costumes, drink tea at an inn. Some of the beautiful pottery in the photograph was made in Delft.

Gendreau



BELGIUM, LUXEMBOURG, and the NETHERLANDS

One inch stands for 35 miles



Belgium and the Netherlands are part of the broad plain which extends across the north central part of Europe from Russia to the British Isles. What important rivers flow through the Low Countries? How has their location made both Amsterdam and Rotterdam important ports today?



Metropolitan Museum of Art

Hals was a master painter of good-humored or happy faces as the "Laughing Cavalier" shows.

in a special way and polished in order to sparkle.

About the time Columbus discovered America the gem polishers of Bruges formed a guild. When Bruges lost its importance, Antwerp, in Belgium, and Amsterdam, in the Netherlands, became the centers of gem cutting and polishing. Amsterdam is still a diamond-cutting center.

IMPORTANT DUTCH INVENTIONS

Because the Dutch were so clever at grinding precious stones, they became expert in making glass lenses such as are used in spectacles and eyeglasses. These lenses magnified, that is, made larger to the eye, the things seen through them.

The telescope and the microscope

One Netherlander improved the *telescope*, an instrument which magnifies objects seen at a distance. He made a telescope three hundred feet long. Through

this great tube he was able to find new bodies in the heavens.

Another Netherlander made a special lens to assist the eye in seeing small objects which could not be seen without such aid. A magnifying glass of this kind is called a *microscope*. By means of the microscope, the red corpuscles of the blood which carry life-giving oxygen to all parts of our bodies were discovered. The conquest of many diseases has been made possible by the use of the microscope in tracking down the organisms which cause them. What a wonderful new world the microscope opened to us in the field of science and medicine!

The Leyden jar

The Dutch invented the *Leyden jar*. The Leyden jar is a glass jar used to store electricity. It is partly lined with tin foil, which acts as a carrier of electricity. When Benjamin Franklin made electrical experiments, he used a Leyden jar. It was named for the city of Leyden, or Leiden, where it was invented. From the Leyden jar was developed the modern electric battery.

The yacht

In the year 1660 King Charles II of England received a gift from the Netherlands. It was a trim little sailing vessel to be used for pleasure cruising. The Dutch called it a *yacht*. Since that time yacht racing has become a favorite sport of wealthy men, and yachts have been used for pleasure trips all over the world.

ART IN THE NETHERLANDS

Soon after the Dutch became independent a group of Dutch painters became world famous. The artists of Belgium had followed the example of Italian painters, but the Dutch used their own ideas.

This picture was painted by Jan Vermeer. It is called "A Girl Interrupted at Her Music." Like many Dutch paintings it shows a plainly furnished room with the light from the window streaming across the people in the picture.



The Frick Collection

What Dutch art is like

Dutch artists used as subjects for their paintings the things of daily life around them. They showed persons going about their everyday tasks, common people at work and at play. They liked to paint inside views of the tidy, well-furnished rooms of Dutch homes. They also painted the flat Dutch fields, the canals, and the level roads bordered by trees.

The Dutch artists showed their democratic feelings by painting everyday scenes and all kinds of people. Many of them painted what they saw as carefully as if they were looking through a microscope. They put scenes on canvas exactly as they saw them. We call such paintings "real-

istic" because they show people and things as they really are.

Two famous painters

Among Dutch painters Rembrandt is given first place. A rich man offered to send the young Rembrandt to study in Italy. Rembrandt said, "I see no reason why a good painter cannot learn at home everything he needs to know."

Rembrandt painted fine pictures. But like many other artists he was a poor businessman. Also he failed to please the people of his day because he painted in a new style. He died poor. Now everyone sees his greatness. In the museum at Amsterdam is his fine picture, "The Night Watch."

This is Rembrandt's famous painting, often called "The Night Watch." Notice how the artist's use of light and shadow gives a feeling of drama and mystery. Many additional details in the painting were discovered recently when the picture was taken down and cleaned.

Rijksmuseum, Amsterdam





James Sawders-Combine

A sturdy dog pulls the cart from which this farmer's wife sells her vegetables. Dog carts like this are frequently seen in Dutch cities.

Another fine Dutch painter was Frans Hals. Like Rembrandt, his life ended in poverty, since he cared more about painting well than he did for money. "The men and women in Hals's paintings are so life-like that they seem ready to step out of their frames," said one art expert. Hals's "Laughing Cavalier" and his "Merry Lute Player" are two of his best paintings. Copies of these pictures are often seen.

THREE FAMOUS DUTCH CITIES

We take a plane to Rotterdam. Cornelis Van Helst, a student from the University of Leiden, will point out to us the interesting places to see.

Below us lie the canals, the flat green meadows with their many black-and-white cows, and the dikes. Windmills dot the landscape. Off to the west rolls the gray North Sea.

People are driving light carts and wagons along the roads on top of the dikes. A man wearing stout, clumsy wooden

shoes is walking by the side of a small cart filled with shining brass milk cans. A big, strong dog is pulling the cart. His master helps by pulling a rope tied to the cart.

On the tops of some of the houses stand long-legged awkward birds. They are storks. "We like to see a stork make its nest on a house," Cornelis observes. "It is a sign of good luck. In the Netherlands storks are protected by law. We think they bring us luck because they eat frogs and worms that might burrow into the dikes and let the water in on the fields."

Rotterdam, a great trading city

Soon we come to the city of Rotterdam, just a little larger than Houston, Texas. "This was once our greatest trading city," remarks Cornelis. "Half of our imports and exports passed through its docks. But in World War II the Germans bombed Rotterdam and killed thousands of people."

Like Venice, Rotterdam is built on piles. Thousands of big timbers support each

A sightseeing boat passes along a canal in Amsterdam. Many houses are built at the water's edge so that they can be entered from a boat.

Netherlands National Tourist Office





Ewing Galloway

The Peace Palace still stands in the Hague. Today the International Court of Justice meets there for the purpose of settling any disputes which may arise between nations of the world.

important building and form a solid foundation in the marshy soil. The ending of the word *Rotterdam* shows that this city grew up on a canal. Canals connect it with the Rhine River and the North Sea. Thus barges bring goods from Germany and Switzerland to be exported to other countries by ocean vessels. Incoming ocean ships, in turn, unload their cargoes into the barges to be carried into other countries of Europe.

Rotterdam profits from the fact that traffic passes through it in two directions. Its position has helped it regain the importance it lost during the war.

Amsterdam, capital of the Netherlands

Amsterdam, northeast of Rotterdam, delights travelers by its quaint old houses. Like Rotterdam, Amsterdam too is built on piles. It is the largest Dutch city, a little larger than Boston.

Amsterdam is a great business and manufacturing city. It is also a large trading center. Tropical products from the Far East are brought to Amsterdam. Coffee, quinine, rubber, tin, and tobacco, as well as many other valuable goods, are unloaded at the docks. A big ship canal allows ocean-going vessels to come into the heart of the city. Did you know that the city of New York was once New Amsterdam?

The Hague, home of the Peace Palace

Now we turn southward along the coast until we come to a fine city which the Dutch call s'Gravenhage. English-speaking people call it the Hague.

Cornelis is delighted to show us the Hague. "This is like your capital city, Washington," he exclaims, "but not quite as large.

"Of course," Cornelis continues, "Amsterdam is really our capital, but the Hague is so pleasant a city that our queen lives here and our lawmakers meet here. Look at these broad, shady streets and fine houses! A great many well-to-do people live here. They do not like the noise and crowds of Amsterdam. But I want to show you the most interesting sight in the Hague."

Cornelis leads us to a huge building. "This," he says, "is the Palace of Peace. It was built in 1913 with the money of one of your countrymen, Andrew Carnegie. Long before this palace was erected, the Hague had been a favorite meeting place for representatives of European nations. Here they gathered to discuss their problems. Many agreements between nations were signed here. With the palace as a permanent meeting place for the settlement of disputes, the Hague became a kind of world capital.

"In 1914 Europe was suddenly plunged into war. Some European rulers were so eager for war that they refused to discuss their problems. How different the history

of the world might have been if they had met here to talk over their affairs!"

As we leave, we think that the Hague is a wonderful spot for a Palace of Peace.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

dike	polder	microscope
yacht	telescope	Leyden jar

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 6. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A glass jar used to store electricity
2. A pleasure boat used for cruising or racing
3. An instrument that makes objects at a distance seem larger and nearer
4. Low land that has been drained and made into firm ground
5. A bank of earth built up to keep out water
6. An instrument that makes it possible to see objects too small to be seen by the eyes alone

Can You Answer These?

1. Why are Belgium and the Netherlands called the Low Countries?
2. How did the Netherlands and Belgium become separate nations?
3. Name some of the cities that sprang up in the Low Countries during the Middle Ages. Why did so many cities grow up during that period?
4. Why is the battle of Waterloo important in history?
5. What is the Zuider Zee? How was it formed? What does the name mean?
6. Why did the Dutch build windmills? Why are the windmills now being replaced? What now takes the place of the windmills in the Netherlands?
7. How do the Netherlands use tiles?

8. How have the Netherlands added land to their country?
9. How were many dikes damaged or ruined in World War II? What was the result?
10. What lessons have the Dutch learned from their land and their history?

Who's Who

The numbered sentences below describe some of the people in this unit. Write the correct name next to each number.

Rembrandt	Henry Hudson
William of Orange	Napoleon
Andrew Carnegie	Charles V

1. He inherited the throne of the Low Countries from his father and the Spanish throne from his mother.
2. He led the Dutch to freedom from Spain; he was nicknamed "the Silent."
3. His army was defeated at Waterloo.
4. He was an English sea captain who explored North America for the Dutch. A bay and a river are named for him.
5. He was the most famous Dutch painter.
6. He was an American who gave a large sum of money to build the Palace of Peace in the Hague.

Can You Give the Reason?

1. It has been said that the sea has been a foe as well as a friend to the Dutch. Can you prove this statement?
2. Why is it cheaper to ship goods by water than by land?
3. In what way did the Hague become a kind of world capital?
4. How have the telescope and the microscope benefited mankind?

BELGIUM AS A NATION

Belgium is a little smaller than the Netherlands. Like the Netherlands it is also a kingdom.

GEOGRAPHY OF BELGIUM

Belgium is small, but it has a great many people. There are nearly fifteen times as many people to the square mile in Belgium as in the United States. In order to prosper under such crowded conditions, the Belgians have used great skill in making the land work for them. Fortunately, Belgium has an *oceanic climate*. An oceanic climate provides cool summers, mild winters, and plenty of moisture.

A line drawn east and west across Belgium, with the line passing through Brussels, would divide the country into two fairly equal parts. In these two parts the people speak different languages. Those in the north are the people of Flanders, whose speech is Flemish. Flemish is a language somewhat like Dutch. Those in the south are the Walloons. The Walloons speak French. The difference between the two languages may be noted in the names of some of the cities. For example, *Bruges* and *Gand* are the French names for the cities which the Flemish call *Brugge* and

Ghent. Antwerp, in northern Belgium, is a Flemish city. In Brussels, just south of the line, the people speak French.

OCCUPATIONS OF THE BELGIANS

The Belgians are good farmers. Three fourths of their land is taken up by crops and pastures, but the farms are small.

Farming in Belgium

A favorite crop in Belgium is potatoes. As the Irish people also discovered, potatoes furnish a large amount of food for every acre planted. Another crop is sugar beets. Beets need much work in the fields because the young plants must be weeded by hand. The big roots, heavy with sweet juice, are shipped to sugar factories near by.

On the sandy soil around Ghent are fields where flowers and vegetables are grown for sale to other countries. Near these are large greenhouses where flowers, vegetables, and fruits are grown under glass. These bring high prices in winter.

The southern part of Belgium produces flax. This slender blue-flowered plant needs the damp, moist weather brought by the ocean winds. In slow-flowing streams

Ewing Galloway

This beautiful scene is the busy waterfront of Antwerp on the Scheldt River. Early in modern times Antwerp became the richest and the most splendid city in the world. The great stone castle in the background is almost a thousand years old.





Three Lions

In a Belgian village, workers line up fibers of flax to sort them for size and quality. Long fibers are used to make fine linen. Coarse ones are made into cord and twine.

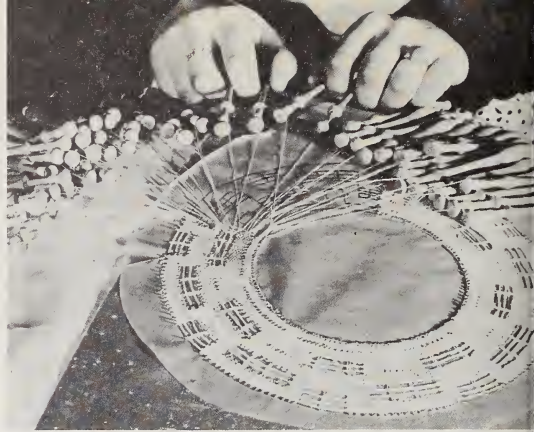
the bundles of flax stalks are “retted,” or allowed to rot, until only the fine inside fibers remain. It is these fibers from which linen cloth is woven. Belgium sells its excellent flax at a high price. Most of it goes to Ireland, where it is made into fine linen and lace. It buys the cheaper and coarser Russian flax for its own use.

The Belgians work hard to make each acre of land do its utmost in producing crops. This is called *intensive farming*. Even with the great amounts of food they raise by intensive farming, the Belgians cannot produce enough for themselves.

Another source of food is rabbits. City and country people alike keep rabbits. These rabbits, known as Belgian hares, are raised in cages or pens and have several families a year. The Belgians are fond of rabbit meat. It is good and also cheap.

Manufacturing in Belgium

When countries are thickly populated, farming is not enough to give the people a good living. There must be manufacturing also to give them work. This is the case in Belgium.



Ewing Galloway

Making lace is very delicate work. Each thread is fastened to a separate bobbin and wound around pins stuck into the pattern. Belgium has long been famous for its beautiful lace.

Belgium has coal along its French border. At one time the Belgians mined much iron ore. This ore is now almost used up. But there are other fields of iron ore around Liège. Liège, which in the Middle Ages was famous for making weapons and armor, still makes metal goods. Today Liège produces rifles and cannon, locomotives and rails, and tools and machines. It is often called “the Birmingham of the Low Countries.” Can you tell why?

The weavers of Flanders have been famous for nearly a thousand years. When William the Conqueror invaded England, Bruges was the greatest wool market in Europe. Ghent, supported by its weaving, was five times as large as London. It was the weavers from Flanders who taught the English how to make excellent cloth. Ghent still weaves much woolen cloth, and so much cotton goods that it is called “the Manchester of the Low Countries.”

THE CITIES OF BELGIUM

Fifty miles up the Scheldt River from the sea lies the old city of Antwerp. See the map on page 313.

What Antwerp is like

To reach Antwerp, near the mouth of the Scheldt River, vessels sail along the coast of the Netherlands. This part of Belgium has dikes, windmills, houses built below sea level, cattle, and the kind of landscape that we think of as being Dutch. After Bruges lost its trade by the filling up of its main waterway, Antwerp became the richest city in Europe. The wars against Spain ruined it. Afterward Antwerp revived to some extent, but the Dutch closed the Scheldt River to Belgian trade about 1650. Thus the city received another hard blow.

Nearly one hundred fifty years later Napoleon saw the importance of Antwerp as a port facing his greatest enemy, England. Under Napoleon's orders Antwerp took on new life. Great docks were built. The Scheldt River made a fine waterway. A canal through the Netherlands allowed barges to go from Antwerp into Germany.

KING CHARLES I OF ENGLAND

Besides the king and royal family, Van Dyck painted many of the well-known lords and ladies of the English court. He liked to paint jewels and gleaming satins and brocades.

Ewing Galloway



Antwerp became a great business center in modern times. It was greatly damaged during the war. Since that time much of it has been rebuilt. Today Antwerp is Belgium's largest city.

Brussels, the capital of Belgium

Brussels, the capital of Belgium, is about the size of Tulsa, Oklahoma. It has many wide streets and parks. Around a quiet square in the heart of the city stand a number of stately old guild houses (see page 308). They show us how important were those guilds of past days and how powerful they made a city.

ART AND MUSIC IN BELGIUM

Like the Netherlands, Belgium has had famous painters. In music we also owe something to Belgium.

Two great artists of Belgium

In the art museums of Belgium are many splendid pictures by two Flemish painters, Peter Paul Rubens and Anthony Van Dyck. These men lived in Antwerp when it was one of the world's greatest cities.

Rubens studied in Italy and came back to paint rich costumes, great buildings, and people in action. He knew how to get beautiful effects in color. With a group of capable pupils, he painted more than twenty-two hundred pictures. Rubens had other talents. He could speak several languages. His advice in government affairs was so good that he was sent to England to help make a peace treaty. He was the foremost citizen of Antwerp in his time.

Anthony Van Dyck studied under Rubens, but his style was quite different. Rubens was fiery and loved bright colors. Van Dyck was quiet and used cool tones.

Van Dyck became so famous that King Charles I of England invited him to London to act as court painter. In London, Van Dyck painted elegant and charming portraits of the royal family. So many men in his paintings wore small pointed beards that we now call them "Vandykes."

Belgium, the home of the carillon

Belgium developed the *carillon*. A carillon is a musical instrument made up of a set of bells, large and small. The bells are struck by hammers operated from a keyboard. To play a carillon well requires strength, skill, and musical ability. The beautiful music of a carillon, floating down from its high tower, makes the Belgians proud of developing this instrument.

In Belgium, the Netherlands, and also France, there are hundreds of carillons. The United States also has carillons. One of the most famous, called the Singing Tower, is in Florida. Do you know where any other carillons are located?

BELGIUM IN TWO WORLD WARS

Belgium became an independent nation in 1830. It has no large army or navy, but

the great nations of Europe respected its rights for nearly one hundred years.

World War I

In 1914 World War I began. The German troops took the easiest path to attack France, and this was across Belgium. Under their brave King Albert, the Belgians resisted stoutly. They held back the Germans long enough to give the French and their allies, the British, some time to prepare an attack. During the four years of war that followed, the Germans held almost all of Belgium.

World War II

In World War II, which began in 1939, Belgium was again overrun by the Germans. The Belgian troops were quickly defeated, but the people carried on an *underground*, or secret, *resistance*. Patriotic newspapers, secretly printed and circulated, kept hope and spirit alive in the hearts of the people. Through suffering and poverty, the Belgians steadily looked for the day when Germany should be again overthrown. That day arrived with Germany's surrender in May, 1945.

Belgian Government Information Center



These natives of the Belgian Congo are building their home of leaves from palm trees growing nearby. A finished home stands in the background. Most native homes are built of palm leaves in this way.

Modern types of machinery are used in tin mining in the Katanga district of the Belgian Congo. This district is an important source of the world's tin.



Official Belgian Tourist Bureau

BELGIUM'S AFRICAN COLONIES

In the year 1865 Leopold II came to the throne of Belgium. Because King Leopold saw that the Netherlands had profited greatly from its colonies, he thought that Belgium should have colonies also. Leopold decided that Africa offered the best chance. He formed a company to send explorers to unknown parts of Africa.

THE CONGO RIVER AREA

About this time Henry Stanley, an explorer from the United States, set out on a voyage from Central Africa down a great river whose course was unknown. After traveling fifteen hundred miles, during which he crossed the equator twice, Stanley reached the Atlantic. By his voyage he proved that this river was the Congo. He had followed it through lands inhabited by warlike tribes, through thick forests and over foaming rapids. For many years white men had had trading posts at the Congo's mouth, but no one before had ever traced its course.

The Congo Free State

Stanley won great fame by this deed. King Leopold employed him to organize a company to develop the resources of that

part of Africa. Stanley and his assistants spent five years in doing this. He made agreements with hundreds of chiefs, who gave Europeans the right to trade and settle there. European nations held a conference and created the Congo Free State out of the company's lands. The Congo Free State was placed under Leopold's rule. The new state was about eighty times as large as Belgium!

Leopold offered the Congo Free State to Belgium. But the Belgians did not wish to assume the high taxes necessary to develop that wild region. The king kept the tract as a royal possession and sold the right to trade, principally in rubber, ivory, and palm oil, to various companies. Officers of these companies sometimes treated the natives cruelly. On the other hand, the wretched slave trade was stopped, railroads were built, and steamboats were operated on the rivers.

The Belgian Congo

Belgium took over the Congo Free State later, and it was known as the Belgian Congo. Under the Belgian government the natives have had better treatment than under the companies.

The Ruanda district

In addition to the Belgian Congo, Belgium controls the Ruanda district. This area, bordering the Belgian Congo on the east, is half the size of Indiana. It belonged to Germany before World War I and was given to Belgium when Germany's African lands were taken away by the Allies. Ruanda is rich in rubber.

THE BELGIAN COLONIES TODAY

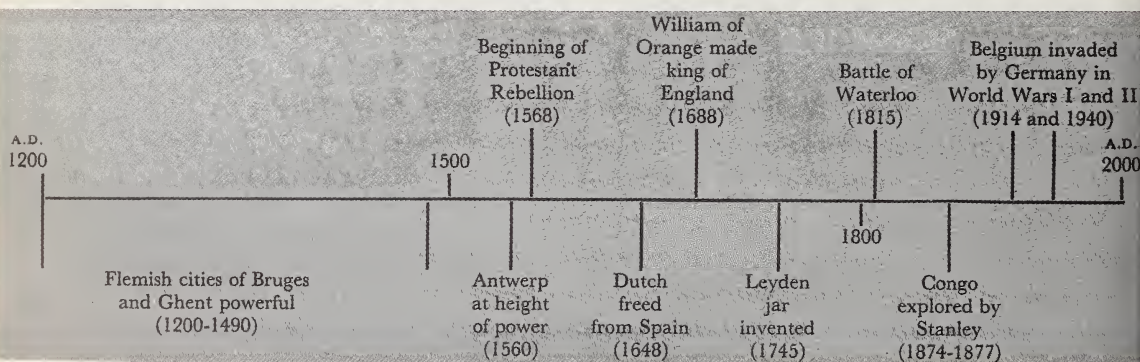
The Congo and Ruanda regions now have a health program to fight diseases, such as sleeping sickness and malaria. These are common in this hot and unhealthy climate. The government maintains more than one hundred hospitals. Only a few schools are operated by the government, but many missionaries teach

the natives. Today Leopoldville, the capital of the Belgian Congo, is a clean, prosperous city.

The Belgians have learned what riches their colony holds. Ivory is no longer an important product, for so many elephants have been killed that they now need to be protected. Rubber, palm oil, and mahogany are produced in large quantities.

The southeastern part of the Congo is a higher and drier region. Here are the tin and copper mines in the district of Katanga. The copper mines produce each year about half as much of the metal as the United States produces. Near by is a great diamond-mining region. Uranium, the mineral from which atomic bombs are made, is also found in the Belgian Congo. Belgium is proud of its African colonies.

Time-Line: Belgium and the Netherlands (1200 A.D.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Can You Answer These?

1. In what way is the government of Belgium like that of the Netherlands?
2. What languages are spoken in Belgium?
3. How do the Belgians use flax?
4. What riches does the Belgian Congo produce?
5. How did Napoleon help Antwerp regain its importance?
6. What makes the Hague a desirable place in which to live?
7. How did Belgium gain independence?
8. Why did the Germans invade Belgium in 1914? Did the Belgians resist?
9. Why is Ghent called the "Manchester of the Low Countries"?
10. How does the location of Rotterdam help make it a great trading city?

Words and Terms You Should Know

carillon	intensive farming
oceanic climate	underground resistance

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 4. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A climate with cool summers, mild winters, and plenty of moisture
2. A musical instrument composed of bells
3. A method of farming by which each acre is made to produce a large crop
4. Secret opposition against an invader by an organized group of people who want freedom

Learning from Maps

Notice the surface and the coastline of the Netherlands and Belgium on the map on page 313. Use it to answer the questions.

1. Why are these countries called the Low Countries?
2. Where in Belgium is shipping most important? Where in the Netherlands is shipping most important?
3. Where in Belgium would you expect to find the largest number of people engaged in farming?

Using the Time-Line

With the help of the time-line for this unit and the one on pages 302-303, answer these questions:

1. How many years after the defeat of the Spanish Armada did the Dutch gain their freedom from Spain?
2. How long after the defeat of the Spanish Armada did William of Orange become King of England?
3. Belgium was invaded twice by the Germans in the twentieth century. How long was it from the first invasion to the second?

4. How many years is it now since Napoleon was defeated at Waterloo?

Can You Fill the Blanks?

Write the word or words that will make each sentence true. You may have to look in your book to find some of the answers.

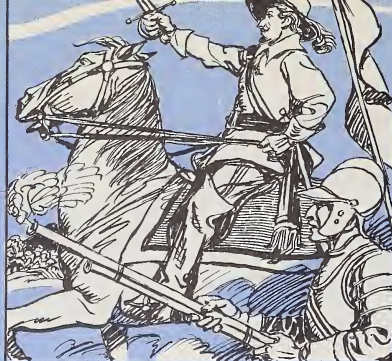
1. The Netherlands have added to their land by draining part of the _____.
2. A Belgian painter who was a favorite of the king of England was _____.
3. The Dutch have built more than _____ miles of dikes.
4. The king who established the Congo Free State was _____.
5. The largest dike is about _____ feet wide.
6. The capital of the Netherlands is _____.
7. Antwerp is a Flemish city on the _____.
8. A city noted for its cheese is _____.
9. In Africa Belgium owns a large area called the _____.
10. A Dutch city noted for its beautiful pottery is _____.

Interesting Things to Do

1. If you were a farmer, would you rather live in Belgium or the Netherlands? Give reasons for your choice and tell what crops you might raise.
2. Ask some florist in your neighborhood if he has ever imported flower bulbs from Belgium or from the Netherlands. If so, find out why and tell your class.
3. With some of your classmates, form a committee to paint designs of tiles for a frieze for your classroom. The designs should represent features of Dutch life. Tulips, people with wooden shoes, dairy cattle, windmills, canal boats, bridges, and ships furnish good subjects.
4. Arrange a display of prints of pictures by Dutch artists. Be sure to include: Rembrandt, Vermeer, Van Gogh, Hals.



Norway, Sweden, and Denmark united under Margaret — 1397



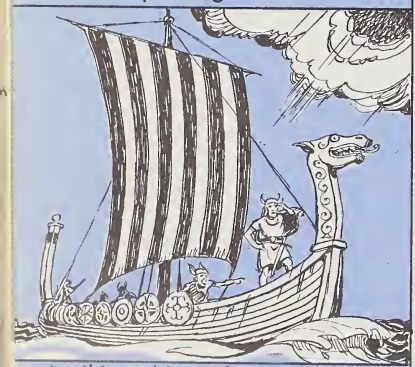
The Swedish king leading his army to victory—1632



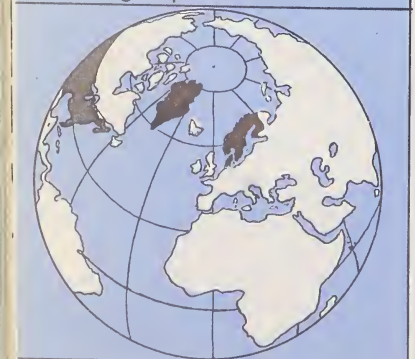
Nobel, inventor of dynamite, viewing a trial explosion—1864



Tolls at Copenhagen—about 1200



A viking ship—about 1000 A.D.



Scandinavia and Finland

12.

We have learned about the “dragon ships,” loaded with fierce Northmen that invaded the coasts of Great Britain and France. The people who suffered these attacks had little idea of the lands from which these blond pirates came.

On the map on page 330 find a small peninsula with many islands east of it. This is Denmark, the land of the Danes. It is a flat region between the North Sea and the Baltic Sea.

North of Denmark lies a great peninsula almost cut off by water from the rest of Europe. Through it, like a huge backbone, stretch high mountains. On the Atlantic side of this peninsula lies Norway. On the other side is Sweden.

Norway has a coastline which is very, very jagged. Water, in the form of rushing streams or glaciers, has cut deep, narrow valleys between high banks on the coast



Amundsen raising the flag of Norway at South Pole—1911



German troops parachuting into Norway in World War II—1940



Norway's king welcomed home at the end of World War II—1945

Scandinavia and Finland

line. The sea has entered these inlets, or *fjords*, flowing inland at some places for a distance of a hundred miles. A wild and rugged land is Norway.

As the map shows, Sweden is larger than Norway and extends farther south. Like California, it extends north and south. Sweden has a little more farming land than Norway. But half the country is covered with forests, and there are thousands of lakes. Snow lies on the ground, even in southern Sweden, for about four months of the year.

Norway and Sweden together form the Scandinavian Peninsula, but Denmark is included with them as a Scandinavian country. The name "Scandinavia" came from the Romans, who talked of an island in the Baltic Sea called Scandia. The supposed island was southern Sweden, which the Swedes still call Scandia.

The three Scandinavian countries are kingdoms. Their languages are much alike. These tall, fair, blue-eyed Scandinavians are serious, hardworking, and intelligent. From the Scandinavian countries we can learn much about what man can do to make a good living in a poor region.

Lying across the Gulf of Bothnia to the east is Finland. Finland's history was, for many years, closely united with that of its Scandinavian neighbors. Today Finland is a republic.

This unit on Scandinavia and Finland will answer these questions:

1. What is Scandinavia's early history?
2. How did Denmark become prosperous?
What are Denmark's colonies like?
3. What is life like in Norway?
4. What is the land of Sweden like?
5. How did Finland become a nation?

EARLY HISTORY OF THE SCANDINAVIAN LANDS

In early times, as we know, warriors of Scandinavia brought terror to England and to France. By the year 1000 they had become Christians and had settled down into three national communities: Denmark, Norway, and Sweden.

UNION OF SCANDINAVIA

In 1397 the three countries united under Margaret, queen of Denmark, forming a kingdom which was larger than any other in Europe at the time. Queen Margaret was an able ruler, but her successors oppressed the people.

Sweden, once a great power

Finally, the Swedes revolted against the cruel Danish king and set up an independent kingdom. About one hundred years later Gustavus Adolphus became king of Sweden. He made Sweden strong.

While England's colonies in what is now the United States were being planted, Sweden was one of the great powers of Europe. During this period the Baltic Sea became a Swedish lake. Sweden conquered much of northern Europe.

Swedes sailed to North America, settled along the Delaware River, and founded "New Sweden." Today both Wilmington, in Delaware, and Philadelphia, in Pennsylvania, are proud of having an "Old Swedes' Church," built by the early Swedish settlers.

Norway, an independent kingdom

Norway and Denmark remained under one king for four hundred years. Norway then came under the rule of the Swedish king. But in 1905 this union was dissolved. Norway chose a king of its own and became completely independent.

Swift ships like this carried viking raiders to many parts of Europe. Some Northmen went to sea in search of homes. You have already learned how groups of them settled in France and in England.

Schoenfeld Collection from Three Lions





James Sawders-Combine

This neat-looking farm is a dairy farm in southern Denmark. Education, scientific methods, and co-operation helped the Danes build a prosperous country on some of the poorest land in Europe.

DENMARK, LAND OF THE DANES

No place in Denmark is more than fifty miles from the sea. This makes the climate cooler in summer and warmer in winter. It gives the country a long coastline and good fishing grounds.

MAKING A LIVING IN DENMARK

For a long time Denmark was a poor country. For wheat and other grains the soil of Denmark was not good. It was hard for the Danes to make a living.

Denmark, a dairy country

Danish scientists studied the country's resources to see how they could best be used.

They decided that Denmark could become a good dairy country. They laid out a plan to show how this could be done. Schools were established in which the old as well as the young learned dairying.

Dairying requires more work than general farming, but it brings in more profit and makes the soil rich. Danish farmers planted clover and other crops which would feed cows and also be good for the soil. After a period of years the average amount of milk produced by Danish cows had doubled. The Danes made such good butter that most of it was eagerly bought by the English. Butter was also canned and shipped to tropical countries and other distant places.

Denmark also became famous for its delicious pork. So many eggs were exported that the saying arose, "If a Danish farmer has only one egg, he sends it abroad." Millions of eggs went abroad to join Danish ham and bacon on English breakfast tables.

Denmark has many schools which train young people in the best farming practices.

SCANDINAVIA and FINLAND

One inch stands for 140 miles

0 140

ARCTIC OCEAN

LOFOTEN
ISLANDS

Narvik

Petsam
Murmansk

Arctic Circle

ATLANTIC
OCEAN

NORTH SEA

DENMARK

Copenhagen

Oslo

Lake
Vänern

Göta
Canal

Göteborg

Stockholm

Bothnia

Gulf of

Gulf of Finland

ESTONIA

LATVIA

UNION OF SOVIET
REPUBLICS

Lake
Ladoga

Viipuri

Leningrad

Helsinki

Study this map of Scandinavia and Finland and answer the following questions: Which country is the most mountainous? Which country is the best for farming? Why? What is one important reason why Norway is a seafaring nation? What port gives Denmark a favorable position for trade?

It led the Scandinavian countries in providing education for grownups and in giving pensions to aged people who could

not work. Danish farmers have formed *co-operative unions*. Like the guilds of former days, these unions secure fair prices

for their members' products. They see that the quality of products is kept high. They buy goods for farmers in large amounts at lower rates.

A Danish woman who had been living in England went back to Denmark on a visit. Near her old home she remembered a windy stretch of sand hills along the coast. To her surprise she found a thriving forest, which acted as a windbreak. The sandy wastelands had become pastures. She could hardly believe her eyes, seeing the land so changed. This is an example of how much good planning can do to improve the land.

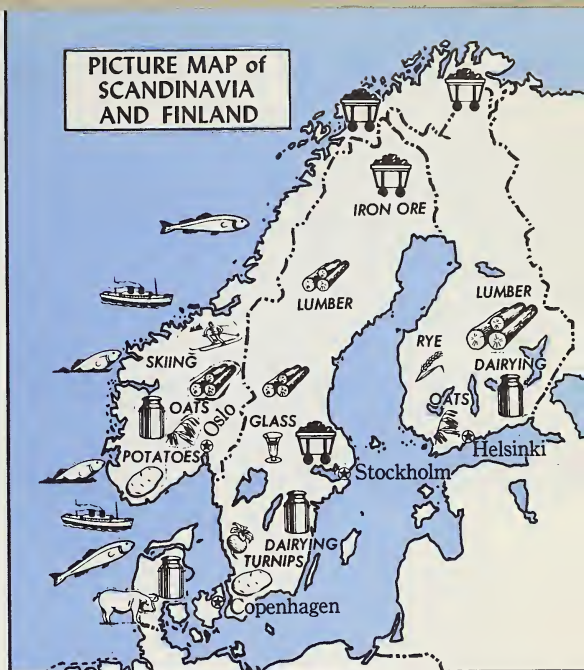
Denmark's shipping industries

The city of Copenhagen, which means "merchants haven," has an excellent harbor. Long ago the people of this city learned that large profits could be made from carrying goods. As a result, they built many ships, and Danish sailors became known all over the world.

COPENHAGEN, CAPITAL OF DENMARK

Copenhagen is built on an island between the Danish peninsula and Sweden. Ships sailing from the North Sea directly into the Baltic use this narrow waterway. For hundreds of years Denmark made every ship that passed Copenhagen pay a tax. To avoid the tax many captains used to sail their ships through the channels west of the island. After a time the tax was removed. Copenhagen lost the tax money, but it continued to be prosperous.

Today one fourth of Denmark's people live in Copenhagen. It is a fine city with beautiful suburbs. Here one-family homes stand on plots of land, surrounded by gardens, grass, and trees. Few European cities have garden suburbs of this kind.



According to this map, what industry do all four countries have in common? Which country has no important minerals? What industries does Norway owe to its coastal position?

SOME FAMOUS DANES

The guide who shows us around Copenhagen is named Christian. "That was the name of several of our kings," he says, taking off his cap in respect. "It was also the name of our most famous storyteller, Hans Christian Andersen." Then he tells us about Andersen.

Hans Christian Andersen

As a child Hans lived with a gloomy father and a neglectful mother in a single room. Though they were poor, Hans found his happiness in a make-believe world, peopled by good fairies. The other children made fun of the awkward fellow with the big feet. When he was fourteen years of age, he went to Copenhagen to seek work. He was not successful, but generous friends sent him to school.



James Sawders-Combine

The bronze statue of "The Little Mermaid" perches on a rock in Copenhagen harbor. In the distance are several ships at the docks.

After awhile Hans began to write down his quaint little stories. Children and also grownups loved the stories, and they loved him. On the waterfront of Copenhagen stands a bronze statue of "The Little Mermaid," to remind us of one of Andersen's best stories. Another of his famous stories is "The Ugly Duckling."

A world-famous sculptor

Another gifted Dane was Bertel Thorwaldsen. His father was a woodcarver, and Thorwaldsen learned this skill. He had the chance to go to art school, where he won many prizes. Finally, he was sent to Italy to work as a sculptor in marble.

Thorwaldsen did not win fame quickly. The people of Rome admired his work, but they did not buy it. Just as he was ready to give up and return home, orders began to come in. He was kept so busy that it was many years before he could go home.

Thorwaldsen admired the old Greek statues so much that he used the Greek style in his own sculpture. In a church in



Three Lions

This fountain, with its life-size statues of storks, stands on one of Copenhagen's boulevards. Storks are always a popular design in Denmark.

Copenhagen is Thorwaldsen's most famous work. It is a group of statues of Christ and the twelve apostles.

A world-famous doctor

Another of Denmark's famous sons is Niels Finsen, a physician. One day Finsen noticed a cat moving from place to place to keep in the sun. He wondered if sunlight had some special benefit.

Finsen began to study sunlight. He discovered that it had great healing powers. He learned how to cure skin diseases by directing light rays on the diseased spot. Most of the treatments which doctors now give by light rays began with Finsen's experiments and discoveries.

DENMARK IN WORLD WAR II

When World War II began, peace-loving Denmark had only a small army and navy. In April, 1940, the Germans marched in and occupied the country. Against the mighty German army the Danes could do little to defend themselves.

The Germans were the masters and the Danes became prisoners in their homeland.

The Germans forced Denmark to give them much of the food it produced. But the Danes never willingly aided the Germans in any way during the war.

After the war the country turned its attention to peaceful living. In modern times Denmark has not had a woman ruler. But under the new constitution, adopted in 1953, Denmark may now have a queen. This means that Princess Margaret is the heir to the throne. Denmark may again have a Queen Margaret.

ICELAND AND GREENLAND

Small Denmark has had two island colonies. They are Iceland and Greenland. Iceland is now independent.

What Iceland is like

More than a thousand miles northwest of Denmark, touching the Arctic Circle, is Iceland. Find it on the map on page 145. Iceland is twice as large as Denmark. This country has long winters and such high winds that there are few trees. The only crops are potatoes, turnips, and hay.

Yet Iceland is a land of fire as well as ice, for it has many volcanoes. Underground heat has produced spouting geysers of hot water and many hot springs. These help the people to warm their homes, to wash clothes, and to heat greenhouses.

Iceland is naturally a poor country and cannot support many people. Most of the people live in the southwestern part of the island, where the land is lowest and the weather is warmest. Their winters, though long, raw, and damp, are no colder than those of Boston. They raise sheep in small numbers, since the hay crop is not large enough to feed large flocks through the winter. The ocean swarms with fish. Sheep and fish feed the people and give them products to export. Potatoes and turnips are raised in the long days of the short summer.

Reykjavik, the capital and largest city, is a small town, but its citizens are well acquainted with world affairs. Through Reykjavik, the main seaport, wool and dried fish are shipped out to other nations. Through it also lumber, coal, and manufactured goods are brought into Iceland.

United Press Photo

Princess Margaret, the heirress to the Danish throne, talks with her grandfather, King Gustav of Sweden. Only on special occasions do the king and princess wear their royal robes and their crowns.





Three Lions

The scenery in Iceland is wild and barren. Sturdy ponies stand beside the sheep pens near this small Icelandic village. Raising livestock is the leading occupation of the people.

In World War II, the northern water routes and air routes became very important. The United States, with the consent of the government of Iceland, sent a body of troops to the island. Thus Iceland played a part in winning the war.

For a thousand years Iceland was a Danish possession. After World War II, the people decided they wanted to be independent. So Denmark granted them their freedom. Iceland is now a republic.

What Greenland is like

West of Iceland lies Greenland, the world's largest island. Greenland is a Danish colony.

Greenland is a misleading name for this large, cold island. Most of it is covered by a huge sheet of ice which is slowly pushing its way to the sea. Only a part of the southwest coast can be inhabited.

A few thousand Eskimos and a few hundred Danes live on Greenland. They hunt whales and seals. In World War II, Denmark gave the United States the right to have air and naval bases and weather stations in Greenland. In this way, Greenland could be defended against the enemy, and ships on the Atlantic were better protected from attack by German submarines. Air travel has made us see the importance of many faraway parts of the world.

THE LAND OF NORWAY

Norway is not a rich land. Much of it lies beyond the Arctic Circle, and much of it is mountainous (see map, page 330). How do its people live?

MAKING A LIVING IN NORWAY

More than anything else the ocean has made Norway the kind of country it is. It influences both the climate and the people's way of living.

The climate of Norway

In the summer steamboats take tourists up to the high cliffs of the North Cape.

From this cape the delighted travelers can see the sun at midnight. The ports of Norway are never locked in by ice. The Greenland waters, in the same latitude as Norway, are full of ice all summer.

Why are conditions on Norway's coast so favorable? The answer is that west winds, blowing across the Atlantic, drive a mass of warmer water, called a *drift*, along Norway's shores. Find the drift on the map, page 145. The warm drift gives out enough heat to lessen the winter's cold. Thanks to the drift, the sea lies open to Norwegians all through the year.

Two Norwegian girls in their national costume stand beside a fiord in Norway. Although fiords are usually narrow, some are deep enough to permit ocean liners to sail far into the heart of Norway. They are often bordered by snow-covered mountains as shown in this picture.



Monkmeyer

The fisheries of Norway

With poor soil and an open sea, the Norwegians turned to the ocean for their livelihood. Around the rocky islands of Norway swim millions of fish. Some Norwegians are fishermen all the time, and some fish just part of the time. Fish furnish a large share of Norway's food and exports.

In spring the herring come up the fiords and into the streams to lay their eggs. Thousands of pounds of herring are caught during this time. Before the herring season is over, it is time for the codfishers to go to the waters around the Lofoten Islands, above the Arctic Circle. Codfish are even more important to Norway than herring. Some of the codfish are salted for export. Some are dried in the sun.

The liver of the cod contains an oil from which a useful medicine is made.

Norwegian waters are also full of small olive-green fish, called *sardines*. Sardines are smoked or packed in oil and carried in Norwegian ships all over the world.

Norwegian ships sail toward the South Pole in search of the largest animal in the world, the whale. After a whale is speared and killed, the fat, or *blubber*, is cut off in strips and melted into oil. Every part of the whale—its flesh, blubber, bones, and tusks—is put to use. Can you find out some of the ways in which the whale is of service to man?

Norway's great merchant fleet

Many Norwegian fishermen sail to foreign countries. Long ago the vikings set

This harbor in the Lofoten Islands is a forest of masts when the fishing season opens in the spring. The islands' chief source of wealth is codfishing. The population of 40,000 is doubled in the spring when the fishermen arrive from all parts of Norway.

James Sawders-Combine



out in their long ships on far voyages. Their vessels even reached the shores of America nearly five hundred years before Columbus did. Today Norway's new steamships are seen in all parts of the world. Norwegian merchant officers rank among the best. In 1955 Norway's merchant ships ranked third in the world in the amount of goods they carried.

When World War I began, Germany warned all nations that were not in the war to keep their ships off the seas. The Norwegians kept on transporting cargo as usual. This helped the Allies, who needed supplies. Many vessels were sunk by German submarines. But other Norwegian vessels kept the cargo moving.

In World War II, Germany conquered Norway. But Norway's sailors continued to fight with the Allies until the war's end.

Farming in Norway

Most of Norway is mountainous and almost barren. Only about one fourth of the land can be used for farming except perhaps a little pasture in summer. Because the growing season of plants is very short, only a few kinds of crops are raised.

Once it was so hard to raise food in Norway that thousands of Norwegians came to the United States. Norway is now following the example of Denmark in farming. By selecting better breeds of plants and animals and by adding fertilizers to the land, Norway is able to feed its people. It even exports some food, such as potatoes. By draining ponds and marshes, by clearing off forests, Norway expects to increase its amount of farmland.

Norway's "white coal"

Melting snow, heavy rains, and mountainous country make Norway a land of



Three Lions

The Norwegian people are keeping alive the old peasant arts and crafts. Here a woodcarver works at his craft surrounded by his own work.

rivers, lakes, and many waterfalls. Falling water, when harnessed, gives electrical power. Water which produces electricity is sometimes called "white coal."

Norway has more waterfalls than any other country in Europe. By using them, the country is beginning to improve its industries. Most of Norway's factories are now run by electric power. Two thirds of the farm homes have electric lights and use electricity in other household ways. By means of cheap electric power Norway is becoming a manufacturing country.

Near the largest of Norway's waterfalls stands a chemical factory. Here the invention of a Norwegian engineer is used to make a gas called *nitrogen*. An "electric cannon" causes terrific explosions within a strong tube. This action separates nitrogen from the air.

By means of electric power the nitrogen is combined with other materials, such as lime, to form different kinds of fertilizer.

This is used to make Norway's fields rich. Factories have been built where such useful materials are manufactured. Yet the supply of air and water from which the gas and electricity are produced can never be used up.

Norway's forests

The forests of Norway provide work for hundreds of factories, where the wood is ground into pulp. Much of the pulp is made into paper. Some of the pulp, however, is given special treatment and is made into rayon. Rayon is used for clothing and for household articles. These forests are so important that Norway watches its woodlands to see that none of them are carelessly destroyed.

NORWAY IN RECENT TIMES

For nearly a hundred years Norway and Sweden were united. When Norway declared its independence, there was a question as to whether it should have a president or a king. The people decided the question by voting for a king. In Denmark they found a ruler exactly to their liking, simple in his ways and capable in his acts. Having a king has not prevented Norway from becoming one of the most democratic nations in the world.

At the same time that German troops marched into Denmark in World War II,

German warships sailed into Norway's fiords. Soldiers from German airplanes landed in Norway and captured its air fields.

The people of Norway were taken by surprise. Their army fought bravely, but the Germans were stronger. The Norwegians were very angry because one of their army officers, named Quisling, became a traitor and helped the Germans. Because of this we sometimes speak of a traitor to his country as a "quisling."

After the Germans took over the country, the Norwegians continued to oppose the enemy in every possible way. All Norway's ships went to aid the Allies. Many of its young men escaped to serve as flyers and as soldiers. Some of them went to near-by England, where they made raids upon the Germans in Norway. In 1945 Norway was freed.

Oslo, Norway's capital

Before 1924 the capital of Norway was called Christiania. In that year Norway decided that its capital should take its old Norse name of Oslo. Oslo is Norway's greatest seaport. One eighth of the people of Norway live in Oslo. The best farming land of Norway lies around it. Many visitors come to Oslo every year. It is one of Europe's most important shipping and trading centers.

Oslo, Norway's capital and its leading seaport, is a modern city with many brick and stone buildings. In one of the city's parks is a statue of Abraham Lincoln, given to Oslo by people of Norwegian descent living in North Dakota.



Education in Norway

Everybody in Norway receives a good elementary education. The Norwegians love their schools and honor their teachers. They are great readers. Libraries and bookstores are everywhere. Norway was one of the first countries to build public libraries. According to the law every city and village must provide at least one free library for its citizens.

Skiing, a national sport

In a country where snow is scarcely gone before it comes again, the people must learn to conquer the snow. Long ago the Scandinavians learned to use *skis*. With these slim runners strapped to their feet they made amazing journeys.

The Norwegians were the first people to make skiing a sport. There were ski races and ski jumps. Germany, Switzerland, the United States, and Canada have all adopted skiing as a favorite winter amusement. In war, troops have taken to skis as the best means of moving across the fields of snow that otherwise would block their passage. Ski troops were used in the fighting in World War II.

NORWAY'S FAMOUS MEN

Norway has had famous men. The best known were musicians and explorers.

Great musicians of Norway

In the city of Bergen stands the statue of a violinist, named Ole Bull. This musician was loved and honored by multitudes in Europe and the United States.

Ole made two concert tours in the United States. He liked our country so much that he dreamed of it as a place where poor Norwegians might own their own land and live in plenty. In Pennsyl-

vania he bought a great tract of land and called it Oleana. It was to be a place of freedom. The plan failed, but Norwegians have not forgotten Ole Bull and his kindness of heart. Some of his musical works, such as "Niagara," were written as a result of his love for the United States.

Ole became interested in a frail but talented boy by the name of Edvard Grieg, who lived in his home town of Bergen. He persuaded Edvard's parents to send Edvard to study in Germany. There he met some of the greatest musicians of the time. Edvard then went to Copenhagen to study under a Norwegian who taught him the old northern folk tunes. After that he always remembered that he was a Norwegian as he wrote his music.

The people of Norway like to think that Edvard Grieg's music represents the sounds of their waterfalls. Have you ever heard any of his music?

Norway's explorers

Far north in the Arctic Ocean the map (page 339) shows a group of islands called Fridtjof Nansen Land. The islands are named for a famous Norwegian explorer. At the age of twenty-seven, this Norwegian athlete succeeded in crossing the ice field of Greenland by sled and ski.

Next, Nansen tried to reach the North Pole. Driftwood from Siberia led him to believe that a ship might be carried by the ice drift northward across the pole. He fitted out a stout vessel, called the *Fram*, a name meaning "Forward." The ship carried Nansen and his companion slowly toward the north. In the winter they were frozen fast in the ice. When spring came the boat, now ice free, was helped on its course by the drift of the water toward the north. After eighteen months Nansen



Trace the route followed by Nansen in the *Fram*. Can you tell where he left the *Fram* to try to reach the North Pole? In what land did Amundsen end his flight over the North Pole?

Amundsen also traveled to Antarctica in the *Fram*. Then he and his companions used dog-teams to reach the South Pole. There he set up the flag of Norway as a sign of his success.

and his friend left the *Fram* and started on dog sleds for the pole. Before the cold forced them to turn back the two men came nearer to the North Pole by nearly two hundred miles than any earlier explorer had done. They spent the winter on the islands now known by Nansen's name. This and other ventures into strange new regions made Nansen one of the greatest explorers of the time.

Nansen was a statesman as well as an explorer. After World War I, he directed the work of returning German and Russian prisoners of war to their homes.

A young friend of Nansen, Roald Amundsen, was the same kind of heroic explorer. In 1911 Amundsen set out for the South Pole. With his companions he traveled across a plateau eleven thousand feet high and crossed the dangerous Antarctic regions. The dangers were forgotten

when the explorers reached the South Pole.

Amundsen now became an aviator. His airplane flight with his American friend, Lincoln Ellsworth, and his Italian pilot was the first made over the North Pole.

Two years later the Italian pilot with whom Amundsen had flown across the North Pole set out on another voyage over the Arctic. At first the flight went well. Then something went wrong, and no more radio messages came through. Rescue parties were organized. Amundsen volunteered to lead one of these. With a crew of five men he set off in search of the lost plane. The Italian pilot managed to return, but Amundsen and his men disappeared in the icy spaces he had so often explored. On the cold northern shore of Canada a gulf is named Amundsen, in honor of this great Norwegian.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

fiord	sardine	nitrogen
drift	blubber	co-operative union
skis		

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 7. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. Long, thin strips of wood fastened to the feet, used for gliding over snow
2. A narrow inlet of the sea between high banks or cliffs
3. A business organization of benefit to its members, who buy the goods they need and sell the products they raise
4. Whale fat
5. A wind-driven mass of water with a higher or lower temperature than the surrounding sea
6. A small fish, often canned
7. A colorless gas that is an important part of all living things

Can You Answer These?

1. What countries make up the Scandinavian Peninsula?
2. Why is Denmark called a Scandinavian country?
3. Why is dairying more profitable to Denmark than raising grain alone?

4. Why is Denmark naturally a poor land?
5. How did Denmark's schools help it become a good dairy country?
6. Which is larger, Iceland or Greenland? Which has more people? Which island still belongs to Denmark?
7. How does the ocean influence the climate and ways of living in Norway?
8. Where is the North Cape? What do tourists see there in the summertime?
9. What kinds of fish do Norwegians catch?
10. How does Norway use its "white coal"?
11. Tell Norway's story in World War II.
12. What important forest products does Norway produce?

Can You Choose the Right Word?

Complete these sentences by choosing and writing the correct words.

1. Denmark has: (a) high mountains (b) many islands (c) active volcanoes
2. Scandia is part of: (a) Denmark (b) Norway (c) Sweden
3. Settlements in America were made by: (a) Danes (b) Swedes (c) Norwegians
4. A "quisling" is one who: (a) helps his country in wartime (b) becomes a traitor to his country (c) wins a quiz
5. The Allied cause in World War II was helped greatly by the navy of: (a) Sweden (b) Denmark (c) Norway

THE LAND OF SWEDEN

East of Norway lies Sweden, the last Scandinavian country we shall visit.

SWEDEN, A PROSPEROUS LAND

Among the Scandinavian countries, Sweden is first in size, in number of people, and in wealth. But its total population is less than the city of New York. More than half of Sweden is covered with

forest. Much of the rest is covered with water in the form of lakes. Only about one tenth of Sweden is even fairly good farming land. All of Sweden lies north of the northernmost part of the United States. These things help to explain why Sweden, which is nearly one thousand miles long and covers an area larger than California, has not more people.

Farming in Sweden

A small part of southern Sweden is, like Denmark, flat and almost all cultivated. Here women and children weed rows of turnips and potatoes. In all northern lands, where the summers are short, potatoes are a major crop.

Farmers give special attention to dairying. Sweden has fewer farmers than it once had, but by using scientific methods they produce three times as much as before. Most farm machines are run by electric power.

Using other resources

The lumber from its many forests forms the basis of Sweden's large lumber industry. Iron ore from northern Sweden is the nation's most important mineral. Sweden has greater water power than any European country except Norway. The northern and the southern power systems are connected by lines more than one thousand miles long. Thus the vast water power of the north supplies electricity for southern farms and industries.

A TRIP THROUGH SWEDEN

To see the country at first hand we decide to take a trip.

On the Göta River canal

At Göteborg, a seaport on the Göta River, a tall, blond man comes up to us.

"I am from Minnesota," he says, "but my parents were Swedish. They went to the United States from Sweden before I was born. I am about to take an inland voyage to the Baltic. Would you like to go along?"

"What is an inland voyage?" we ask.

"Come with me and you will see," answers our new friend Per (Peter) Hallborg. We are glad to go with him, for he has made us curious to learn about an inland voyage.

We soon find that we are to travel on a canal, because Göteborg is on the Göta Canal. Göteborg was built by a king who decided that Sweden needed a "window on the Atlantic." So he called Dutch engineers to build a port on the western coast of Sweden opposite the northern tip of Denmark. Being Dutch, these engineers put canals in the new city like those they had at home. Göteborg still finds the canals useful. The city has grown more important as Atlantic trade has increased and as Sweden has increased its factories which supply goods for export. Today Göteborg is almost as large as Memphis, Tennessee.

At a wharf Per Hallborg leads us aboard a trim little boat. "This is to be our home for three days," he remarks. Soon the vessel moves off, and we find ourselves in a canal. We pass through one lock after another. Each lock takes our boat to a

Ewing Galloway

All members of the family help when it is time to harvest potatoes in the northern part of Sweden. Sweden produces enough food for its own people, but Swedish farmers import grain for their cattle.





Swedish Travel Information Bureau, Inc.

A tractor hauls a heavy load of timber from a Swedish forest. The government controls most of the woodlands. It sees that more trees are planted than are cut. Lumber and wood products make up over half of Sweden's exports.

higher level. The boat follows the course of the Göta River.

The canal goes through woodland and past beautiful farms. We pass a large power station where the rapidly flowing Göta River is used for the manufacture of electricity. Then we come out upon a big lake. This is Lake Vänern, almost as large as our Great Salt Lake.

"North of this lake," our friend informs us, "there still remain great forests. On the shore are sawmills, pulp and paper mills, and other factories which use wood. The Swedish government makes sure that new trees are always planted in place of those that have been cut."

Northeast of Lake Vänern, we learn from the captain of our boat, lies a great deposit of iron ore. This ore from Central Sweden is of high quality. The forests furnish charcoal to keep the furnaces going which turn this iron ore into good hard, tough steel.

Razor blades and saws made from Swedish steel are excellent. In the far north of Sweden, beyond the Arctic Circle, are

mountains of iron ore, perhaps the richest in the world. The ore is shipped out of the country to be smelted. *Smelting* is the process of melting the ore and extracting the pure iron from it. In summer the ore goes south to a port on the Gulf of Bothnia. In winter, when the gulf is closed by ice, electric trains carry the ore across the mountains to the Norwegian seaport of Narvik.

Our boat passes through Lake Vänern and continues through the canal. Soon the locks begin to lower our vessel instead of raising it. We are descending toward the Baltic, and our voyage is nearly over. After having passed through dozens of locks, we reach Stockholm.

In Stockholm, the capital

A long arm of the Baltic Sea, full of islands, joins a large lake that has a host of islands of its own. Stockholm was founded on three islands at the mouth of the lake. This city was built as a fort to keep out the pirates who roamed the Baltic in early times. It was called "the padlock of the lake."

Today Stockholm has spread over something like a dozen islands, which are connected by bridges as in Venice. Waterways lead into the heart of the city, but there are no gondolas, only launches. The Swedish capital is a modern, beautiful, and tidy city. The traffic bothers us at first, since all cars keep to the left. On the islands in the bay are the summer homes of prosperous people.

We decide to visit a restaurant. In our restaurant the first course is called *smörgåsbord*, which in Swedish means "bread-and-butter table." The *smörgåsbord* is served on a separate table and consists of various appetizers such as bits of cheese,

smoked fish, seafoods, sausage, and pickles. Swedes think that a good smörgasbord must have at least twenty appetizers. We help ourselves, in cafeteria fashion, and soon find that we have filled our plates. Yet our waiter tells us that the main course and dessert are still to come. We decide that the Swedes believe in eating well.

Sweden's craftsmen make useful and beautiful things. The articles displayed in the shop windows remind us of the days of the guilds in the Middle Ages. Then workmen made beautiful things by hand and took pride in their work. Silver, copper, iron, glass, and leather play their part in making new and lovely articles. As we are admiring the articles in the shop windows, we meet a young Swede who traveled with us on the boat.

"Not only in Stockholm," says he, "but also in all Sweden, the people are bringing back the fine work of earlier days and are even improving it. Many schools, for instance, are teaching weaving, and thousands of women are using looms at home. Swedish business firms take pride in fitting

out their offices with such handmade articles as rugs and curtains. Thus the nation supports Swedish skill.

"Swedish educators were the first to give all Swedish boys a course in working with wood. This plan of training was so successful that many of your schools have adopted it."

We pass a school where the pupils are exercising in the open air. "In Sweden," our guide says, "we believe that a strong mind should be housed in a strong body. We have developed body-building exercises, known as *Swedish gymnastics*. We also have a way of treating the body by rubbing, called *Swedish massage*. Swedish massage is helpful in certain diseases."

FAMOUS MEN OF SWEDEN

Sweden, like Denmark and Norway, has had its share of famous men. Some of them have done their work in science.

Two famous Swedish scientists

When you study chemistry, you will find that certain letters and figures are used

Stockholm, sometimes called "the Venice of the North," is Sweden's capital and second largest port. One of the many islands on which the city is built can be seen at the upper right in the picture.

British Combine



in combinations to represent materials. For instance, H_2O means water, which is composed of two parts of hydrogen and one part of oxygen. The scientist who first worked out the system of chemical signs was a Swede, Jacob Berzelius. Berzelius is sometimes called the "Father of chemistry."

Carl von Linné, better known by the Latin form of his name Linnaeus, is called the "Father of botany." *Botany* is the study of plants. Linnaeus was the son of a poor country minister who had the best flower garden in all that part of Sweden. When Carl was only a tiny child, a flower placed in his hand would stop his crying. As he became older, his interest in plants grew. He studied in several universities. He worked out a system of arranging plants in groups and families. In this way botany became an orderly study, which we call a science.

The safety match, a Swedish invention

The safety match was invented by Gustave Pasch, a Swedish chemist. The first

Handmade Swedish glass is famous all over the world for its beauty. Notice the design this workman has cut into the piece of glassware.

Swedish National Travel Office, Inc.



matches were made with heads of phosphorus. Because phosphorus takes fire easily when it is rubbed or heated, these matches were highly dangerous. Then Pasch had the idea of making a match in which the necessary chemicals were separated. Some of the chemicals were contained in the match heads. Some were spread on the rough surface of the match box or on the match book. The match head had to be scratched on the rough surface containing the chemicals before it would burst into flame. The safety match, as you can see, was an important invention.

The Nobel prizes

Alfred Nobel was a chemist and engineer who became interested in the making of explosives. He was a born inventor. In Stockholm he experimented with a new explosive that he thought would be useful to engineers and builders. It was called *nitroglycerine*.

One day some of the nitroglycerine exploded and killed five men. Nobel saw that something must be done to safeguard it. He mixed the explosive with other materials and succeeded in changing it into *dynamite*. Dynamite must be lighted by a fuse if it is to go off, so it is handled by thousands of people every day with little danger. From nitroglycerine, Nobel also invented smokeless powder and other explosives which made him rich.

But this man, whose inventions gave the world new materials for warfare, was interested chiefly in peace and progress. When he died, Nobel left a will which set aside a large sum of money to be given in prizes. The *Nobel prizes* are given to those whose work in science, literature, and the furthering of peace is considered of most

A young Swedish housewife works at her loom, weaving material by hand in an old Swedish pattern. She is wearing the Swedish national costume. Even the clock is painted in gayly colored designs.



Kessler from *Black Star*

benefit to humanity. What persons from the United States have received Nobel prizes? Consult your encyclopedia or the *World Almanac* to find out who these persons were and also why the prizes were awarded.

SWEDEN TODAY

The people of Sweden have a variety of occupations—farming, mining, manufacturing, and shipping. Sweden can supply a considerable part of its own needs,

and the world is eager to buy Swedish products. The country is small enough for the people to feel united. The government sees that the different activities work together for the best interests of the whole country.

In World War II, Germany did not overrun Sweden. But it made use of Sweden's iron and coal and its manufactures. Sweden was not powerful enough to resist Germany successfully. It did not take an active part in the war.

THE LAND OF FINLAND

A short sail eastward from Stockholm across the Gulf of Bothnia brings us to Finland. Like Sweden, it has great forests and many lakes. "Half land and half water," is one description of Finland. Like Norway, much of the land is rocky and barren. Every Finn has had to struggle for a living. Only a strong people could succeed in such a country.

THE HISTORY OF FINLAND

Some historians believe that the early Finns may have come from Asia. They

speak a language that has little likeness to any other in Europe. But, whatever their origin, they are today much like the people of western Europe in their ways of living. Certainly their progressive ways are Western.

Finland under foreign rule

The religion of the early Finns was based upon magic and spells. When the Swedes came into the land, they brought the Christian religion. Sweden held Finland for more than six hundred years. All

educated Finns learned to speak Swedish, and Swedish manners were practiced. Yet the Finns continued to speak Finnish and to consider themselves a separate people. Its large neighbor, Russia, finally took Finland away from Sweden and held it for about one hundred years.

Finland, an independent nation

During World War I, Finland saw its chance to gain independence. After a "Liberty War" against Russia, Finland declared itself a republic. It gave its towns their old Finnish names.

When Finland became independent, it was given a small section of land on the Arctic. This region, called the Petsamo region, is two hundred miles north of the Arctic Circle. The region can be reached by a motor road from Finland for six months of the year. Ships can reach it at any time. Seven hundred miles south, on the Gulf of Finland, huge ice breakers are needed to keep the harbor of Helsinki open during the winter. But the Petsamo region is warmed by the drift current. The nickel mines of that region furnish valuable metal.

Because forests cover three quarters of Finland, most of its exports are wood products. These include lumber, paper, and pulp, which is used in making paper.

Finland became one of the world's most progressive republics. The Finns had fine schools. They led in music and athletics. They paid their war debts.

The Russian-Finnish Wars

In 1939 Russia made war on Finland. The Finns fought bravely. But there were fifty Russian soldiers for each Finnish soldier, and the Finns were beaten. Finland lost much of its best land, bordering on Russia. The largest timber export city, Viipuri, on the Gulf of Finland, went to Russia. Lake Ladoga, the largest lake in Europe, became Russian. Russia secured a bigger window on the Baltic.

When Germany invaded Russia in 1941, the Finns, who considered Russia as an enemy, took the German side. German troops came into Finland in order to fight Russia more easily.

With the defeat of Germany, the Finns had to yield to Russia's demands. They lost not only their Arctic port, Petsamo, but also their nickel mines. The Russians set up a naval base on the Gulf of Finland almost at Helsinki's door. The Finns had to pay money to Russia. They also had to help the Russians drive the German troops out of Finland. The country was exhausted. It had become smaller. The Finns had made the wrong choice and had

James Sawders-Combine



A group of Finnish young people, dressed in their best holiday clothes, still enjoy an old custom, a Finnish folk dance. The house in the background is built of wood as are most homes in this land of great forests and lakes.



Gendreau

Helsinki has a fine natural harbor but is locked in by ice during the winter. It is a commercial city and the center of culture and education in Finland. Along the waterfront is the market place.

suffered for it. But they still had faith in their future. With courage they faced the task of rebuilding Finland as a nation.

Helsinki, the Finnish capital

Stockholm and the Finnish capital of Helsinki lie in almost the same latitude. But a large part of Sweden lies south of Stockholm, while Helsinki is on the southern border of Finland.

Helsinki and Stockholm are much alike. Each has a group of islands near it. Each has many landing places for ships and boats. Helsinki was a pioneer in being a quiet city. Autos were forbidden to sound their horns. Bicycle riders could not ring bells. No factory whistles could blow. This freedom from noise was not only

pleasant but it also tended to prevent traffic accidents. Do you think that such a plan would work in your city?

Helsinki prided itself upon being the modern capital of a new nation. One of the islands near Helsinki was the home of a zoo. Another had an outdoor museum. Still another had fine homes. Before World War II, Helsinki had Europe's largest bookstore. The store had miles of bookshelves, and it was always full of customers. From this we can see that the Finns love to read.

FINNISH EDUCATION AND CULTURE

All children in Finland are provided with free education. Ninety-nine out of one hundred persons can read and write.

The Finnish language

The Finns are an independent people. They are proud of being Finns and of the Finnish language. The Finnish language is very difficult for foreigners to learn. Some Finnish words are twenty letters or more in length. They are difficult to spell and to pronounce. The Finns must learn another tongue in order to do business with the rest of the world. But most Finns cling to their own language and use it in their daily speech.

Finnish health education

Finland prides itself on the health of its people. Physical training rates high in

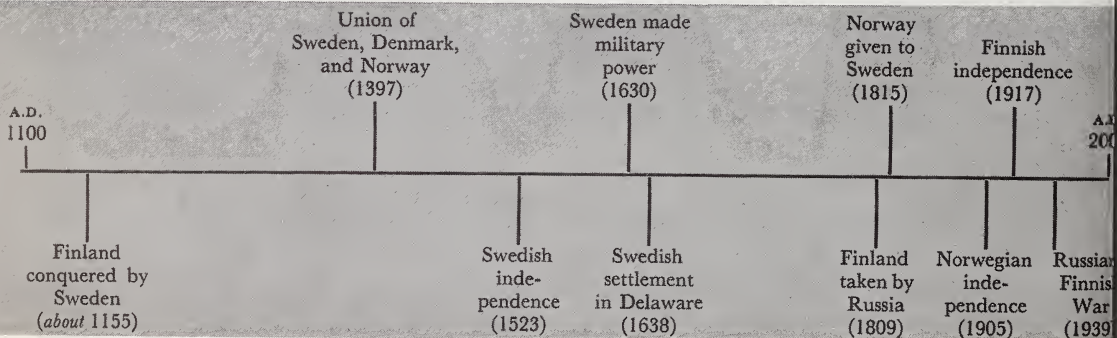
Finland, as it does in Sweden. The Finns are a nation of athletes. They say, "We were born on skis." Finnish athletes have often broken records in track contests. They are expert sailors and woodsmen.

Finland's music and literature

The Finns are proud of their great musician Jan Sibelius, whose music is often played in America. One of his best works is called *Finlandia*. *Finlandia* expresses the poetic feeling and the national spirit of the Finnish people.

The Finns also like to remember that our poet Longfellow patterned his "Song of Hiawatha" upon Finland's hero-poem.

Time-Line: Scandinavia and Finland (1100 A.D.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words and Terms You Should Know

botany	nitroglycerine
smelting	Swedish gymnastics
Nobel prize	Swedish massage
smörgåsbord	dynamite

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 8. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A powerful explosive
2. The study of plants

3. A course in a Swedish meal, including smoked fish, cold meat, cheese, pickles
4. A way of treating certain diseases by rubbing the parts affected
5. A large sum of money left by the inventor of dynamite to be awarded to persons whose work benefits humanity
6. The process of melting an ore and extracting the pure metal from it
7. Body-building exercises developed and practiced by the Swedes
8. Nitroglycerine mixed with other materials to make it safer to handle

Can You Answer These?

1. What is Sweden's leading mineral?
2. What purpose do canal locks serve?
3. How does the Swedish government protect its forests?
4. What are two products made from Swedish steel?
5. Why was Stockholm built where it is?
6. What materials do Swedish handicraft workers use?
7. What are Finland's chief exports?
8. To what countries has Finland belonged?
9. Why is it difficult for foreigners to learn Finnish?
10. How do we know Finns like to read?

Learning from Maps

1. What does the map of Norway and Sweden tell you about farmlands and about mountains? Which country has the larger amount of farmland?
2. Norway and Italy are similar in that they are about the same size. Use the map of Europe on page 145 to tell in what other ways they are alike. In what ways are they different?
3. Every summer many people go to the North Cape to see the midnight sun. Use the globe to explain why this strange sight is possible.
4. Why is the seaport of Bergen, Norway, open all winter while the waters at Helsinki in Finland are frozen?

Who's Who

Each phrase below describes one of the people whom you have met in this unit. Match the people with the descriptions.

Hans Christian Andersen	Queen Margaret
Edvard Grieg	Jan Sibelius
Gustavus Adolphus	Carl Linnaeus
Bertel Thorwaldsen	Fridtjof Nansen

1. An Arctic explorer and statesman
2. A famous Danish sculptor
3. The composer of *Finlandia*

4. The ruler of the largest country in Europe in 1397
5. The Danish author of fairy tales
6. The composer of folk tunes and music typical of Norway
7. The ruler who made Sweden strong
8. The scientist who worked out a system of arranging plants in groups

Making a Chart

Make a chart of the four nations you have studied in this unit under the headings "Country," "Area," "Population," "Capital," and "Important Products."

Interesting Things to Do

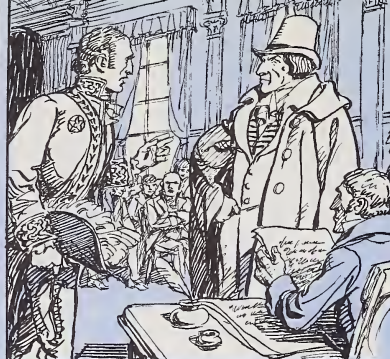
1. Look for pictures of arts and crafts in newspapers and magazines from Sweden and other countries in this unit.
2. Read Andersen's *Fairy Tales*. Dramatize or retell one of them in class.
3. A famous American of Danish birth was Jacob Riis. As a newspaperman, he often visited the poor districts of New York City. His book *How the Other Half Lives*, published in 1890, described life in these districts. When people read the book, they decided that the slums must be cleaned up. Read this book if you can.
4. Plan a musical program in which you include recorded selections by Grieg and Sibelius and other northern composers. Have one pupil introduce each record and tell something about it.

Linking the Old World and the New

1. The people of Scandinavia have learned to use the natural resources of their countries wisely. What conservation problems do we have in the United States? How are we solving them?
2. Long ago the Danish farmers formed co-operatives. Is there a co-operative dairy, freezer plant, or store in your community? If possible, visit it to find out how it works.



Luther nailing the theses to the church door at Wittenberg—1517



Meeting of first German diet at Frankfurt—1815



William I of Germany being crowned at Versailles—1871



Castle on the Rhine—about 1200



Early German village—about 500



The land of Germany

13.

The country which in 1914 and again in 1939 set out to conquer Europe did not possess many large areas of rich soil. Nor did it have a variety of minerals. Yet this country, the size of Texas, once supported half as many people as there are in the whole United States. It was also the most powerful country in Europe. We shall see how this came about.

The German climate is favorable to farming. The winds from the Atlantic blow across the Netherlands into Germany. They bring to western Germany warmer winters and cooler summers than the rest of the country has. In eastern Germany, farther away from the ocean, the summers are hot and the winters cold. But the farmers can still raise large crops in this part of Germany.

Much of the soil of Germany is not good for farming. Some areas are very sandy,



German troops on the march at opening of World War I—1914



Adolf Hitler and the Nazi Party ruling Germany—1933



Germany defeated and divided at end of World War II—1945

Germany, a Great Industrial Nation

and in others there are many large forests. But German farmers learned to use fertilizers and grow large crops in poor soil.

The soil and climate of a country have great influence on the lives of the people. But it is the people themselves who really make a country what it is. The Germans turned their attention to manufacturing. They built many factories which made such excellent products that Germany became a great industrial nation. They also helped it to prosper again after being defeated in two world wars.

The map on page 355 shows that northern Germany is a great plain. Over this plain it has been easy to build roads, railroads, and canals. Here is Germany's best farm land. Here also are most of the great manufacturing centers.

South of this plain is Germany's highland region. This part of Germany has

many fertile valleys. The people who live there raise grapes on some of the river valley slopes. Here the sun can reach the vines, but the vines are sheltered from cold winds. The Germans raise cattle. They work in the forests that cover the hills and mountains.

Four large rivers flow north through Germany. From west to east, they are the Rhine, Weser, Elbe, and Oder.

This unit will answer these questions:

1. How did Germany become a great nation?
2. What happened to Germany in World War I?
3. What was Germany like just before World War II?
4. What happened to Germany in World War II?
5. What is Germany like today?

HOW GERMANY BECAME A GREAT NATION

During the Middle Ages, the region we now call Germany was broken up into hundreds of states. These states were ruled by dukes, counts, kings, princes, bishops, and archbishops. This arrangement was the result of feudalism, and it continued for hundreds of years.

THE RISE OF GERMANY

The part of Central Europe which became Germany became a nation much later than did England, France, and Spain.

The beginnings of German unity

Curiously enough, it was a foreign ruler—Napoleon of France—who first awakened national feelings in the Germans. He fought with the largest states and defeated them. Napoleon then made his relatives and friends rulers of the conquered German lands.

The Germans did not like to be ruled by the French. The result was that clubs and secret societies sprang up to work against Napoleon. Patriotic Germans tried to make the German people proud of their language and their history. Poets wrote stirring songs that built up German spirit. This helped make the people proud of being Germans.

The union of German states

We have already learned that Napoleon was finally defeated. After Napoleon's defeat representatives of the European governments met in a peace congress. This congress formed all the German states into a union, with Austria at its head. A *diet*, or parliament, representing the German states, did away with most of the little divisions of Germany. The diet set up a few strong rulers instead of many weak ones. Germans now began to feel that they were a nation.

SOME FAMOUS GERMANS

Germany has had great men in its history. Among them have been religious leaders, writers, musicians, and artists.

Luther, a religious leader

One of Germany's noted men was Martin Luther. Luther was born in 1483 in Saxony. He early showed an eagerness for learning. After his graduation from the university he became a monk. He obeyed all the rules of the monastery but he was not sure that the Church was always right. He studied the Bible until he knew much of it by heart. In that way he found the answer to his problem.

This view of Cologne's skyline, with its beautiful Gothic cathedral, was taken before World War II. The picture on page 365 shows the same Rhine bridge after it was blown up during the war.

Gendreau



Luther became a teacher in the University of Wittenberg. In his classes he raised questions about some of the teachings of the Catholic Church.

In 1517 Luther attracted attention by protesting against some of the activities of one of the agents of the Church. He wrote out his beliefs and posted them on the church door at Wittenberg where everyone could see them. Within a short time people all over Germany had learned about Luther's action. Many agreed with him.

A few years later Luther broke with the Catholic Church. He had many followers. Most of the German princes and noblemen agreed with Luther because they no longer wished to be under the Pope, who was an Italian. At first, it seemed that all Germans would follow Luther and rebel against the Church. But when groups of peasants in southern Germany also rebelled against their rulers, the princes punished them cruelly. This stopped the rebellion, but the peasants remained angry. They did not become followers of Luther as their rulers did.

Germany was divided. The northern states followed Luther. Those in the south rejected his beliefs and remained in the Catholic Church. The followers of Luther called themselves *Protestants* because they were acting in "protest" against certain beliefs and practices of the Catholic Church. The religious movement which Luther started is known as the *Protestant Reformation*. Because of the Protestant Reformation there are both Catholic and Protestant churches in the world today.

Luther translated the Bible into the German language so that people could read it for themselves. He wrote many hymns to be sung in church services. Some



Brown Bros.

A crowd of people read the opinions Martin Luther nailed to the church door at Wittenberg. Luther is shown in his monk's gown. With this action the Protestant Reformation began.

of these are still found in hymnbooks. "Away in a Manger" is a famous Christmas carol. Another hymn, which begins "A mighty fortress is our God," has been called the "battle hymn of the Reformation." Luther also wrote many books.

Great writers of Germany

Germany's greatest writer was Wolfgang Goethe. We remember him best for his great drama, *Faust*. *Faust* is the story of a man who, in return for earthly pleasures and glory, agreed to sell his soul to the devil. His adventures brought sorrow to others and to himself.

To many Germans, Friedrich Schiller is their most-loved author. One of Schiller's best plays is *The Maid of Orleans*, which is the story of Joan of Arc. Another is *William Tell*, a drama of the Swiss people and their struggle for freedom.

There are many German fairy tales. Some of the best of these were written by the Grimm brothers. Do you know the

story of "Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs"? Or the one about Hansel and Gretel in the forest where lived the wicked witch? Both stories are found in a book called *Grimm's Fairy Tales*.

Great musicians of Germany

In music the Germans have produced many splendid works. Felix Mendelssohn wrote musical plays, called *operas*. In one of his famous operas he set Shakespeare's play *Midsummer Night's Dream* to music.

Ludwig von Beethoven composed *symphonies*. Symphonies are works written to be played by large orchestras.

Another composer who attained fame in Germany was Richard Wagner. A group of his operas, called *The Ring of the Nibelungs*, gave many German folk tales a fine musical setting.

A famous artist

Albrecht Dürer was a great German painter. He was born in Nürnberg, where he worked with his father at the goldsmith's trade. At the age of fifteen he decided to become a painter. He went to study, first in Venice and later in the Netherlands. In these countries he learned how to use color in a marvelous way. The portraits he painted looked just like the people who posed for them.

Dürer was highly honored during his lifetime. He was the friend of two emperors. Among his other friends were Luther and the Italian artist Raphael.

GERMANY AS AN EMPIRE

Before Germany could really become a united nation one of its states had to become powerful enough to control the others. At one time it looked as if Austria would become the leader of Germany.

The rise of Prussia

One of the states of Germany gradually grew in strength until it challenged Austria's leadership. This state was Prussia, in northern Germany. In the beginning, Prussia was a poor and backward country. Its king and his nobles ruled with a hard hand over the ignorant peasants. Most of these peasants were serfs, who belonged to the land on which they worked. Each Prussian ruler, however, was determined to make Prussia bigger and more powerful.

In time, Prussia came to have a strong army, well known for its strict punishments. The greater Prussia grew, the more it directed the affairs of all Germany. The states in the south of Germany disliked Prussia and its cruel, grasping ways. But they had to follow its lead.

The leadership of Prussia

To make his country stronger, the Prussian king, William I, decided to increase his army. When his lawmakers refused to give him the necessary money, he asked Otto von Bismarck to be his prime minister. Bismarck was a bold and able man who helped the king get what he wanted.

Bismarck devoted himself to making a dream come true—the dream of a great united Germany, with Prussia at its head. He did not care how this was brought about. "It will be decided by blood and iron," said he.

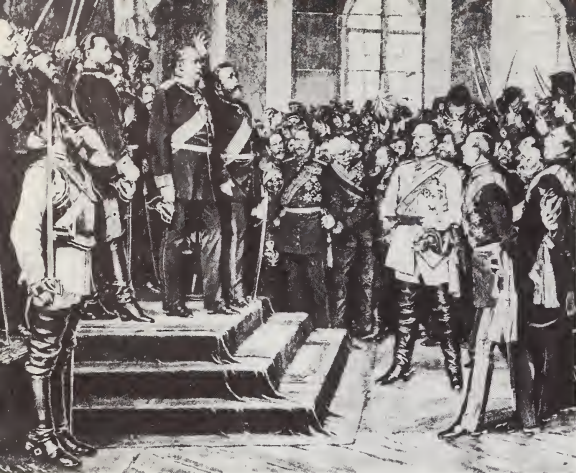
Under Bismarck the powerful Prussian army grew mightier yet. He beat Austria so soundly that Austria had little power in German affairs. Then Bismarck turned the German army against France.

Formation of the Empire

The emperor of France at this time was Napoleon III. He thought he was as



This map shows Germany as it is divided today. Since 1949 Germany has been two separate countries. The western part is the German Federal Republic and the eastern part the German Democratic Republic. What is the natural boundary between Germany and France? Between Germany and Poland? What kind of land does southern Germany have? What kind does northern Germany have? What important river highways are shown? What cities are located on them?



Bettmann Archive

King William of Prussia is proclaimed emperor of a united Germany in the Hall of Mirrors at Versailles. In the picture Bismarck, in a white uniform, stands at the foot of the steps.

great a general as Napoleon Bonaparte, and he was as ready for war as was Bismarck. War came. Napoleon III had thought that the south Germans disliked Prussia so much that they would refuse to join in the war. But German blood was stronger than hate for Prussia. All the Germans joined together. Led by Prussia, they marched into France and defeated the French.

In the palace at Versailles a crowd of German generals and nobles hailed William of Prussia as the German emperor. On this day in 1871 the sun rose on a really

united Germany. The Germans required the French to give them land and to pay a huge sum of money before their troops would leave France.

Growth of the Empire

When the young emperor William II took the throne, he decided that Germany was to be more powerful still. "Germany," he declared, "must have a place in the sun." His nation must have a big navy. It must have colonies, like the other large nations. Under his leadership Germany got hold of a vast area of Africa and many islands of the Pacific.

In its first forty years as an empire, Germany accomplished many things. People came from other countries to see its well-governed cities and to learn why its business was so well managed and how its scientists had made so many discoveries. Many of these visitors returned home saying that Germany was the most modern and progressive nation in the world.

Germany was proud of itself. Still William II was not satisfied. The German navy was good, but the English navy was larger. The German army was strong, but the French army was strong also. German trade was growing every year, but so was the trade of England. Germany had many colonies, but some nations had more.

WORLD WAR I AND ITS RESULTS

Germany was not satisfied just to be a great nation. It now wished to be the strongest nation in Europe. Its desire for power led to the first world war.

THE STORY OF WORLD WAR I

Long before it happened, Bismarck had said that a world war would come. He

said that it would begin in the small, restless Balkan countries. He was right.

How the war began

In a part of the Balkans which belonged to the empire of Austria-Hungary, a student from Serbia shot and killed the heir to the throne of Austria-Hungary. The

government leaders of Austria-Hungary were very angry. They demanded more than the punishment of the Serbian murderer. They wanted to take over his country.

Germany sided with Austria. Great Britain, France, and Russia opposed Austria. The Germans were so anxious to use their army that they began the war, first by striking at Russia, then at France. In fact, they were on the march a day before Germany declared war. The next day Britain, too, joined the fight.

A world-wide struggle

The war spread over most of Europe and extended to parts of Asia and Africa. Millions of men opposed each other. After the war had been going on for more than two years, the United States entered it

against Germany. Our nation sent more than two million men overseas. With American help the German army was beaten. The war lasted from 1914 to 1918.

THE RESULTS OF THE WAR

Germany had been the leader in starting the war. The group of nations who had opposed Germany—known as the Allies—intended to make a peace that should prevent any more such trouble. The Treaty of Peace, made at the palace of Versailles in 1919, took from Germany all its colonies and some of its land in Europe. With this land Germany lost its coal mines and three fourths of its iron ore. Its army and navy were put out of business. The Allies thought that a weak Germany would no longer be dangerous.

This map shows the boundaries of the countries of Europe in 1914 just before World War I. Compare this with the map of Europe today on page 145. What countries which existed in 1914 do not exist today? What countries came into existence after this war? Look at the map of Germany on page 355. How was the boundary between Germany and France different in 1914 from what it is today? The map below shows a nation called the Ottoman Empire. What is the name of this country today? In 1914 Norway's capital was Christiania. In 1925 this name was changed. What is it today?



The German Republic

The German emperor fled to a safe home in the Netherlands, and Germany became a republic. The republic had a fine democratic constitution, and the people tried to govern themselves. But the times were bad after the war. German money grew almost worthless. There was little trade, and the people underwent great suffering. Realizing the bad conditions, the Allies tried to make things easier for Germany. For a time conditions im-

proved. But the republic had only a short life. The people did not really support it.

The rise of Adolf Hitler

A dictator, named Adolf Hitler, took over the country. Under his leadership the Germans prepared again for war. In 1939 a new war began. It was called World War II because it spread until fighting took place on every continent and every ocean. Eventually, the United States entered the war, as we shall see later.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

diet	Protestant
opera	Protestant Reformation
symphony	

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 5. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A musical work with many parts for a large orchestra
2. Any Christian who does not belong to the Roman Catholic or to the Eastern Church
3. A lawmaking body
4. A play in musical form
5. The religious movement started by Luther

Can You Answer These?

1. How did Napoleon Bonaparte cause the German states to become more united?
2. Who was Martin Luther?
3. Why did Luther translate the Bible into German?
4. Which German author wrote a play about Joan of Arc?
5. Who was Bismarck? What was his dream for Germany?

6. What wars did the Prussians carry on before Germany was united?
7. Which Prussian king became the first German emperor? What was he like?
8. When did World War I begin? What events led to it? How did it end?
9. How long was it from the end of World War I to the start of World War II?
10. What form of government did Germany have from the end of World War I until Hitler rose to power?

Can You Choose the Right Answer?

Number a paper from 1 to 4. Select the word or phrase which will make each sentence correct and write it after the number.

1. In 1871 the German states united to form: (a) a league of nations (b) the German Empire (c) the German Republic (d) the United Nations
2. A famous German painter was: (a) Dürer (b) Grimm (c) Beethoven (d) Wagner
3. The Rhine River flows into: (a) the North Sea (b) the Baltic Sea (c) the English Channel (d) the Pacific
4. German folk tales were collected by: (a) Dürer (b) Grimm (c) Beethoven (d) Mendelssohn

LIFE IN GERMANY BEFORE WORLD WAR II

In farming countries most of the people are likely to live outside of cities. But in 1940 two thirds of the Germans lived in the cities. Few great cities can exist without manufactures. Germany had more factory workers than farmers.

GERMANY'S INDUSTRIES

To be a manufacturing nation a country needs coal, iron, and good ways of transporting materials. Let us see why Germany became a great manufacturing nation before the war.

The mineral wealth of Germany

Germany has a great deal of coal. Large coal fields are found in the Ruhr Valley in western Germany. There are coal fields also near the Rhine, the Elbe, and the Oder rivers. Before World War II began, Germany was producing two thirds as much coal as Great Britain. It could even export coal.

Some of the German coal was very good. From it coke, which is needed in smelting iron and steel, could be made. But a large amount was *lignite*, or brown coal. Lignite is soft, full of gas, and soon burns away. The lignite was used to make electricity.

In 1940 only about one fourth of the iron ore Germany used came from German mines. It was using great quantities because furnaces and mills were working at high speed to produce war materials.

Much of the iron ore that Germany imported came from Sweden. But much also came from Lorraine. Lorraine and its rich iron mines had been French. In 1871 the Germans had seized Lorraine. After the defeat of Germany in World War I the French, with great rejoicing, got it

back. When the Germans overran and conquered France in 1940, they again seized Lorraine. With Lorraine and Sweden to draw upon, the Germans could keep their armies well supplied with guns, tanks, and ammunition.

The industries of the Saar Valley

Bordering Lorraine is the valley of a little river, the Saar. The Saar Valley is thickly peopled because it has rich coal fields. For a time, following World War I, France controlled the Saar Valley. After a while its people, who were mostly Germans, were given a choice as to whether they wanted to remain under the French or be governed by Germany. They voted in favor of Germany, and Germany received this valuable region again.

The industries of the Ruhr Valley

Farther north, near the point at which the Rhine flows out of Germany into the Netherlands, a small stream unites with the river. This stream is the Ruhr. The valley of the Ruhr has much more coal than the Saar has. The Ruhr Valley became so great a manufacturing center that it was called "an ocean of buildings." Here, in a very small area, millions of people were crowded together.

To the coal fields of the Ruhr was brought iron from Lorraine. This created the greatest center of iron-and-steel manufacture in Europe. All sorts of iron and steel things were made there. These included locomotives, beams for bridges and buildings, tools, machines, and plates for steamships. The great Krupp mills, located in the city of Essen, were famous for the making of cannon. Other industries



Three Lions

This coal barge is being loaded with coal for export. Notice the modern loading equipment at this important industrial city on the Ruhr.

which depend on good coal clustered about the Ruhr. During World War II our air-men tried harder to damage the Ruhr than any other part of Germany because it supplied so much for German armies.

The industries of Saxony

Through deep mountain valleys the Elbe River flows into the part of Germany called Saxony. Saxony's coal field is smaller than other German fields, but to make up for it Saxony has great salt beds.

In this area is the old city of Dresden. Dresden has long been famous for its fine china. It has other factories also.

Less than a hundred miles from Dresden is Leipzig, one of the greatest printing cities in the world. Not only books but also maps and sheets of music come from the printing presses of Leipzig. For hundreds of years Leipzig has been famous for its fairs. Leipzig was once a great fur market.

The furs sold in Leipzig were brought from Russia.

The Rhine, Germany's largest river

The Rhine has long formed the boundary between France and Germany. From its source in Switzerland the Rhine flows for three hundred miles north through Germany. Across the Dutch border, the Rhine divides into two main branches as it crosses the Netherlands and finally empties into the sea.

During most of its course through Germany the Rhine is bordered by high slopes. For eighty miles along the Rhine these hills narrow into a deep valley. From the rocky hills the ruins of old castles look down. The slopes are covered with terraces which bear grapevines. Steamers crowded with passengers move up and down stream, passing busy barges.

The Rhine is dear to the heart of all Germans. One of their famous songs is "Die Wacht am Rhein," which means "The watch [or guard] on the Rhine." Ask your teacher to tell you the stories of the Lorelei and the Mouse Tower.

The Rhine is also a river for trade. From Antwerp and Rotterdam and from Central Europe come hundreds of barges bearing heavy goods. Large cities like Mannheim, Cologne, and Düsseldorf stand along its course. Factories dot its shores. The Rhine is a waterway of many uses. Canals connect it with the Rhone River, thus allowing barges to carry cargo all the way to the Mediterranean.

Stettin, a busy Baltic port

Ports are usually found at the mouths of rivers. At the end of the Oder is the port of Stettin. The warm water which keeps North Sea ports free of ice in winter

does not reach the Baltic. Stettin suffers from this and also by being far from the trade of the Atlantic. But before 1940 it was the busiest German Baltic port. Today Stettin is a part of Poland.

Hamburg, Germany's greatest port

About fifty miles from the mouth of the Elbe stands the large city of Hamburg. It was famous as one of the free cities that rose to importance in the Middle Ages. This city, the size of Detroit, Michigan, is Germany's greatest port and its second largest city. The canals which cross the city in all directions are lined by warehouses. To these warehouses small boats bring goods from the harbor. Here were built many German ships.

The river was too narrow for the largest ocean vessels to come up to Hamburg, so passengers and heavy freight were taken off at the mouth of the Elbe, at Cuxhaven. There were smaller ships or railroad cars to take them the rest of the way.

Hamburg is also a great shipbuilding center. It is famous, too, for its manufacture of such things as bicycles, sewing ma-

chines, carriages, textiles, ironware, and motor cars.

Bremen, a center of world trade

Bremen, not quite as large as Hamburg, occupies a place on the Weser River like that of Hamburg on the Elbe. Bremen too was one of the free cities of the Middle Ages. In modern times it became one of Germany's chief ports for international trade. Before World War II, it was important because of the products, such as tobacco, rice, and cotton, which it imported from America and tropical lands.

Berlin, a large world city

Between the Oder and the Elbe stands East Germany's capital and largest city, Berlin. In 1939 more than four million people were crowded within its limits. It was a great manufacturing center. Iron and machinery were important products.

The city is a little farther north than London. Because it is also farther from the ocean than London, its winters are colder. The land around Berlin is flat, with many streams and small lakes. In summer

This ship is being launched from a shipyard in Bremen. Situated on a good harbor forty-six miles from the North Sea, Bremen was once the most important port in northwestern Germany. During World War II much of its factory and port area was destroyed by Allied bombing raids.

Ewing Galloway





Combine

The great Brandenburg Gate stands at the beginning of one of the most well-known avenues in the world, Berlin's Unter den Linden (Under the Lindens). The Brandenburg Gate was built as a monument to Prussian military power. It was badly damaged in the air raids during World War II.

these are a wonderful playground for the people of Berlin.

Big, solid government buildings once gave an air of importance to the central part of Berlin. Berlin was badly damaged during World War II, as were many other German cities. After the war it became a divided city, as we shall learn later.

Munich, the capital of Bavaria

Bavaria is a state in southeast Germany. It was once a kingdom. Bavarians enjoyed their peasant dances, their mountain climbing, and their good music.

Munich, the capital of Bavaria, is one of Germany's large cities. It stands on a

high plain not far from the Alps. This is the greatest center of German beer brewing. It has always been a gay and friendly city.

The Bavarians like to visit the Alps, so near them on the south. They wear leather "shorts," with broad embroidered suspenders, and short jackets. They put on green hats, each with a chamois tail resembling an upturned shaving brush stuck into the band. In these gay costumes they climb the steep paths and roam about the clean mountain villages.

One of these villages, Oberammergau, was world famous for its Passion Play, which used to be given once every ten

British Combine



This farmer in southern Germany plows his field at the foot of snow-covered mountains. Almost half the people here get their living from farming. The tourist industry is also important. Many people come to see the beautiful mountains and lakes and take part in winter sports.

years. In this play, which told the story of the trial and sufferings of Christ, the villagers themselves played the parts.

GERMAN FARMING

Germany was mainly a manufacturing country, but farming was also important. Very little food had to be imported to feed the German people. Let us see why.

German farming methods

Hans Kellner owned a prosperous farm in the southern part of the German plain. We visited this farm and asked Hans to tell us about farming in Germany.

"We are proud," said Hans, "that our country, so thickly settled, can raise most of the food we eat. How do we do this? First, we use almost all of our land. Some of our land is sandy or marshy, so we drained the marshes. Then we chose crops to suit the soil, and we enriched the soil. Almost every kind of land is suited to some special kind of crop. The good farmer decides what will grow best on his land and plants those crops."

Sugar production in Germany

Hans showed us over his large farm. The soil in this part of Germany is good for raising beets. The government encouraged the farmers to raise them. It was a German scientist who discovered that a certain kind of beet was especially sweet. By careful work, the Germans developed and raised beets so full of sweet juice that they were one sixth sugar. Before World War II, Germany made enough sugar for its own people and some to sell to other countries as well.

On Hans's level fields women and children pulled out the weeds to give the beets a better chance to grow. After a beet crop



Three Lions

A group of Bavarian dancers in their national costume take a rest during a dance exhibition.

is harvested, the land is in fine condition for grain. Hans liked to raise wheat. Other farmers on poorer ground raised rye. This is a favorite grain in Germany, for Germans are fond of rye bread.

Other important products

Before us stretched a big field of potatoes. The climate and soil of Germany are good for the raising of potatoes. However, the Germans eat less than half their crop. They feed raw potatoes to their pigs and their cows. Sometimes they make the potatoes into fine flour by cooking, drying, and grinding them. They then mix the flour with other flour to make bread. From potato starch is made a kind of alcohol that can be used instead of gasoline as an engine fuel.

The Kellner farm had many pigs. About two thirds of Germany's meat is pork.

Germany usually raises more pigs than any other European country except Denmark. To fatten his pigs, since Germany's climate

is not hot enough to grow corn, Hans raised barley. The Germans also use many bushels of barley for brewing beer.

GERMANY AND WORLD WAR II

For fifteen years after World War I ended, Germany lived under a democratic government. But because the German armies had surrendered before the Allied soldiers reached German soil, the Germans stated, "We were not defeated."

THE NAZI PARTY

Many German leaders began to say that Germany should again take a leading place in the world. Germany's nearly seventy million people, they declared, must have their "place in the sun." They must have "room for living." By this they meant that Germany must be once more as strong as it had been in 1914, and even stronger. The Germans began to build up their army once more. The leaders organized a new party, called the National Socialist German Workers' Party, or Nazis.

The Nazi party in power

Adolf Hitler became *Fuehrer*, or leader of the country. He was a dictator just as Mussolini was in Italy. He declared that Germany must gain greater and greater power. He cried out that the Germans were a superior people, "a master race."

By one bold and cruel step after another, Germany built up its power. Hitler organized the whole nation for war. Sports events were not held for pleasure but to produce hardy soldiers. In school children were taught that Germany should be made strong. They were trained to love marching, parading, and fighting. They were not allowed to think for themselves. Instead

they had to accept the teachings of the Nazis without question and to obey them blindly. Thus the young people grew up with hate and fear in their hearts.

Life under the Nazis

The freedoms which our Constitution set up for us were not permitted to Germans. Newspapers could publish only the news that the government permitted. People were not allowed to speak their minds. Secret police were always on the watch to arrest anyone who did not follow Hitler's teachings blindly or who failed to salute the *swastika* emblem on the Nazi flag. The swastika was a cross with the ends bent at right angles. There were many prison camps. In closely crowded areas behind barbed-wire fences the Nazi leaders placed those who disagreed with them. Such camps were called *concentration camps*. In the concentration camps were confined men, women, and children who had been dragged from their homes because they had displeased the Nazis in some way. Many prisoners died through torture or starvation. Hitler believed that if all the people who opposed the Nazis were killed off, so much the better.

The other nations of Europe looked on anxiously while Germany prepared for war. They could not believe that Hitler would carry out his program of conquering Europe. They did not want war again, and they granted many things to Germany in the hope that war might be avoided. France fortified itself behind a strong line

of defenses. Great Britain increased its fleet. But Germany was not stopped by their actions.

THE STORY OF WORLD WAR II

Six years after coming to power, Hitler and his advisers felt strong enough to begin the conquering of Europe. Hitler's dreams were bigger than those of Alexander or Napoleon, and his armies were great.

The beginning of World War II

To strengthen Germany, Hitler began to seize land from his neighbors. Early in 1938 Nazi troops marched into Austria and made it a part of Germany. Later in the same year they took over part of Czechoslovakia, a small neighboring country. Mussolini brought Italy to the German side.

So it happened that in 1939 Germany marched to war, its soldiers singing this marching song:

"Today we own Germany
Tomorrow the whole wide world."

World War II, the most terrible in history, had begun.

Under Hitler, Germany had become the most powerful nation in Europe. As German armies rushed forward, it looked for awhile as though Hitler would be successful. Italy, Hungary, Rumania, and Bulgaria joined Germany. Spain also was friendly to Germany. Sweden, Switzerland, and Portugal did not join either side.

Great Britain, France, Russia, the United States, and many small countries sent armies against Hitler. These nations were known as the Allies.

German armies took over a great part of the continent. One nation after another fell. Some of the countries were united

with Germany. Some were merely controlled through puppet heads, rulers with no real power. Russia had made a pact with Germany which kept it out of war for a time. But in June, 1941, Hitler suddenly turned his armies against Russia also. In all Europe only Great Britain was left to oppose Hitler.

The great struggle

In 1941 the United States was drawn into the struggle against Germany. The Latin-American countries also joined in. The Allies were slow in gathering their forces together in order to strike a telling blow. But by 1944 the tide had turned. The Allies landed troops on the Italian peninsula. In the middle of the summer Italy was forced out of the war. By 1945 the Russians were driving from the east into German territory.

The Nazis had promised their people that Berlin should never be touched by a bomb. For many months, however, the Allied bombing planes brought ruin to most of the great German cities. They

From Cologne Cathedral can be seen a famous Rhine bridge, destroyed in World War II.

Three Lions



very fearfully damaged Berlin, Hamburg, Dresden, the Ruhr cities, and many other places. American soldiers under General Dwight Eisenhower marched into Germany. The American flag flew over the remains of once-proud German cities. Like ancient Assyria, Germany learned the truth of the saying, "Those who take the sword shall perish by the sword."

The end of World War II

In May, 1945, Berlin was in flames. The Russians were clearing out the last German troops that resisted. All Germany was in the hands of the Allied forces. Most of the principal German cities had been bombed into rubbish heaps. Adolf Hitler had died in Berlin. It was the end of World War II in Europe.

GERMANY AFTER WORLD WAR II

After Berlin fell, millions of Germans surrendered. The Nazi government ended and Germany had no government of its own. The Allies took charge.

A DIVIDED GERMANY

The Allies took away part of eastern and northeastern Germany. Some of the land went to Russia, whose troops had taken it in battle, and some went to Poland. The Oder River valley and the city of Breslau became part of Poland.

The rest of Germany was divided by the Allies into four parts, called zones (see the map, page 367). Russia governed the eastern part. South Germany, including Bavaria, was under the United States. The British controlled the northwestern part. The French had a small area in the southwest along the Rhine.

The Berlin airlift

The Allies divided Berlin into four areas. Russia, Great Britain, France, and the United States each controlled an area. But Russia controlled the land around the city (see the map, page 367). This meant that the western nations could reach their part of Berlin only by going through territory which was in Russian hands.

After the fall of the Nazi government, German money became worthless. New money was needed. But Russia and the western nations could not agree on what kind of money should be used and who should print it. Finally the western Allies decided to issue new money for use in their part of Germany.

Russia struck back by trying to force the western Allies to leave Berlin. A Russian blockade of the city was set up. No rail or road traffic was allowed to enter Russian territory from the west. The people in the western part of Berlin had imported their food and fuel from western Germany. Because of the blockade they were in danger of starving.

The United States and the other western Allies refused to give in to Russia. They sent supplies into Berlin by air. This system was called the "airlift." For almost a year the western part of Berlin was supplied with food and fuel by the airlift. A plane carrying supplies arrived every three minutes during the day and night. Even severe winter weather could not keep the British and American airmen from reaching the city. Finally, the Russians saw that they could not force the Allies out of Berlin. They gave up and lifted the blockade.

The Communists in East Germany

As soon as the war was over, Russia began to make eastern Germany into a Communist country. Only German Communists were allowed to hold positions in the government. Secret police were organized to spy on people. Former Nazi concentration camps were used to imprison those who did not support the Communists. Some were sent away to concentration camps in Russia.

German factories were taken apart and shipped to Russia. Some of the food produced in this region was sent to Russia. Much was also used to feed the Russian armies who lived among the Germans to keep order. Life became very hard there.

In 1949 elections were held in East Germany. But the elections were not free. The people could vote only for Communists. East Germany had become a puppet state under strict Russian control.

These maps show the same area of Europe. What changes has Germany undergone since 1914?



Western Germany after the war

Western Germany was divided into three zones. These zones were under the control of the armies of the United States, Great Britain, and France. But these nations wanted to build up the country and make their part of Germany a democratic nation. They did not take away German factories as Russia had done in the east. They helped rebuild the bombed cities and brought in food for the Germans. They set up schools to educate the German children to become good citizens.

TWO GERMAN NATIONS

After four years under Allied control, the people of western Germany were allowed to form their own government. In 1949 a constitution was adopted and a new government, called the German Federal (National) Republic, was started. Its head is a president. Its capital is at Bonn, a

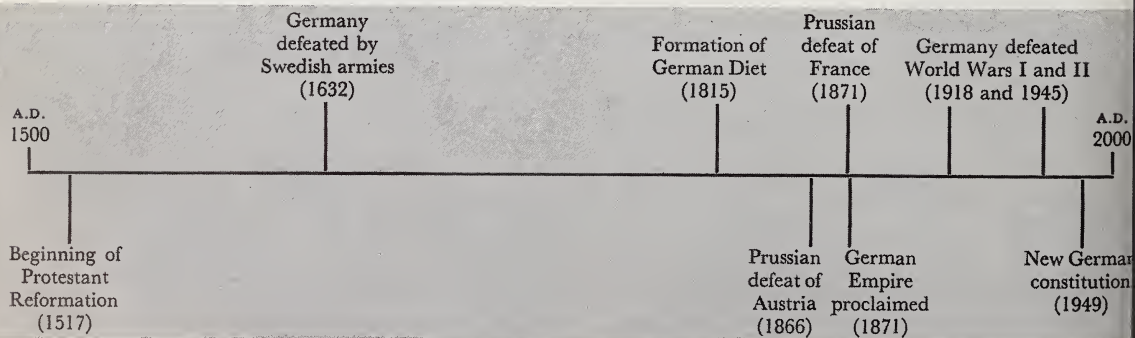
small city on the Rhine. Free national elections were held for the first time since before Hitler rose to power.

The German Federal Republic has made good progress. It has rebuilt many of its bombed cities. Its people are prosperous. The United States has encouraged and helped the young nation. It is becoming a law-abiding member of the family of nations.

In East Germany the German Communists set up a government called the German Democratic Republic. But this government is not a democracy. It does not have free elections. The voters must vote only for the officers chosen by the Communist party. It is really a dictatorship under Russian control.

The Germans want a united country. But efforts to reunite Germany have failed because the western nations and Russia cannot agree on how this can be done.

Time-Line: Germany (1500 A.D.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Can You Answer These?

1. What European nations fought on Germany's side in World War II?
2. How did Germany treat the nations it conquered during World War II?
3. How did the Germans use lignite?
4. Why did Germany need so much more iron ore than its own mines produced?
5. Why is the Saar Valley thickly settled?
6. Into what river does the Ruhr flow?
7. Why was the Ruhr region an important bombing target during World War II?

8. How is it possible for barges on the Rhine to reach the Mediterranean?
9. What two reasons explain why winters in Berlin are colder than those in London?
10. How did Germany become a great industrial nation?

Words and Terms You Should Know

lignite	swastika
Fuehrer	concentration camp

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 4. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A cross with the ends bent at right angles, used on the Nazi flag
2. A crowded area behind barbed-wire fences, where the Nazis placed those who disagreed with them
3. Soft, brown coal
4. The title used by Hitler as dictator of Germany

Learning from Maps

1. On the map of Europe, page 145, locate: (a) the countries occupied by Germany just before World War II (b) the countries that fought on Germany's side (c) the countries that Germany attacked and occupied during the war (d) the neutral countries.
2. On the map, on page 355, locate each of these places: Munich, Lorraine, Dresden, Leipzig, Bonn, Berlin, the Saar Valley, Hamburg, Bremen, and Essen. Tell one important fact about each.
3. Four large rivers flow north through Germany. Locate them on the map. Into what body of water does each flow?

Making a Time-Line

To the time-line for Germany add other important events mentioned in the text and in the pictures at the opening of the unit.

Can You Identify These?

Number a piece of paper from 1 to 9. Opposite each number write the name that corresponds to the description.

Beethoven	Ruhr
Elbe	Oder
Munich	Mendelssohn
Goethe	Wagner
Hamburg	

1. A German composer who wrote an opera based on *Midsummer Night's Dream*
2. The chief city of Bavaria
3. Germany's greatest manufacturing region
4. The greatest German opera composer
5. A great composer of symphonies
6. The river between Germany and Poland
7. The river on which Hamburg stands
8. Germany's greatest port
9. The author of *Faust*

Interesting Things to Do

1. To your list of words derived from place names add: *frankfurter*, *hamburger*, and *cologne*.
2. The operas of Richard Wagner, based on stories drawn from German folk tales, are often sung in America. Ask your librarian to help you find some of these stories. You might like also to read the stories in Grimm's *Fairy Tales*.
3. If you like to read you might enjoy one of these books that describe the heroism of children under Nazi occupation: *Twenty and Ten*, by Claire H. Bishop; *Wings for Nikias*, by Josephine Blackwood; and *Wings for Per*, by Ingri and Edgar d'Aulaire.

Things to Think About

Read again in Unit 6 the story of Mussolini's rule in Italy. In what ways did Mussolini and Hitler think and act alike? Why did these men fail? What other dictators that you have read about have also failed? What conclusions can you draw?



William Tell and the winning of Swiss independence—1307



Johann Strauss playing at the court of Austria — about 1850



Battle scene which led Dunc to found the Red Cross in 18



The Swiss oath of union—1291



Invasion of Magyars—about 900



Countries of Central Europe

14.

In this unit we shall learn about five countries of Central Europe. These are Switzerland, Austria and Hungary, Czechoslovakia, and Poland. In recent years, as we shall find out, some of them suffered great changes.

Let us take an airplane and follow the course of the Rhine southward. We see many long barges driven by their own engines. We pass beautiful farms and vineyards. Off to our left lies Germany's famous Black Forest, where whole villages once earned their living by making toys.

Then, at the place where the Rhine, flowing from Lake Constance, turns very sharply from west to north, we reach the city of Basel. We are in Switzerland, the land of the Switzers, or Swiss.

Switzerland is often called the "heart of Europe" because it lies almost in the center of the continent. It borders on Ger-



President of Czechoslovakia
taking the oath of office—1918



Paderewski, great pianist and
first premier of Poland—1919



Communists seizing power in a
part of Central Europe—1948

The Countries of Central Europe

many to the north, France to the west, Italy to the south, and Austria to the east.

Our state of Indiana is more than twice the size of Switzerland. Most of Indiana is good farm land, but about half of Switzerland is so mountainous that it cannot produce any crops except evergreen trees. Yet Switzerland supports more people than Indiana does. Two thirds of the Swiss live on a plateau in northern Switzerland. Here are the cities of Bern, Zurich, and Lucerne. In this region are fine orchards and grain fields. But we still wonder how so many people can live in this small mountainous country.

After leaving Switzerland, we shall fly eastward to the beautiful city of Vienna, the capital of Austria. Because Austria and its neighbor Hungary were for many years united as an empire we shall consider them together.

We shall then visit two neighboring countries, Czechoslovakia and Poland. The history of the Czechs and of the Poles is the story of brave people who fought for freedom and who have given great men to the world.

The following pages will answer these questions:

1. How did Switzerland begin as a nation? What is life like in Switzerland today?
2. How did Austria and Hungary become an empire? What happened to them after the world wars? What gifts did these countries give the world?
3. What is the story of Czechoslovakia as a nation? What famous men has this nation given the world?
4. What is the story of Poland? Who were some of its famous citizens?

THE STORY OF SWITZERLAND

Geography always has an important influence on the history of a country. Let us see why this is true of Switzerland.

THE GEOGRAPHY OF SWITZERLAND

As you can see from the map, Switzerland is a mountainous country. It is also a land of sparkling lakes and rushing rivers. From the melting glaciers in one part of the Swiss Alps, streams flow in four directions. To the north flows the Rhine. To the west the Rhone rushes toward France. On the south the Ticino flows into Italy. Eastward the Inn River hurries to join the Danube.

The importance of mountain passes

Suppose that an early traveler crossing a continent came to a range of mountains. Instead of climbing to their very top to cross them, he would look for an opening, or *pass*, through the range at a lower level. Wherever there are passes through mountains they aid greatly in the building of highways. These natural paths are important in history, especially in a mountainous land like Switzerland.

The steep and high Alps stand like a wall dividing the Mediterranean lands from Central Europe. As the cities in Germany, Belgium, and the Netherlands grew,

land highways for trade with the south were needed. Road builders examined all the passes through the Alps to see which were at low enough levels to form a part of highways.

At a point in the southern Alps a pass was found which led toward the Italian lake region. This pass, called the St. Gotthard Pass, was to prove important in Swiss history.

The St. Gotthard Pass

The St. Gotthard Pass offered a direct road from Germany to Italy. Travelers from Germany could reach the Lake of Lucerne without going over high mountains. Following a stream which flowed into Lake Lucerne they arrived at the St. Gotthard Pass. On the other side of that pass, a valley led them to the Ticino River and then to Italy. This was the only point in the mountain wall of the Alps where a single pass led from one country to the other. The highway leading through this pass became an important trade route in the Middle Ages.

A road was first built through the St. Gotthard Pass some time after the year 1100. In those days the king of the German states also claimed Italy and therefore called himself the emperor. The emperor

Lohner from Combine



This great horn is called an alpenhorn. Blowing it is an ancient art among the Swiss mountaineers. They still use it to play some old Swiss melodies.



Switzerland is a land of beautiful scenery with its many lakes and high snow-capped mountains. What mountains are in western Switzerland? What two lakes named on the map are entirely inside Switzerland? What lakes form part of the borders with Germany and France? What countries surround Switzerland? The Swiss have never needed a navy. What reason for this does the map show?

naturally wished to be sure that the pass would not be seized by some powerful nobleman who could block the road if he wished. So he put the Swiss who lived around the Lake of Lucerne, in three districts called *cantons*, in charge of the pass. The people of these cantons liked this arrangement, for it meant they had to serve no lord except the emperor himself. The German emperor was far away. They still had freedom.

HOW THE SWISS BECAME INDEPENDENT

The three cantons were proud of their freedom. As time went on, however, they began to be afraid that they would lose it. Their fear was caused by the rise of a powerful family whose stronghold, called

Hapsburg (meaning "hawk's castle"), was in the mountains above Lake Lucerne. The Hapsburg family seized more and more land until finally they reached out toward the free cantons. The people of these cantons feared that the emperor could not protect them from the powerful Hapsburg family.

Union of the three forest cantons

The leaders of the three cantons met in a mountain meadow. They promised to work together and to fight if necessary to keep their freedom. The union of the three cantons was the beginning of the nation we now called Switzerland. One after another, more cantons and some free cities joined the first group.

Defeat of the Hapsburgs

The Swiss of the three united cantons had to fight to keep their freedom. The Hapsburg family, against whom they had united, gained more and more power in Europe. They ruled Austria, a country to the east of Switzerland, and they claimed many other lands. For two hundred years powerful armies from Austria attacked the Swiss from time to time. But in one great battle after another the Swiss defeated them. During this struggle the Swiss took over much land to the south of the St. Gotthard Pass. Some of this land is included in Switzerland today.

The Swiss have always been known for courage and good discipline. The Swiss cantons as a government would not take sides in any war, but bands of Swiss used to hire out to fight for other nations. These Swiss troops were so worthy of trust that the kings of France used to employ Swiss soldiers to protect them. These soldiers were known as the Swiss guard. Even today the Pope maintains a bodyguard of Swiss soldiers at the Vatican.

A fountain in one of the main streets of Bern has two bear statues. This animal is almost sacred in Bern, whose name means "bear."

Janion from Cushing



Switzerland as a republic

Switzerland today is a republic made up of twenty-two cantons. Its government is like our own in many ways.

Switzerland has been a republic for more than six hundred years. It is the oldest republic in the world.

For many years the agreement sworn to in the meadow was the only constitution Switzerland had. In 1848 a new constitution was written. Under it Switzerland became a republic much like the United States. The capital of Switzerland is Bern.

The Swiss plan of government is modeled on our Constitution. The twenty-two cantons elect two Houses of Congress, as we do, and the voters choose a president. Swiss laws are published in three languages—German, French, and Italian. These are the languages spoken in different parts of Switzerland today.

We meet a young Swiss citizen who tells us how proud he is of his government. "Here it is easy," he explains, "to make our opinions felt. Because this is a small country each voter can know a great deal about the persons who run for office. Our government does not allow its citizens to accept any medals or titles from foreign governments, and it does not give any itself.

"We believe strongly in education. Our country has seven universities. Many students come from foreign countries to attend them. Our mountains were mainly responsible for Switzerland's not being invaded in the two world wars. Our army is small but well trained. After his training period each soldier takes his rifle home so that he may be prepared to answer his country's call at a moment's notice. Is there any other country that trusts its soldiers in this way?"



Compare this altitude map of Europe with the map on page 145 and find the parallels of latitude between which this map lies. On what parallel are Belgrade and Bucharest? The broken line across the Caspian Sea is sea level. It proves the Caspian and Dead Seas are alike in one way. What is it?

THE CITIES OF SWITZERLAND

Three important cities of Switzerland to which we shall pay visits are Zurich, Lucerne, and Geneva. All three cities are situated on lakes.

Zurich, the largest Swiss city

Our guide in Zurich is Jean Morac. Jean is a young Frenchman whose family found refuge in Switzerland when the Germans invaded France in World War II. Zurich is a city a little larger than Atlanta, Georgia. Jean shows us that Zurich has many factories. Because most of these factories are run by electricity, produced by water power, Zurich does not have much coal smoke.

Zurich is also a noted center of learning. Its university, Jean tells us, is one of the greatest in Europe.

Lucerne, city of the three cantons

Jean goes with us to Lucerne, a city on a winding narrow lake among the mountains. These mountains overshadow almost the whole length of Lake Lucerne.

We decide to go for a sail on one of the lake steamers. From the deck of our boat we can see railroads leading to the top of many of the mountains. A fine highway, part of it cut out of solid rock, runs along the shore.

Jean points out the place where, according to an old story, the Swiss led by William Tell opposed the cruel Hapsburg tyrant. In the end Tell is said to have shot

the tyrant with his crossbow. The shop windows of Lucerne are full of wood carvings showing Tell with his crossbow. Do you know the story of Tell and the apple?

"I'm sorry to say," remarks our friend, "that the historians have not been able to find William Tell mentioned in the records. But we know there were many brave men in Switzerland during the struggle for freedom. Ahead of us you can see the meadow where the members of the three cantons took the famous oath of union."

At the far end of the lake we reach the point at which the St. Gotthard Highway begins. Here we might take an automobile and drive on a good road to Italy. But there is a quicker way. The train goes through a tunnel under the pass. This takes much less time than following the winding road over the pass itself.

THE LION OF LUCERNE

This famous statue by Thorwaldsen is carved in solid rock at Lucerne. It honors ten Swiss guards killed while defending King Louis of France in the days of the French Revolution.

Metropolitan Museum of Art



The St. Gotthard tunnel is almost ten miles long. This and other tunnels serve as important trade routes leading from Switzerland to Italy, Greece, and on to the Middle East.

Geneva, an "international" center

The Lake of Geneva, which is about fifty miles long, is the largest Swiss lake. At its lower end lies the city of Geneva. More foreign visitors come to the beautiful city on Lake Geneva than to any other Swiss city. This is because many *international* organizations have had their headquarters in Geneva. *International* means "among nations." Later in this unit we shall learn about some of the organizations of nations which have had a home here.

Geneva lies on a strip of land which extends along the Rhone into France. Part of the lake shore is French territory. A favorite excursion from Geneva is a trip to view the great Mount Blanc, or "White Mountain." Mount Blanc is king of the Alps, for it is the highest mountain in the Alps. It is higher than any peak in the United States if we do not count Alaska.

HOW SWITZERLAND BECAME PROSPEROUS

Switzerland is a landlocked country. That is, it is a country that has no seacoast. It has little farm land and no coal, iron, oil, or other minerals. Yet the Swiss are comfortable and prosperous. How is it done?

Switzerland, a manufacturing nation

Nearly half the workers of the country are engaged in manufacturing. We all know Swiss cheese and Swiss chocolate.

Swiss watches and clocks are famous. All over the world the watches made in Switzerland are prized for their high quality. The Swiss have to import most of their raw material, so they use it in making valuable articles.

A lens for a camera or for field glasses does not take much glass, but it does require skill in workmanship. Scientific instruments have to be made with such care that they are usually expensive. A watch is a small article which takes little material to make, but it must be put together with great skill. These special kinds of manufacturing, and many more, the Swiss have developed.

The beautiful city of Geneva is built on the shore of Lake Geneva. A bridge crosses the narrow point where the Rhone River leaves the lake. The snow-covered peak in the background is Mt. Blanc.

Ewing Galloway



The Swiss also manufacture heavy machinery. They make many electric locomotives. Most of their machinery is for home use because Switzerland is a land of water power. As the snow and ice melt gradually and flow down the mountains, they become waterfalls. These waterfalls furnish the power for making electricity—which is sometimes called the “white coal” of Switzerland.

Before World War I, Switzerland imported coal. It was so hard to get coal during the war that the Swiss decided they would no longer depend on it. So they built great dams and developed the water power they needed. Now Swiss factories and trains are run by electricity.

The famous hotels of Switzerland

For many years people from other lands have visited Switzerland in the summer. To take care of their guests the Swiss built hundreds of hotels. The tourists bring a great deal of money into the country. The Swiss have made it easy to view the fine scenery. They built an electric railway by which visitors can reach the top of a high mountain and return for dinner at a hotel far down into the valley. For people who like to do mountain climbing, experienced guides stand ready to lead them up to the snowy, rocky peaks. At some points overnight shelters are provided.

In recent years winter sports have brought many travelers to Switzerland. There are skiing and bobsledding. Some of the valleys, hemmed in by mountain walls, are so protected that it is not necessary for people to bundle up when they exercise even on a winter's day. The dry air is healthful also. Winter sports give employment to many people who live in and near the hotels.



Janion from Cushing

This Swiss watchmaker has to be very skillful in his workmanship. For hundreds of years Swiss watches have been known the world over for their great beauty and their accuracy.

The products of Switzerland

The Swiss are good farmers. On the plateau of Switzerland it is warm during the summer. The Swiss can raise enough fruit and potatoes to serve their needs, but much of their food has to be imported.

Around the larger lakes, such as Zurich and Geneva, the slopes facing the sun are lined with terraces covered with grapevines. No other country has vineyards at so high a level above the sea.

Both in the valleys and high on the mountain slopes the sure-footed dairy cattle feed. They graze on the green pastures at the very edge of snow fields and glaciers. Herds of goats eat the grass in places too steep for even Swiss cattle to climb safely. Goats produce much milk, and the milk is very rich. Again we see that the Swiss make good use of what they have.

HOME OF INTERNATIONAL SOCIETIES

After World War I a group of countries who were interested in preventing war

formed the *League of Nations*. Switzerland was the only country allowed to join the League of Nations without promising to help punish nations that broke the rules of the League. Because Switzerland has never taken sides in the wars of other nations, it has been the meeting place for nearly one hundred international organizations. An international organization is one made up of the representatives of many nations.

The Red Cross Society

One scorching day in June about one hundred years ago, there was a fierce battle in northern Italy. Tens of thousands of wounded French, Italians, and Austrians were left to die on the battlefield for lack of medical help. Most of them had no one to give them even a drink of water.

A young Swiss businessman, Henri Dunant saw the battle. Dunant was greatly troubled about the conditions of the poor

soldiers. He worked desperately to relieve them, but one man could do little for so many sufferers.

When Dunant returned home, he organized a group who were interested in helping wounded soldiers and prisoners of war also. This was the beginning of the Red Cross Society. From the Swiss flag, with its white cross on a red background, came the idea for the Red Cross flag, which is a red cross on a white background. Other nations organized Red Cross societies also. In time, the Red Cross Society became an international body.

Today the International Red Cross Society has its headquarters in Geneva. Most of its thousands of workers are Swiss who serve without pay. The International Red Cross Society watches over the welfare of all prisoners of war. It sends workers to inspect the places where they are imprisoned. It sees that such prisoners get letters and packages addressed to them

Three snow-covered Alpine peaks provide a splendid background to this peaceful Swiss scene. The cattle are grazing in summer pastures high on the mountainsides. In the distance is a Swiss chalet.

Swiss Federal Railroads



and notifies the families of the prisoners where their loved ones are. It traces persons who have been driven out of their country as a result of war.

The International Red Cross Society is respected by all nations. The movement to prevent needless suffering in war has been joined by seventy-one nations who have bound themselves to follow the rules set up by the Red Cross. Red Cross workers know no nationality when on their errands of mercy. Our own American Red Cross and Junior Red Cross stand ready to help sufferers in peace as well as in war. Can you list some of the fine things which these societies have done to aid those in need?

The League of Nations

The League of Nations had its home in Geneva. At the end of World War I, President Woodrow Wilson insisted that there should be an association of all nations to prevent another such terrible struggle. The League was formed, and about sixty nations joined it. The white marble building in which the League held its meetings looked out upon a beautiful blue lake.

For twenty years the League carried on much useful work. But it was not strong enough to keep the nations at peace. Certain countries did not follow the advice of the League. They seized one region after another. Finally, some of them left the League. At the beginning of World War II, men had to admit that the League had failed in carrying out its main purpose, that of keeping the peace.

The world now has an organization something like the League, called the *United Nations*. The United Nations was formed at the end of World War II. The home of the United Nations is in the United States.



Swiss National Tourist Office

Switzerland makes up for its lack of coal and oil by using power supplied by mountain streams. Huge dams make electricity which runs factories and trains in Switzerland.

What we can learn from Switzerland

Our study of Switzerland has shown us how well democratic ways of living can work. Its people of French, German, and Italian blood are a united nation, just as we are in the United States.

In a naturally poor land the Swiss have developed ways of living which have almost done away with poverty and ignorance. They have shown how a nation may become prosperous by making the most of what it has.

Switzerland presents to the world an example of peace and mercy. Those driven from other lands through no fault of their own find refuge among the Swiss. Switzerland is a republic which has really made democracy work.

THE STORY OF AUSTRIA AND HUNGARY

In 1914 the map of Europe showed a large country near the center of the continent. On the west it touched Germany and Switzerland. On the east it bordered Russia. This was the empire of Austria-Hungary, a country as large as Texas.

Today Austria and Hungary are only a small part of their former size. How did these changes come about?

THE EMPIRE OF AUSTRIA-HUNGARY

The Hapsburgs, with whom the Swiss had so much trouble, were an active and grasping family. They made themselves masters of a large area in Central Europe. Prussia, as we have learned, finally overcame the Hapsburgs and became the head of the German states.

Union of Austria and Hungary

The Austrian ruler, however, made a pact with Hungary by which the two countries were united. The twin empire consisted of Austria on the west and Hungary

on the east. Each had its capital on the Danube, Vienna for Austria, and the double city of Budapest (Buda and Pest) for Hungary. Each of the two countries had a parliament and managed its own home affairs. But in matters dealing with foreign countries they were united. The empire of Austria-Hungary had just one army and navy.

Although such a partnership plan was new to Europe, it worked fairly well as long as there was a strong ruler at the head. Austria had manufactures, but because it was a mountainous country it could not raise the food it needed. Hungary was mostly farming country and needed manufactured articles. The two countries exchanged their products, and both profited by the trade.

The people of the empire

In their desire to gain land, the Hapsburgs over a long period of time had brought many smaller states under their

The royal palace at Budapest stands on a hill overlooking the broad Danube River. It is in Buda on the west side of the river. Buda is the older and more beautiful part of the city of Budapest.

Three Lions



rule. Austria was a strange assortment of peoples. Within its borders were Germans, Czechs, and Poles, Italians, Serbs, Rumanians, and Slovaks. There were many other peoples, so many that even in the Parliament at Vienna it was all right to speak any one of eleven languages. Hungary, too, had a variety of peoples and languages within its borders.

The Hapsburgs were Germans and tried to make the empire as German as possible. The Czechs and the Poles were not Germans and did not wish to become so. They were Slavs. In southern Austria there were other Slavs—millions of them—who did not like the Germans. They felt that the Germans treated them as “under people.” This mixture of peoples proved to be Austria-Hungary’s weakness.

The beginning of World War I

In June, 1914, the Austrian government sent Archduke Francis Ferdinand, heir to the throne, on a tour along the Serbian border. The Serbs, who are Slavs, had no love for Austria. At a little town in southern Austria the archduke was shot and killed by a Slav, a young student who sympathized with the Serbs. The Austrian government demanded that Serbia take the blame. Now is the time, Austria thought, to bring Serbia under its power. When Serbia did not immediately agree to all of Austria’s demands, Germany backed Austria. Russia began assembling its troops to defend the Serbs if necessary. The kaiser also assembled his troops and declared war. Soon other nations were drawn in, and later the war became world wide.

Division of the empire

World War I lasted four years, from 1914 to 1918. In the end the proud nations



Ewing Galloway

In Innsbruck this Austrian woodcarver and his wife carve small wooden ornaments and toys to sell to tourists who visit the resort town.

of Austria, Hungary, and Germany were defeated.

Austria-Hungary was hard hit by World War I. Just before the close of the war almost all of the “under peoples” of the empire were in rebellion. Hungary declared itself independent. When the war ended, the Allies at the peace conference in Versailles (see page 357) took away much of the land that had belonged to the twin empire. It divided the empire into two separate countries.

AUSTRIA IN RECENT TIMES

After World War I, Austria became a little country about the size of Maine. Four former Austrian provinces were made into a new country called Czechoslovakia. Most of the manufacturing plants



AUSTRIA-HUNGARY IN 1914 AND 1920

The map at the left shows the empire of Austria-Hungary as it was in 1914 before World War I. The map at the right shows the same part of Europe with the empire broken up after the war. What new countries are shown on the second map? What important Austrian seaport was given to Italy?

owned by Austria were now in Czechoslovakia. The Austrian seacoast on the northern Adriatic and the big seaport of Trieste now belonged to Italy. Another new country called Yugoslavia (inhabited by Serbs, Croats, and Slovenes) now included what had been the Austrian seacoast on the southern Adriatic. Hungary no longer traded freely with Austria. Austria, having lost its trade, began slowly to starve.

Austria united with Germany

The new Austrian nation had hoped to become a state in the new German republic which was set up after the war. But the Allies forbade a union of Germany and Austria.

For a few years Austria struggled along, but soon the League of Nations had to help the country. The Allied Powers lent Austria money on which to live. But Austria's affairs did not improve. Finally Hitler, against the orders of the League, marched his troops into Austria and made it a part of Germany. At the time that may have pleased the Austrians, but it did not

bring back Vienna's importance. Now the Austrians were ruled from Berlin, and other cities of Europe had the trade that Vienna formerly had.

Austria after World War II

After the defeat of Germany in World War II, Austria became a separate country again. But it was not given independence. A military government took control of the nation. Allied soldiers under the United Nations were stationed in Austria for many years. In 1955 the Allied nations withdrew their troops. Austria became an independent republic.

THE EARLY HISTORY OF HUNGARY

To understand Hungary's story, let us look at its early history.

The settlement of Hungary

During the unsettled times of the Dark Ages, a host of horsemen from the Russian plains rode across the Carpathian Mountains. They saw before them more plains with few inhabitants. Down into these plains along the Danube they rushed and

took possession. These invaders called themselves *Magyars*.

But the Huns, fierce tribes who also came from Asia, had settled in this valley earlier. From them the region gained the name of Hungary.

The kingdom of the Magyars

The Magyars formed the kingdom of Hungary, which for a time was the strongest state of Central Europe. Then the nobles began to quarrel and fight among themselves, and the country grew weaker and weaker.

In came the Turks and gave the Hungarians a terrible defeat. Pushed back against Austria, the Hungarians asked for Austria's protection. They received it, but they became, as a result, a part of the Hapsburg empire. For many years the Turks gave much trouble. On two occasions they reached Vienna, but they were turned back. Since that time many other groups of people have come into Hungary. But the Magyars have continued to be the leading group.

HUNGARY IN RECENT TIMES

Like Austria, Hungary lost a large portion of its territory after World War I. Present-day Hungary is about the size of our state of Indiana.

The products of Hungary

Most of the land of Hungary is flat. In winter bitter winds sweep across it, but in summer the weather is hot. The climate makes the raising of corn profitable here. The Danube Valley, including parts of Hungary, Rumania, and Yugoslavia, is Europe's corn belt. After World War I, Hungary lost much of its corn-producing land.

In the United States, as you know, the region called the corn belt has rich, level land, with fat pigs, cattle, and poultry. All these products are raised in the Hungarian corn belt, though not so plentifully as in the United States. The climate is not quite so favorable for corn as the climate of our own corn belt. Droughts are frequent.

In the drier part of the plain, away from the Danube, there are many cattle. The Magyar cowboys ride well. They do not look like our cowboys, but they are experts in rounding up their cattle.

Winter rains bring moisture enough for Hungary's large wheat fields. By railroad and by barge on the Danube the grain is carried down to Budapest. Here grain elevators store it until it is made into flour.

Budapest, a twin city

Buda, on the west side of the Danube, was once a German stronghold on a rocky

Ewing Galloway

Many cattle are raised on the wide plains of Hungary. Here two herders and their dogs stand beside a small pond while their cattle graze in the distance. If the pond should dry up, the well sweep will dip up water from the well.





James Sawders-Combine

In this peasant home the woman at the left wears the elaborate national dress. Hungarians like gay colors in clothing and in their homes.

hill overlooking the plain. Pest, on the east side of the river, is a modern city which has spread out on the lowlands along the Danube. The old city of Buda and the new city of Pest united to form a community of a million people. Budapest is the capital of Hungary and its only really important city. It is often called "the Minneapolis of Europe," because of its many flour mills.

Hungary in World War II

Hungary was torn by political troubles. The people could not decide on a king. At last a dictator came to power.

With other nations which had dictators, Hungary joined Germany and Italy in World War II. In so doing, Hungary hoped to get back the land it had before 1918. But it chose the wrong side.

Hungary after World War II

After World War II, when Germany went down to defeat, Hungary lost more

of its territory. Beautiful Budapest was a ruined city. All this was a hard blow to Hungarian hopes. Following the war, Hungary was occupied by Russian troops. Today it has a Communist government and is under the control of Russia.

The Hungarians have never given up hope of regaining their independence. In 1956 the people showed their unrest by an uprising against their Communist masters. But the Russians sent troops into Hungary, shot many of the Hungarian patriots, and took many away to concentration camps. The revolt showed that Russia continues to rule Hungary with an iron hand.

MUSICIANS OF AUSTRIA AND HUNGARY

As we wander about old Vienna, we meet a pleasant-faced young Austrian with a roll of music in his hand. He is glad to talk to us. To Karl Aussig nothing is more interesting than music.

"The people of Vienna," says Karl, "like to enjoy life. And what can be more enjoyable than good music? For a long time Vienna has been a city of musicians.

"Who are these musicians? I'll begin with Franz Josef Haydn, who was called 'Papa' Haydn long before he was old. He was employed by a rich Hungarian nobleman. This nobleman helped him build up the best orchestra in Europe. Haydn composed a large number of symphonies. A symphony, as you know, is a musical piece with many different parts. To play a symphony a large orchestra is needed. In his symphonies Haydn showed how the sounds of many instruments could be blended in a pleasing way."

Mozart, the child wonder

"What would you think of a boy of four who could compose little musical pieces of

his own?" Karl asks. "That is what Wolfgang Mozart did. Two years later, as a small boy of six with long flaxen hair, he played in the palace at Vienna. The emperor himself sat by his side on the piano bench.

"Salzburg, a city near the boundary line of Austria and Germany, was Mozart's birthplace. Mozart began writing music at an early age. After composing more than six hundred works, Mozart died of a fever at the age of thirty-six. He died poor and without receiving honor while he lived.

"We know now that Mozart's work will never die. It is like his own character, gentle and charming. You will enjoy hearing some of his operas, for example, *The Magic Flute* and *The Marriage of Figaro*. The city of Salzburg is now famous for its yearly Mozart festival, visited by music lovers from near and far."

Schubert, a natural songbird

"Many persons think," Karl continues, "that Franz Schubert is the musician who best represents Vienna. Schubert wrote operas and symphonies, but he is chiefly remembered for his tuneful songs. He died poor at the age of thirty-one. The world still sings Schubert's songs. They came from his heart, and they reach all hearts.

Have you heard his 'Erl King' and the 'Song of Love'?"

Vienna, the city of the waltz

"No doubt you have heard 'On the Beautiful Blue Danube' waltz many times," Karl says. "This well-liked waltz was written by Johann Strauss. It was meant for people to dance to, and it succeeded!

"The Strauss family, father and sons, were all fine musicians. For many years Johann Strauss, the father, played dance music at the Austrian court. He knew how difficult it is to make a living as a musician. So he wanted his sons to do some other kind of work. But all three of his sons took up their father's profession, and all became famous.

"Today we remember his son Johann best. He is called the 'waltz king.' With his orchestra he traveled through Europe, winning applause for his lovely tunes."

Liszt, and his folk dances

"Franz Liszt had two musical gifts," Karl tells us. "He could play the piano wonderfully well. He was also one of the first to put the Hungarian folk dances into music that all Europe loved. His Hungarian melodies are still enjoyed."

James Sawders-Combine

The Austrian Parliament buildings stand on the Ring, Vienna's most famous and beautiful boulevard. The Ring was built where the ancient city walls once stood. It forms a circle surrounding the inner part of the city.



A QUICK QUIZ

Can You Answer These?

1. What countries border on Switzerland?
2. Why has the St. Gotthard Pass been important for hundreds of years?
3. What is a landlocked country?
4. How is Switzerland governed?
5. How have hotels helped Switzerland?
6. What crops are raised in Switzerland?
7. Why do many international organizations have their homes in Switzerland?
8. How was the Red Cross Society formed?
9. What can we learn from the Swiss?
10. What happened to Austria after World War I? After World War II?
11. Why is Budapest called a twin city?
12. What river flows through Vienna and Budapest?

Can You Choose the Right Answer?

Complete each sentence below by choosing the words that make it true.

1. In Switzerland many people speak:
(a) German (b) Spanish (c) Polish
2. "Twin city" is a name given to:
(a) Vienna (b) Geneva (c) Budapest
3. The present Communist government in Hungary is under the control of:
(a) Russia (b) Prussia (c) Austria

4. Hungary was invaded in early times by:
(a) Finns (b) Magyars (c) Saxons
5. Hungarian folk dances were written by:
(a) Strauss (b) Liszt (c) Schubert
6. The chief river of Austria is the:
(a) Rhine (b) Seine (c) Danube
7. There are cowboys in: (a) Switzerland
(b) Austria (c) Hungary
8. The League of Nations had its home in:
(a) Geneva (b) Lucerne (c) Bern
9. The capital of Switzerland is:
(a) Zurich (b) Bern (c) Geneva
10. The largest city in Austria is: (a) Salzburg (b) Innsbruck (c) Vienna

Who's Who

Number a paper from 1 to 6. Next to each number write the correct name.

Henri Dunant	Johann Strauss
Franz Schubert	William Tell
Franz Josef Haydn	Wolfgang Mozart

1. The composer of *The Magic Flute*
2. A famous songwriter of Vienna
3. The Swiss hero from an old story
4. The founder of the Red Cross
5. The symphonic composer, called "Papa"
6. The "waltz king"

THE STORY OF CZECHOSLOVAKIA

We are always sorry when we learn that a young man or woman, of fine appearance and excellent character, has passed away. We think how much good that person might have done if he or she had lived. In such a way we think of Czechoslovakia today. We shall see why.

THE EARLY HISTORY OF THE CZECHS

The land of the Czechs was once called Bohemia. Bohemia was a square body of

land pushed, as it were, into German territory. It was protected by mountains on the three sides toward Germany. On the southwest were the highlands of the Bohemian Forest. To the northwest were the Ore Mountains. On the northeast rose the Sudeten Mountains.

At one time the kingdom of Bohemia was the most important country in Central Europe. Even after it lost its freedom, it was important to the Hapsburg Empire.



This map shows Central Europe as it is today. What important mountain ranges are along the borders of Czechoslovakia? What area which was once part of Czechoslovakia is now shown as part of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics? Through what countries does the Danube River flow? What important cities are located on it? The boundaries of Poland have changed many times. By looking at the map can you tell why? What river is the boundary between Germany and Poland?

Who are the Czechs?

The people of Bohemia were Slavs. These Slavs had come from the eastern plains of Europe, the land later called Russia. They were a people whose language was unlike the languages of western

Europe. Pressing westward, they reached the shores of the Baltic Sea and the Adriatic Sea.

The land of the Czechs, almost surrounded by mountains, was a natural fortress. The kingdom of Bohemia grew

strong. The Moravians, a people living to the east, united with the Bohemians. Bohemia became a highly civilized country. During the Middle Ages important trade routes passed through the Bohemian capital of Prague. One of the oldest universities in Europe was established in that city. The people of the country were known to the world as Bohemians, but they called themselves Czechs.

The religion of the Czechs

Some of the Czechs did not agree with all of the teachings of the Roman Catholic Church. When their religious leader, John Huss, was burned at the stake, the people rose in rebellion. Bloody wars followed and laid waste Bohemia and large parts of Germany.

After a time most of the Czechs went back to the church of Rome. But one branch of those who called themselves Hussites, or followers of Huss, set up their own church. They called themselves the "Moravian Brethren." In later years many Moravians came to America and settled in Pennsylvania. Do you know what towns the Moravians founded there?

The Czechs under Hapsburg rule

Unfortunately for the Czechs they quarreled and fought among themselves. They lost their strength. Finally they came under Hapsburg rule.

After a time the Czechs rebelled against the Hapsburg emperor and chose a Protestant king. His reign was short. In history he has been called the "winter's king." After one short year the Czechs were defeated. The king fled, leaving the country to the Hapsburg emperor. The Czechs lost most of their rights. But they never gave up their desire to be free.

CZECHOSLOVAKIA AS A NATION

Bohemia was under the rule of the Hapsburgs until 1918, when Austria-Hungary was defeated in World War I.

The birth of the new nation

At the end of World War I, the Czechs were freed. A new country was created by the treaty of peace following that war. This was Czechoslovakia, a long narrow piece of land, taken partly from Austria and partly from Hungary. Beside Bohemia and Moravia, Czechoslovakia included Slovakia and Ruthenia. It reached as far east as the Carpathian Mountains.

The new nation had many problems to solve. It had a mixed group of people. Half of the fifteen million inhabitants were Czechs, about one fourth were German, and one sixth were Slovaks. Each of these groups spoke its own native language. Czechoslovakia's task was to unite these different peoples just as Switzerland had with its people.

Ewing Galloway



Although a team of horses may still be used to pull them, Czechoslovakian farm machines are fairly modern. In this picture a well-to-do farmer is cutting wheat.

Bohemia had much manufacturing and was a farming land also. Moravia was almost entirely farming country. In their long struggle for freedom the Czechs had made themselves different from the restless eastern Slavs. They were quiet and law-abiding. They developed their own ways of living, for their Slavic language set them apart from western Europe. As one traveler said, "They seem proud that their language is hard to pronounce."

Prosperous Czechoslovakia

The Czechs were the natural leaders of the new nation. They had great respect for education, for they realized that a people without education cannot progress. The Slovaks and other peoples to the east had almost no schools. For hundreds of years Hungary had done little or nothing to build schools.

So many languages were spoken in Czechoslovakia that it was hard to provide schools for all. The Czechs decided that wherever a language group made up one fifth of the people of a community it must have a school of its own. After it was started, the work of teaching the peasants went on rapidly.

Before World War I, Bohemia made most of the manufactured articles used in Austria-Hungary. The Czechs now set to work to develop their manufactures. They had coal and iron, forests and farm land, and they used these to good advantage.

Czechoslovakia exported sugar made from beets, much beautiful glass, china-ware, machinery, chemicals, and large quantities of woven goods. One of its businessmen studied United States shoe factories and went back to make his country an important shoemaking country. In producing novelties, such as beads, toys,



Ewing Galloway

These Moravian girls wear colorful costumes even to carry water from a barnyard well to the house. From these costumes can you see why Moravians are known for their fine handwork?

and costume jewelry, Czechoslovakia became very skillful. Whatever the people wanted to buy, the Czechs would make.

The problems of Czechoslovakia

You will remember that about one fourth of the people of Czechoslovakia were Germans. Since the Czechs had been so anxious to have a nation of their own, you might ask why they should consent to have so many Germans in it. The reason was that in one part of Bohemia bordering Germany lived many people of German blood. These Germans were well educated and prosperous. The Czechs were unable to get them to move out. The Germans, on the other hand, did not like to have Czechs at the head of affairs.

The conquest by Hitler

For twenty years Czechoslovakia went its way, following the motto of its leading historian, "We must educate ourselves and



Ewing Galloway

The old royal palace and cathedral in Prague stand among government buildings near the Moldau River. Certain parts of Prague look like any modern American city, but visitors to the older parts of the city feel as if they were in the Middle Ages.

work.” But to the north, Germany’s dictator, Hitler, was gaining power. The Czech country (see map, page 387) separated him from German-speaking Austria. When he decided that the time was ripe, Hitler took over the land inhabited by the Germans of Czechoslovakia. These Germans wished to become a part of the “Fatherland,” as they called Germany, so they put up no defense. The Czechs were ready to fight Hitler, but France and Britain would not support them.

Made bold by his success, Hitler soon marched his troops into Prague and took over all Bohemia and Moravia. Concentration camps, in which persons whom the Germans disliked were confined, were set up in Czechoslovakia. Many Czechs were imprisoned. Hungary now took over Ruthenia. Only Slovakia was left to be independent in name. It was so small, so weak, and so backward that it could do nothing but obey Germany.

The rebirth of Czechoslovakia

Although Germany’s great military power crushed Czechoslovakia, the people never gave up hope. When Hitler took over the country, their president escaped to London. During World War II, he encouraged his people to look for the day when they should again be free. In 1945, six years after the Germans had taken over

the country, the Czechs were freed. Czechoslovakia as a nation was reborn.

Changes in territory were made. Ruthenia, which had been only a small part of the old Czechoslovakia, became Russian. Bohemia, Moravia, and Slovakia were united in the new Czechoslovakia.

The conquest by Russia

But the new freedom was not to last. Shortly after the end of World War II the Communist party, which had been secretly at work in Czechoslovakia, suddenly seized the government. They did this with the help of Russia. They then did everything that Russia told them to. So, although Czechoslovakia was called a free country, it had really lost its freedom for the third time. It was now under the control of Russia. Most of the Czechs do not wish to serve Russia. They want freedom.

FAMOUS MEN OF BOHEMIA AND MORAVIA

Czechoslovakia has had some famous men. Let us learn the stories of two of them, a Moravian and a Bohemian.

Comenius, a great teacher

In Moravia lived a poor boy, Johann Komensky, whose name later was changed to the Latin form of Comenius. Although Johann did not enter school early, he still became a minister of a church.

Comenius felt that the schools should be improved. He wrote books to help students to learn. In some of his books pictures were added. These were the first picture books ever published. We are so used to seeing pictures in books that it is hard to imagine what books were like before Comenius's time.

Dvořák, a great musician

The city of Prague rivaled Vienna in its love for music. In Prague was born a peasant lad, Anton Dvořák, who was to make his native land famous in the world of music. He began early in life to make a living by playing in small orchestras and in cafés. He grew up among Bohemian peasants, and he learned to love their folk songs so much that he used them in many of his musical works. Such pieces as

"Moravian Duets" and "Gypsy Melodies" introduced his hearers to the life of peasant villages.

After having made himself famous in Europe, Dvořák was invited to come to New York as director of a music school. Should he accept? His simple life in Bohemia satisfied him. Perhaps he would not have agreed to come if he had not read Longfellow's poem "Hiawatha." Dvořák liked the description of Indian life in that poem so much that he decided to come to the New World.

The composer stayed in the United States for three years. In a symphony, called *From the New World*, Dvořák used some of the Negro and Indian melodies which he learned in this country. Perhaps his best-known composition is "Humoresque," often played as a violin solo.

THE STORY OF POLAND

About three hundred miles northeast of Prague is the large city of Warsaw. It stands in a fertile plain on the bank of the

Vistula River. This city has seen many foreign armies. More than once Warsaw has been partly ruined by enemy attacks.

Wide World Photo

Much of Warsaw has been rebuilt since World War II left the city in ruins. Cars, trucks, streetcars, and horse-drawn carts fill this wide new street. The building at the left was once the home of a Polish gentleman. It is now used as a government office. It is called the "tin palace" because it has a tin roof.



It is the capital of an old country that was cut apart, brought to life again, then strangled, and once more restored to life. That country is Poland, a nation which today lives under communism.

POLAND'S EARLY HISTORY

Just before our country gained its freedom from England the kingdom of Poland was the largest country, except Russia, in Europe. At that time the friendship of Poland was very important to other nations. But by 1770 those days had passed. Poland grew weak because the country lacked natural boundaries, and its people disagreed among themselves.

The boundaries of Poland

Look at the map on page 387. You will see that Poland lies on the north-central plain of Europe. On the north it stretches out to the Baltic, where the city of Danzig gives Poland a seaport. To the east and the west it has no natural boundaries such as mountains or bodies of water. Because of Poland's position, it has always been difficult to defend the borders against enemies from without.

The government of Poland

Poland was made up of many different peoples. In addition to the Poles there were Germans, Russians, and Jews. These groups had different interests, and they disagreed among themselves. To keep order Poland needed a strong government. Instead the government was weak. The Polish peasants were not much better than slaves. Every person who owned a little land liked to think he was a noble. There was a joke that the dog of a poor nobleman could not sit on his master's land without his tail reaching over another noble's land.

The Polish king had little power. He was elected by the Polish national assembly, which was made up of nobles. In the national assembly any member through his veto—that is, by saying, “I object”—could block any law. It was so hard for the nobles to agree that the meetings often broke up in disorder. Because the Poles could not work together Poland grew weaker and weaker.

The division of Poland

Three powerful neighbors of Poland realized that the country was weak. These countries—Austria, Prussia, and Russia—decided that each of them would take some Polish territory. They moved against Poland three separate times. The first slice of territory reduced Poland's land by one fourth. The second took still more land. The third wiped the country off the map. Poland was so weak that the invaders simply divided the country as they saw fit. As a result, Austria took over southwestern Poland. Prussia had the Baltic lands, with the city of Danzig. Russia got the greatest part of the Polish territory. Find these divisions, or partitions, on the maps on page 393.

POLAND IN MODERN TIMES

In 1918, after Austria and Germany had been defeated, the Allies made Poland a nation again. After nearly one hundred and fifty years of being divided Poland was now independent.

The republic of Poland

The new Poland reached to the Baltic, where the Vistula ended. Danzig, which stands at the Vistula's mouth, was inhabited by Germans, not Poles. But it was decided that Poland needed “a window

on the Baltic," and Danzig was that window. A strip of land fifty miles wide, laid out through German territory, gave the Poles a road to Danzig. This was called "the Polish *corridor*." (Corridor means "passageway.")

Most of the land of the new Poland was farming country. But in the part which Prussia (later Germany) had held, there were many factories.

The first head of the new republic was Ignace Paderewski, a Polish patriot and one of the world's great pianists. Poland began to prosper. Some of the large estates were divided among the peasants. These peasants began to practice dairying and animal raising as well as growing grain. Poland had large factories for the weaving of textiles. The city of Lodz came to be called "the Manchester of Poland."

Poland was once a powerful nation. But its warlike neighbors invaded the country and took part of it for themselves. After the third division, or partition, Poland disappeared as a nation. What three countries took slices of Polish territory? When was a new Poland, smaller than the old, restored?



The new country had received about one fourth of Germany's coal fields. This enabled it to smelt iron and to carry on manufacturing. It had rich zinc mines. Zinc is a useful metal. Melted with copper it makes brass. It is also important in making paints.

The problems of Poland

The new nation had certain problems to solve. The people were not used to working together. They were of different races and different languages. Germany on the one side and Russia on the other were unfriendly. So many political parties grew up that none was strong enough to elect officers to govern the nation. After awhile a military government, in which the head had the powers of a dictator, took control of the country.

The new division of Poland

For a long time Germany had depended on the Poles as farm laborers. Germany felt that much Polish land, including Danzig, should be returned to Germany. Six months after Czechoslovakia had been taken by the Germans, Hitler's soldiers marched into Poland without declaring war. The Polish army resisted. Britain and France had promised to aid Poland in case it was attacked. They declared war on Germany. But they were so far away that their armies could not reach the Poles in time to help them. In a few weeks the Polish army was defeated. Warsaw was in ruins.

When Germany had almost finished conquering Poland, the Russian soldiers marched in and took over eastern Poland. Poland had had twice as many people as Czechoslovakia. Of these, more than half lived in land taken over by Germany. But

the Poles had no rights. Dictator Hitler, who believed Germans to be superior to people of the Slavic races, declared that the Poles were fit only to be slaves. Between western Poland, held by the Germans, and eastern Poland, held by the Russians, the Nazis set aside an area for the Poles. Here the Polish Jews and all the Poles who could not be used as laborers were crowded together. Millions died in these concentration camps. This was a sad thing to happen to a restored country.

POLAND TODAY

At the end of World War II, Poland again became free, but it could not be the same Poland. Millions of Poles had died while Germany occupied the country. The Jews had suffered most. There had been several million Jews in Poland, and now only a small number were left. Russia, in order to give itself a greater hold on the Baltic Sea, took over the eastern part of Poland. In return, the Allies gave Poland the eastern part of Germany up to the Oder River.

The new Poland is smaller, but its people are almost all Polish. It now owns the whole course of the Vistula River between Czechoslovakia and the Baltic. It has Danzig and some other good ports, together with a stretch of seacoast. This change meant moving many Germans out of the new Poland and bringing in many Poles. Like Hungary and Czechoslovakia, Poland, too, has a Communist government which is under the control of its powerful neighbor, Russia.

SOME FAMOUS POLISH PEOPLE

Poland has had many famous people. Here we shall learn about five of them, four men and one woman.



Bettmann Archive

Copernicus studies the heavens from a rooftop. Although he followed a career in the church his main interest was always in astronomy.

Copernicus, a great astronomer

About the time Columbus discovered America, a Polish lad of eighteen entered the University of Cracow, in Poland. His name was Nicolaus Koppernick. It was later changed into the Latin form, Copernicus. Mathematics interested this young man most, but he also studied law and medicine. After awhile he was made a professor of mathematics in Rome. He continued his studies in Italy and later became a priest.

At that time most people believed that the earth was the center of the universe around which the sun, moon, and stars revolved. Many of them regarded it as sinful to hold any other idea. Long before this some Greek thinkers had decided that the earth moved around the sun. But this view had not been generally accepted.

After twenty years Copernicus finished writing a book on the motions of the heavenly bodies. In this book he declared that the earth and the other planets moved about the sun. Because he was afraid the Church would not approve his ideas, Copernicus withheld his book for many

years. When he finally decided to publish it, he was an old man. It is said that he died a few hours after seeing the first printed copy. Other scholars followed his ideas in studying the heavenly bodies. And so it happened that Copernicus, a Pole, became the "father of modern astronomy."

Chopin, a master musician

Frederic Chopin was born near Warsaw. His father was French and his mother Polish. While a child, he showed great talent for playing the piano. As he grew older, he gave concerts in Prague and Vienna. Finally he settled in Paris, where lived many musicians and composers. Among them was Franz Liszt, who became his closest friend.

Chopin's own music was chiefly written for the piano. Because it is dreamy and often somewhat sad it suggests the unhappy lot of his native country, Poland. Chopin had the good fortune to gain fame during his own lifetime. A musician said of one of Chopin's works, "This piece of music is so beautiful I could go on playing it forever."

Joseph Conrad, a famous novelist

A Polish boy wandered away from home at the age of thirteen and went to sea. For twenty years he was a sailor. When his ship first visited England he began to study English. Twenty years later, while recovering from a fever, he wrote the story of some of his adventures at sea. He wrote in English and sent the story to a book publisher in England. He was surprised when his manuscript was accepted. After this he wrote many stories.

The author's name was Jozef Konrad Korzeniowski. We do not need to pronounce his last name, for he dropped it

and was known as Joseph Conrad. His books are pen pictures of his own experiences. They are tales of the sea and strange lands and people. He is classed among the world's greatest writers of adventure stories.

Two great scientists

An intelligent Polish girl came to Paris to take up higher studies in science. One of her teachers, Pierre Curie, also wished to devote his life to making experiments in science. Before long they were married.

Pierre and Marie Curie were poor. While they were working on experiments, they were not earning money to live on. They almost starved, but they continued their work. They were interested in cer-

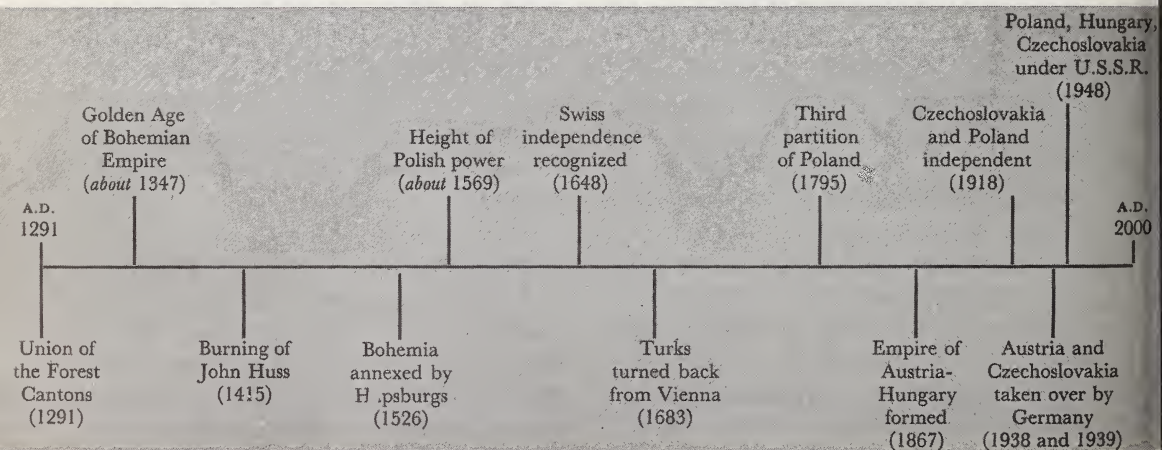
tain minerals that sent out wonderful rays. What material was this from which the rays came, they wondered.

After years of experimenting, the Curies discovered this material. They called it *radium*. Pierre died, but Marie Curie continued to find out more about radium. She became world famous.

Radium is used in many ways today. We all have seen objects, such as the hands of clocks, covered with radium paint so that they can be seen in the dark.

We owe much to Marie Curie, a Polish woman whose devotion to science gave us radium. The rays from radium are useful in curing and treating disease. But radium is still so scarce that it is one of the most costly substances on earth.

Time-Line: Central Europe (1291 A.D.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Can You Answer These?

1. What was the former name of the land of the Czechs?
2. Where was the first homeland of the Slavs?
3. When and how did Czechoslovakia become a nation?
4. What natural resources does the land of Czechoslovakia have?
5. What did Czechoslovakia export?
6. What is meant by natural boundaries? Did Poland have good natural boundaries when it was a great nation? Discuss this.

7. Which three countries divided Poland between 1772 and 1795?
8. When did Poland become an independent nation again? What brought this about?
9. Into what sea does the Vistula River flow? What large cities are on it?
10. What was the Polish Corridor? Why was it set up?

Words and Terms You Should Know

pass	international
canton	League of Nations
corridor	United Nations
radium	Magyar

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 8. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A natural path through mountains
2. A Swiss district or state
3. A term that means "among nations"
4. An international organization, formed after World War I, of nations that were interested in preventing war
5. An organization, formed after World War II, to give nations a chance to discuss their problems and to solve them peacefully
6. A passageway
7. A member of a tribe that invaded Hungary in early times and settled there
8. A mineral that sends out rays

Learning from Maps

1. On the map of Switzerland find the following places and tell why each is important: St. Gotthard Pass, Mount Blanc, the Rhine River, the Rhone River, and Lake Lucerne.
2. Look at the map of Central Europe (page 387) and answer the following questions:
 - (a) What rivers are important highways of trade through these countries?

- (b) Where are the best farming areas? Which country has the least amount of land suitable for farming? Why?

Making a Time-Line

Arrange the following events in the order in which they happened. First division of Poland; Austria defeated by Prussia; Austria-Hungary united; Austria added to Germany; Czechoslovakia a nation for the second time. Put these events on your time-line.

Can You Give the Reasons?

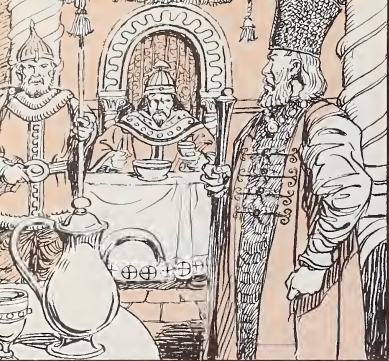
1. Bohemia and Poland were important countries long ago. Why did each country disappear as an independent nation?
2. Hitler's Germany caused the collapse of Czechoslovakia and of Poland. What excuse did Hitler use to seize Czechoslovakia and attack Poland?
3. "They hope someday to regain their freedom." Why can we say this about many of the Czechs, Poles, and Hungarians now living under communism?
4. Switzerland, the home of many international organizations, does not belong to the United Nations. Explain why.

Interesting Things to Do

1. Toward the end of 1956 the people of Hungary revolted against their Communist leaders. The revolt was put down with great cruelty. During the period of unrest, thousands of Hungarians fled to freedom. Consult your library for information to give to the class.
2. Plan a concert on records of music by Chopin, Paderewski, and Dvořák. Introduce each composer by presenting interesting details of his life.

Linking the Old World and the New

1. The Red Cross, which began in Switzerland, is now world-wide. How does the American Red Cross help people?
2. Why are Polish-Americans proud of Pulaski and Kosciuszko?



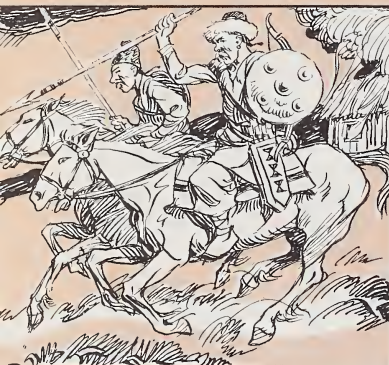
Court of the Russian emperor, Ivan the Terrible—about 1570



Peter the Great building a new capital at St. Petersburg — 1703



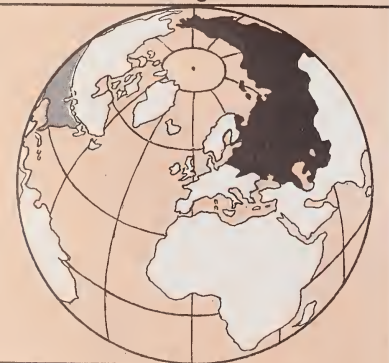
Building the Trans-Siberian Railroad—completed in 1905



Tatars invading Russia—1223



Norsemen settling in Russia—862

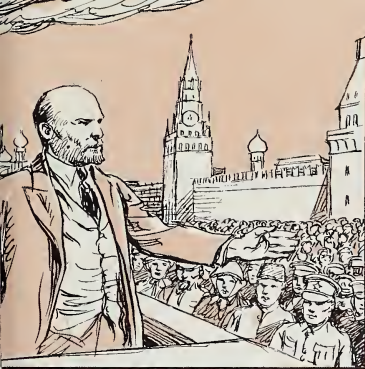


Russia (U.S.S.R.)

15.

What is the greatest solid mass of land in the world under one government? Today this large region is known as the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, or the U.S.S.R. Look at the map of the Eastern Hemisphere on page 13 and see what a great extent this nation covers. It is twice as large as the Chinese Empire ever was. It is nearly three times the size of the United States. When there is sunset on its western border, the light of a new day is appearing on its eastern edge.

The map on page 411 shows that the boundaries of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics on the south are formed by high mountain walls and the Caspian and Black seas. To the west it extends into Europe and touches the long arm of the Atlantic Ocean, called the Baltic Sea. On the north it loses itself in the icy Arctic Ocean. On the east it thrusts a great peninsula into



Lenin watching a communist parade in Red Square—1923



Germans defeated at battle of Stalingrad, in World War II—1943



Rebuilding the Dnieper Dam bombed in World War II—1946

Union of Soviet Socialist Republics

the Pacific Ocean stretching its length almost to North America. Here the continents are divided only by the Bering Strait. At this point only sixty miles separate the U.S.S.R. from Alaska, which belongs to the United States.

The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics is often called Soviet Russia. Before World War I, it was known as the Russian Empire. Many persons still call it Russia, and we shall sometimes speak of it in this way. Today it is made up of fifteen states, which are called republics, and its capital is Moscow.

Now look again at the physical map. It shows that this great mass of land is mostly a plain stretching west from the Pacific to the Baltic Sea and the Black Sea. The plain covers the northern part of Asia and Europe. As we know, this same plain continues across Poland, Germany,

Denmark, Belgium, and the Netherlands to the North Sea.

The only break in this enormous plain of the U.S.S.R. is made by the Ural Mountains, extending from north to south. East of the Urals is Asiatic Russia. The Urals are not high and are not difficult to cross. All parts of the U.S.S.R. are easily reached. This gives the people a feeling of unity.

This section will answer such questions as:

1. How did the Russian Empire develop?
2. What did Old Russia contribute to literature and music?
3. What conditions brought about the U.S.S.R.? What is life like there?
4. What is the importance of European Russia? What are its main divisions?
5. What is Asiatic Russia like?
6. What is Soviet Russia like today?

THE RUSSIAN EMPIRE

Not only did the Northmen turn to the North Sea on their sea raids, but they also sailed east along the Baltic Sea.

THE EARLY HISTORY OF RUSSIA

The people of northeastern Europe were Slavs. They began to move into western Europe about two hundred years before the fall of Rome and to settle in Russia.

The Norse kingdom in Russia

A few years before the vikings discovered America, a bold Norse leader named Rurik and his warriors moved into the land of the Slavs. They established a kingdom at Novgorod which lasted for hundreds of years. Some of Rurik's followers explored the country. Moving inland, they arrived at the Dnieper River, which led them southward. They conquered the Slavs along that river, took possession of Kiev, and made it the capital of the Norse possessions in Russia.

Rurik receives a group of Slavs at Novgorod. His costume is the kind worn by the vikings. Notice the viking ship riding at anchor near by.

Schoenfeld Collection from Three Lions



Bands of Northmen found their way to Constantinople, which they called Mickle-garth, or "Great Town." The emperor there picked his bodyguard from these brawny, fair-haired barbarians. In time the Norse-Slav kingdom of Kiev took up the Christian religion. Throughout rich southern Russia little governments grew up, some Norse, some Slav. They were ruled by dukes or grand dukes.

The Mongol conquest of Russia

Before Russia had a chance to become really civilized, a dreadful thing happened. From the eastern plains, known as *steppes*, came vast armies of yellow-skinned, narrow-eyed Mongol horsemen, called Tatars. They rode across the grassy, treeless steppes, conquering and destroying along the way.

The Russian states could not stand against the Tatar armies, and so they were conquered. For two hundred years Russia was overrun by the Tatars. They cared nothing about living and working together in cities or tilling the soil. They satisfied their needs by making the Russians pay *tribute*, or taxes. In spite of the tribute they received, their wild troops would often attack the Russian settlements.

THE OLD RUSSIAN EMPIRE

The Tatars ruled Russia for two hundred years. After this they gradually became weaker and less warlike.

The independence of Russia

Under the leadership of Ivan, the Grand Duke of Moscow, the Russians drove the Tatars back toward Asia. Ivan then took charge of the government set up by the

Norse many years earlier and laid the foundation of the Russian nation. Because of this he is sometimes called "Ivan the Great."

Russia's expansion into Asia

About a hundred years later another ruler by the name of Ivan came to power. He is known as Ivan the Terrible. As a warrior Ivan was merciless, often killing whole villages. He decided to call himself *tsar* or *czar*, from the Latin word for Caesar, meaning "emperor."

The nobles of the tsar's court imitated the Mongols, who had governed Russia so long. They wore long Chinese robes and turbans, making the court seem much more like Asia than like Europe. Their manners were rough. The nobles were coarse and cruel. In its ways of living Russia was not much like the countries of western Europe.

Ivan started many reforms, or improvements, which curbed the power of the nobles and helped the common people. He enlarged the borders of Russia, and the Volga became for the first time a Russian river. The land beyond the Urals was held by many roaming Mongol tribes. One of these tribes had its center at a place called Sibir. Rich traders of Russia received Ivan's permission to make war against this tribe. They gained the victory and sent word to the tsar that Sibir (or Siberia) now belonged to him. The city of Tobolsk stands where Sibir once stood.

From that time on, explorers and fur traders pushed their way eastward. In less than one hundred years, they had carried Russian power across Asia to the Pacific. Now this "second Russia" is as large as European Russia and the United States together. We shall learn about it later.

The rule of Peter the Great

Russia's greatest ruler was named Peter, who became tsar of Russia at the age of ten. Peter was a hot-tempered young person, intelligent, but coarse and cruel too. He knew that Russia was far behind other nations in education and ways of living. It was a backward land, cut off from the rest of the world.

As a boy Peter was so much interested in ships that he learned to build boats with his own hands. Soon after he came to the throne, Peter sent fifty young Russians to England, Holland, and Italy to learn European ways. Then he went to Holland himself and spent two years studying ship-building, navigation, and factories. When he returned to Russia, he took with him a group of men skilled in many lines of work. Russia was to be made over in spite of itself.

It took all of Peter's energy to put his plans for Russia into operation. He tortured and killed thousands of those who opposed him. He ordered the Russian nobles to shave off their bushy beards. He also made them put on European clothes instead of the long robes worn by the court since the time of the Tatars. He dropped the Old Russian calendar, which began the year on the first of September because that was the supposed date of the creation of the world. He replaced it with the Roman, or Julian, calendar (see page 181), which began in January.

Russia's seaport on the Baltic

When Peter became tsar, Russia had no seaport leading to the ocean. It was shut off from the Baltic Sea because Sweden held the land along the Baltic. Without such a seaport Russia could not trade or take part in world affairs. Peter made

war on Sweden, conquered the well-trained Swedish army, and seized the strip of land on the Baltic. Russia now had a "window" toward the west.

St. Petersburg, the new capital

Peter now decided that his country needed a new capital. The waters of Lake Ladoga reach the Gulf of Finland by a short river called the Neva. On the Neva, a few miles from the river's mouth, Peter began to build a city. The land around it was low and swampy. There was plenty of timber near by, but no stone.

As with Venice, the land was so marshy that long poles, or piles, had to be driven

into the ground to support the heavy buildings. Boats brought stone for building. In ten years Peter had a fine capital. He called the new city St. Petersburg, after himself.

Russia's seaport on the Black Sea

Peter wanted to extend his country as far south as the Black Sea, but he was not able to drive out the Turks. Later on, however, Russia did gain a seaport on that sea and so secured a second "window" from which to look out on the world. Before he died, Peter knew that Russia, though still backward, was on the way to becoming a great world power.

FAMOUS PERSONS OF OLD RUSSIA

Old Russia made some valuable gifts to the world. Perhaps you have heard music by Russian composers. Someday you may also read some of the books which describe life in Old Russia.

WRITERS OF OLD RUSSIA

About two hundred years after the death of Peter the Great, Russia had a period when literature flourished. Several writers of this time became world famous.

Alexander Pushkin

One of the brightest stars in all Russian literature is Alexander Pushkin. In his short life he wrote many of Russia's finest poems, novels, and plays. Because of some of his beliefs the Russian government sent him away to southern Russia. During his four years there he learned to write better than ever. The government welcomed him back and paid him to write a life of Peter the Great. When he was killed in a fight, there was great sorrow.

Leo Tolstoy

The best-known Russian novelist is Leo Tolstoy. His finest book is *War and Peace*. It tells of Napoleon's attack on Russia (see page 245), a bitter war in which the French army was finally defeated. The French were driven out, and the Russians won. But Tolstoy is more interested in showing that war is terrible than he is in telling about a Russian victory. Tolstoy was a nobleman, but he had sympathy for the poor peasants. He dressed like them, set up schools for them, and did all he could to help them.

MUSICIANS OF OLD RUSSIA

The Russians have always loved music, but for a long time their musicians were not well trained. Then the Russian composer, Anton Rubinstein, with his brother and some friends, established a music school in Russia. Russian music began to compete with that of other countries, and many Russian composers became famous.



Bettmann Archive

Anna Pavlova was one of the greatest dancers in the history of ballet. Here she dances in a scene from Tchaikovsky's ballet "Swan Lake."

Peter Tchaikovsky

A great Russian composer, who lived at the same time as Rubinstein, was Peter Tchaikovsky. He is famous for his operas and symphonies. He wrote more than a hundred songs. You would like "Nutcracker Suite" and "Sleeping Beauty."

Nikolai Rimsky-Korsakov

Another fine Russian composer was Nikolai Rimsky-Korsakov. The spirit of the Russian folk songs runs through his melodies. They are happy and lively tunes. Perhaps you have heard his "Flight of the

Bumble Bee," which sounds very much like the humming of a bee. His most famous work is a symphony based on *The Arabian Nights*.

THE RUSSIAN BALLET

The Russian *ballet* is known all over the world. A ballet is a dance which tells a story through bodily movements, or gestures, accompanied by music. A ballet is sometimes given as a program in itself. Sometimes it is a part of an opera, or it is performed between the acts of an opera or a play. Ballet dancers are highly trained, and their work has beauty and grace.

The best Russian painters of the day made scenery for the stage on which the ballets were presented. The result was a fine combination of music, dancing, color, and acting.

Anna Pavlova

The ballet reached its greatest glory in Russia in the work of Anna Pavlova. Anna Pavlova entered the ballet school at the court of the tsar when she was ten. She learned rapidly, and soon she was making up her own dance patterns. She danced so well that she toured Europe and the United States, where she delighted audiences with her dancing. Later she formed her own dance company.

Anna Pavlova's most famous ballet was "The Swan." In it, as she danced to music, she portrayed a dying swan.

THE UNION OF SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLICS

In Old Russia most of the people were uneducated and poor. They were held in the iron grip of the tsars. Many of those who asked the government to improve affairs were sent to Siberia as convicts.

Reforms were made at times, but Russia continued to be very backward. The tsar continued to rule Russia much as he pleased. There were some people, however, who had other ideas of how Russia

should be governed. They thought that the government should own and operate the factories, farms, railroads, and mines and that the workers should manage them. These people were known as *Socialists*. Some of the Socialists were willing to have the change come about gradually. Others wanted to bring it about all at once by revolution.

THE RUSSIAN REVOLUTION

In 1914, when World War I broke out, Russia declared war on Austria and Germany. At first, the Russians were successful against Austria, but later powerful Germany was able to cripple the Russian armies. While Russian soldiers were being slaughtered in battle, there was suffering and starvation in the cities.

How the revolution began

A severe shortage of food in St. Petersburg brought matters to a head. The city workmen went on strike. The soldiers who were ordered to fire on the strikers refused to do so. A revolution began. Officials of the tsar were removed from office, and some were imprisoned.

The tsar, who now realized that the army was not on his side, gave up his throne. Russia became a republic. Everyone was surprised that a government which had lasted so long and which had had such power proved to be so weak at the core. The tsar and his family were put in prison and later shot.

Results of the revolution

The people were tired of war. So Russia made peace with Germany and the nations who were fighting on Germany's side. It lost to them one fourth of its land and more than half of its coal and iron.

Soviets, or councils made up of peasants, workmen, and soldiers, took over the government. The soviets became powerful. In the end, a revolutionist known as Nicolai Lenin became the head of the government. Lenin's followers were called *Bolshevists*. The Bolshevists cried, "War to the death against landlords and capitalists. Everything must belong to the government."

The Bolshevists under Lenin went to work promptly and fiercely. They took over all the property of the rich. The nobles were stripped of their wealth, and their land was given to the peasants. Some were shot. Many were imprisoned or sent to Siberia. Others fled from the country. Secret police roamed the country and the cities, spying out those who did not support the Bolshevists.

Organization of the U.S.S.R.

The Bolshevists now called themselves Communists and began to wave the red flag which some revolutionists in other lands had used as a sign of revolution. They put on their flag a hammer and a sickle, representing the workmen and the peasants. Russia became a "soviet republic." St. Petersburg was no longer the capital, for it brought back memories of the tsars. Moscow, the old capital, again became the center of government.

Other soviet republics were formed through Moscow's influence and joined the Moscow republic to form the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics. Today there are fifteen of these republics, and Moscow is the capital. Some areas have not yet fully developed into republics.

HOW THE U.S.S.R. WORKS

After Lenin died, Joseph Stalin headed the Russian government. This leader was

born in Georgia, south of the Caucasus Mountains, which is now one of the soviet republics. Stalin became a dictator such as Germany and Italy had.

The "Five-Year Plans"

Stalin set up a program of work which was to be accomplished within the next five years. By means of this "Five-Year Plan" he hoped to make his country advance as most of the countries of western Europe had done. During this period the people of Russia would learn to use the coal, the oil, and the water power of the nation. The Russians would learn to use machinery and to make their own, to produce more food, and to build schools.

To carry out his five-year plan, Stalin, like Peter the Great, brought experts from other lands. American and German specialists were hired and given important posts in many large new plants. The Russians worked very hard. They underwent great hardships because of the difficulty of obtaining food and housing in the new industrial centers. At the end of this five-year period Russia was on the way to becoming a manufacturing country.

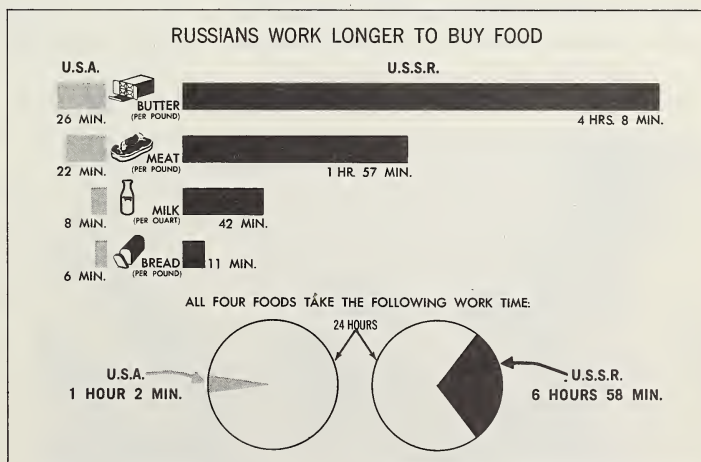
Other five-year plans followed. By the end of the third plan, in 1943, the "machine age" had come to Russia. Russia had grown strong at a faster rate than anyone outside Russia could have dreamed possible. After rebuilding the cities and factories which had been destroyed in World War II, the Russians drafted another five-year plan. This plan was devoted to building up their production and armed might.

Communism in the U.S.S.R.

In the Soviet Union the government is the boss. Under the Communist plan all workers are in the employ of the Soviet government. A person may own such things as books or a radio, but he cannot own a business. All the factories, mills, mines, banks, railways, and telephone and telegraph systems belong to the nation. That is, they are said to belong to all the people. Today in Soviet Russia a man or woman who is a highly skilled worker may make higher wages than another. But he can never have his own business and employ others to work for him.

Soviet Russia has only one party, the Communist party. Russians must choose

This chart shows you how long it takes a Russian worker and an American worker to earn the same amount of food. The Russian's time is shown in black, the American's in gray. The two circles show how much time each must work to buy all the articles pictured. Do you think the Russian people can afford to buy as many things as Americans can?



between voting for the candidates selected by the Communist party or not voting at all. The party decides all important questions. Only a small number of Russians belong to the Communist party.

Government matters are decided by a small but powerful group of men. Public discussion is forbidden on any decision made by the government.

The government cannot be criticized. People who say anything against it are put in concentration camps, where they work without pay. In every community of Soviet Russia a small group of Communist party workers see that the decisions of the government are carried out. Even members of the party are not allowed to question the party's decisions.

Education in Soviet Russia

Dictator Stalin knew the great power of education and the importance of training young people in the way he wanted them to think. Schools for all the republics became a part of the Russian plan. To build such a school system was a heavy task. Soviet experts had to develop alphabets for many of the different languages spoken in the U.S.S.R. They published books, trained teachers, and built schools.

In Russia today children attend a four-year primary school from the years of eight to twelve and a three-year intermediate school from twelve to fifteen. For those who complete this seven-year course there are high schools offering a great number of subjects. Nothing is taught in the schools that is not approved by the Soviet government. In fact, the only books, magazines, and newspapers that any Russian can read are those which praise Communist ideas and their government.

The names of many places in Russia were changed. For instance, St. Petersburg was called Petrograd, or "Peter's Town." (The early Communists did not believe in God or the church, so they dropped the "Saint.") Later Petrograd was named Leningrad, to honor Lenin.

How communism differs from democracy

Under the five-year plans Dictator Stalin undertook to make the Soviet Union more like western countries in certain ways. A dictator who has all the power can do much to change his country. But any man who has all the power may use it in cruel and unjust ways. It has often been said that the Soviet Union is built entirely on force and fear. It has no freedom.

Combine



In this Russian school the teacher is instructing the children in grammar. Boys in Russia usually wear their hair cut very short as do these boys.

The Kremlin, built of pale pink brick in the shape of a triangle, stands on the bank of the Moscow River. The tsar once held court here. Today officials of the Communist party have offices in the Kremlin.



Ewing Galloway

The United States was built on the idea that we, the American people, should govern ourselves and work out our own way of life. We think that a democratic government of this kind is better than communism. We are glad that there is more than one party in our country and that we are free to vote as we choose. We wish to have newspapers which will give us all the facts. We want to think for ourselves. In the United States we can make our own decisions. We have freedom.

LIFE ON A COLLECTIVE FARM

Russian farmers live and work on large farms called *collectives*. The collectives are owned by the government. They are run by groups of peasants.

How the collectives started

Before the revolution each peasant cultivated his own little piece of land. When the Communist government came into power, it did away with the private ownership of land. All of the peasants were forced to give up their farms and join the collectives. When some peasants resisted, they were executed. Others were sent to

concentration camps. Millions died of famine and disease.

How work is done on a collective

Russian collective farms are under strict government control. The government decides what crops are to be planted and how many acres are to be planted in each crop. On each collective the government supplies the tractors and other machines needed. After the workers have harvested the crop, most of it is taken by the government. The rest is divided among the workers according to the amount of work each has done.

Behind each house in the collective is a small piece of land which the members of the family may use in any way they please. Here they may plant a garden or keep a few cows, pigs, or chickens. If the family can spare any part of what they raise on this land, they sell it in the market.

The Russian farmer has none of the freedom of an American farmer. He cannot own the land he farms. He can plant only the crops the government tells him to. What he can keep for himself is only a very small part of what he raises.



This Russian family lives on a collective farm. Here they receive the grain due them for their year's work. Part of each crop is taken by the government as a tax.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words You Should Know

soviet	steppe
ballet	collective
tsar (czar)	Bolshevist
Socialist	tribute

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 8. After each number write the word from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A dance that tells a story through bodily movements and gestures, accompanied by music
2. A member of the political party that led the revolution and established the Communist government in Russia
3. A kind of tax
4. A treeless plain or grassland
5. A person who believes that the government should own and operate all factories, farms, railroads, and mines
6. The title of the Russian emperors
7. A large, state-owned farm in a Communist country
8. A council of peasants, workmen, and soldiers

Can You Answer These?

1. How many states, or republics, make up the U.S.S.R.?

2. What body of water separates Russia from Alaska?
3. How does the size of the U.S.S.R. compare with that of the United States?
4. Which people long ago invaded Russia from the West? From the East?
5. What did Ivan the Great and Ivan the Terrible do for Russia?
6. Why did Peter the Great attack Sweden?
7. What was the purpose of the "Five-Year Plans"?
8. What is a collective?
9. What is a ballet?
10. Who composed the "Nutcracker Suite"?

Can You Complete These Sentences?

Number a paper from 1 to 7. After each number write the word or words that will complete each sentence correctly.

1. U.S.S.R. means _____.
2. St. Petersburg is now called _____.
3. The _____ mountains separate Asiatic Russia from European Russia.
4. The capital of Russia is _____.
5. Peter the Great spent two years studying in _____.
6. People who tried to improve affairs under the tsars were sent to _____.
7. After Lenin, the dictator of Russia was _____.

EUROPEAN RUSSIA

European Russia is a very large region. It covers more than half of Europe. It is more than half the size of the United States. To go from its most northern point on the Arctic Ocean to the Caucasus Mountains on the south, a person would travel two thousand miles.

THE GEOGRAPHY OF EUROPEAN RUSSIA

Most of the great extent of land known as European Russia is one great plain. In the north reindeer graze. In the south there are camels.

The northern plains

The northern part of this plain is so cold that people cannot support themselves by farming. The part along the Arctic Ocean has almost no trees because of the bitter weather. *Tundra* is the name given to the treeless plains of the Arctic region. Moss, on which reindeer can feed, covers the ground. During most of the year the surface of the earth is covered with snow. The reindeer dig away the snow with their hoofs so that they can feed on the moss. In summer the snow melts, but at a short distance below the surface the ground is still frozen. For this reason most of the water cannot run off, and the region becomes a deserted swamp.

South of the tundra there are forests of evergreen trees. In the northern part of this forest the trees are small and somewhat scattered, but farther south the tree growth is thicker. Few people live in the far northern part of Russia.

The forest regions

From Leningrad southward the forest is different. Because the summers are

longer in this part of Russia the evergreen forest is mixed with broad-leaved trees such as oaks and birches. Many people live in these woods. They have cleared away much of the forest so that they can raise crops. This part of European Russia is called the *Open Forest*, or the Mixed Forest.

The farmers in this region of the Open Forest raise rye, oats, and potatoes. Most of the homes are log cabins. In winter, when the farmers cannot work in the fields, they cut down the trees. Later on they sell the lumber.

The grasslands of the south

The southern part of European Russia receives little rain. Trees grow only along the streams. Here are great stretches of grasslands, called steppes. The western part of the steppes, north of the Black Sea, has more rain than the eastern. There is not enough moisture for trees to grow well. But the farmers can raise wheat and big

This reindeer herdsman on the Russian tundra uses Eskimo dogs to control the herd. Note the furs he wears to protect him from the cold.



fields of sunflowers, whose seeds make good feed for animals.

Year after year the long grass of the steppes has fallen to the ground and decayed. The decayed grass, under special climate conditions, has caused large areas of these western steppes to have a fertile black soil. These fertile steppes are much like our wide plains of Texas. Most of the collective farms are in this region.

Russian winters are colder than those of western Europe. Regions which are inland have colder winters and hotter summers than those near the sea. Over all this great Russian plain the winters are cold. Moscow has a very long winter. The ground freezes in October and stays frozen until April. Even in the far south, along the Black Sea, snow may lie on the ground for a month or more.

You might think that the level surface of the Russian plain would make road building easy. But Russia has few good roads. One reason for the lack of roads is that Russian farmers live in villages, not on separate farms. They do not need as many roads as we do in our country. Another reason is that there is little stone or gravel to use as a good foundation for

roads. Many Russian roads are just a wide pathway which is very dusty in summer, muddy in spring, and rough in winter when the ground is frozen. Driving an automobile would be difficult on such roads, but few Russian farmers own cars. After the winter snows come, Russians can drive in their sleighs almost anywhere. Most farmers, however, do not go far from home.

THE LARGEST RUSSIAN REPUBLIC

Most of European Russia is a part of a republic known as the Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic (R.S.F.S.R.), whose capital is Moscow. This immense division stretches from the Baltic Sea on the west through the Ural Mountains, across Asia, to the Pacific. (See the map, page 411.) Leningrad and Moscow are its chief European cities, and the Volga is its great river in Europe.

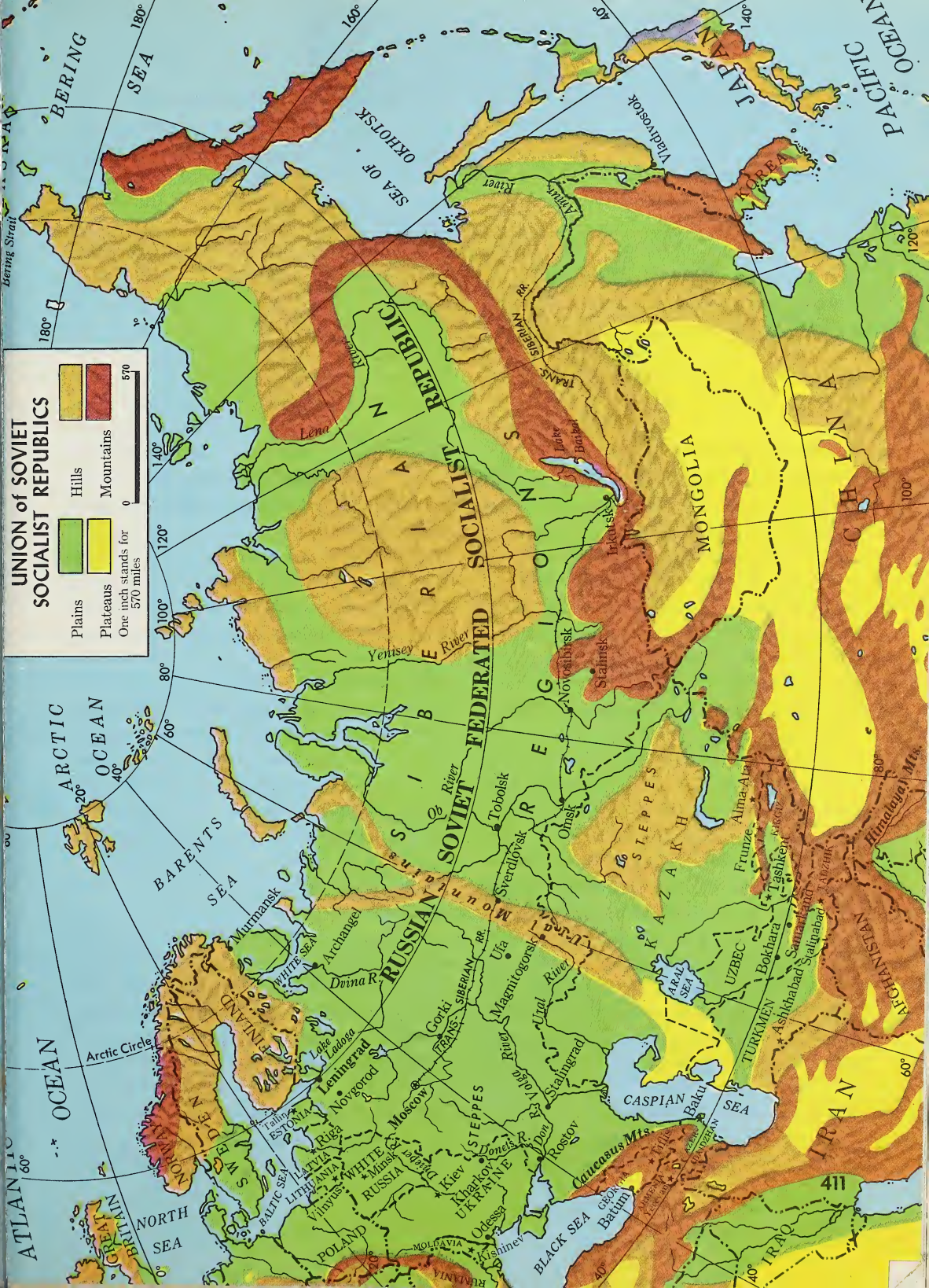
Leningrad, Old Russian capital

In the days of the tsars Leningrad or St. Petersburg, as it was then called, was the capital of the Russian empire. It was famous for its fine palaces and its broad streets, along the Neva River. Its winter

Ewing Galloway



Private homes line this canal, one of many in the city of Leningrad. In the distance is a church built in the Russian style with small onion-shaped domes. In another part of the city stands the little wooden house in which Peter the Great lived when he began to build his new capital.



**UNION OF SOVIET
SOCIALIST REPUBLICS**

- Plains
- Plateaus
- Hills
- Mountains

One inch stands for
570 miles



life was gay in spite of the cold. Sleighs drawn by spirited horses with chiming bells dashed along the avenues or along the frozen channels of the river.

Today Leningrad has almost three million people. Its many factories employ skilled craftsmen. Because it lacks supplies of coal and iron it cannot do heavy manufacturing. Its craftsmen make many scientific implements. These include field glasses, watches, and electrical instruments. A ship canal connects Leningrad with the Baltic Sea.

Moscow, capital of the U.S.S.R.

Moscow is a better place for a capital than Leningrad because it is nearer the center of European Russia. It is a city of almost five million people. Near the center of the city stands the *Kremlin*, a fortified castle in which the tsars lived before Peter the Great moved the capital to Leningrad. Since the Russian Revolution the dictators of the U.S.S.R. have lived in the Kremlin. Communist officials have offices there.

Outside the walls of the Kremlin is the large, open area called Red Square. Here the tomb of Lenin stands. In the square important celebrations are held. In the towers of the Kremlin a red star burns at night, as a sign of Communist government.

Moscow is now an important manufacturing city. Much heavy machinery, such as the building of locomotives and railroad cars, is made there. This is possible because supplies of coal and iron lie near by. Moscow has many modern office buildings and apartment houses.

The great river Volga

The Volga is the greatest river of Europe. Coming from the forests northeast

of Moscow, the Volga curves to the east, then flows south into the Caspian Sea. (See the map, page 411.) On the Volga and its branches, boats can travel for thousands of miles. Have you heard the "Song of the Volga Boatman"?

Even at its mouth the Volga is usually frozen for three months of the year. This means that for at least three months each year the river cannot be used by ships. When the snows melt in the spring, it overflows and covers the land with great sheets of water. In summer, however, the river is often too low for large steamboats to sail up stream. Still, it is a busy river for about half the year. On its banks are several large cities. The most important is Stalingrad, the "steel city." In Stalingrad, in one of the bloodiest battles of World War II, the Russian army stopped the oncoming Germans and turned the tide of the war. Later the Russians rebuilt the city.

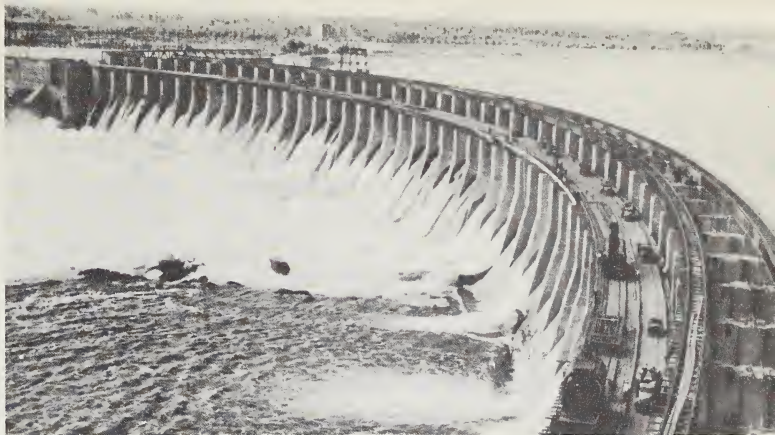
THE UKRAINIAN REPUBLIC

On the shore of the Baltic Sea is the soviet republic called Ukraine. Its capital is Kiev. Its great river is the Dnieper. The name *Ukraine* means "borderland." In early times this border region offered protection against the Tatars and the Turks. Here, too, in the days of Ivan the Terrible bands of horsemen, known as Cossacks, gathered together. The Cossacks, who were expert on horseback and with the sword, were famous in the defense of Russian borders. The Ukraine was independent for a short time following the Russian Revolution. But in 1923 it became one of the republics of the U.S.S.R.

Products of the Ukraine

The Ukraine was once known as the "bread basket of Europe." Three fourths

The Dnieper Dam with its electric power plant was destroyed by the Russians as part of the scorched-earth policy when Germany invaded Russia. After the war was over, the Russians soon began to rebuild the dam across the Dnieper.



of the soil of this republic is black earth, so rich and loose that farmers with wooden plows easily raise crops on it. Here great wheat fields flourish, making the Ukraine a famous wheat country. The Ukraine is also a "sugar bowl," for the sugar beet does well in this soil.

Spring in the Ukraine is short. The season soon passes from winter cold to summer heat. The long growing season allows farmers to raise corn. As we would expect in a corn-growing country, the Ukraine has more farm animals than any other part of Russia.

The Ukraine is also a center of coal and iron mining. Its coal reserve is immense. The Ukraine produces a large part of the Soviet Union's coal, steel, and machine goods. It is an important industrial area.

People of the Ukraine

The Ukrainians are a tall, strong, graceful people. They live well on their fertile farms. They are the second largest of the Slav groups and are proud of their long history. Kiev, you remember, is one of the oldest cities in what is now the U.S.S.R. The Ukrainian language is quite different from the language spoken by the people of Moscow.

Rivers of the Ukraine

Through the middle of the Ukraine flows the Dnieper River. The Ukrainians speak of the Dnieper as "Father Dnieper." "What would we do without him?" they ask. The Dnieper is indeed a large stream, the third largest in Europe. It is about the length of our Arkansas River and carries more water than the Arkansas. On the Dnieper the Russians constructed an enormous dam. Then they built along the Dnieper a chain of giant factories that used the electric power developed by the dam. When the Germans invaded Russia in World War II, the Russians themselves blew up this dam so that it would do the Germans no good.

On the Dnieper stands the city of Kiev. Around the city are vegetable gardens and orchards. Kiev has many sugar factories, for the city is almost surrounded by sugar-beet fields. The Russians once considered Kiev, with its broad streets, its fine parks, and its golden domes, their most beautiful city. In World War II, many of the city's splendid buildings were destroyed by German bombs. But the Ukrainians rebuilt Kiev from the ashes.

In the southeast the land rises to a rolling plateau through which the Donets

River flows. The Donets basin contains the richest coal fields in all Europe. Salt and mercury, lead and zinc are also mined in the Donets basin.

OTHER RUSSIAN REPUBLICS IN EUROPE

Of the fifteen republics which make up the Soviet Union, nine lie in whole or in part in Europe.

White Russia

West of the largest Russian republic is the republic of White Russia. White Russia is a little larger than our state of Kansas.

This republic probably is called White Russia because its people wear much white linen clothing. Farming is the chief occupation. But the region has many swamps, which reduce the amount of

farm land. For this reason the White Russians are not very prosperous. The government at Moscow is showing them how to make better use of their land. Swamps are being drained and put to use.

The Baltic republics

Along the Baltic Sea are three small republics, Estonia, Latvia, and Lithuania. These countries belonged to Russia before World War I, but their people are not Russians. The people in Estonia and Latvia are somewhat like the Finns. Those of Lithuania are like the Poles.

After World War I the Baltic states became independent nations. But their factories were not up-to-date enough to compete with Germany's factories, so they followed Denmark's example and took up dairying. This proved very profitable.

These farmers harvest wheat by machine in the Ukraine, Russia's chief wheat-producing region. Here wheat fields extend for miles, interrupted only by the rows of trees planted as windbreaks.



Early in World War II the three Baltic states were taken over by Soviet Russia. Their factories make many things that Russia needs. The products of their dairy industry find a market in cities like Leningrad and Moscow.

The Republic of Georgia

Separated from the largest Russian Republic by the Caucasus Mountains is the small Republic of Georgia, the home of Joseph Stalin. Georgia's capital is Tiflis.

ASIATIC RUSSIA

Beyond the Urals lies Asiatic Russia, which is three times as large as European Russia. Not all of this land, however, is good to live in.

WHAT SIBERIA IS LIKE

Asiatic Russia, especially the northern part of Siberia, is much colder than European Russia because it gets none of the winds from the Atlantic. More than half of it cannot be farmed because of the long bitter winters.

The southern part of Siberia has great stretches of desert. It has vast plains which are so dry that the people living there wander about with their herds of camels, horses, and goats, in search of grass and water. At least two thirds of Russia's land in Europe and Asia is completely useless for farming.

Yet Siberia is so large that between the cold north and the dry south lies a belt of good land nearly as large as the farming area of European Russia. On the map you will find the Ob River, flowing north, like all the great Siberian streams. On this river is the city of Novosibirsk, or "New Siberia."

On both sides of the Caucasus Mountains are some of the world's richest oil fields. From Baku, on the Caspian Sea, a pipe line now carries the oil to Batum on the Black Sea. There it is refined and then shipped.

Soviet Russia has the world's greatest deposits of manganese, the mineral used to harden and toughen steel. Great deposits of manganese are found in the Republic of Georgia, near the eastern end of the Black Sea.

Novosibirsk has been called the Chicago of Siberia. The rich prairies around it support many farmers. These farmers raise millions of pigs and cattle. They raise grain to supply far-off peoples. So, in spite of bitter winters and hot summers, Novosibirsk has grown to be a large city.

The Trans-Siberian Railroad

Find on your map the railroad that extends from Moscow all the way across Asiatic Russia. The Trans-Siberian Railroad (*trans* means "across") starts at Moscow, crosses the Urals at Sverdlovsk, goes through Omsk, then to Irkutsk on Lake Baikal. Beyond Irkutsk it follows for a long distance the Amur River. After crossing the Amur, it turns south to Vladivostok.

This long railroad is Siberia's lifeline. Except along the Urals, where cities have spread north and south from it, the railroad marks the location of most of the Siberian cities. Once it was a single-track railroad. Now the Soviet government has double-tracked it and much more than doubled its carrying power. It is the world's longest railroad.

The development of Siberia

The tsars thought of the lands of their Asiatic regions chiefly as a place to which convicts might be sent. But the Soviet government has looked at these regions with different eyes. These vast lands have good soil for farming, minerals, timber, furs, and wide plains for grazing. On the Pacific they have fisheries.

Scientists traveled over most of Siberia and took stock of its value. In the years that followed, millions of people settled in this new land. During World War II, the Russians moved many factories eastward into the Ural Mountains and beyond. Trainload after trainload of machines and tools rolled into Siberia. Along with the factories went their workers, who were forced to settle wherever the factories were placed.

When the Germans marched into Russia, they seized many of the factories that were left. They fought their way to Stalin-grad, but there they were stopped by the Russian armies. They were never able to reach the huge oil fields of the Caucasus. The Russians were much stronger than they had thought. It was the Siberian factories turning out war materials that gave the Russians most of their power to turn back the Germans.

At a place south of the Trans-Siberian Railroad, a scientist found that his compass pointed far away from the north. Its needle was attracted by a mountain of magnetic iron ore. Soon the Soviet Union built at that spot the first modern steel plant in the Urals. United States engineers erected it. Magnitogorsk, which means "Magnet Mountain," became a large city and a large producer of steel. It increased greatly in importance in World War II.

North of Magnitogorsk are two other great manufacturing centers. Most of the machines used in these cities either were brought from the United States or were made from American plans.

Twelve hundred miles east from Magnitogorsk is Stalinsk, near Novosibirsk. This is a city which has thick layers of coal in the soil at its doors. Beyond Stalinsk and nearer the Pacific are two other great cities which make steel. They turn out tractors, tanks, trucks, cannon, rails, and locomotives.

A rare mineral found in the Urals is *platinum*. Platinum is a hard, silvery metal which is used in the tips of fountain pens, in watch chains and rings, and in other articles. The fields have not yet been fully explored, but we know that other minerals such as manganese, chrome,



These three workmen in a Siberian factory, which makes chemicals from coal, look like fire fighters as they work in clouds of steam. Some chemicals made from coal are paints, dyes, gasoline, and explosives. On the picture map on page 419 find the coal area near Novosibirsk in which are rich coal mines.

In the Russian part of Central Asia rug weaving is an ancient and famous craft. It is passed down from one generation to another. Women do most of the weaving. In some villages you might see grandmother, mother, and daughter at work together.



nickel, zinc, and gold are lying in the Urals in great amounts.

Sverdlovsk, near the place where the Trans-Siberian Railroad crosses the Urals, is the great city of the mining region. Here are bauxite mines. Aluminum is made from this red mineral. Here also are copper ores and a kind of rock from which is made *magnesium*. Magnesium is a light white metal which resembles aluminum. *Asbestos*, a mineral which is used in fire-proof products, is abundant. Soviet Russia rivals the United States in its variety of minerals.

SOVIET REPUBLICS OF CENTRAL ASIA

South of the greatest Russian Republic in Central Asia are five Soviet republics which are fast developing. Central Asia has no rivers that flow to the ocean. The Caspian Sea, and the smaller Aral Sea to the east of the Caspian, have no outlets. In this region are great plains, or steppes, that have almost no trees because they are so dry. There are deserts over which the winds blow sand ridges like the waves of the sea.

This Central Asian region has mountain walls on the south. These high mountains divide it from Iran, from India, and from

China. Down from these mountains, into the desert, flow streams that are fed by melting ice and snow. Two of these rivers flow into the Aral Sea. They and other streams like them bring green oases into the thirsty desert, for much of the desert soil needs only water to make it productive.

Cities on the great trade route

In early times traders going west from China toward the Mediterranean Sea had to follow the oases near the foot of the great mountains. On this trade route important cities such as Tashkent, Samarkand, and Bokhara grew up. These cities produced much food in the irrigated fields around them and were filled with the shops of craftsmen.

The people of these cities were much like the people of present-day Turkey and Iran. These oasis cities knew civilized ways. They had public baths, beautiful mosques, and other fine buildings.

Samarkand was the capital of the great Mongolian conqueror Timur, often called "Timur the Lame." He was known to Europeans as Tamerlane, Lord of Tartary. An inscription at the entrance of Tamerlane's tomb in Samarkand calls him "Conqueror of the Earth."



Ewing Galloway

At an oasis in the barren region of Russian Turkestan a caravan stops for water. In the Middle Ages similar caravans carrying loads of silk followed the famous silk route through this region.

Tamerlane conquered most of Asia. Central Asia, part of India, and Persia paid him tribute. He took the cities of Baghdad, Aleppo, and Damascus. He overthrew the sultan of Turkey. He extended his rule to the Ural and the Volga rivers.

In Tamerlane's time Samarkand was a pleasant place. The soil yielded several crops a year. Orchards and mulberry groves flourished along the irrigation canals, and water from the river was brought into the houses. The people of Samarkand made fine paper and beautiful cloth. Trade came to their doors.

When Tamerlane died, in the year 1405, his empire fell apart. Raiders from the steppes kept the people of Samarkand in terror. The irrigation canals were neglected, and crops fell off. The city, once so great and fine, was partly ruined and lost most of its people. Samarkand and other cities of Central Asia were almost forgotten until the Soviet government brought new activity to the region.

Today these three Central Asian cities, all of which are in the well-populated Uzbek Republic, are prosperous again. Tashkent is now the largest city of Central Asia. It is somewhat larger than Minneapolis. Here in the grain market you may see shaggy camels waiting beside motor trucks to receive their loads. Low houses of sun-dried brick make up the old parts of the city, but the newer portions of Tashkent have modern factories and homes.

Samarkand now is about the size of Tampa, Florida. We may still see tile-covered buildings erected by Tamerlane. But cotton mills, silk factories, and up-to-date theaters stand just outside the walls of the old city.

Bokhara has kept many of the old Asiatic ways. It has many little shops, many craftsmen working at the same trade, and many water carriers supplying their customers from skin bags. Yet even in Bokhara a new, modern city is growing up.

What has made these cities change and prosper? Irrigation is the answer. The

chief crop in these irrigated valleys is cotton. The Russians expect to grow enough cotton for all their needs. They keep building more irrigation canals to water the desert. Every year they plant more cotton and weave more cotton cloth.

Cotton takes much richness out of the soil. The Russians have learned how to meet this problem by growing sugar beets. In addition to producing sugar, the beets provide feed for cattle, whose manure furnishes fertilizer to make the soil rich again. The beets raised in this dry climate have more sugar than those of moist climates and so are more profitable.

Warm sun and abundant water produce especially fine fruit. Apricots and peaches, apples and cherries, plums and melons, fill the city shops and supply the country tables. In the hot sunshine grapes are dried into raisins. There are large fruit-canning factories in Central Asia.

Today Central Asia is one of the three great manufacturing regions beyond the Ural Mountains. More water has given it new life. The old caravan trade has mostly been replaced by trade on highways and railroads. Central Asia still has great stretches of desert and steppes which are of little use, but it is making progress.

SOVIET RUSSIA TODAY

The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics is one of the great powers of the world today. It has a vast extent of land, enough

room for even its large population to grow much larger. While much of this land is cold or barren, great stretches are fit for

This picture map of Soviet Russia shows the variety of products of this vast country. Where are the wheat-producing areas? Where is oil found? How many different minerals are found in Russia?



new settlements. It can produce most of the minerals it needs. It has become a manufacturing nation on a large scale. But much of its production so far has been for war purposes. Since the end of the war the Russians have continued to build up their armed strength.

THE SOVIET WAY OF LIFE

Although the U.S.S.R. has developed greatly, the Russian people know little about the outside world. Everything is decided for them, and they are told what to do. They read and hear only the ideas which the government permits. Secret police are everywhere to spy on those who do not support the Communist government and to report them to the officials. Such persons are seized and imprisoned. Sometimes they are brought to trial, but their experiences in prison almost always cause them to plead guilty. Sometimes they just disappear completely.

The "iron-curtain" countries

Communism has had great influence on the world. Communist agents have secretly encouraged strikes and revolutions in other countries. After World War II the Russians continued to maintain a huge army.

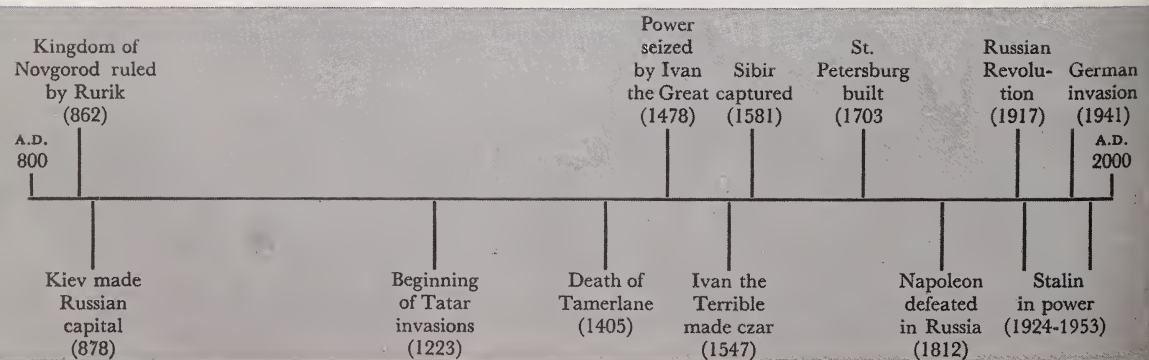
The government of the U.S.S.R. put pressure on its smaller neighbors and brought many of them under its control. Then it set up puppet governments (see page 126) in these countries. Thus Soviet Russia surrounded itself with buffer states to protect itself from the rest of the world. Within its own borders it was then able to carry on its affairs under a cloak of secrecy. This ring of defenses is often referred to as the *iron curtain*.

Within five years after the end of World War II, the Soviet Union had gained control, in whole or in part, of eight countries. These countries, in eastern and central Europe, were encircled by the iron curtain. Their governments are now Communist and their way of life is dictated by the Soviet Union.

The Soviet threat to the free world

Many persons see the Soviet Union as a threat to human freedom and as an encouragement to strife and war. A knowledge of Soviet Russia—its land, its people, and its form of government—is necessary to all who wish to understand world events. Only in this way can we, as Americans, recognize such threats and be prepared to defend the principles of the free world.

Time-Line: Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (800 A.D.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words and Terms You Should Know

tundra	iron curtain
asbestos	Open Forest
Kremlin	magnesium
platinum	

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 7. After each number write the word or term from the above list that matches the definition.

1. A light, grayish-white mineral
2. A mineral that will not burn
3. The fortified part of Moscow where the tsars once lived and where the present rulers of Soviet Russia work
4. A region south of Leningrad where much of the forest has been cleared
5. A barrier which isolates lands controlled by Russia from contacts with the free world outside
6. A treeless plain in the Arctic region
7. A hard, silvery precious metal

Can You Answer These?

1. How do the reindeer get their food?
2. Why do few people live in the far northern part of Russia?
3. Why are Russian winters colder than those in western Europe?
4. Why does Russia have few good roads?
5. What are the products of the Ukraine?
6. Why is Moscow better as a capital than Leningrad?
7. The Volga is a busy river for only half of the year. Why?
8. What happened to Estonia, Latvia, and Lithuania during World War II?
9. Why did the Russians move factories east of the Urals during World War II?

Learning from Maps

1. Look at the world map on pages 12 and 13. Which is larger, the Soviet Union

or the United States? Between what parallels of latitude does each lie? What does this tell you about their climates?

2. On the physical map of the Soviet Union, on page 411, find the Arctic Circle. What Russian port lies north of it? This port is open all year round. Why? If you do not remember, reread page 334.
3. On the physical map locate the steppes of Asiatic Russia. Name three great rivers of European Russia. Trace the route of the Trans-Siberian Railroad. Using the scale of miles, find out about how long the railroad is.
4. Study the products map of Russia and list the chief crops and animals.

Making a Chart

Make a chart in which you compare life in the United States with life in the Soviet Union. The headings of your chart should include: *Population, Political Parties, Kind of Elections, and Rights of Citizens.*

Interesting Things to Do

1. Imagine that you are taking a journey on the Trans-Siberian Railroad from Moscow to Vladivostok. Read the section of this unit covering this area again. From this and by checking the maps describe the worth-while things to be seen on the trip.
2. List the most important minerals that the Soviet Union produces. Then find out how the United States compares with Russia in production of the same minerals.
3. Write on the board in the proper time order, six important events in the history of Russia. Put the proper date after each statement. Use the encyclopedia, if necessary, in order to find the right dates. Add them to your time-line.



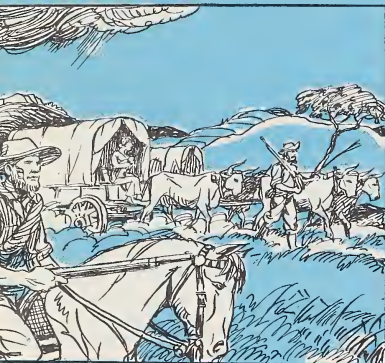
Victoria Falls discovered
by David Livingstone—1855



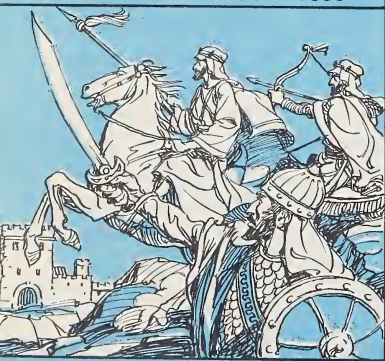
First diamonds discovered at
Kimberley, South Africa—1870



Outbreak of war in South Africa
between Boers and British—1899



Boers in the Transvaal—1836



Arabs in North Africa—about 650



The continent of Africa

16.

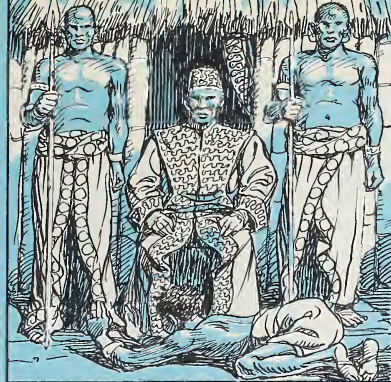
Until recently the United States had little interest in the continent of Africa. But in World War II American planes flew across Africa, and American armies fought in North Africa. Africa is an important part of the world today.

Africa is the second largest continent in the world. One of the oldest civilizations, Egypt, developed in its northeastern corner. A large part of North Africa belonged to the Roman Empire. Yet Africa has played a very small part in the history of modern civilized peoples. Africa was once called the "Dark Continent" because until recent times very little was known about its interior.

Africa is not wholly new to us. In this book we have studied Egypt, Algeria, Morocco, the Belgian Congo, and the French colonies in Africa. Yet we need



Throne of Ethiopia restored to Emperor Haile Selassie—1941



Native ruler presiding in a law court in Nigeria, Africa, today



Negro students attending a school in Africa today

The Continent of Africa

to see Africa as a whole continent to understand it and its important problems.

If you look at the map, you will see that Africa is a kind of triangle, with the widest part to the north. It is nearly five thousand miles long, and it is almost as wide at its greatest breadth. The equator crosses the continent at a point almost exactly midway between the north and south. This means that most of Africa lies in the tropics. But the northern and southern parts have a temperate climate.

The highest mountain range, the Atlas, is in northwestern Africa. On this continent there are four large rivers: the Nile, Congo, Niger, and Zambezi.

Most of the central part of Africa is a hot, rainy, tropical forest. This is where the greatest number of Negroes live. The southern part of Africa has a more tem-

perate climate. In this area many white people live.

The one thing that almost everyone remembers about Africa is the Sahara. This great desert takes up one fourth of the whole continent. It stretches from coast to coast, except for a narrow strip along the Nile River. In the past it has been a barrier between north and south. It was one of the main reasons why large parts of Africa remained unknown for so long. But highways are being built across the Sahara. It is now becoming part of the great active world of the present day.

This unit will answer these questions:

1. How was Africa explored and settled?
2. What are the different parts of Africa like?
3. What is Africa like today?



Bettmann Archive

Henry Stanley discovers Dr. Livingstone, the explorer, in an African village. Stanley was sent to find Livingstone who was thought lost.



Cushing

The city hall in Cape Town, South Africa, is an attractive modern building. Behind it in the background rises famous Table Mountain.

THE EXPLORATION AND SETTLEMENT OF AFRICA

Most of the continent of Africa was unknown until modern times. Only the coasts had been explored.

THE EXPLORATION OF AFRICA

About a hundred years ago the first explorers found their way into the interior of the continent and brought back reports about it. Before that time only the coastal regions were well known.

Civilization in North Africa

As you know, North Africa was one of the cradles of civilization. Its Mediterranean climate was highly favorable to early man. Here Egypt developed. Here also Carthage and Rome had flourishing cities. The Arabs swept across it after Rome's power was destroyed. They found it—and still find it—a good home.

Explorers in Central Africa

The early explorers who attempted to enter the interior of Africa met many obstacles. South of the Atlas Mountains

stretches a vast waste land called the Sahara. Few people could live in this desert. With much trouble camel caravans could struggle from oasis to oasis. The Sahara shut off North Africa from Central Africa.

White men found the hot, rainy climate unhealthy. There were insects whose bite or sting brought disease. There were dense forests through which it was hard to travel. There were crocodiles in the rivers and beasts of prey on the land. The rivers were swampy near their mouths, and upstream there were falls and rapids which blocked exploration by water. Because of all these reasons the interior of Africa for a long time did not invite exploration.

When European explorers did eventually reach the heart of Africa, they found that Arab traders had been there before them. The explorations of men like David Livingstone and Henry M. Stanley showed that the interior was largely made up of highland. Going up the rivers, the explorers had to row against waterfalls and

rapids. They also had to row uphill because even the rivers were steep. In relation to its size Africa has more highlands than any other continent.

Explorers in South Africa

South Africa also has large plateaus and great stretches of desert. The climate of the southern tip of Africa was suitable for European settlement. But the back country was held by fierce, warlike tribes who made it dangerous for explorers who moved far from the coast. It is not surprising that South Africa, too, stayed hidden for a long time. Not until 1900 did anyone travel overland from the Cape to the Mediterranean.

EUROPEAN NATIONS IN AFRICA

To gain land outside their own borders many European countries began to look toward Africa.

The scramble to get colonies began about 1870. However, a map of Africa as it was in 1884 shows that the European colonies were on the coast. But thirty years later all of Africa, except for two small nations, had been claimed by one or another of the governments of western Europe.

In 1914, when World War I began, seven European nations had colonies in Africa. These were Great Britain, France, Germany, Spain, Portugal, Italy, and Belgium. Small Liberia was an independent republic, under the protection of the United States. Abyssinia, in the highlands of Central Africa, had been an independent nation for a long time. It was ruled by an emperor.

AFRICA AFTER THE WORLD WARS

Both World War I and World War II brought changes to Africa. In each war

some European nations lost territory and others added to their possessions.

Changes after World War I

After 1918 the German lands in Africa were divided between Great Britain and France. With the new territory the British possessed more than one third of the continent.

France's African territory was almost as large as Great Britain's, but because it included the Sahara it did not have as many people. The Belgian Congo lay between the French and the British possessions. To the southeast lay the great island of Madagascar. It was also a French possession.

In the far south of Africa a new nation, the Union of South Africa, was formed by combining four provinces. The Union is a British Dominion.

A few years after World War I the British agreed that Egypt should become independent. But British soldiers were allowed to use bases in Egypt. These bases helped them in World War II.

In the period between the wars Italy conquered Abyssinia, or Ethiopia, as it is now called. The emperor fled to England for protection.

World War II in Africa

North Africa was an important battleground in World War II. The fighting was hard. Italy had to give up Ethiopia when Allied troops drove out the Italians. The emperor was restored to his throne. Along the Mediterranean, Italian and German forces threatened to capture Egypt. But the Allied soldiers finally pushed them out of Libya. In the end Italy lost most of the colonies which it once had in Africa.



British Information Services

This tribesman in long, flowing robes rides a camel in the northern part of Sudan. This country was once ruled by Britain and Egypt together. It became independent in 1946.



British Information Services

This Moslem chief in Ghana proudly wears his bright native costume. Ghana, which won its independence in 1957, is a new member of the British Commonwealth of Nations.

AFRICA'S DIFFERENT REGIONS

For the purposes of our study Africa may be divided into three large regions. These are the Sudan, East Africa, and South Africa.

The Sudan is a great tropical grassland area south of the Sahara and the Libyan Desert. It extends all the way across Africa from the Atlantic Ocean to the Red Sea, a distance of more than thirty-five hundred miles. Toward the south the grasslands merge gradually into tropical forests.

East Africa is a highland area south of the Sudan. It includes the "horn," which is the part of Africa that projects into the Indian Ocean, south of Arabia.

South Africa, or the southern part of the continent, includes three natural re-

gions. These are the Kalahari Desert, the grasslands known as the Veld, and the temperate lands of the extreme tip of Africa.

THE SUDAN

From North Africa we move southward to visit an area called the Sudan.

From the Mediterranean to the Sudan

We fly over the forests of the Atlas Mountains in Morocco and Algeria. We see loads of cork, stripped from the trees, being brought down to the coast. The ports of Oran and Algiers are shipping grain, olive oil, barrels of wine, wool, sheepskins, and goatskins—the usual Mediterranean products. In the hills we catch

sight of great pits from which comes phosphate rock, which is used for fertilizer. Africa produces one third of the world's phosphate.

Our course takes us south across the wastes of the Sahara. Camels are still a part of the native life in the dry African lands north of the equator. But airplanes and buses provide transportation between Algeria and the valley of the Niger. There has never been a railroad across the Sahara, but the French have recently begun to build one in French West Africa.

The climate of the Sudan

As we fly south, we come to the region that has two seasons, the wet and the dry. Each year as the direct rays of the sun move northward, they bring rain with them. As they move southward, the weather becomes dry. The closer we come to the equator, the longer is the wet season.

The Sudan lies between the dry Sahara and the wet land nearer the equator. It is the rainy summer season as we fly south. The place where the Sahara gives way to the Sudan is turning green. Tufts of grass are springing up, and the shrubs are budding.

Farther on, there is more grass, and we see thorny trees called *acacias*. Our locust tree is a cousin of the acacia. The trees grow larger and more numerous until the country looks like a park, with groves of trees in clusters through the grasslands. Finally, the dark wall of the forest along the equator rises before us. We know that we have reached the end of the Sudan.

The people of the Sudan

In this "in-between" land there is a mixture of races. There is also a sharing of religion, for the Arabs gave to the na-

tives of the Sudan the Moslem faith. South of the Sudan many Negroes who once worshiped idols have learned Christian teachings from missionaries.

Most of the tribes of Arabs, who have lived long in this area, prefer to raise cattle, but most of the Negroes like to farm. Their farming is usually done by hand labor, and the soil is loosened with a hoe.

The Niger River region

The great river of the western Sudan is the Niger. *Niger* comes from a native word "nghire," meaning river. Trace on the map the course of the Niger. See how it rises near the seacoast, flows away from the Atlantic, and makes a great bend to the north. It meets the sands of the Sahara before turning southward to the Atlantic.

From these parliament buildings in Nairobi, the British rule Kenya colony. In recent years, the natives have rebelled against the British, who own most of the best land here.

British Information Services



The British colony of Nigeria gets its name from the Niger River. For seven hundred miles the Niger winds its way through this well-populated colony. Nigeria is nearly half again as large as Texas and has four times as many people. There are three or four thousand natives to every white man.

Under the British the sultans, or *emirs*, have continued to govern. They pay these native rulers a yearly salary. The most powerful of the rulers is the emir of Kano. The city of Kano, inclosed by a strong mud wall twelve miles long, is an important market. It has been a thriving trading center for a thousand years, and its leather goods are famous in the Sudan.

Most of Nigeria lies in the Sudan, but southern Nigeria is in the equatorial rain belt. It has thick forests and a hot, steamy, climate. Here the cacao tree flourishes so well that Nigeria produces one pound of chocolate of every eight in the world.

The Republic of Liberia

Hundreds of miles farther along the shore west of Nigeria we come to Liberia.

These long strips are sheets of rubber made from latex and rolled out in this form. They are hanging in the drying room of a plantation.

Evans from Three Lions



Liberia, whose name means "free country," was founded to establish a colony for freed Negroes from the United States. A constitution much like that of the United States was adopted. The United States has helped and protected Liberia at various times. Liberia is one of three Negro republics in the world.

Liberia is about the size of Ohio. Part of it lies in the wet forest lands near the coast and part in the Sudan grasslands of the interior. Unfortunately for trade, it has no good harbor along the coast, nor is there a safe place for ships to anchor. Monrovia, its capital, is named for James Monroe, who was President of the United States when Liberia was founded.

Passengers who come by ship to Monrovia have to use small boats to reach land. When they reach Monrovia, they are apt to call it an overgrown village. The houses are built of wood, the streets are not paved, and there is no sewer system. There are few roads in Liberia and no railroads at all.

Liberia has modeled its government after that of the United States. It has a House of Representatives, a Senate, and a President. The descendants of the Negroes who founded the colony keep the power in their own hands. About sixty thousand native Negroes, who have become Christian, are also allowed to vote but seldom hold any office. These civilized Negroes live in the coast lands. Back in the grassy interior are a million or more natives who live in tribes in the old ways. There are only about four hundred white people in Liberia.

Liberia exports very little except forest products such as palm oil and cola nuts. However, a United States company has rented a large area of land and is raising

rubber trees. When rubber becomes an important article of export, perhaps the fortunes of Liberia will improve. Another United States company is developing the rich iron mines in the hills of Liberia. Liberia's iron is excellent for making steel. In 1951 this company built the country's first railroad to carry iron ore from the mines into Monrovia.

The Republic of Ghana

To the east of Liberia is Ghana, a Negro country which has recently gained its independence. Ghana was called the Gold Coast for about five hundred years because the early explorers found gold there. It became a British colony in 1871. With Great Britain's approval Ghana became self-governing in 1957. The new republic is a member of the British Commonwealth of Nations.

Ghana is a little smaller than Oregon. It has almost five million people. Its chief product is cacao. It also mines gold and some manganese.

EAST AFRICA

Eastward over the dark forest that covers much of the Congo valley we fly. We have already been introduced to the Belgian Congo. Now we reach Lake Victoria, largest of all African lakes. Bordering on it, to the northwest, is Uganda.

The colony of Uganda

Uganda, which is about the size of Oregon, is a protectorate (see page 293) of the British. Few white people live there, and not many of them are allowed to own land. The natives use the land of their small farms to good advantage. Cotton is the main export, and most of it goes to the mills of Bombay.

The young people are taught by thousands of native teachers. Colleges and even schools of engineering and medicine have been established. There is a network of good roads. Homes have many comforts, and the Uganda people do not need to go outside their own country for employment. Local government is carried on by the natives.

The East African plateau

The equator passes through Lake Victoria. For many years Europeans thought that all lands near the equator must be terribly hot. Sailors on the Indian Ocean said they had seen white-capped mountains far inland. But no one thought that the white caps could be snow. Finally, two German missionaries in climbing these mountains found that the tops were covered with snow.

Ethiopia is at the northeastern end of a high plateau (see map, page 435). Floods of lava poured out by volcanoes on the southern part of this plateau have increased its height. The snow-capped peaks seen by the missionaries were two of these volcanoes. Uganda is also in a highland area. So are two other British possessions, Kenya and Tanganyika.

Kenya colony

Four fifths of the land of Kenya is too hot for white men to live in comfortably. The other fifth—an area as large as Pennsylvania—is a plateau. Here live thirty thousand white people, who own large ranches or plantations, on which many natives work. Nairobi, the main settlement, is more than a mile above sea level, or a little higher than Denver, Colorado. Most of the white people in Kenya, however, live somewhat above that height.

In the fertile, red soil the colonists raise coffee and *sisal*. Sisal is a fiber from which rope, twine, mats, and other things are made. Tea also has been successfully cultivated in Kenya. The Kenya settlers are prosperous, but they are so busy keeping the colony a "white-man's land" that they have done little for the natives. In recent years there have been uprisings among the natives against the Europeans. The natives resent the fact that the white men own so much of the best land. They want the right to run their own affairs.

Tanganyika

Tanganyika is a territory in which the British government has bound itself to look after the welfare of the natives. Because of this it has allowed only a small part of the best land to be sold to white people. Tanganyika is much like Kenya, but it is afflicted by the *tsetse fly*, which kills cattle, horses, and donkeys. Scientists are now studying the problem of the *tsetse fly*.

Africa's highest mountain, Kilimanjaro, is in Tanganyika. Its snow-covered peak is not far from the equator.

The two Rhodesias

From Tanganyika we fly into Northern Rhodesia. Northern and Southern Rhodesia together are ten times as large as Virginia. The surface of these countries is largely made up of highland areas, which, like our western plains, are excellent for raising cattle.

It is copper that brings the white people to Northern Rhodesia. The labor in the mines is done by natives who work for a time and then go home to rest in their villages.

The streams that we see below us as we fly southward flow into the mighty Zambezi River. In the distance we see a railroad bridge across the Zambezi. Smoke is rising in huge columns near the bridge. We circle down and discover that it is not smoke but mist from a great waterfall. As we go nearer, we hear the sound of the waterfall rolling like thunder out of the clouds of mist.

Dr. David Livingstone was the first white man to view this waterfall. While he was exploring this region, the natives asked him, "Have you smoke that thunders in your country?" One day, as he was

South African Tourist Corp.



The government of South Africa protects the wild animals from hunters in some of its large national parks. Here a giraffe is receiving a handout from a motorist. Africa is the only place in the world where giraffes roam wild.

Many natives of South Africa who work in gold mines near Johannesburg live together in crowded settlements. After their work is done, they like to dress in native costumes and do a ceremonial dance.



South African Tourist Corp.

traveling down the Zambezi, he saw the "smoke" of this great waterfall rising above the trees and heard the thunder of the falling water.

Livingstone called the falls by the name of his queen, Victoria. When the power of these falls is used to make "white coal," the region can become a thriving manufacturing center. The tourists who come the long distance from the coast to admire Victoria Falls think them grander than our Niagara. Is the power of Niagara Falls used for any purpose?

We cross the Zambezi River and find ourselves in Southern Rhodesia. The Zambezi finally reaches another river—the Limpopo. This is the river which Rudyard Kipling in his story, "The Elephant's Child," describes as "the great, gray-green, greasy Limpopo."

Since it is farther away from the equator, the climate of Southern Rhodesia is cooler than that of its northern sister. Although smaller in area, it has five times as many white people. Here we see many

cattle ranches and fields of corn and tobacco. Probably one day Northern and Southern Rhodesia will be united.

SOUTH AFRICA

Our plane flies southward across the border of Southern Rhodesia. We are now in the Union of South Africa.

The Union of South Africa

South of the Limpopo our plane comes down to earth in the Transvaal. Transvaal means "across the Vaal." It was so called because the Dutch farmers, or Boers, crossed the Vaal River to find more "elbow room." The Vaal forms the southern border of the Transvaal.

The land in the northeast of the Transvaal is a hot area. It is not a healthful region. The country is full of wild animals. The Kruger National Park, where animals are protected from reckless hunters, is there.

Our guide through the park is a young fellow with a beard, named Pieter Retief.

He carries a heavy rifle for protection in case of attack. Pieter points out herds of elephants, giraffes, zebras, and antelopes. "This park is the largest in Africa," says Pieter proudly. "But there are others where wild animals can live in safety. In one of these are many gorillas."

"Retief is not an English name, is it?" we ask.

"No," replies Pieter, "I'm not English. I'm a Boer." But he speaks English well, and we spend a pleasant evening around the campfire listening to his stories. This is what we learn.

In the days when European nations were forming colonies in many parts of the world, the Dutch made a settlement at Cape Colony in South Africa. The British bought the colony from the Dutch, and English settlers began to come in. The Dutch left the region and tramped northward with their flocks and herds. They found new homes in what is now the Orange Free State. Not long afterward English settlers followed the Dutch into the new country. The Dutch moved on

One of the highest bridges in the world crosses the Zambezi River near Victoria Falls. The water drops four hundred feet to a new level.

Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway



again across the Vaal River into the Transvaal.

When the British gained possession of the Transvaal also, the Boers rebelled. They were defeated after a great struggle. The British allowed the conquered Boers to govern themselves, and gave them money to rebuild their homes and to stock their farms.

The government of South Africa

In 1909 the Union of South Africa was formed under the British government. It is made up of four provinces—Cape of Good Hope, Natal, Orange Free State, and the Transvaal. Today the Union of South Africa is a member of the British Commonwealth of Nations. The Boers have equal rights with the British.

We board our plane once more. We fly over Pretoria, the capital, as we continue south. But we cannot stop, for we are on our way to Johannesburg.

Johannesburg, a gold-mining center

Johannesburg, with its suburbs, is about the size of Baltimore, Maryland. Because it is a mining city it has many smoke stacks and smelting works. Its mines produce more than one third of the gold in the world. It stands at the edge of a range of low hills more than a hundred miles long. This ridge is known as the "Witwatersrand," or "White Waters' Ridge." Everybody calls it the "Rand." Underneath the Rand lies a layer of hard gold-bearing rock. No yellow can be seen in it, but fine particles of gold are sprinkled through the rock. When the rock is crushed to a fine powder and treated with chemicals, the gold can be separated from it.

The native laborers in the mines are poor, but Johannesburg is rich. To the

east and the west, along the Rand, other busy towns have sprung up. The Rand cities contain half the white people in the Transvaal and one sixth of all those in the Union of South Africa. But native Negroes outnumber the whites. The Negroes work in the mines.

The people know that the time may come when the gold-bearing rock is exhausted or is so deep that the mines cannot be worked profitably. If that day comes, "Joburg," as people sometimes call it, will continue to prosper. There are coal and iron near by.

South Africa's diamond mines

Our plane now follows the course of the Vaal River. The Orange Free State lies to our left. Then we come to the state of the Cape of Good Hope and to the town of Kimberley. One industry supports the town—diamond mining.

The story of the discovery of diamonds in Africa is worth our attention. A Dutch trader who was traveling along the Orange River stopped at the house of a farmer. He saw one of the farmer's children playing with some pebbles which had been picked up by the river. For one of these pebbles the trader gave the children coins worth about twenty-five cents. He sold the pebble in Capetown for about twenty-five hundred dollars. The pebble was a diamond!

Other diamonds were found along the Orange and the Vaal rivers. Later on, diamonds were found in dry beds, or "diggings," far from the Vaal. People rushed in, and Kimberley was founded. For many years most of the world's diamonds came from the Kimberley mines. They were found in a hard clay that filled the craters of long-dead volcanoes. Evidently the



This picture map shows the leading products of Africa and also some of the animals that are found there. How many of these animals have you seen in zoos? What important minerals are shown near Johannesburg? Why are no products shown near the Barbary sheep and the camel?

heat of the volcanoes had formed the stones.

About ninety-nine out of one hundred of the world's diamonds come from Africa. The search for diamonds and gold together opened up large parts of South Africa, caused railroads to be built, and towns to rise in the wilderness.

Today Kimberley is not as busy as it used to be. Diamond fields have been found in other parts of Africa. The Belgian Congo now ships out more diamonds than does Kimberley. The diamond companies still have their offices in Kimberley, but the town is much smaller than "Joburg" and is slowly losing its people.

The products of South Africa

The Cape of Good Hope is largely pasture land. West and south of Kimberley

stretch the wide, high plains of the *karroo*. The word *karroo* is a native name meaning "red soil." The dry lands of the karroo descend at different levels, almost to the southern tip of Africa. Wherever the Boers could find a good supply of water by digging a well, they set up a stock farm. But even with many windmills pumping they can bring water to only a small part of the land.

Some cattle and horses are raised, with corn and clover or alfalfa as their food. But the very large farms chiefly raise sheep. The Cape exports a great deal of wool. In this part of Africa a kind of sorghum, called *kaffir corn*, is raised. (*Kaffir* is a name given to the natives of this part of Africa.) Because kaffir corn is well suited to dry lands, it is now grown in the dry regions of the United States.

A fine fruit country lies back of Cape-town. The summers in the Cape region are warm without being too hot for white settlers. It is a Mediterranean climate. Early French explorers saw that the Cape would be a good place to raise grapes. These vineyards are famous today.

In this region we can almost believe ourselves to be in our own California. We see olive orchards and lemon and orange trees. Some parts of the region are irrigated.

The climate of South Africa is temperate. Many white people live in the Union of South Africa, and more than half of them are Boers. The Boers are increasing in numbers faster than the British. They have developed a special language, called *Afrikaans*. Afrikaans is something like the Dutch language, but simpler.

AFRICA TODAY

When David Livingstone began his journeys into the interior of Africa, the Zambezi River had not yet been seen by white men. And the Congo was not much more than a name on the map. Now we know what Africa is like. Few spots remain to be explored. Every part of it is under the control of some government.

Transportation and trade

Africa today has many railroads. It has a number of airports for the planes which make travel easier and swifter. Roads now take the place of trails, but there are only a few hard-surfaced highways. The motor car and the motor truck are in common use. Great cities stand where once there was nothing but wilderness.

Africa now gives to the world many things that it did not produce in Living-

stone's time. Cotton, cacao, palm oil, and peanuts are important to civilized man. Africa's mineral treasures of gold, diamonds, and copper have been opened up. Even so, Africa's trade with the rest of the world is small compared with the business done by the other continents. Great areas of Africa are still backward.

The people of different regions of Africa have little to do with each other. Railroads were not built to connect the different parts of the continent but to take products to or from seaports. One part of Africa does not usually trade with another part, but with foreign nations. Its native peoples have done little to unite Africa.

How Africa is governed

Most native Africans have no part in their own government. Egypt, the Union



of South Africa, Ethiopia, and Liberia have long been self-governing nations. Morocco, Libya, Tunisia, Ghana, and the Sudan have become independent since World War II. But in these countries many citizens do not vote or have not yet had an opportunity to learn about citizenship.

Northern Africa, which lies at the door of Europe, is today undergoing many changes. Much of the fertile strip along the Mediterranean is controlled by France. Many of the people of this area, particularly in Algeria, have shown through uprisings that they wish to govern themselves.

South of the Sahara live one hundred fifty million natives, nearly all Negroes. When the Europeans came to Africa, they found these natives divided into numberless tribes, which often fought fiercely among one another. Some of them were traders, some raised cattle, some cultivated crops, and some worked iron. But none of them were highly civilized. Although the Europeans who came to Africa were few, they were able in time to conquer the natives.

The foreign trade, the mining, the big ranches, and the shops are today owned by Europeans or by Asiatics. Most of the natives work as laborers for a daily wage. They make roads, they plant and harvest crops, they toil in the mines. They are not encouraged to think of themselves as citizens of a country.

The people and their problems

In the Union of South Africa, where the greatest number of white people live, there are four times as many Negroes as whites. In the whole of Africa it is estimated that there are fifty Negroes to one white person.

Since World War II great parts of Africa have undergone many changes. Five countries have become independent. In the Belgian Congo, in Nigeria, and in French Equatorial Africa the natives are being given the opportunity to become educated, skilled workers and to take a part in government.

In the Union of South Africa there is great bitterness between the white governing class and the Negroes. The government requires the colored races and those with mixed blood to live apart from the white people. It gives the colored people few rights. To improve race relations is one of Africa's problems that will require wisdom, patience, and good will to solve.

In some places the Africans are showing that they can manage their own affairs well. For example, Ghana is now building a new deep-water port and a dam on the Volta River to harness its electric power. It is establishing cocoa plantations throughout the country. It is also encouraging the farmers to develop new cash crops. In these ways, it has been preparing for its independence.

Instead of thinking only about making money through trade, some Europeans are bringing improvements to Africa. The continent, especially the tropical areas, has been a nest of disease. Modern hospitals have now been built where the sick are being cured and where the people can also learn how to keep well.

Teachers are being sent to various tribes to teach the natives better ways of farming and to introduce new crops. Roads are being built. Water power is being developed. A few factories are rising. Africa is stirring and is entering into a different kind of life.

TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words and Terms You Should Know

emir	Afrikaans
karroo	tsetse fly
sisal	kaffir corn
acacia	

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 7. After each number write the word or term from the list above that matches the definition.

1. A fiber from which rope, twine, and mats are made
2. The language, resembling Dutch, spoken by the Boers in South Africa
3. A fly whose bite causes disease and death in cattle and sleeping sickness in man
4. A word meaning "red soil," used to describe a dry area in South Africa
5. A sultan or ruler
6. A thorny tree that grows in warm regions
7. A grain first raised in South Africa

Can You Answer These?

1. What is the Sudan like?
2. What desert covers about one fourth of Africa? What is it like?
3. Why was Africa once called the "Dark Continent"?
4. Why did Europeans find it hard to explore Africa?
5. Why is David Livingstone famous?
6. Can you explain why the climate of Southern Rhodesia is cooler than that of Northern Rhodesia?
7. What changes have taken place in the colony that was formerly called the Gold Coast? What is the name of this country today?
8. Who are the Boers? Where in Africa do they live?
9. What states make up the Union of South Africa? How were they united?

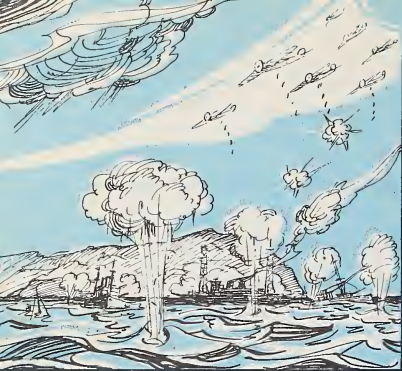
10. What are South Africa's principal products?
11. Which African lands have become independent?
12. What are the problems of Africa today?

Learning from Maps

1. Turn to the map of Africa on page 435. What are Africa's four greatest rivers? Where are the plateau regions? About how much of Africa is hills and mountains? Explain why it was hard to explore Africa.
2. Look at the population map on page 6. Which country in Africa has the greatest number of people? Which has the least?
3. Look at the rainfall map on page 7. What parts of Africa have the most rainfall? The least rainfall?

Interesting Things to Do

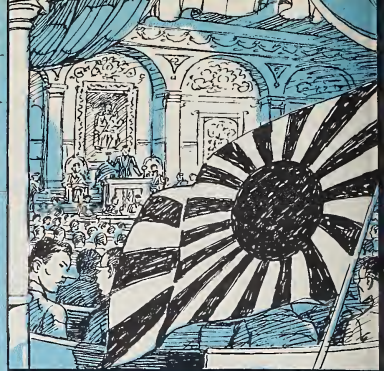
1. If you like to read, you will find many fascinating books about life in Africa. Theodore J. Waldeck's books describe adventures in the jungle. *Thirty-One Brothers and Sisters*, by Reba Mirsky, is about a Zulu family. Three books that present interesting factual material are: *Stanley's Africa*, by Rafaello Busoni, *Here Is Africa*, by Attilio Gatti, and *The Land and People of South Africa*, by Alan Paton. Read one of these books and report on it.
2. Albert Schweitzer, who won the Nobel Peace Prize, founded a hospital in Africa. Find out all that you can about this talented man, and tell the class about him.
3. Write on the board, in the proper order of time, these events: Stanley explores upper Congo; Kimberley founded; Cape of Good Hope discovered; Italy takes Ethiopia; Liberia founded. Add these dates to your time-line.



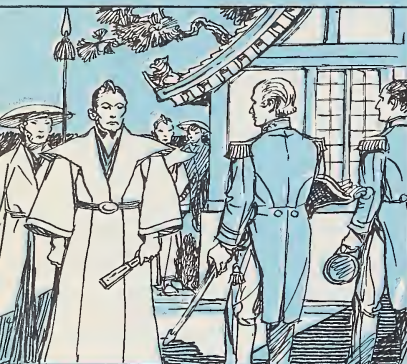
Japanese bombing our fleet at Pearl Harbor, December 7, 1941



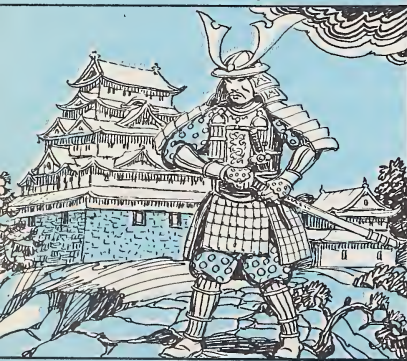
Japanese surrender at the end of World War II—1945



The new government of Japan adopting democratic laws—1946



Perry arriving in Japan—1853



Japanese lord and castle—1550



Japan and the Pacific islands

17.

Our story has now brought us to the shores of the Pacific. That great ocean is as large as all the other oceans put together. It could hold all the lands and islands in the world with room to spare for a continent the size of Africa. At the equator the Pacific measures nearly ten thousand miles.

As we look at the map on pages 452–453, we see more islands than we can easily count. Along the coast of Asia are the islands which make up Japan. Near by is Taiwan, or Formosa. To the south, the great group of the Philippines lie just north of Indonesia.

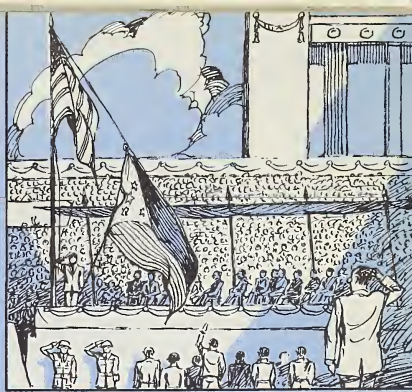
East of Indonesia, for thousands of miles, the ocean is dotted with specks of land. These islands fall into three main groups. Micronesia, a name which means “small islands,” is made up of fourteen hundred islands. Micronesia lies between



Ferdinand Magellan discovering the Philippine Islands — 1521



American troops taking over the Philippines from Spain — 1898



The people of the Philippines receiving independence—1946

Islands of the Pacific

the Philippines and the 180th meridian. To the south and east of Micronesia is the island group known as Melanesia. East of the 180th meridian is a very large group of islands, called Polynesia. Polynesia is a name that means “many islands.” Locate these three large groups of islands on the map.

To the north of Polynesia are the Hawaiian Islands. In the North Pacific, bordering North and South America, are great, almost empty, areas of water. The islands of the Pacific, for the most part, are on the Old World side of the globe.

The United States has for many years had an interest in the Pacific islands. The Hawaiian Islands, which are a part of the United States, serve to protect one of our national doorways. The Philippines became a United States possession after our war with Spain. We looked after them

until they were ready to become independent. In World War II our soldiers and our sailors captured one group of Japanese-held islands after another on their way to attack the homeland of Japan. Names of islands previously unknown to Americans have become familiar. The Pacific islands are now near to us, not in distance, but in interest.

This unit will answer these questions:

1. How did Japan become a modern nation?
2. What is the story of Japan in World War II?
3. Why are the Philippines important?
4. What is the story of Indonesia?
5. What is life like in Melanesia?
6. What is life like in Polynesia?
7. What is the future of the Pacific islands?



Burton Holmes from Ewing Galloway

Beautiful snow-crowned Fujiyama rises above a quiet Japanese lake. Many Japanese regard it as a sacred mountain. Every summer thousands of pilgrims climb one of the five paths to the top.

JAPAN, FROM EARLY TO MODERN TIMES

Japan, like Great Britain, is an island nation. As in Great Britain the sea has played an important part in the lives of the people of Japan.

THE GEOGRAPHY OF JAPAN

Japan is a group of islands, as the map on page 442 shows. The four main islands of Japan together have an area about as large as Montana. The islands have been formed mostly by the action of volcanoes. The principal mountain, Fujiyama, which is snow-capped for part of the year, is a dead volcano. Japan has several active volcanoes. Earthquakes shake the islands frequently, damaging the flimsy houses.

Much of the soil of Japan is very rich, but the islands have so many mountains that not more than one sixth of the land can be farmed. Still, the Japanese depend greatly on farming. There are more than

ninety million people in the nation. This is about half as many people as there are in the United States. But the United States has fifty times as much land to cultivate as Japan has. Crowded into a small space, the people have to use their land to the very best advantage.

THE EARLY HISTORY OF JAPAN

Every nation has a right to be proud of its land and its people. But the Japanese carried this pride very far in the story of their nation's beginning. They said that one of the gods dipped his spear into the sea and then shook off the drops into the ocean. Wherever a drop fell, an island sprang up. They believed that their emperor was directly descended from the Sun Goddess.

The Japanese name for their country is Nippon, a word which means "rising sun."

Their flag has a large red circle or disk, representing the sun, centered on the white field.

Chinese influence on Japan

The Japanese were slow in developing a civilization. In fact, they had no real civilization until they came into contact with the Chinese.

Buddhist missionaries found their way to Japan from China in early times. These missionaries sent back to China for skilled workmen to build temples in Japan. Thus the Japanese not only adopted the Buddhist religion, but they also adopted Chinese ways of building. The Japanese admired the Chinese so much that as time went on they copied the Chinese style of painting, dressing, and cooking. China had developed writing more than three thousand years before. The Japanese adopted the Chinese system of writing also.

Although their language is quite different from Chinese, the Japanese borrowed the Chinese characters. Each character represents not a letter but an entire word. Today in Japanese more than fifty thousand characters are used. By studying hard, a Japanese pupil can learn about three thousand of these characters in six years. Most Japanese can read a newspaper, but books are for the well educated only.

Early European visitors to Japan

Europeans had long known about the Japanese islands. But it was not until fifty years after Columbus made his first voyage to America that Portuguese sailors found their way to these islands. Portuguese traders and Christian missionaries soon followed.

At first the Japanese received the Portuguese gladly. They were eager to

trade. They also listened to the teachings of the Christian missionaries. A little later the Dutch came also. After a time, urged by the Buddhists, the Japanese began to fear that the foreigners would take over the government.

Japan's closed door

The Christian missionaries were driven out, and Christianity was forbidden. The Portuguese traders were expelled, and the Japanese themselves were made to stay at home. The government ordered that no Japanese ships should leave Japanese waters. All foreign traders were kept out except the Dutch, who were allowed to send one trading ship a year to Japan. Japan became a hermit nation.

If any European could have visited Nippon in the year 1850, he might have thought that he had been taken back to the Middle Ages. He would have seen great castles with high stone walls. These were the homes of great feudal lords. Each lord kept soldiers who, like the medieval knights of Europe, were pledged to assist him in battle. The soldiers fought with swords and with bows and arrows. The lords had coats of arms just as did the nobles of western Europe in earlier times.

The visit of Perry

The United States was the first country to try to persuade Nippon to open its doors. Matthew Perry, in command of four American warships, visited Japan. His business was to ask the Japanese to open their seaports to trade. The warships in Perry's fleet were so large that the Japanese government was thrown into a panic. Perry then departed to give the Japanese time to think about what answer they would give to the United States.



What important fact does this map tell you about the kind of land in Japan? Find Japan's Inland Sea. What makes it an important waterway? What countries on the continent of Asia lie close to Japan?

Early the next year Perry returned with a larger fleet and more guns. The Japanese decided it was best to sign an agreement with the Americans. At first, American vessels could only enter two Japanese ports to get needed supplies. But

three years later some other ports were opened to American trade.

Japan as a modern nation

When the door had yielded a little, it soon was pushed farther open. People

from other nations came, and they also secured favors. After a time Americans were allowed to live in a little fishing village, called Yokohama. Before long, representatives of the United States government and of other nations were sent to Japan. Japan's isolation had ended.

The Japanese quickly recognized that they were far behind the Western peoples. Their leaders decided that the nation must become great and powerful. The old feudal system of lords and walled castles was swept away. A modern army and navy were built up. A modern school system was established. The young men of Japan were sent to Europe and to the United States to learn about some of the Western ways.

JAPANESE WAYS OF LIVING

Although Japan had decided to become modern in its ways, it was at heart the same. Its people kept many of their old customs and their religion.

Rice, the "bread" of Japan

Half the cultivated land of Japan is covered in summer with the green of growing rice or with the water in which it grows. The Japanese never think of having a solid meal without rice.

The Japanese cannot grow all the rice they need, but they have tried hard to do so. They have built terraces for growing rice along the lower slopes of the hills. These terraces, which reach to a height of several hundred feet, add to the amount of rice which the plains produce. In the south of Japan many farmers harvest two rice crops in a single year. Yet Japan must import rice from Korea, from the big island of Formosa near China, and from Burma.

Fish, the meat of Japan

Because the Japanese need their land for crops, they cannot afford to keep many cattle. In Japan fish must take the place of meat.

As the Japanese are islanders, they have good opportunities for fishing. Thousands and thousands of fishing boats go out to sea every fair day. Part of what they catch goes to the canning factories. We find in our grocery stores large supplies of canned Japanese shrimp and crab meat. In fact, the Japanese are such busy fishermen that they do one third of the world's fishing.

The production of silk

The central part of Japan's largest island is so mountainous that it has few roads. Yet there are many valleys tucked away among the steep slopes. The farmers in these valleys can raise good crops, but these crops would not pay for the labor of carrying the products elsewhere to market.

Because of this farmers long ago found the raising of silkworms profitable. Mulberry trees were planted on the hillsides to furnish juicy leaves for the worms. The wives and children of the farmers picked

This Japanese woman feeds mulberry leaves to the silkworms. When the worms are spinning, loud noises or talk will make them stop work.

Ewing Galloway



mulberry leaves and fed them to the worms. The worms had to be fed and looked after while they spun their cocoons of silk. The threads of raw silk were then removed carefully from the cocoons and wound up again on reels. This raw silk was very valuable.

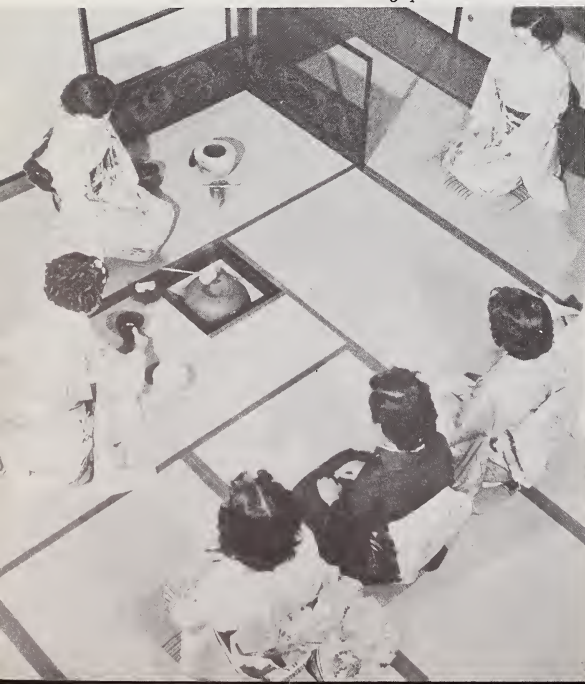
For many years most of Japan's raw silk was shipped to the United States. In our mills it was made into various articles such as stockings, curtains and dress materials, and underwear.

The making of rayon

But the high cost of production made silk expensive. Manufacturers began to look for a material with the qualities of silk which could be made cheaply. From experiments with wood pulp, rayon was developed. Factories in the United States soon began to turn it out. The Japanese were quick to realize the value of rayon. They built factories for making rayon yarn

Serving tea to guests in Japan must be done in a special way, following ancient customs.

Japan Tourist Association



and for weaving it into cloth. Before long Japan was the world's leading country in making rayon. But World War II stopped our buying of Japanese goods. Japan has rebuilt its factories and again exports almost as much rayon as before the war.

What Japanese homes are like

The Japanese home is very simple in its furnishings. There are almost no pictures on the walls, and there is little furniture. Most Japanese do not use chairs. Instead they sit on the floor, which is covered with mats. The tables at which they eat rise just a few inches from the floor. Only a person sitting cross-legged would find this convenient. Beds are made from quilts laid upon the floor mats. The floor is kept very clean because shoes are not worn in the house. Twice a year, in some Japanese cities, the police inspect the houses to see whether they have been kept clean.

The windows in a Japanese home are usually made of oiled paper instead of glass. Although Japan manufactures a great amount of glass, most of its people do not use it for their windows. If more air or light is wanted, the sliding window is pushed back.

Even in large cities, few of the houses have running water. The women carry in the water from wells. Hot water, when it is needed, has to be heated over a charcoal fire. Japanese homes are neat and clean but are uncomfortable in wet, chilly weather.

Once every Japanese home had its emperor's seat. This bench, built in the wall, was meant for the emperor. It was never occupied by anyone else. Each home also had a "god shelf," on which were placed offerings of food and other things. Some homes had a Buddhist altar before which

the members of the household worshiped by clapping their hands and bowing.

Japanese gardens

Most Japanese homes have a garden at the back. Even if the space is small, there are likely to be dwarf trees growing like potted plants and perhaps a little pool with goldfish.

The Japanese love flowers. They watch eagerly for the blossoming of plum trees and cherry trees. Sometimes they write nature poems and hang them on the branches of their favorite trees. The national flower of Japan is the chrysanthemum. Every November Japan holds a chrysanthemum fair.

Japanese manners

The Japanese are taught to be polite. In fact, they are taught exactly how to act when in the company of others. One Japanese almost never behaves in a way different from other Japanese.

Let us take a look at Japanese table manners, for example. With his right hand a guest removes the lid of his rice bowl, transfers it to his left hand, and places it on the table at his left side. Then he lifts the lid of his soup bowl, puts it in his left hand, and places it upon the lid of the rice bowl. Next, he lifts the rice bowl with the right hand and places it in the left. Now he grasps his chopsticks in his right hand and puts two small portions of rice into his mouth. This is followed by a sip from the soup bowl. Then he tastes another dish. But in no case should he omit eating rice between mouthfuls of other food.

Instead of shaking hands as we do, the Japanese bow. It is a mark of culture in Japan to bow often. Dinner guests on ar-



Japan Tourist Association

This huge bronze statue of Buddha has stood in Kamakura, Japan, for seven hundred years.

rival bow first to the host and then to the other guests. A bus conductor bows to each passenger as he collects his fares. A young man, if standing, bows low when speaking to his parents or elders. When seated, he bends forward with his hand touching the floor mat as he addresses them.

Religions of Japan

We have already learned that Buddhist missionaries came to Japan in early times. Japan has many Buddhist temples presided over by yellow-robed priests. There are also many statues, both large and small, of Buddha.

The oldest and most important religion of Japan was called *Shinto*, which means "the way of the gods." Shinto is the worship of spirits. The Japanese believed, just as the ancient Romans did, that spirits lived in trees, in streams, in rocks, and in the ocean. There were gods and goddesses of the sky, the earth, the sun, the moon, of trees and plants. There were

lesser gods—gods of happiness and of good crops, gods of the kitchen, and even of the wells.

The Japanese worship the souls of their departed ancestors, as do the Chinese. In Japan ancestor worship means respect for the old ways, such as obeying authority and glorifying courage.

The emperor and heroes who died in battle were also objects of worship. Let us try to understand how this worked out. Suppose that according to law every city and town in the United States had to build a church in which the President was worshiped as the divine father of the nation. Suppose that every American had to attend such a church, bow to the President's picture, and pray to it. Suppose also that the lists of our nation's dead soldiers were hung up in that church and that each such soldier was worshiped as a god. So it was in Japan.

The Japanese had to obey blindly any orders which were issued in the name of the emperor. Disobedience was a sin against both the country and the gods. Because the army and the navy were trusted with the defense of the country, they were highly honored. Thus it came about that a group of military and naval commanders directed the government. Although there was a prime minister and a parliament, they had little power. Most plans of the government were worked out secretly. We shall learn a little later what effect this Japanese emperor worship had in our own times.

THE PRINCIPAL CITIES OF JAPAN

A nation of many people, which does manufacturing as well as farming, can be expected to have a number of large cities. This is the case with Japan.

Tokyo, Japan's largest city

Tokyo rebuilt rapidly after the war. In 1955, with almost seven million people, it was the third city of the world in population. Tokyo is the capital of Japan.

A warm current of water, the *Japan Current*, coming from the south, washes the eastern shore of Japan. For this reason Tokyo is warmer in winter than most other places in the same latitude.

Surrounding Tokyo is a plain not much larger than our state of Delaware. But on this plain are more than eighty cities and towns, each with more than a thousand people. It is one of the most heavily populated areas—perhaps the area of densest population—in the world.

In the year 1923 an earthquake ruined most of Tokyo. Tokyo was built up again, with fine broad avenues and handsome public buildings. No very high buildings were built in Tokyo. Skyscrapers were forbidden for fear there would be another heavy earthquake. The ruin caused by the skyscrapers toppling would be very great.

Japan has much electric power, furnished by the streams which rush down from the mountains. This electric power operates the machines in Tokyo's factories. But Tokyo still has many shops with workers using hand tools.

Tokyo is at the head of a bay leading to the Pacific, but its harbor is too shallow for big vessels to enter. The large ships come only to Yokohama, a little farther down the bay.

Yokohama, a great seaport

Yokohama, with more than a million people, is Japan's largest seaport. Before World War II it was the center of Japan's shipbuilding industry. It also manufactured aircraft and motor trucks.

Yokohama stands on a plain shut in by hills. Its climate is mild in winter and rather hot and moist in summer. The small mandarin oranges, which do not need so much heat as larger kinds, grow well there. On this plain half of Japan's tea is grown.

Other Japanese cities

Southwest of Tokyo is the city of Nagoya, which is a little larger than Yokohama. Nagoya is a great manufacturing center noted for its pottery, porcelain, clocks, fans, and articles made of lacquer.

Southwest of Nagoya is another plain. On that plain we find three great cities, Kyoto, Osaka, and Kobe.

Kyoto lies farthest inland of the three cities. It is Japan's fourth largest city. For more than a thousand years it was the capital of Japan. Later, the capital was moved to Tokyo because it had a better harbor. The Japanese liked Kyoto so well that they formed the name of the new capital, Tokyo, from the same syllables.

To keep the city of Kyoto as it was in ancient times the government forbade the building of any large factories there. Many small shops display the handwork of skillful craftsmen like those made by the guilds of the Middle Ages in Europe. There are beautiful articles made of lacquer, porcelain, enamel, bronze, and embroidered silk. Many travelers go to Kyoto each year to view the many temples and shrines.

Moving southward, we reach Osaka, a city of more than two million. It is Japan's second largest city. It is the center of the cotton-spinning industry and has machine shops and potteries. Situated on the Inland Sea, its many canals and waterways have given Osaka the name of the Japanese Venice (see page 188).

West of Osaka, on the Inland Sea, is Kobe. Today it has almost one million inhabitants. When Japan was opened to foreign trade, Kobe was only a small fishing village. It has shipyards, steel mills, and a great foreign trade.

Southwest of Kobe, on the southern island of Kyushu, is the great seaport of Nagasaki. This area, for about eight hundred miles around Nagasaki, is the industrial heart of Japan. Most of the people and most of the manufacturing are within it. Nagasaki, as you can see by looking at the map, is convenient as a port for ships calling at Japan on their way to or from China. It has large shipyards and is a fishing center.

THE EMPIRE OF JAPAN

Japan set out to build an empire. Because they believed their emperor was divine, the Japanese thought that they were superior to all other peoples. Their leaders taught them that Japan's duty was to bring all Asia under Japanese control.

Japan's war against China

Japan's nearest neighbor is China, and the two countries were natural rivals. In a

These people are celebrating a festival in the ancient city of Kyoto. Their costumes show different periods in the city's history.

Japan Tourist Association



war between the two, in 1895, Japan won. China was forced to give the island of Formosa to Japan. Formosa, a little larger than our state of Maryland, lies on the Tropic of Cancer. It has a nearly tropical climate. It is now called Taiwan.

Japan's war against Russia

Not long after the war with China, war broke out between Japan and its large neighbor, Russia. Both wanted certain areas of Chinese territory.

One of these areas was Korea, the peninsula between the Yellow Sea and the Sea of Japan. Korea, whose people are much like the Chinese, had long been ruled by China. Then Russia moved in.

Japan won the war against Russia. Russia had to give up its claims to Korea.

A young Japanese settler in Manchuria uses a modern tractor to plow the rich farmland.

Natori from Black Star



A few years later, Japan completely conquered Korea. It became a part of the Japanese Empire.

Russia was interested in Manchuria, a great region south of the Amur River (see the map, page 124). It had obtained from China certain rights in this area and had built a railroad across it. But after losing the war Russia had to give to Japan its rights in the important South Manchurian Railway.

Japan's gains in World War I

Four years after Japan took Korea, World War I began. Japan joined the Allied nations against Germany. "With our strong navy," the Japanese government declared, "we can keep peace on the Pacific shores of Asia." Japan's task was easy because there was little fighting in the Far East. After the war, as a reward, the Allies assigned to Japan most of the Pacific islands that had belonged to Germany.

Most of the more than fourteen hundred islands which make up Micronesia are small. Taken all together, these bits of land are not as large as the state of Delaware. There are three main groups of these islands. To the east, nearest our Hawaiian Islands, are the Marshalls. Stretching far to the west until they border the Philippine Islands are the Carolines. North of the Carolines are the Marianas. Most of Micronesia lies north of the equator and in tropical waters.

The Allies did not make a free gift of Micronesia to Japan. In reality the islands were under the control of the League of Nations. But the Japanese at once began making the islands into fortresses. They tried to prevent any foreigners from visiting the islands because they wished to

keep their actions secret. Unfortunately, the League of Nations did nothing about it.

The Japanese went to Micronesia in large numbers. Some of them worked on the fortifications or guarded them. Soon they outnumbered the natives. The fortified islands were a threat to the Philippines, the East Indies, and Australia.

The seizing of Manchuria

For years Japan, overcrowded with people, had its eyes on Manchuria. Most of Manchuria is a great plain with few trees, but the soil is rich. It was a land that China claimed, but because it was beyond the Great Wall it was not thickly settled. We have learned that, as a result of defeating Russia in war, Japan took over Russia's rights there.

When the Japanese thought the time was ripe, they sent their soldiers into Manchuria. By 1932 the Japanese had taken over the land and placed it under a puppet ruler (see page 126). The Japanese kept on fighting the Chinese until they reached the southwestern border, near Peking.

Japan had said that Manchuria was needed for homes for the crowded millions of Japanese farmers. But not many

moved to Manchuria. Most of the Japanese will not leave home unless they can settle in warm climates. Their own northernmost island has not been attractive to many Japanese.

When the League of Nations objected to Japan's taking Manchuria, Japan withdrew from the League. This action showed that Japan was determined to seize the territory it wanted.

The attack on China

Japan was determined to seize China also. In 1937 Japanese troops were sent from Manchuria, through the Great Wall, into China. One after another, they captured Peking, Shanghai, and Nanking. Soon they took Canton and Hankow.

Eastern China was now overrun by the invaders, and almost every seaport fell into the hands of the Japanese. It seemed that China would soon have to give up. However, Chinese armies bravely resisted. Guerrilla forces, not in the regular Chinese army service, helped in the struggle. During World War II, American airmen, from bases in China, struck at the Japanese. China was nearly cut off from the rest of the world, but supplies came in over the mountains from India by road and by air. China kept on fighting.

JAPAN AND WORLD WAR II

A few years before World War II, Japan allied itself with Germany. The false words and the brutal deeds of Japan and Germany soon proved that the two governments worked in the same way.

The attack on the United States

For the United States, World War II started when Japan struck a surprise blow.

In the early morning of December 7, 1941, Japanese airplanes bombed our fleet at Pearl Harbor in the Hawaiian Islands. Thousands of our men lost their lives. So many of our vessels and so many of our planes were destroyed that our power in the Pacific was badly crippled.

At once the United States declared war on Japan. Japan's allies, Germany and



U.S. Army Signal Corps

On board the *Missouri*, an American battleship, General MacArthur signs the terms of surrender which were given to Japan. The signing took place in the harbor at Tokyo.

Italy, declared war upon us. But we had an ally in the British, whose possessions in the Far East had also been attacked. Great Britain and the United States united to fight the three treacherous governments.

The course of World War II

Japan was ready for war, but we were not. The Japanese attacked our Pacific islands of Guam, Midway, and Wake because they were stepping stones between Hawaii and the Philippines. They also attacked the Philippines. Guam was the first of our lands in the Pacific to fall into Japanese hands. Our soldiers in the Philippines put up a brave fight, but the blow at Pearl Harbor had paralyzed our fleet. It was impossible for us to help the Philippines. Manila, the capital, fell to the Japanese on January 2, 1942.

Even though Manila had fallen, our troops in the Philippines continued to put up strong resistance. They were forced to withdraw into the Bataan Peninsula along Manila Bay, where they put up a gallant defense. But help was cut off by the Japanese fleet. After four months of fighting the Japanese took the peninsula, captured our soldiers, and imprisoned them.

The attack on British possessions

The Japanese had long had their eyes on the British island of Hong Kong. Soon

after December 7 they forced the surrender of Hong Kong and later of Burma. Then they marched southward along the Malay Peninsula. The Japanese soldiers, trained to endure hardship and to live on a small amount of food, slipped through the thick Malay jungles. As the Japanese advanced, the British retreated. It was not long until Singapore, which was thought to be safe from capture, fell just as Hong Kong had done. The flag of the Rising Sun floated over regions in Asia which the British had proudly held.

Meanwhile, the Nipponese had invaded and captured the East Indies. Before long they held New Guinea and the Solomon Islands, at the very door of Australia. But help was coming.

Just in time to save Australia and New Zealand the United States was able to put strong forces into the field. The road from the United States to Australia and New Zealand was long, but now it became a very busy road. The island of New Caledonia became a guard station on the way. Soon the noise of battle waked echoes in the mountains of the Solomons and New Guinea. Tribes that had never seen a white man could hear the roar of his cannon and see his "sky birds" soaring above.

Through tropical heat, through drenching rains, over steep trails, the Americans, the Australians, and the New Zealanders

made their way. Island after island was recaptured until at last our troops reached the Philippines. The Japanese resisted until the city of Manila was almost destroyed, but the Philippines were finally freed.

The surrender of Japan

The United States fleet, the most powerful collection of vessels the world had ever seen, now prepared to attack Japan. Our bombs spread destruction among the chief Japanese cities. Two Japanese cities were almost wiped out by the *atomic bomb*. The atomic bomb was a powerful and terrible new weapon, used for the first time in Japan. The proud Japanese sur-

rendered, and United States forces took charge of the country.

After World War II

Our troops remained in Japan for many years during the period of the great changes following the war. The Japanese emperor was allowed to remain on his throne, but he was no longer believed to be divine. The Shinto worship was forbidden as a state religion.

A constitution like that of the United States was written. After a time elections were held, and all Japanese citizens, including women, were allowed to vote. Japan had started on the road to becoming a truly democratic nation.

A QUICK QUIZ

Words and Terms You Should Know

atomic bomb Japan Current Shinto

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 3. After each number write the word or term from the list above that matches the definition.

1. The Japanese religion in which spirits, the emperor, and heroes who died in battle were all objects of worship
2. A bomb whose explosive power is due to the release of atomic energy
3. The current of water in the Pacific Ocean which has a warming effect on Japan and many other Pacific lands

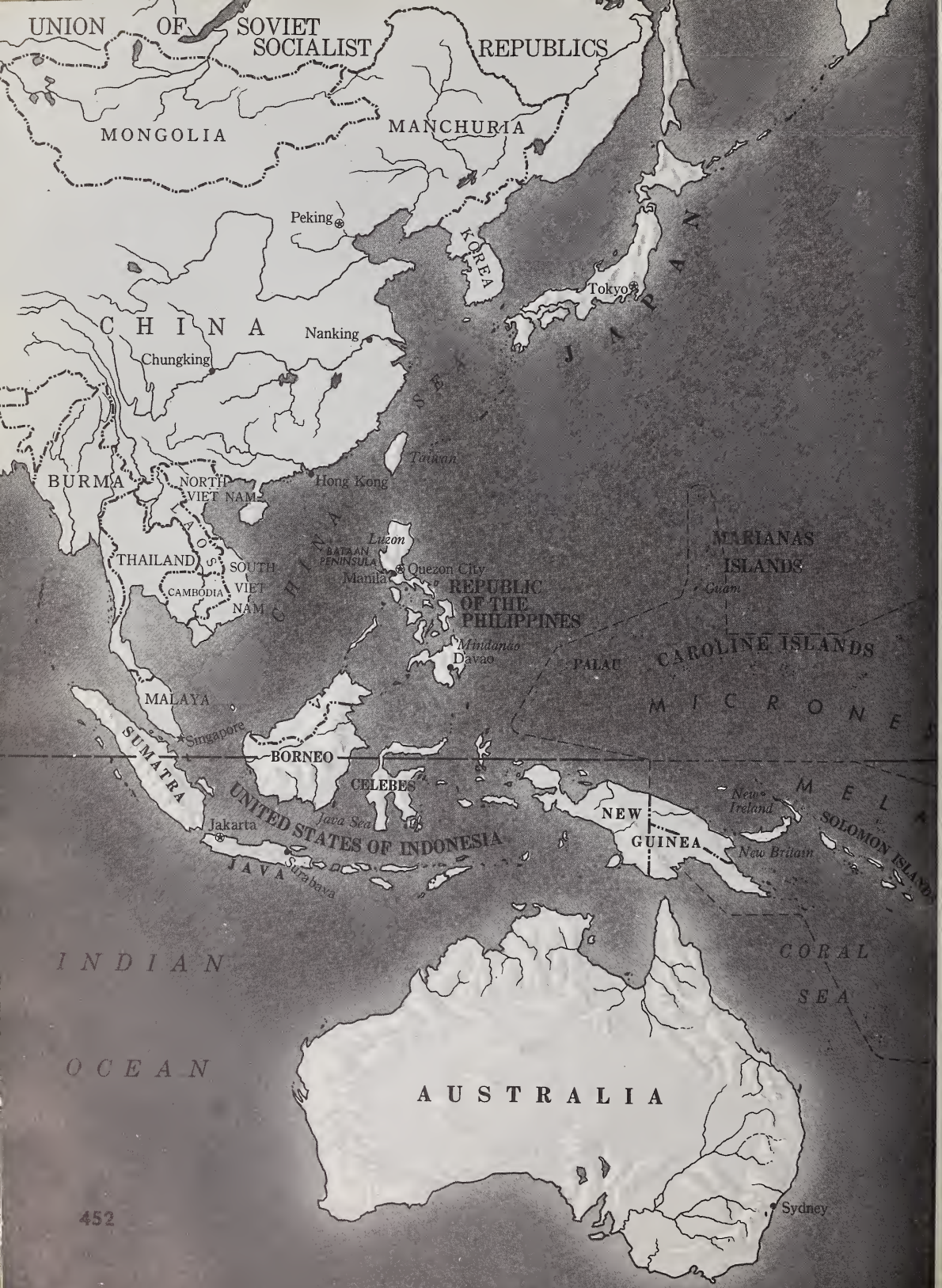
Can You Answer These?

1. Why do we have a special interest in the Pacific islands?
2. In what ways was Japan influenced by China in early times?
3. What American persuaded Japan to open its seaports to foreign trade?
4. Why did Japan manufacture rayon?

5. Why is fishing so important in Japan?
6. Why was the capital of Japan moved from Kyoto to Tokyo?
7. What did Japan gain by joining the Allies in World War I?
8. How did religion play a special part in Japanese politics?
9. Why did Japan want to build an empire?
10. Why did the Japanese attack the United States fleet at Pearl Harbor?
11. How did the United States help Japan after World War II was over?
12. Name Japan's principal cities. Give one important fact about each city.

Using a Time-Line

Arrange the following statements in the proper order of time: Commodore Perry visited Japan; Japan surrendered to the Allies; Buddhist missionaries visited Japan; Japan seized Korea; Japan took over Manchuria; Tokyo became the capital city; Japan attacked Pearl Harbor; Japan went to war with Russia. Then add these dates to your time-line.



ALEUTIAN ISLANDS

CANADA

The ISLANDS of the PACIFIC

One inch on the Equator stands for 700 miles



UNITED STATES

San Francisco

P A C I F I C

HAWAIIAN ISLANDS

Midway Islands

Honolulu
Pearl Harbor

Wake Island

MARSHALL ISLANDS

P O L Y N E S I A N

Equator

N E W H E B R I D E S

SAMOA ISLANDS
Pago Pago

FIJI ISLANDS
Suva

NEW CALEDONIA
Noumea

TUAMOTU ISLANDS
Papeete
TAHITI

NEW ZEALAND

THE PHILIPPINE ISLANDS

North of Indonesia and south of Taiwan lie the Philippines.

WHAT THE PHILIPPINES ARE LIKE

These islands were discovered by Magellan in 1521. Later, the Spaniards named the group the Philippines in honor of the young Spanish prince who became Philip II, king of Spain, in 1556.

The size of the Philippines

The Philippines are a group of mountainous islands, partly volcanic, extending over a thousand miles of water. They are entirely in the tropical regions. There are more than seven thousand of these islands. The Philippines have an area twice the size of Michigan and are three times as thickly populated. Over twenty-one million people live in the islands, but there is enough good land for several times as many. The Philippines have been called the most-favored tropical islands in the world.

The people of the Philippines

The people of the islands are made up of many groups which speak different languages. But after the coming of the Spaniards they were all called Filipinos. The Filipinos are usually small. Most of them are slender and graceful, with rather delicate features. In the three hundred years during which Spain held the islands, most of the Filipinos became Christians and learned Spanish.

After the United States took over the government of the Philippines in 1899 many new schools were opened. The quick-minded Filipinos took advantage of this chance for education. Today almost

every educated Filipino speaks and writes both Spanish and English.

Products of the Philippines

The Philippines have a rice-growing climate. Plenty of rain means that rice can be grown well. To Filipinos rice is as important as it is to the people of Japan.

The main foods of the Filipinos are fish and vegetables, especially sweet potatoes and bamboo sprouts. The sprouts are cooked and eaten something like asparagus. Pork is also a favorite food.

LUZON, LARGEST ISLAND

At the northern end of the Philippines is Luzon, the largest island in the group. It is about the size of the state of Kentucky. There are airfields and many miles of roads and railroads on Luzon.

Manila, the largest city

In the southwestern part of Luzon stands the city of Manila, which is about

This cartload of abacá is ready for export. The United States imports much Philippine abacá.

Ewing Galloway



as large as Baltimore. Manila serves as an important center of trade because it has a large, deep harbor which faces the mainland of Asia. Before World War II, the steamships going from Singapore to Chinese and Japanese ports used the route which led past Manila. Many vessels visited that port each year.

Philippine exports

The Philippines are among the leading countries of the world in growing coconuts. The vessels leaving Manila carry away tons of coconut products, including hundreds of barrels of coconut oil. Coconut oil is used to make soap and salad oils. It is also useful in making explosives.

Ships from Manila also carry bags of raw sugar. Then there are bars of gold, and the best iron ore in the Far East.

Another article exported is Manila hemp, or *abacá*. *Abacá* is a tall plant which belongs to the same family as the banana. Like the banana, it shoots up very fast, sometimes reaching a height of twenty-five feet. Knives are used to strip the fiber from the stalk of the plant. The best fibers, often ten feet long, come from near the center of the stalk. These are twisted together into twine or rope. No other fiber equals *abacá* for making high-grade rope. It is the only rope that will stand being soaked with salt water without rotting. On that account sailors prize it highly. *Abacá* is also made into hats, slippers, rugs, and manila wrapping paper.

PHILIPPINE INDEPENDENCE

When the United States took over the islands, it promised the Filipinos that they would become independent as soon as they learned how to govern themselves. The Filipinos worked very hard because they

wanted their independence. They became better educated. They developed good leaders who would be able to hold important positions in the government.

The Philippines in World War II

When the Japanese conquered their islands in World War II, the Filipinos proved their loyalty to the United States. Their guerrilla fighters continued to resist the Japanese until the islands were freed in 1945.

The Republic of the Philippines

In 1946 the Filipinos were ready for independence. The United States kept its promise and on July 4, 1946, granted them independence. The government of the new republic is modeled on that of the United States. It has a president and a vice-president, each elected for four years. It also has a Senate and a House of Representatives, like our own. A new capital is being built at Quezon City, a few miles from Manila.

Today the Philippines is an independent nation, but it still depends on the United States for trade and protection.

These Fiji Island natives are cutting out coconut meat. The dried meat, called copra, is a leading export from the Pacific islands.

British Information Services



THE REPUBLIC OF INDONESIA

Most of the islands of the East Indies once belonged to the Dutch. Today these islands are known as Indonesia.

THE GEOGRAPHY OF INDONESIA

Look at the map on pages 452-453. South of the peninsula of Malaya is the big island of Sumatra. Southeast of it is Java, and north of Java is Borneo. Beyond Java and Borneo other islands of the East Indies cover a large area of water.

What Java is like

About the size of the state of New York, Java has more than three times as many people. Its largest city, Jakarta, was built by the Dutch in the early 1600's. It is sometimes called "the Venice of the East" because a grand canal forms its principal highway. On each side of its many canals are ships and red-roofed houses.

In the hot climate of Java, where there is abundant rain, crops grow fast. The soil, enriched by ashes from the island's many volcanoes, is very fertile. Java has always been a land of forests, flowers, and fruits.

Java's chief crop is rice. Tea planting has become common in the highlands of

western Java. Not long ago a great deal of coffee was exported from Java. But disease swept through the plantations and ruined the trees. The planters brought from eastern Africa a different kind of coffee tree which grows well in steamy weather. Coffee is again an important crop in Java.

In the hills of Java many forests of *cinchona* trees have been planted. Cinchona bark gives us the bitter-tasting medicine called *quinine*. Quinine enables people to keep well in regions where fever prevails. Java is now almost the world's only producer of quinine.

The Netherlands governed Java until 1949, when it became independent. Under the Dutch the people of Java often prospered. Many of them grew rich by renting their land to foreign companies to raise rubber and drill oil wells. Others served in the colonial army and navy of the Netherlands. But most were content to live as their parents did, and work the land.

In Java the Dutch built a network of splendid roads and constructed thousands of miles of railroads. Surabaya, a city a little smaller than St. Louis, Missouri, is a fine naval base and air-line center. Jakarta, on Java, is the capital of the Republic of Indonesia.

What Sumatra is like

The great island of Sumatra, more than three times the size of Java, is also a valuable part of Indonesia. It is not as productive as Java, but it has great rubber plantations. Some of these are owned by people in the United States. Here also are plantations of palms, which yield oil.

On three little islands lying off the eastern shore of Sumatra are rich mines of

This Javanese woman uses a pipe to apply hot wax to cloth. The wax makes a design by keeping the cloth from taking dye. This process, called batik, is a leading handicraft in Java.

Combine



tin. During World War II the Japanese captured Malaya, Sumatra, and almost all the East Indian Islands. Tin became so scarce in the United States that housewives were asked to save tin cans.

What Borneo is like

Borneo, the third largest island in the world, is owned partly by Indonesia and partly by the British. In many parts of the island the people are backward, and the land is not farmed. The Dutch did very little to improve their part of Borneo except to develop the oil found there.

THE EAST INDIES IN RECENT TIMES

In 1940 Germany conquered the Low Countries and France. Japan then made plans to seize British, French, and Dutch possessions in the Far East. Because Japan had been at war with China it needed the oil, tin, and rubber of the East Indies.

Indonesia in World War II

In the early part of 1942 a Japanese fleet advanced on Java. Java was the main fortress of the Dutch. United States, British, and Dutch ships met in the Java Sea north of the island. In that battle the Allied vessels were almost all destroyed. The Dutch East Indies then fell into the hands of the Japanese and remained there until Japan was defeated in 1945.

The United States of Indonesia

After the war the people of the East Indies wished to be self-governing. They fought the Netherlands for their independence. In 1949 the Dutch agreed that the islands should become self-governing. The new country is called the United States of Indonesia. It has a president at its head and is made up of sixteen states. The Republic of Indonesia is the most important of these states.

THE ISLANDS OF MELANESIA

Northeast of Australia is a large group of islands called Melanesia.

WHAT MELANESIA IS LIKE

The map on pages 452-453 shows that Melanesia reaches from New Guinea on the west to the Fijis on the east.

Melanesia includes New Ireland, New Britain, the Solomon Islands, New Hebrides, New Caledonia, the Fijis, and many other scattered islands. New Guinea is sometimes considered a part of Melanesia because its people look like Melanesians, who are short, stocky, and dark.

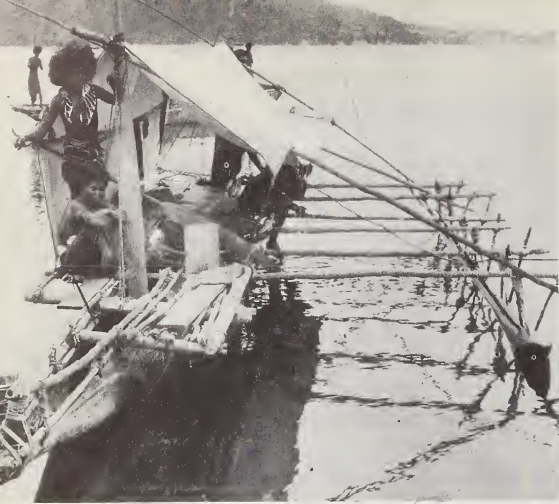
How Melanesia is governed

Melanesia belongs to three nations—the French, the Australians, and the British.

France owns New Caledonia and shares with Great Britain in governing the New Hebrides. Australia holds the eastern half of New Guinea and some of the islands to the east of that area. The British rule the rest of Melanesia. The islands are beautiful but are hard to explore. In New Guinea, near the equator, there are mountains forever covered with snow and ice.

The people of Melanesia

Not many years ago the people of Melanesia were almost constantly at war with one another. But the wars were only small ones. On some islands the people were head-hunters. In recent times missionaries have been instructing the Melanesians in Christianity. New ideas of law



Ewing Galloway

A group of Melanesians sail their "outrigger." This is a canoe with a log attached to it by a framework to keep the canoe from turning over.

and order have been introduced by men from the European nations who govern Melanesia. Many natives now serve as policemen, and some are officers. Today the tribesmen who are constantly at war with their neighbors are only to be found in the wild interior of some of the large islands. Some seaport towns, like Noumea, capital of New Caledonia, and Suva, capital of the Fijis, have good restaurants, fine stores, and even up-to-date motion-picture houses.

PRODUCTS OF MELANESIA

Melanesia, which lies just below the equator, grows tropical fruits and vegetables. The same is true of Micronesia.

Favorite foods

In these islands the chief foods are the banana, the coconut, the yam, and the *breadfruit*. When roasted, the breadfruit tastes like new bread.

Another important source of food is provided by the *taro* plant. It has broad

leaves and a long root which is good to eat when cooked. The root of the taro plant is eaten much as we eat potatoes. The leaves are sometimes cooked like spinach, and the young shoots are boiled and eaten.

Coconut is another popular food in these islands. Coconut trees grow well in warm lands near the ocean. When the coconuts are green, they contain a sweetish juice which is good to drink. As they ripen, the juice begins to harden. When it has hardened into a custard, the natives often mix it with taro to make a sort of pudding.

Exports from Melanesia

Many of the plains along the coasts of New Guinea, the Solomons, New Ireland, and New Britain are covered with coconut plantations. When the meat of the coconut is dried, it is called *copra*. Copra is an important export. From copra an oil is obtained which is useful in cooking and in the making of soap. Coconut meat, when ground, is used in custards, pies, cakes, and candy.

New Guinea produces much gold. New Caledonia has rich mines of nickel. It lies far enough to the south to have a climate cooler than the rest of Melanesia. Its climate is somewhat like that of Florida. Since it has much open land covered with grass, it is good country for cattle raising. In World Wars I and II, the packing houses of New Caledonia furnished much of the meat used by the Australian soldiers.

The main industry of the beautiful Fiji Islands is the growing of sugar cane. The Fiji Islands are on one of the main trade routes of the Pacific. Tourists from the United States and Australia often stop there on their way across the Pacific.

THE ISLANDS OF POLYNESIA

East of Melanesia thousands of islands, most of them small, dot the vast South Pacific. They are called Polynesia.

WHAT POLYNESIA IS LIKE

As you will see from the map on pages 452-453, many of these islands seem to be arranged in groups.

How Polynesia was settled

Several hundred years before the discovery of America, scientists believe that groups of people from southeastern Asia set out on voyages seeking new homes. With stone tools they built big double canoes whose planks were not nailed but sewed together with coconut fibers. They joined the two canoes by a platform on which there was a sort of cabin to hold their belongings. Sixty persons could travel in one such ship.

Singly, or in fleets, these daring explorers found and settled the large group of islands now called Polynesia. These people had no compass or other instruments to guide them in finding new lands. But they were wonderfully skillful in reading the signs of the sea. They studied the stars. They followed the flight of birds. They knew when land was near from the appearance of the clouds and the waves.

In the end the Polynesians peopled every island north of New Zealand to the Hawaiian Islands. They carried with them their food plants, the yam, the taro, the coconut, and the breadfruit tree. Dogs, pigs, and chickens were also taken along.

Three flags over Polynesia

In the southeastern part of Polynesia the French flag flies over four groups of

islands. The most important island among these is Tahiti. Papeete, a little town whose houses are almost buried in vines and flowers, is the capital. The trading vessels of this part of the Pacific make Papeete their port. Traders like the climate here.

Twelve hundred miles west of Tahiti, on the western edge of Polynesia, are the Samoa Islands. New Zealand has a mandate over the western part of these. The United States owns the eastern part. Pago Pago is a busy port, for Samoa lies on the shipping route between the United States and Australia. Vessels and airplanes traveling the wide spaces of the South Pacific stop in Samoa for supplies.

The British hold the rest of the islands of Polynesia, except for Hawaii, which belongs to the United States.

The people of Polynesia

The people of these islands have light-brown skins, wavy dark hair, and brown eyes. They are intelligent and attractive.

Life is easy on the islands. The weather is warm, plants grow fast, and the people have learned to enjoy outdoor sports in their fine climate. They are especially good at swimming. They enjoy music and dancing in the open.

Polynesians will work hard at something that interests them. But they see little use in saving money or in having more property than they need. They have adapted themselves to the warm climate of these beautiful islands, and they care little about the rest of the world.

PRODUCTS OF POLYNESIA

Like other lands near the equator the products of Polynesia are tropical.

The valuable coconut tree

On almost every island of the Polynesian group grow the "feather-duster" coconut palms. What would the Polynesians do without this valuable tree? The trunk of the tree forms timber for building furniture, houses, and boats. The leaves cover roofs and are woven into baskets and screens. From the fiber the Polynesians make sails, matting, strong rope, and nets. A kind of rough cloth is also made from certain parts of this palm.

Coconut oil is used for lighting and cooking. Polynesian girls keep their long dark hair glossy with it. The sap of the coconut tree furnishes sugar and wine. The young leaves and shoots make a good

salad. The nut, before it is ripe, contains a liquid which is good to drink. The meat of the ripe nut is a nourishing food.

Copra, the chief money crop

The chief money crop of the islands is copra. All through Polynesia piles of dried, broken coconut meat lie near the water's edge waiting to be bought and carried away. Copra is shipped to France, Great Britain, Australia, and the United States.

With copra the Polynesian buys most of the things he wants from the outside world. Trading schooners and many small steamers cruise around the islands. They bring all kinds of articles to sell to the natives and take copra in payment.

THE FUTURE OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

As we end our tour of the Pacific islands, we wonder about their future.

The Pacific today

At the end of World War II, the people of many Far-Eastern areas which belonged to other nations demanded and received their freedom. They wanted to rule themselves as independent nations. Two such areas which we have studied are the Philippines and Indonesia.

Melanesia, Micronesia, and Polynesia, however, are not yet ready for independence. They have much to learn before they will be able to rule themselves.

The new nations of the Far East are interested in the Pacific as a source of trade. As these nations build up their merchant marines, they will send out increasing numbers of ships. Many of these ships will stop at the Pacific islands to buy raw materials. Tourists will visit the beautiful islands. Japan, as a democratic nation,

will probably become a leader again in the trade of the Pacific.

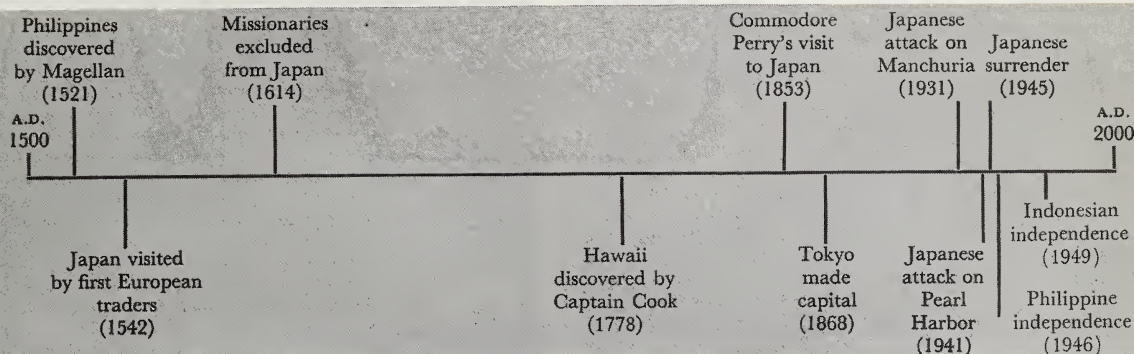
The airplane has made a great difference in traveling time in the Pacific. Voyages which would take several days by ship can be made in a few hours by plane. Many of the islands also serve as useful stopping points on airplane routes across the Pacific. Airfields, built for wartime bombers and fighter planes, are used for passenger and cargo planes in peacetime.

The United States and the Pacific

During World War II, many United States soldiers lived and fought in the islands of the Pacific. Today our country is still interested in these areas. We also want to trade with them and help them to develop the resources of their islands.

Today our country is the guardian of some of these small islands. We now have a large share in the responsibility for their progress and development.

Time-Line: Islands of the Pacific (1500 A.D.—2000 A.D.)



TO HELP YOU LEARN

Words You Should Know

abacá	quinine
taro	breadfruit
copra	cinchona

A Matching Game

Number a paper from 1 to 6. After each number write the word from the list above that matches the definition.

1. A large round fruit which, when baked, tastes like bread
2. Manila hemp fiber used to make rope and wrapping paper
3. The tree from whose bark a bitter medicine is made
4. A plant with a long root that is good to eat when cooked
5. The dried meat of the coconut
6. A bitter-tasting medicine used in the treatment of malaria and other fevers

Can You Answer These?

1. Why is Jakarta sometimes called "the Venice of the East"?
2. What are the important crops of Java?
3. When did Indonesia receive its independence from the Netherlands?
4. Who discovered the Philippine Islands? When?

5. Which is the largest island in the Philippines? The largest city?
6. When did the Philippines get their independence? What form of government do the Filipinos have now?
7. Which three countries own islands in Melanesia?
8. What metal is mined in New Caledonia? In New Guinea?
9. How did the Polynesians show that they were fine sailors?
10. What islands in the Pacific belong to the United States?
11. On what island is Pago Pago? Why is it a busy port?
12. How has the airplane helped people who live on the Pacific islands?

Learning from Maps

Consult the map on pages 452 and 453 and answer these questions:

1. Which includes the largest area, Micronesia, Melanesia, or Polynesia? Which has the greatest number of large islands?
2. What areas in and around the Pacific did Japan control in World War II?
3. Using the scale of miles, find the distance between Tokyo and Manila; between Tokyo and Singapore.



Ewing Galloway



Acme

AFTER WORLD WAR II

Since World War II many events have claimed the attention of the historian. Among the most important have been the efforts of nations to keep the peace.

The United Nations

At the end of World War II the Allies formed an organization called the United Nations. The purpose of the United Nations is to give the nations of the world a chance to discuss their problems and work them out peacefully.

In 1945 a meeting was held at San Francisco at which a charter, or constitution, for the United Nations was written. The first members of the organization were the countries who had fought against Germany, Italy, and Japan in the war. According to the charter, the five nations which were leaders in the war are the most powerful members. These nations, called the "Big Five," are the United States, Great Britain, Soviet Russia, France, and Nationalist China. Today

most of the important nations except Communist China are members. The headquarters of the United Nations is in New York City.

The United Nations is made up of three main groups, or bodies, and several smaller ones. The most important is the Security Council. Its duty is to preserve the peace. It is made up of the representatives of eleven nations. The "Big Five" are always represented. Representatives of six other countries are elected to the other seats. Only the "Big Five" members have the right to veto, or vote against, a proposal in the Security Council. All of the "Big Five" members also must agree before the Security Council can take action.

The largest body in the United Nations is the General Assembly. Every member country is represented in it. The General Assembly studies and discusses problems brought before it.

A third important body in the United Nations is the International Court of

Justice. In this court fifteen judges, or justices, decide legal disputes between nations. The court meets at the Hague, in the Netherlands.

After the war was over, disagreements developed among the "Big Five." Soviet Russia often used the veto in the Security Council to prevent action it did not like. The Russians took steps to extend communism into other countries. This caused the nations of western Europe to fear and distrust the U.S.S.R. There have also been serious disagreements between Russia and the United States.

The Marshall Plan

In 1947 the United States began a program to help the nations of western Europe recover from the war. It was called the European Recovery Program, or the Marshall Plan, because Secretary of State George C. Marshall first suggested it. By this plan the United States helped many European countries rebuild their industries and improve their farming methods. This was done so that these European nations could become self-supporting.

Regional organizations

To protect themselves certain nations joined together in alliances. The members of a group promised to come to the aid of any other member of the group which might be attacked. In 1949 the United States took the lead in forming an alliance with Canada and thirteen nations of western Europe. This is called the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO). In 1954 the United States joined a number of the nations of Asia to form the Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO).

For many years the republics of the Western Hemisphere have belonged to an

organization called the Pan American Union. In 1948 the Pan American Union became a part of the Organization of American States (OAS). This organization works to promote peace, trade, and good relations among the republics of the Western Hemisphere. The OAS also will provide protection in case of attack by any power outside the Western Hemisphere.

In 1955 representatives of twenty-nine nations gathered in Bandung, Indonesia. At this meeting they discussed the common problems of the people of Africa and Asia.

The Korean War

In 1950 the Communist government of North Korea invaded the Republic of South Korea without warning. This was a serious threat to the peace of the world. The United Nations ordered the North Korean government to stop the invasion. When the North Koreans refused, an army and a navy under the United Nations was formed to help the South Koreans defend their country. The United States furnished most of the men and equipment. A number of other United Nations members provided help also. Later Communist China sent a large army to fight the United Nations forces. Soviet Russia also sent help to North Korea. Neither side could win, and the war became a stalemate. Finally, in 1953 an armistice was arranged, and the fighting ended. The United Nations had proved that it would act to protect its member nations.

Peace has not yet come to the world. The United Nations, however, is our best hope. In the United Nations and in other world organizations the United States has played an active part. For Americans believe in freedom and in defending the principles of the free world.

REFERENCE TABLES

Area and population figures based on U.N. sources and *The Statesman's Year-Book*
(latest population figures, census or official estimate)

COUNTRY	AREA IN SQUARE MILES	POPULA- TION	CAPITAL	COUNTRY	AREA IN SQUARE MILES	POPULA- TION	CAPITAL
EUROPE				ASIA (Cont.)			
Albania	10,629	1,394,000	Tirana	Cyprus (Br.)	3,572	524,000	Nicosia
Andorra	191	5,664	Andorra	Hong Kong (Br.)	391	2,440,000	Victoria
Austria	32,375	6,976,000	Vienna	India	1,218,327	381,690,000	New Delhi
Belgium	11,775	8,896,000	Brussels	Indonesia	735,267	81,900,000	Jakarta
Bulgaria	42,796	7,629,254	Sofia	Iran	628,060	18,944,821	Tehran
Czechoslovakia	49,381	13,224,000	Prague	Iraq	116,600	4,859,000	Baghdad
Denmark	16,576	4,499,000	Copenhagen	Israel	8,084	1,872,000	Jerusalem
Finland	130,165	4,315,000	Helsinki	Japan	141,529	90,400,000	Tokyo
France	212,659	43,787,000	Paris	Jordan	34,750	1,471,000	Amman
Germany	136,822	71,627,000		Korea	85,266	30,000,000	
Eastern	41,717	17,832,000	Berlin	North	49,114	8,474,000	Pyongyang
Western	95,105	53,795,000	Bonn	South	36,152	21,526,000	Seoul
Greece	51,246	8,007,000	Athens	Laos	91,405	1,425,000	Vientiane
Hungary	35,912	9,861,000	Budapest	Lebanon	3,400	1,450,000	Beirut
Iceland	39,758	159,000	Reykjavik	Malaya	50,680	6,152,000	Kuala Lumpur
Ireland	27,137	2,895,000	Dublin	Mongolia	590,966	1,000,000	Ulan Bator
Italy	119,800	49,400,000	Rome	Nepal	54,000	8,431,537	Katmandu
Liechtenstein	62	14,861	Vaduz	Pakistan	361,007	83,603,000	Karachi
Luxembourg	999	311,000	Luxembourg	Philippines	115,600	22,265,000	Quezon City
Monaco	59	20,422	Monaco	Saudi Arabia	1,100,000	7,000,000	Mecca and Riyadh
Netherlands	15,764	10,956,000	Amsterdam	Syria	66,046	4,194,000	Damascus
Norway	124,556	3,462,000	Oslo	Thailand (Siam)	200,148	20,686,000	Bangkok
Poland	121,131	27,680,000	Warsaw	Vietnam	129,053	26,300,000	Saigon and Hanoi
Portugal	35,404	8,879,000	Lisbon	Yemen	75,290	4,500,000	San'a
Rumania	91,571	17,489,794	Bucharest				
San Marino	38	14,000	San Marino	AFRICA			
Spain	194,232	29,203,000	Madrid	Algeria (Fr.)	847,500	9,620,000	Algiers
Sweden	173,426	7,322,000	Stockholm	Angola (Port.)	481,351	4,317,000	Luanda
Switzerland	15,944	5,045,000	Bern	Belgian Congo	904,757	12,411,000	Leopoldville
Turkey	296,320	24,797,000	Ankara	Ruanda- Urundi	20,900	4,271,000	Usumbura
Union of Soviet Socialist Republics	8,708,070	200,000,000	Moscow	British Africa			
United Kingdom	94,279	51,604,000	London	Kenya	219,730	6,150,000	Nairobi
Malta	122	314,000	Valletta	Tanganyika	362,000	8,456,000	Dar es Salaam
Gibraltar	2.25	25,000	Gibraltar	Uganda	93,981	5,593,000	Entebbe
Vatican City	.16	1,000		Zanzibar and Pemba	1,020	278,000	Zanzibar
Yugoslavia	95,558	17,994,725	Belgrade	Somaliland	68,000	640,000	Hargeisa
ASIA				Northern Rhodesia	287,640	2,180,000	Lusaka
Aden (Br.)	112,000	790,000	Aden	Nyasaland	37,374	2,600,000	Zomba
Afghanistan	250,000	12,000,000	Kabul	Southern Rhodesia	150,333	2,480,000	Salisbury
Bhutan	18,000	623,000	Punakha	Cameroons (Trustee- ship)	34,081	1,440,509	
Burma	261,610	19,856,000	Rangoon	Gambia	4,005	273,000	Bathurst
Cambodia	69,866	4,358,000	Phnom Penh				
Ceylon	25,332	8,783,000	Colombo				
China	3,032,663	582,603,417	Peking				
Taiwan	13,890	9,863,264	Taipei				

REFERENCE TABLES—Continued

COUNTRY	AREA IN SQUARE MILES	POPULA- TION	CAPITAL	COUNTRY	AREA IN SQUARE MILES	POPULA- TION	CAPITAL
AFRICA (Cont.)				Union of South Africa	472,494	13,915,000	Capetown and Pretoria
Ghana	91,843	4,691,000	Accra	Southwest Africa	317,725	458,000	Windhoek
Nigeria	372,674	32,572,000	Lagos	AUSTRALIA AND PACIFIC ISLANDS			
Sierra Leone	2,500	2,000,000	Freetown	Australia	2,974,581	9,479,000	Canberra
Cape Verde Is- lands (Port.)	1,557	172,000	Praia	Fiji Islands (Br.)	7,083	345,000	Suva
Egypt	386,198	22,934,000	Cairo	New Caledonia (Fr.)	8,548	65,000	Nouméa
Ethiopia	365,754	20,000,000	Addis Ababa	New Hebrides (Br. and Fr.)	5,700	53,000	Vila
French Equa- torial Africa	959,256	4,768,000	Brazzaville	New Zealand	103,736	2,174,062	Wellington
French West Africa	1,815,768	18,749,000	Dakar	Samoa (N.Z. and U.S.)	1,209	119,000	Apia and Pago Pago
French Somali- land	9,071	63,000	Jibuti	Solomon Islands (Br.)	14,600	99,000	Honiara
Liberia	43,000	1,250,000	Monrovia	Tahiti (Fr.)	600	30,500	Papeete
Libya	679,358	1,105,000	Benghazi and Tripoli	Territory of New Guinea (Aus.)	93,000	1,254,000	Port Moresby
Madagascar (Fr.)	241,094	4,776,000	Tananarive	Timor (Port.)	7,330	475,000	Dilly
Morocco	172,104	9,848,000	Rabat	Tonga Islands (Br.)	269	56,000	Nukualofa
Mozambique (Port.)	297,731	6,095,000	Lourenço Marques				
Portuguese Guinea	13,948	547,000	Bissau				
Somalia	194,000	1,280,000	Mogadiscio				
Sudan	967,500	8,971,720	Khartoum				
Tunisia	48,195	3,782,480	Tunis				

WORD LIST

ā as in late
â as in bare
ã as in van
ä as in cart
å as in task

á as in so'fa
ē as in eve
ẽ as in bend
ē as in ba'ker
ĩ as in hide

ĩ as in bill
ō as in hole
ō as in job
ô as in fork
õ as in noon

õ as in nook
oi as in soil
ou as in loud
th as in path
th as in they

ũ as in pure
ũ as in rust
û as in turn
zh as in sei'zure

abacá (ă'bă-kă'): Manila hemp fiber, used to make high-grade rope and wrapping paper

absentee landlord: a landowner who lives in a country or district away from his estate

acacia (ă-kă'shă): a thorny shrub with white or yellow flowers that grows in warm regions

Afrikaans (ă'f'ri-kăns'): the language resembling Dutch, spoken by the Boers in South Africa

alchemy (ăl'kě-mi): in the Middle Ages, the study of chemicals, chiefly the search for a way to change other metals into gold

alfa: a kind of grass from which paper, rope, and baskets are made

algebra (ăl'jě-bră): a kind of mathematics that uses letters as well as numbers

Allies: the nations which fought against Germany, Austria, Turkey, and Bulgaria in World War I; the countries which fought against the Axis Powers in World War II

amphitheater (ăm'fi-thě'ă-těr): a large round building with rows of seats around a central space, in which sports and shows are held

ancestor worship: the belief that one's ancestors should be honored and their ways followed

apprentice: a worker who bound himself to a master to learn a trade

aqueduct (ăk'wě-dŭkt): an artificial channel to carry water

arena (ă-rě'nă): a place for contests or shows

armada (ăr-mă'dă): a fleet of armed ships

Aryans (ăr'ĩ-ănz): tall, fair-complexioned people from the north who settled in India

asbestos (ăs-běs'tös): a mineral that will not burn, from which fire-proof articles are made

astrolabe: an instrument used by sailors to measure the height of the sun in the sky

astronomy (ăs-trŏn'ō-mĩ): the science which deals with heavenly bodies

atmosphere: the blanket of air around the earth

atomic bomb: a bomb whose explosive power is due to the sudden release of atomic energy

attar of roses: a liquid made from flowers, used to make perfume

axis: the imaginary line on which the earth seems to turn

bacteria (băk-těr'ĩ-ă): invisible organisms that cause disease and spoilage of foods

ballast: heavy weight carried in the bottom of a ship to keep it steady

ballet (băl'ă): an artistic dance telling a story through bodily movements and gestures

bamboo (băm-bŏŏ'): a treelike grass of the Far East used for building and for furniture

baron: in feudal times, a great lord

battlement: a low wall, with regular open spaces, on top of the walls of a castle

Bedouins (běd'ŏŏ-ĩnz): Arabs who wander about with no permanent home

bishop: a clergyman who heads a church district

blubber: whale fat

Bolshevist (bŏl'shě-víst): a member of the political party that led the revolution which established communism in Russia in 1917

boomerang (bŏŏm'ěr-ăng): a piece of curved wood used by Australian natives which, after being thrown, returns to the sender

botany (bŏt'ă-nĩ): the study of plants

boulevard (bŏŏ'lě-vărd): a broad avenue

breadfruit: a large round fruit which, when baked, tastes like bread

breakwater: a structure to break the force of waves and protect a harbor or beach

brocade (brŏ-kăd'): a silk cloth with a raised design in gold or silver thread

bronze: a substance made from tin and copper

Buddhism: a religion that had its origin in India and spread to China and Japan

café (kă'fă'): a coffeehouse or restaurant

canton (kăn'tŏn): a Swiss district or state

capital: the top of a column; the city where the seat of government of a country is located

caravan: a group of people who travel across the desert on camels

carillon (kăr'ĩ-lŏn): a set of bells which can be played upon as a musical instrument

carrousel (kăr'ŏŏ-zě'l'): a merry-go-round

caste: one of the divisions of Indian society to which each Hindu belongs by birth

cataract (kăt'ă-răkt): a large waterfall

cathedral (ká-thě'dráł): a large or important church, which is the seat of a bishop

census: an official counting of the population of a city or country

cereal: any grain used for food

charter: a statement signed by the lord of a town listing privileges gained by the town

chef (shěf): a cook

chemistry (kěm'is-trī): the science which deals with the nature of substances and the changes which they undergo

cinchona (sín-kō'ná): the tree from whose bark quinine is made

circumference: the distance around a sphere

city-state: a free and independent city which controls a large amount of surrounding land

civil war: a war within a country fought between two groups of fellow countrymen

climate: the weather of a certain place over a long period of time

cocoon: the wrapping of silk threads which the silk-worm spins about itself

collective: a large farm, usually state-owned, in a communist country

Colosseum (kōl'ō-sē'üm): the huge, open building in the city of Rome used for shows

comedy: an amusing play with a happy ending

commonwealth: the body of people making up a state or politically organized community

Communist (kōm'ū-nist): one who believes in the present government of Russia or China

compass: an instrument with a needle that always points north

concentration camp: a camp within a barbed-wire fence where political prisoners are kept

concrete: artificial rock made by mixing cement and sand with small stones

consul (kōn'sül): one of the two highest officials of the Roman Republic

convent: residence of a group of nuns

co-operation: working together

co-operative union: a business organization of benefit to its members, who buy the goods they need and sell the products they raise

copra (kōp'rá): the dried meat of the coconut

cormorant (kōr'mō-rănt): a large black bird used to catch fish in China and Japan

craft guild: an association of craftsmen doing the same kind of work

cricket: a team game popular in England

crop rotation: planting different grains and grasses in the same field from year to year to keep the farm land fertile

cuneiform (kū-nē'f-fōrm): wedge-shaped writing used by ancient Sumerians and others

custom: a practice that has become a habit

damask (dăm'ăsk): a fine silk or linen cloth woven in figures, first made in Damascus

democracy: a community governed by the people who live in it

diameter: the distance through the center of an object

dictator: in ancient Rome, a leader given absolute power for a short time in an emergency; now, any ruler with absolute power

diet (dī'ět): a lawmaking body

dike: a bank of earth thrown up to keep out water

discus: a circular plate of stone or metal, thrown by athletes

dominion: a self-governing member of the British Commonwealth of Nations

drawbridge: a bridge across the moat of a castle that could be raised to keep out enemies

drift: a wind-driven mass of water of a different temperature from the surrounding ocean

dugout: a canoe made by hollowing a log

dungeon: the main tower of a castle

dy'na mite: a form of explosive

echidna (ē-kid'ná): an Australian animal with a long, tapering snout

eclipse (ē-klips'): a darkening of the sun or moon

embalming (ēm-băm'ing): a way of preserving bodies after death

emir (ē-mēr'): a sultan or ruler

emperor: the ruler of an empire

empire: a group of nations or territories under one head or government

epic (ēp'ik): a long story-poem

eucalyptus (ū'ká-líp'tūs): an Australian tree

fable: a short tale, in which animals talk and which teaches a lesson

factory: a building where goods are made

fair: a gathering of buyers and sellers at a stated time and place

fascēs (făs'ēz): a Latin word meaning "bundles"

Fascist (făsh'ist): a government in which all power is centered in the head of the nation and all opposition is put down by force

fellahin (fēl'á-hēn'): Egyptian farmers

Fertile Crescent: a curved belt of fertile lowland from Palestine to the Persian Gulf

feudalism (fū'dăl-iz'm), **feudal system**: the social system in Europe in the Middle Ages based on the relation of lord to vassal

fez (fěz): a brimless cap, usually red, with a tassel, once worn in all Turkish lands

fiber: a threadlike part of certain plants

fief (fēf): land given by a lord to a vassal

fiord (fyôrd): a narrow inlet of the sea between high banks or cliffs

flint: a hard kind of stone used in the Stone Age for weapons and to strike fire

flying buttress: a heavy stone prop placed outside a building to strengthen it

foreman: an overseer

forum: a public meeting place in cities of ancient Rome

freeman: a person in the Middle Ages who was not bound to the land as was a serf

frieze: an ornamental band on a building

frontier: lands near the borders of a nation or empire

Fuehrer (fû'rêr): the title used by Hitler as dictator of Germany

gladiator: an armed man who fought in the Roman amphitheaters to amuse the people

gondola (gôn'dô-lâ): a long, narrow boat used on the canals of Venice

gondolier (gôn'dô-lêr'): a man who rows a gondola

Gothic: a style of building which has pointed arches, flying buttresses, stained-glass windows, and spires

government: laws made for the good of the people which must be obeyed

graphite: a mineral used in the lead of pencils and in making paint

guerrilla (gê-rîl'â): a civilian fighter

guillotine (gîl'ô-tên): a machine for beheading persons, used in the French Revolution

halva: a dessert made of ground sesame seed, oil, and honey

hieroglyphics (hî'êr-ô-glîf'îks): ancient Egyptian picture writing

Hindus: natives of India who live under the caste system

house: in politics, a branch of a legislature or other governing body

Ice Age: the period when the northern parts of the earth were covered by masses of ice

Industrial Revolution: the period, beginning in the late 1700's, when machinery gradually replaced hand tools

intensive farming: a method of farming by which each acre is made to produce a large crop

international: representing many nations

International Settlement: the European section of Shanghai

iron curtain: the boundary line behind which the people of lands controlled by Russia are isolated from the free world outside

jade: a hard, colored stone widely used for fine carvings and jewelry

Japan Current: the warm current of water in the Pacific Ocean which has a warming effect on Japan and many other Pacific lands

journeyman: a worker in the Middle Ages who completed his training as an apprentice

junk: a Chinese sailing vessel

jury: a group of impartial persons who listen to both sides of a case and give their decision about it

jute: a plant whose fiber is used for burlap, wrapping paper, and twine

kaffir (kăf'êr) **corn**: a grain first raised in South Africa

kangaroo: a large Australian animal which moves by jumping and which carries its young in a pouch

karroo (kă-rôo'): a dry region in South Africa

kilogram: a unit of weight in the metric system, amounting to a thousand grams

kilometer: a unit of measurement in the metric system, amounting to a thousand meters

knight: a noble warrior of the Middle Ages

kookaburra (kôok'â-bûr'â): a large Australian bird often called the "laughing jackass"

Kremlin: the fortified part of Moscow where the tsars once lived and where the present rulers of Soviet Russia work

Kuomintang (gwô'mîn-tāng'): the National People's Party which controlled China under Sun Yat-sen and Chiang Kai-shek

lacquer (lăk'êr): a kind of varnish which gives a smooth, hard surface to wood

latex: milky white juice of the rubber tree

Latin: the language of the ancient Romans

latitude: the distance north or south of the equator

League of Nations: an international organization, formed after World War I, of nations interested in preventing war

legion: a large division of troops in ancient Rome

Leyden jar (lî'dên): a Dutch invention which made it possible to store up electricity

lignite (lîg'nîl): soft brown coal

longitude: the distance east or west on the earth's surface measured from the prime meridian

loom: a frame for weaving yarn or thread into cloth

lord: in the Middle Ages, the king or nobleman to whom a vassal owed allegiance

lord mayor: a title given to a high officer of the city of London

lycée (lê'să'): a French public school like an American high school

Magna Carta: the charter in which King John of England in 1215 granted important rights to the barons and freemen

magnesium: a light grayish-white mineral used in construction, medicine, and fireworks

Magyar (mäg'yär): a member of a tribe that invaded Hungary long ago and settled there

maharaja (mä-hä'rä'já): an Indian ruler

mammoth: a large prehistoric animal belonging to the elephant family

mandate: a territory controlled and protected but not owned by a more powerful country

manor: a large estate

Maori (mä'ō-rī): a member of the native tribes living in New Zealand

mar'a thon: the footrace run by a soldier carrying news of the Greek victory at Marathon to Athens; now a long-distance race

market place: an open space in a town where people buy and sell goods

master: a skilled workman who followed his trade independently in feudal times.

matador (mät'ä-dör): the man whose task is to kill the bull in a bullfight

Mediterranean climate: a climate like that of lands along the Mediterranean Sea, with cool, rainy winters and hot, dry summers

menu (mēn'ū): a list of the kinds of foods served in a restaurant

merchant guild: an association of merchants to enforce trade rules in the Middle Ages

merchant marine: trading ships of a nation

mercury (mür'kū-rī): a white, usually liquid, metal used in thermometers, as the backing for mirrors, and in setting off bombs

meridian (mě-rīd'ī-än): an imaginary line on the earth's surface from pole to pole

merino (mě-rē'nō): a small, hardy sheep with fine wool first raised in Spain

me'ter: a measure of length in the metric system, equal to about thirty-nine inches

metric system: a decimal system of measurement based on the gram and meter

microscope: an instrument which magnifies small objects invisible to the naked eye

Middle Ages: the period of about a thousand years between ancient and modern times

millet: a grasslike plant whose small round seeds can be eaten as food

minaret (mīn'ä-rēt'): a tall, slender tower forming part of a mosque

moat: a deep ditch filled with water surrounding the walls of a castle

mohair (mō'här'): the hair of Angora goats

monastery: residence of a group of monks

monk: a man who lives a holy life

monsoon (mön-sōon'): a seasonal wind in southwestern Asia

Moors: the name given to the Moslems in Spain

Morocco leather: a fine leather

Moslem: a believer in the Mohammedan faith

mosque (mösk): a Moslem church

mummy: a dead body preserved from decay

muslin: a fine cotton cloth first made in Mosul

New Stone Age: the period when early man ground and polished stone for tools and weapons

nitrogen (nī'trō-jěn): a colorless gas which is an important part of the atmosphere and of all living things

nī'tro gly'cer ine: a powerful explosive

Nobel Prize: a large sum of money left by Alfred Nobel to be awarded each year to those whose work benefits humanity

nugget: a lump of gold

nun: a woman who lives a holy life together with other religious women

nyanza (nī-än'zä): a group of great lakes near Khartoum

obelisk (öb'ē-lisk): a slender, pointed shaft of stone

oceanic climate: a temperate climate with warm summers and cool, rainy winters

Old Stone Age: the period when early man used chipped-stone tools and weapons

Olympic games: athletic contests held in ancient Greece and revived in 1896

open-door policy: opening ports for trade to all nations

Open Forest: a region south of Leningrad where much of the forest has been cleared

opera: a musical play wholly or mostly sung

opium (ō'pī-ūm): a drug made from poppies, often used in medicines to deaden pain

Orient (ō'rī-ēnt): name for the Far East

pagoda (pā-gō'dā): a tower with many stories used as a temple or memorial in the Far East

Pantheon: a temple that honored all the gods

papyrus (pā-pī'rūs): the plant from which the Egyptians and Phoenicians made paper; also the writing material made from the plant

parallel of latitude: an imaginary line parallel to the equator, marking latitude

parchment: a writing material made of sheepskin

Parliament (pär'lī-mēnt): the British law-making body

Parthenon (pär'thē-nōn): the temple to the goddess Athena on the Acropolis at Athens

pass: a natural path through a range of mountains below the summits

pasteurized milk: milk that has been treated by heat so that harmful germs are killed

patricians: the nobles of ancient Rome

peasant: a farmer

peat: spongy matter from decayed vegetable material such as grass or moss used as a fuel

peat bog: soft ground from which peat is dug

pharaoh (fā'rō): the name given to the king of ancient Egypt

pile: a piece of timber driven into the ground to support a building

pistachio (pīs-tāsh'ī-ō): a green nut with an almond-like flavor

plaid (plāid): cloth with the pattern worked out with cross-barred colored threads

planet: a heavenly body, such as the earth, which revolves around the sun

plastics: products made from various materials that can be molded into many kinds of light but strong articles

platinum: a hard silvery metal used for tips of fountain pens, for jewelry, and in industry

platypus (plăt'ī-pūs): a small duckbilled animal of Australia that lays eggs

plebeians (plē-bē'yānz): the common people of ancient Rome

polder: low land that has been drained and made into firm ground

pole: the ends of the earth's axis, as the North Pole and South Pole

porcelain: a fine, thin kind of chinaware

portcullis: an iron grating which could be let down over the gateway of a castle

premier (prē'mī-ēr): chief officer of a nation

prime meridian: an imaginary line through Greenwich, England, used as a starting point to locate places east and west

prime minister: the head of a government

protectorate (prō-tēk'tēr-īt): a country which depends on a stronger nation for defense

Protestant: originally, a follower of Martin Luther who acted in protest against certain beliefs and practices of the Catholic Church; now, any Christian not belonging to the Roman Catholic or to the Eastern Church

Protestant Reformation: the religious movement begun by Martin Luther

puppet government: a government whose leaders obey a foreign country

pyramids: great stone structures used as tombs by the kings of ancient Egypt

python (pī'thōn): a large snake that crushes its victims

quinine (kwī'nīn): a bitter-tasting medicine used in the treatment of malaria and other fevers

radium (rā'dī-ūm): a mineral that sends out rays which are used to treat diseases; used in paints, it causes objects to glow in the dark

raw'hide: a thin strip of untanned animal skin

Renaissance (rēn'ē-sāns'): the period from about 1350 to 1600 in which a new spirit in art, science, and literature was born in Europe

republic: a nation in which citizens elect representatives to manage the government

reservoir (rēz'ēr-vwôr): a large well cut in rock to store water

Riviera (rē-vyā'rā): a word meaning "seashore," used to describe part of the French and Italian coast along the Mediterranean

Romance language: a language developed from Latin such as French or Italian

Romanesque (rō'mān-ēsk'): a massive style of building, usually in the form of a cross, which used the round arch and dome, small windows, and a great deal of ornament

rotation: a movement around an axis

saber-toothed tiger: a prehistoric animal with two long saberlike teeth

Sanskrit (sān'skrīt): the language of the Aryans

sardine (sār-dēn'): a small fish, often canned

savage: a person who lives in the most primitive conditions of life

scale: a way of representing distance on a map

scientist: a man who observes facts which he studies and arranges in an orderly way

scribe: one who wrote messages or records

serf: in the Middle Ages a laborer bound to the land; also in Russia until 1861

shadoof (shā-dōōf'): an ancient Egyptian water lift still in use

shah (shā): the king of Persia

sherry: the English name for a wine that had its origin in Spain

Shinto: the Japanese religion in which spirits, the emperor, and heroes who died in battle were all objects of worship

Sinn Fein (shīn fān): an Irish political party formed to work for an independent Ireland

sisal (sī'sāl): a fiber from which rope, twine, and mats are made

skis (skēz): strips of wood bound to the feet and used for gliding over snow

smelting: the process of melting an ore and extracting the pure metal from it

smörgåsbord (smŭr'gōs-bōōrd): a course in a Swedish meal, including smoked fish, cold meat, cheese, and pickles

Socialist (sō'shāl-ist): a person who believes the government should own and operate all factories, farms, railroads, etc.

sorghum (sōr'gūm): a grasslike plant whose small round seeds can be eaten as food

soviet (sō'vī-ēt): a Russian council of peasants, workmen, and soldiers

Sphinx (sfinks): a large limestone rock in the Egyptian desert, carved with the head of a man and the body of a lion

spinning: making yarn or thread by twisting together fibers of wool, flax, cotton, etc.

spinning jenny: a machine that could spin a number of threads at one time

sportsmanship: the willingness to play a game fairly and meet victory or defeat with a smile

steppe (stēp): a level, treeless plain

stylus: a stick with a sharp edge or point used for writing

subtropics: the parts of the middle latitudes bordering on the tropics

sultan: ruler of a Mohammedan nation

swastika (swās'tī-kā): a cross with the ends bent at right angles, used on the Nazi flag

Swedish gymnastics: body-building exercises developed and practiced by the Swedes

Swedish massage (mā-sāzh'): a way of treating diseases by rubbing the parts affected

symphony (sim'fō-nī): a musical work with many parts for a large orchestra

tapestry (tāp'ēs-trī): a heavy embroidered drapery often hung on the wall

taro (tā'rō): a broad-leaved plant whose root is an important food in the South Pacific

teak: a hard wood grown in the Far East and often used in shipbuilding

telescope: an instrument used to aid the eye in viewing distant objects

tenant: a shareholder on a manor

tendons: tough white cords which join muscle to bone

tournament: a contest between knights

tragedy (trāj'ē-dī): a play with an unhappy ending often showing the punishment which comes from doing wrong

trial by jury: a trial in which the accused person's guilt or innocence is decided by a group of his equals

tribune: a Roman officer elected to protect the rights of the plebeians

tsar (zār): the name of the Russian emperor

tsetse (tsēt'sē) **fly:** a fly whose bite causes disease in cattle and horses; a fly whose bite causes sleeping sickness in man

tundra (tōōn'drā): a treeless plain in the Arctic

tung oil: oil made from the nuts of the tung tree and used in paint and varnish

tyrant: in ancient Greece, a ruler who seized power; now, a cruel person who has power

underground resistance: secret opposition against an invader by an organized group of people who want freedom

United Nations: an international organization, formed after World War II, to give nations a chance to discuss problems and solve them peacefully

university: in feudal times, an advanced school for teaching religion, law, and medicine; now, an institution for teaching any of the higher branches of learning

untouchable: in India, one of the lowest classes

vassal: a man who owes allegiance to a lord

ve'to: in old Rome, the Latin phrase, meaning "I forbid," by which the tribunes prevented unjust legal decisions; now, the power of certain officials to reject proposed laws

warlord: a Chinese general whose armies lived off the country in which they were stationed

wattle: a tree or shrub with bright yellow flowers; the national flower of Australia

weaving: making cloth by passing threads across other threads stretched on a frame

yacht (yōt): a small ship used for pleasure trips

Zionism: the plan to provide a home for the Jews in Palestine

INDEX

ā as in late
â as in bare
ã as in van
ä as in cart
å as in task

ä as in so'fa
ē as in eve
ẽ as in bend
ë as in ba'ker
î as in hide

ï as in bill
ō as in hole
õ as in job
ô as in fork
oo as in noon

ö as in nook
oi as in soil
ou as in loud
û as in pure
Û as in rust

û as in turn
ŋ as in bon
κ as in ich
zh as in sei'zure

abacá (ä'bä-kä'), 455
Abraham, 32, 59, 60
Addis Ababa (äd'is ä'bä-bä), 191
Aden (äd'dën), 68
A'dri at'ic Sea, 140, 188, 382, 387
Aegean (ë-jë'dän) Sea, 140, 141, 142, 144, 156, 162
Africa, 3, 22, 30, 31, 323-324, 422, 436; Central, 323, 423, 424-425; climate, 423; East, 426, 429-431; French colonies in, 260-264, 427, 436; government, 434-436; history, 424-425; North, 149, 173, 198, 208, 424, 425, 436; products, 434; South, 424, 426, 431-436; surface, 423; today, 434-436; World War II in, 425
Albania (äl-bä'nî-ä), 141, 160, 162-163
Aleppo (ä-lëp'ö), 55, 56, 418
Alexander the Great, 34, 72, 152
Alexandria (äl'ëg-zän'dri-ä), 31, 72, 73, 83, 221
Alfred the Great, 272
Algeria (äl-jër'i-ä), 260-261, 262, 427, 436
Algiers', 260-261, 426
Alhambra (äl-häm'brä), 221
Allies', in World War I, 44, 246, 324, 336, 357, 392, 448; in World War II, 160, 161, 192, 193, 337, 365, 366, 394, 462
alphabet, 58, 76, 81, 118
Alps, 170, 183, 188, 189, 239, 362, 372, 436
Alsace (äl'säs), 253
Am'ster dam, 308, 314, 315, 317
Amundsen, Roald (rö'äl ä'mün-sën), 339
Anatolia (än'ä-tö'i-lä-ä), 50, 55
ancestor worship, 120, 446
Andersen, Hans Christian, 331-332
Angkor (äng'kör), 110, 264-265
Anglo-Saxons, 271-272, 273
Ankara (äng'kä-rä), 50, 52, 53, 54
Antarctic Circle, 5, 11
Ant'werp, 314, 319, 320, 321, 360
Apennines (äp'ë-nînz), 169, 183
Arabia, 51, 66-70, 426; cities, 66-67, 70; climate, 68; desert, 68-69
A ra'bi an Sea, 90
Arabic, language, 52-53, 222; numerals, 96, 213
Arab League, 59, 70, 84
Arabs, 31, 42, 43, 51, 57, 63, 66,

Arabs—*continued*
67, 70, 96, 97, 198, 260, 424, 427.
See also Bedouins
architecture, Athenian, 151; Egyptian, 77-80, 82; Gothic, 211-213; Indian, 102; Italian, 186-187; Moorish, 221; Roman, 176-177; Romanesque, 210-211; Spanish, 228, 232
Arctic Circle, 5, 11, 334, 335, 342, 346
Aristotle (är'is-töt'l), 152
art, beginning of, 25-26; Belgian, 321-322; Danish, 332; Dutch, 314-316; Egyptian, 80; English, 285-286; French, 251, 256, 258-259; German, 354; Grecian, 151, 155; Italian, 187, 188; Renaissance, 215; Roman, 179, 186; Spanish, 232-233
Aryans (är'is-änz), 93, 94
Asia, 3, 30, 51; Central, 417-419; size, 88; Southeast, 105-114; surface, 88-89
Asia Minor, 50, 144, 149, 152, 173, 174, 208
As syr'ia and Assyrians, 36-37, 62
Ath'ens, 147-152, 154; Age of Pericles, 150-152; life in ancient, 147-149; modern, 156-159; in Persian Wars, 149-150; rebuilding of, 151
Atlas Mountains, 260, 423, 424, 426
a tom'ic bomb, 451
Au gus'tus, 174-175, 181
Australia (ös-träl'yä), 3, 83, 293, 295-300, 302, 449, 450, 457; animals in, 296-297; climate, 298; farming, 295, 298; history, 295-296; population, 295, 298; products, 297, 298-300; size, 295, 298
Aus'tri a, 4, 352, 354, 356, 357, 370, 374, 381-382, 388, 392, 404; and Hungary, 371, 380-381; as part of Germany, 365, 382
Axis powers, 192, 287
Azores (ä-zörz'), 223
Babylon (bäb'i-lön), 35, 37, 38, 39, 77, 93
Babylonia (bäb'i-lö'nî-ä) and the Babylonians, 35-36, 38-39, 59, 60, 62
Baghdad (bäg'dääd), 42-43, 44, 54, 56, 418
Baku (bä-kö'), 415

Balkans (böl'känz), 141, 159-163, 356; people, 159, 163; in World War II, 160, 161, 162, 163
Bang'kok, 106, 109-110, 135
Bar'ce lo'na, 176, 227, 230
barley, 161, 364
Basra (büs'rä), 41, 44
Ba var'i a, 362-363, 366
Bedouins (bëd'öö-inz), 42, 55, 59, 68-70. *See also* Arabs
Beethoven (bä'tö-vën), Ludwig von, 354
Beirut (bä'rööt), 57, 58, 59
Bel'fast, 292
Belgian Congo, 323, 324, 425, 433, 436
Belgium, 146, 174, 205, 306, 307, 319-322; colonies, 323-324, 425; in World Wars I and II, 322
Bel'grade, 141, 161, 162
Benares (bë-nä'rëz), 100, 102
Ber lin', 54, 361-362, 365, 366, 382
Bern, 371, 374
Bible, 38, 56, 57, 60, 352, 353
Bis'cay, Bay of, 219, 238
Bis'marck, Otto von, 354
Bizerte (bë'zërt'), 262
Boers (böörz), 131, 432, 434
Bo he'mi a, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391
Bokhara (bö-kä'rä), 417, 418
Bol'she vists, 404
Bom bay', 98, 99, 429
Bonn (bün), 368
Bordeaux (bör'dö'), 176, 240, 243, 254
Bor'ne o, 456, 457
Bosporus (bö'spö-rüs) Strait, 50, 53, 160, 180
Bothnia (böth'nî-ä), Gulf of, 327, 342, 345
Brahmaputra (brä'mä-pöo'trá) River, 99
Bremen (brä'mën), 361
Breslau (brës'lou), 366
British Commonwealth of Nations, 293-302, 432
British Empire, 292-293
British Isles, 268-269; climate, 269. *See also* England, Great Britain, Ireland
bronze, 36, 57, 82, 447
Bruges (brööz), 308, 309, 314, 319, 320, 321
Brus'sels, 319, 321
Bucharest (böö'kä-rëst), 161

- Bu'da pest, 380, 383-384
 Buddhism, 95-96, 440, 444, 445
 Bul gar'i a, 141, 160, 161, 365
 Burma, 89, 105, 106-109, 110, 111, 120, 121, 443, 450
 Byzantium (bī-zān'shī-ūm), 144, 149, 180
 cacao (kā-kā'ō), 99, 235, 428, 429
 Caesar (sē'zēr), Julius, 82, 174, 175, 181, 240, 270, 308
 Cairo (kī'rō), 73, 78
 Cal cut'ta, 99-100, 102
 calendar, Egyptian, 76-77, 82; Julian, 174, 181, 401
 canals, 33, 39; Belgium, 309; China, 117, 130, 131, 135; France, 239, 252; Germany, 351, 360, 361; Japan, 447; Java, 456; Netherlands, 308, 311-312, 316, 317; Russia, 412, 418; Sweden, 341-342; Thailand, 110; Venice, 188
 Canary Islands, 223, 234
 Can'ton, 125, 126, 130, 135, 136, 449
 Cape of Good Hope, 223, 224
 Capetown, 433
 Cape Verde (vūrd) Islands, 223
 caravans, 43, 50, 56, 127, 419, 424
 Carpathian (kār-pā'thī-ān) Mts., 382, 388
 Car'thage, 173-174, 183, 262, 424
 Cas'pi an Sea, 32, 44, 51, 88, 93, 398, 412, 417
 caste system, 94-95
 castles, 210, 273, 441; life in, 198-200
 Cat'a lo'ni a, 227
 cattle, 23; Africa, 427, 430, 431; Albania, 163; Australia, 295, 299; France, 248-249; Germany, 351; Great Britain, 286; Hungary, 383; India, 100-101; Italy, 183; Netherlands, 312; New Caledonia, 458; Normandy, 248-249; Palestine, 65; Russia, 415, 419; Switzerland, 377; Yugoslavia, 162
 Cau'ca sus Mts., 405, 409, 415, 416
 cave dwellers, 19
 Cervantes (sēr-vān'tēz), 233
 Ceylon (sē-lōn'), 90, 98-99, 111, 302
 Chaldea (kāl-dē'ā), 38-39
 Charlemagne (shār'lē-mān), 240-241
 Chiang Kai-shek (chē-āng' kī'shēk'), 126, 127, 137
 Chinese, Communists, 129, 132, 136-137; Nationalists, 136, 137, 462; in Southeast Asia, 106, 107, 111, 113
 China, 42, 89, 96, 113, 116-137, 417, 440, 463; climate, 91, 127-128, 130; Communist, 129; farming, 123, 127; government, 119, 125-126, 135-137; Great Wall, 128-129; history, 116-120, 135-137; invaded by Japan, 126-127, 135; products, 123-125, 127, 131-133; in World War II, 126-127, 135-136
 Christianity (krī'shī-ān'tī-ti) and Christians, 58, 64, 66, 208-210, 222; in Africa, 427; in Britain, 271; in Japan, 441; in Melanesia, 457
 Chungking, 126-127, 137
 cinchona (sīn-kō'nā) trees, 456
 Cincinnatus (sīn'sī-nā'tūs), 171
 citizenship, Athens, 148-149; Rome, 169, 174; Sparta, 147
 city-states, Carthage, 173-174; Greek, 143-144, 147; Italian, 167, 187, 188, 207; Phoenician, 57; Sumerian, 33
 climate, 6-11. *See also* individual countries
 coal, Albania, 163; Australia, 300; Belgium, 320; China, 127; Czechoslovakia, 389; France, 255; Germany, 357, 359, 360; Great Britain, 279-280; Poland, 394; U.S.S.R., 412, 413, 414, 416
 coconuts and coconut oil, 97, 111, 235, 455, 458, 459, 460
 coffee, 99, 235, 264, 217, 430; Arabia, 67-68; Indochina, 110; Java, 456
 collective farms, 407, 410
 Cologne (kō-lōn'), 352, 360
 Columbus, Christopher, 129, 189, 218, 224, 225, 227, 228, 230
 Comenius (kō-mā'nī-ōos), 390-391
 communism, in Bulgaria, 161; in China, 136-137; in Czechoslovakia, 390; and democracy, 406-407; in Germany, 367, 368; in Hungary, 384; in Indochina, 265; in Poland, 394; in Rumania, 161; in Russia, 404, 405-407, 420; in Yugoslavia, 162
 con'cen tra'tion camps, 364, 367, 384, 390, 394, 406, 407
 Confucius (kōn-fū'shī-ūs), 119-120
 Congo River, 263, 323, 423, 434
 Con'rad, Joseph, 395-396
 Con'stan tine, 54, 177, 180
 Constantinople (kōn'stān-tī-nō'p'l), 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 141, 180, 208, 210, 221, 400. *See also* Istanbul
 Cook, Captain James, 295
 co-operative unions, 330-331
 Copenhagen (kō'p'n-hā'gēn), 331, 332
 Copernicus (kō-pūr'nī-kūs), 395
 copper, 34, 57, 127, 163, 173, 230, 324, 430
 Córdoba (kōr'dō-vā), 221
 corn, 161, 183, 188, 228, 263, 383, 413, 431; kaffir, 434
 Cor'si ca, 170, 190, 253
 cotton, Egypt, 83; India, 97, 98; Iran, 44, 47; Russia, 419; Spain, 222; Turkey, 55
 Crete (krēt), 57, 142
 cru sades', 208-210, 213
 cuneiform (kū-nē'i-fōrm), 34
 Curie (kūr'ē'), Marie and Pierre, 396
 Cyprus (sī'prūs), 57
 Czechoslovakia (chēk'ō-slō-vā'kī-ā), 370, 381-382, 387-391; under Communists, 390
 Da Ga'ma, Vasco, 224, 233
 dairying, Baltic states, 414; Denmark, 329; Netherlands, 312; New Zealand, 301; Sweden, 341; Switzerland, 377
 Dakar (dā-kār'), 263
 Damascus (dā-mās'kūs), 56-57, 58, 418
 damask (dām'ask), 56-57
 Danube (dān'ūb) River, 141, 160, 162, 175, 372, 382, 383
 Danzig (dān'tsik), 392, 394
 Dark Ages, 196, 382
 date palms, 41-42, 66
 Da Vinci (dā vēn'chē), Leonardo, 190
 Dead Sea, 65
 democracy, in ancient Greece, 148, 155; and communism, 406-407; in France, 252; in Germany, 358, 368; in Great Britain, 273-275; in Switzerland, 379
 Denmark, 198, 241, 326, 327, 328, 329-333
 diamonds, 312-314, 324, 433
 Dickens, Charles, 284
 dictators, 169, 174, 189, 235, 245, 364, 384, 394, 405, 406
 dikes, Belgium, 306, 321; China, 117; Netherlands, 306, 308, 310, 311, 316
 Dnieper (nē'pēr) River, 400, 412, 413
 Donets (dō-nyēt's) basin, 414
 Douro (dō'rōo) River, 229
 drama, Greek, 152; Shakespeare, 284-285
 Dub'lin, 290
 Dürer (dūr'ēr), Albrecht, 354
 Dvořák (dvōr'zhāk), Anton, 391
 earth, axis, 3, 4, 9; path, x, 5; rotation, 3; size, x; surface, x, 1
 East Indies. *See* Indonesia
 education, Africa, 262, 324, 429, 436; China, 118-119; Czechoslovakia, 389, 391; Finland, 346, 347; France, 243, 257; Germany, 364, 368; Great Britain, 286-287; Iran, 47; Middle Ages, 213; Norway, 338; Philippines, 454; Soviet Russia, 406; Sweden, 343; Switzerland, 374; Uganda, 429. *See also* universities
 E'gypt, 31, 57, 60, 72-84, 93, 116, 191, 422, 424, 425, 434
 Eire (ā'rē). *See* Ireland
 Elbe (ēl'bē) River, 351, 359, 360, 361

- Elizabeth I of England, 275
 England, 82, 146, 166, 203, 268; and France, 241; language, 181, 271, 273; and Spanish Armada, 225-226. *See also* British Isles, Great Britain, United Kingdom
 English Channel, 226, 238, 268, 287
 Es'sen, 359
 Es to'ni a, 414
 Ethiopia (ē'thī-ō'pī-ā), 73, 190-192, 264, 425, 429, 436
 Etruscans (ē-trūs'kānz), 168-169
 Euphrates (ū-frā'tēz) River, 30, 31, 32, 35, 38, 40, 57, 93, 175
 factory system, 278
 Far East, 88-137, 209, 222, 224, 317, 438-460
 farmers and farming, Arabia, 66, 67; Australia, 298; Balkans, 161, 162, 163; Baltic states, 414; Belgium, 319-320; China, 123, 127; Czechoslovakia, 389; Denmark, 329-331; Egypt, 74, 75, 82-83; Germany, 363-364; Hungary, 383; India, 103; Indochina, 110; Iran, 45; Ireland, 289; Italy, 170; Japan, 443; Mesopotamia, 33; Middle Ages, 200-203; Moorish Spain, 222; Netherlands, 310, 312; Normandy, 248-249; Norway, 336; Poland, 393; primitive, 22-24; Rome, 169-180; Russia, 407, 409-410, 412-415; Sudan, 427; Sweden, 341; Switzerland, 377; Turkey, 53, 54-55; Uganda, 429
 Fascists (fāsh'ists), 189, 190
 Fertile Crescent, 50, 56
 feudal system, 197, 205; in England, 203; life under, 198-203
 Fiji (fē'jī) Islands, 455, 457, 458
 Fin'land, 327, 345-348
 fire, learning to use, 19-20
 fishing, China, 131; Iceland, 333; Japan, 443; Norway, 335; Portugal, 231; sponge, 157
 Flanders, 308, 309, 319, 320
 flax, 24, 28, 221, 292, 319-320
 Florence, 176, 187, 188, 193, 207, 448
 For mo'si, 125, 137, 438, 443
 France, 25, 68, 174, 203, 208, 221, 238-265, 287, 376, 394, 462; cities, 240, 249-251, 252-255; climate, 248; colonies, 106, 110, 245, 259-265, 425, 436, 457; and England, 241, 245, 260, 277; and Germany, 246, 253, 354-356, 366, 368; history, 240-247; as republic, 245; Revolution, 245; surface, 238-239; and Syria, 55; in World War I, 44, 246, 253, 254, 357; in World War II, 192, 246-247, 252, 254, 364, 365
 Franco, Francisco, 235
 Franks, 240, 241
 free cities, in Middle Ages, 361
 French Equatorial Africa, 263, 436
 French Indochina. *See* Indochina
 French West Africa, 262-263, 427
 Gainsborough (gānz'bû-rû), Thomas, 285
 Galilee (gāl'ī-lē), Sea of, 64
 Gandhi, Mohandas (mō-hān'dās gān'dī), 104
 Ganges (gān'jēz) River, 90, 99-101
 Garonne (gā'rôn') River, 238, 254
 Gaul, 174, 240, 270
 Geneva (jē-nē'vā), 376, 378, 379
 Gen'o a, 187, 189, 193, 207, 209, 222, 223
 Germany, 146, 160, 174, 245, 317, 350-368, 370, 394, 425; and Austria, 381, 382; cities, 359-363; climate, 350; and Czechoslovakia, 365; East, 367, 368; as Empire, 354-356; farming, 350-351, 363-364; and France, 246, 253, 354-356; government, 354-356, 364, 366; history, 352-358; as a republic, 358; surface, 351; Western, 368; after World War II, 366-368; in World War I, 44, 52, 246, 356-357, 381, 404; in World War II, 161, 192, 246-247, 287, 358, 364-366, 449, 462
 Ghana (gā'nā), 426, 429, 436
 Ghent (gēnt), 308, 309, 319, 320
 Gibraltar (jī-brōl'tēr), 31, 57, 220, 234
 glass making, 188, 212
 Goethe (gū'tē), Wolfgang, 353
 gold, Australia, 295, 300; New Guinea, 458; Philippines, 455; South Africa, 432-433
 Göteborg (yū'tē-bör'y'), 341
 Gothic cathedrals, 211-213
 government, beginning of, 26-27. *See also* individual countries
 Granada (grā-nā'dā), 221, 222, 224
 Great Britain, 44, 246, 268-289, 357, 366, 368, 394, 457, 462; Anglo-Saxon times, 271-272; and Arabia, 68; and Commonwealth, 293-302; and Egypt, 83; and Empire, 292-293; government, 273-275; and India, 98, 102-104; and Iraq, 44; and Ireland, 289-290; and Jordan, 59; and Malaya, 111, 113-114; manufacturing, 277-281; Norman conquest, 272-273; and Palestine, 63; Romans in, 174, 270-271; sea power, 275-277; today, 281-287; in World War I, 44; in World War II, 83, 114, 192, 246-247, 287, 365, 450. *See also* British Isles, England
 Greece, 140-159, 160, 168, 173, 183, 221; cities, 156-159; city-states, 143-144, 147; conquest of, 152; government, 148-149; history, 142-155; today, 156-159, 163
 Greenland, 333, 334, 338
 Grieg (grēg), Edvard, 338
 Grimm brothers, 353-354
 guilds, 206-207, 213, 321
 Guinea (gin'i), Gulf of, 234, 235
 gunpowder, 122, 199, 214
 Gutenberg (gōō'tēn-bērk), Johann, 122, 214
 Haarlem (hār'lēm), 308
 Hague (häg), The, 317-318, 463
 Haifa (hī'fā), 65
 Hals (häls), Frans, 316
 Ham'burg, 361, 366
 Hammurabi (hām'ōō-rā'bē), 35-36
 Haps'burg empire, 373, 374, 380-381, 383, 386, 388
 Hastings, battle of, 273
 Hawaiian (hā-wī'yān) Islands, 439, 448, 450, 459
 Hebrews, 32, 57, 59-63; in Canaan, 59-61; divided, 61-62; religion, 60, 62-63, 64. *See also* Jews
 Helsinki (hēl'sing-kī), 346, 347
 Herculaneum (hūr'kū-lā'nē-ūm), 185, 186
 hieroglyphics (hī'ēr-ō-glīf'iks), 75-76
 Himalayas (hī-mā'lā-yāz), 88, 90, 95, 102, 116
 Hindus and Hinduism, 94-95, 101, 104
 Hippocrates (hī-pōk'ra-tēz), 154-155
 Hitler, Adolf, 245, 287, 358, 364, 365, 366, 382, 390, 394
 Holy Land. *See* Palestine
 Homer, 150, 153, 179
 Hong Kong, 125, 126, 134-135, 450
 Hudson, Henry, 309
 Hugo, Victor, 258
 Hundred Years' War, 241-243
 Hungary, 365, 370, 382-384, 388; and Austria, 371, 380-381, 383
 Huns, 198, 383
 Hwang Ho, 116, 117, 119, 126, 127, 130
 Ibn-Saud (ib'n-sā-ōōd'), 66, 70
 Ice Age, 18-19
 Iceland, 333-334
 India, 68, 82, 89, 90-104, 113, 116, 152, 224, 302, 417, 418, 449; in British Empire, 102-104; caste system, 94-95; division, 104, 302
 Indochina, 89, 106, 110, 121, 264-265
 In'do ne'si a, 89, 222, 225, 438, 449, 450, 456-457, 460, 463
 Indus (in'dūs) River, 90, 93
 Industrial Revolution, 277-280, 292 industries. *See* manufacturing, trade
 Iran (ē-rān'), 30, 44-47, 417
 Iraq (ē-rāk'), 30, 31, 40-44; in World Wars I and II, 43-44
 Ireland, 268-269, 289-292; under British rule, 289-290; Northern, 268, 289, 290, 292; Republic of, 269, 290

- iron, 36, 127, 230, 280, 281, 320, 341, 342, 357, 359, 389, 412, 413, 416, 429, 455
- iron curtain, 420
- Irrawaddy (ir'ā-wōd'ī) River, 105, 107
- irrigation, Asiatic Russia, 418, 419; China, 117; Egypt, 73, 75, 82; India, 103; Iran, 47; Mesopotamia, 33; Palestine, 63, 66; Spain, 219, 227-228
- Israel (iz'rā-ēl), 30, 63-66
- Istanbul (ē-stām-bōōl'), 50-51, 53-54, 141, 160
- Italy, 44, 58, 144, 166-169, 183-193, 382, 425; Fascism, 189-193; Renaissance, 215; united, 187; in World War II, 160, 163, 192-193, 287, 365, 449, 462. *See also* Rome
- Jakarta (jä-kär'tā), 456
- Japan, 89, 96, 120-121, 125, 438, 440-451, 460; war with China, 126-127, 447-448, 449; war with Russia, 448; in World War I, 44, 448; in World War II, 109, 110, 112, 114, 287, 439, 449-451
- Japan Current, 446
- Java (jä'vā), 456, 457, 462
- Je ru'sa lem, 57, 58, 59, 61, 62, 63-64, 208, 209
- Jesus, 63, 64. *See also* Christianity
- Jews, 61, 62, 63, 66, 394; and Zionism, 63. *See also* Hebrews
- Joan of Arc (ärk), 242-243, 353
- Johannesburg (jō-hän'ēs-bûrg), 432-433
- Jordan, 30, 59, 64
- jury system, 148-149, 155, 273-274
- Karnak, Temple of, 79
- Kemal Pasha (kē-māl' pā-shā'), 52-54
- Kenya (kēn'yā), 427, 429-430
- Kiev (kē'yēf'), 400, 412, 413
- Kip'ling, Rudyard, 108
- knights, 198, 200, 203, 207, 233, 249, 309
- Knossos (nōs'ūs), 142
- Kobe (kō'bē), 447
- Korea (kō-rē'ā), 120-121, 125, 126, 443, 448; war in, 137, 463
- Krem'lin, 407, 412
- Kuomintang (gwō'min-tāng'), 126
- Kurdistan (kōōr'dī-stān'), 45-46
- Ladoga (lā'dō-gā), Lake, 346, 402
- lake dwellers, 27-28
- language, 214; Afrikaans, 434; ancient Greece, 144; ancient Rome, 168, 181; Austria-Hungary, 381; Belgium, 319; China, 118; Czechoslovakia, 388, 389; England, 271, 273; Finland, 348; Ireland, 289, 290; Japan, 441; Latin, 168, 181, 222, 270-271; Middle Ages, 214; Middle East, 31; Russia, 413; language—*continued*
- Sanskrit, 93; Spain, 225; Switzerland, 374; Wales, 272
- latitude, parallels of, 8-9
- Lat'vi a, 414
- laws, beginning of, 27; of Ham-murabi, 35; Hebrew, 60; Roman, 172, 175-176
- League of Nations, 378, 379, 382, 448
- Lebanon (lēb'ā-nūn'), 30, 58-59
- Leiden (li'dēn), 308, 316
- Leipzig (lip'sik'), 360
- Lenin (lēn'in), Nicolai, 404, 406, 412
- Len'in grad, 406, 409, 410-412, 415
- Li be'ri a, 425, 428-429, 436
- Lib'y a, 190, 191, 192, 425, 436
- Libyan Desert, 80, 192, 426
- Liège (lē-ēzh'), 320
- Lille (lēl), 255
- linen, 221, 292, 320
- Linnaeus (li-nē'ūs), 343
- Lis'bon, 222, 223, 228-229
- Liszt (list), Franz, 385
- literature, Danish, 331-332; English, 275; French, 258; German, 353-354; Greek, 153-154, 215; Polish, 395-396; Portuguese, 233; Roman, 179, 215; Russian, 402; Spanish, 233
- Lithuania (lith'ū-ā-nī-ā), 414
- Livingstone, Dr. David, 424, 430-431, 434
- Lofoten (lō-fō'tēn) Islands, 335
- Loire (lōwār) River, 238, 240, 254
- London, 9, 78, 111, 176, 269, 281-286
- longitude, meridians of, 9-10
- Lorraine (lō-rān'), 359
- Louis XI, 243
- Louis XIV, 243-245, 253, 256, 277
- Lucerne (lū-sūrn'), 371, 375; Lake of, 372, 373, 375
- Luther (lōō'thēr), Martin, 352-353, 354
- Luzon (lōō-zōn'), 454
- Lyon (lē'ōn'), 176, 240, 253, 256
- Macedonia (mās'ē-dō-nī-ā), 152
- Madagascar (mād'ā-gās'kēr), 263-264, 425
- Madeira (mā-dēr'ā), 223
- Ma drid', 227, 232, 233, 308
- Magellan (mā-jēl'ān), Fernando, 225, 454
- Magna Carta, 274
- Magnitogorsk (māg-nē'tō-gōrsk'), 416
- Magyars (māg'yārz), 383
- Ma lay'a, 89, 105, 110-114; climate, 111; government, 114; people, 106; products, 111-114; size, 110-111; Union, 114; in World War II, 109, 114, 450, 457
- Man chu'ri a, 126, 129, 448, 449
- Manchus (mān'chōōs), 129
- Ma nil'a, 450, 451, 454-455
- manor, the, 200-203, 205
- manufacturing, Austria, 380, 381-382; Belgium, 320; Czechoslovakia, 389; France, 253, 254, 255, 256; Germany, 351, 359-360, 361; Great Britain, 277-281; Italy, 188; Japan, 444, 446, 447; Norway, 336-337; Poland, 394; Russia, 405, 412, 413, 416, 418; Spain, 227; Sweden, 342; Switzerland, 376-377
- Maoris (mā'ō-riz'), 300, 301
- maps, kinds of, 11; scales, 14
- Marathon (mār'ā-thōn), 149
- Margaret, Queen of Denmark, 328
- Marseille (mār'sē'y'), 144, 176, 240, 252
- Mecca (mēk'ā), 66-67, 68
- Medina (mā-dē'nā), 56, 66, 67, 68
- Mediterranean (mēd'y-i-tē-rā'nē-ān) climate, 54-55, 143, 183, 424, 434
- Mediterranean Sea, 54, 140, 253
- Mekong (mā'kōng') River, 105, 264
- Mel'a ne'si a, 439, 457-458, 460
- Memam (mā-nām') River, 105
- merchant marine, 460; British, 275-277; Dutch, 277; Norwegian, 335-336
- merino (mē-rē'nō) sheep, 231, 299
- Mesopotamia (mēs'ō-pō-tā-mi-ā), 32-39, 62, 75, 93, 116
- metric system, 250
- Michelangelo (mi'kil-ān'jē-lō), 186-187, 188
- Mi'cro ne'si a, 438-439, 448, 449, 458, 460
- Middle Ages, 196-215; crusades, 208-210; end of, 214; feudal system, 197, 198-203; gifts to civilization, 210-215; learning, 213-214; life in, 198-203; towns, growth of, 205-207; trade, 203, 205-207, 209-210, 213
- Middle East, 30-84, 89, 144, 210; ancient history, 32-39; countries of, 40-84; today, 30-31
- Milan (mi-lān'), 176, 188, 190
- Millet, Jean François (zhōn frān-swā' mē-yā'), 258
- Mocha (mō'kā), 67, 68
- Mohammed (mō-hām'ēd), 51, 56, 64, 66, 198
- Mohammedans. *See* Moslems
- Mohenjo-Daro (mō-hēn'jō dā'rō), 93
- mon'as ter'ies, 213
- Mon'gols, 117-118, 129, 400, 401
- Mon ro'vi a, 428, 429
- monsoons, 91-92, 98, 106, 107, 130, 264
- Moors, 198, 220-222, 224, 227, 228, 229, 234
- Mo ra'vi a, 388, 389, 390
- Mo roc'co, 435; French, 260, 261-262; Spanish, 234, 261
- Mos'cow, 245, 399, 400, 404, 410, 412
- Moslem religion, 31, 45, 51, 64, 67, 104, 427

- Moslems, 66, 67, 152, 159, 208–210, 220. *See also* Arabs, Bedouins, Moors
- Mosul (mō'sool'), 43, 50, 56
- Mt. Blanc (blān'), 376
- Mt. Everest, 88
- Mt. Vesuvius (vē-sū'vī-ūs), 185
- Mozambique (mō'zām-bēk'), 235
- Mozart (mō'tsärt'), Wolfgang, 384–385
- Munich (mū'nīk), 362
- Murillo (mū-ril'ō), 232, 233
- music, Austria, 384–385; Czechoslovakia, 391; Belgium, 322; Finland, 348; Germany, 354; Hungary, 385; Norway, 338; Poland, 395; Russia, 402–403
- Mussolini (mōōs'sō-lē'nē), Benito, 190, 191, 192, 193, 365
- Nagasaki (nā'gā-sā'kē), 447
- Nanking, 125, 126, 129, 137, 449
- Nansen, Fridtjof (frit'yōf nān'sēn), 338–339
- Naples, 144, 176, 184–185, 193
- Napoleon Bonaparte (nā-pō'lē-ūn bō'nā-pärt), 245, 246, 250, 251, 253, 292, 309, 321, 352
- Nas'ër, Abdel, 84
- NATO, 463
- Nazi (nā'tsē) party, 364–365
- Nebuchadrezzar (nēb'ū-kād-rēz'ēr), 38, 39, 62
- Negroes, 423, 427, 428, 433, 436
- Netherlands, 174, 277, 306, 307, 310–318
- New Britain, 457, 458
- New Cal'e do'ni'a, 265, 450, 457, 458
- New Delhi (dēl'i), 101–102
- New Guinea (gin'i), 450, 457, 458
- New Hebrides (hēb'ri-dēz), 457
- New Zealand, 293, 300–302, 450, 459
- Nice (nēs), 253
- nickel, 265, 346, 417, 458
- Niger (nī'jēr) River, 423, 427, 428
- Nigeria (nī-jēr'ā), 428, 436
- Nile River, 30, 31, 72–73, 74–75, 77, 79, 80, 82, 83, 93, 423
- Nineveh (nim'ē-vē), 37, 38, 39, 43
- Nobel (nō-bēl'), Alfred, 344–345
- nobles, ancient Egypt, 80, 81; Middle Ages, 197, 198, 199–200, 205
- Nor'man dy, 241, 247, 248–249, 272
- Normans, 241, 272
- North Atlantic drift, 334, 346
- North Cape, 334
- North Pole, 3, 5, 9, 11, 338, 339
- North Sea, 268, 306, 307, 310, 316, 317, 326, 331, 360
- Northmen or Norsemen, 198, 241, 272, 326, 335–336, 400
- Nor'way, 198, 241, 328, 334–339; in World War II, 336, 337
- Novgorod (nōv'gō-rōt), 400
- Novosibirsk (nō'vō-sē-bērsk'), 415
- Ob (ōp) River, 415
- Oberammergau (ō'bēr-ām'ēr-gou'), 362–363
- oceanic climate, 319
- Oder (ō'dēr) River, 351, 359, 360, 366, 394
- oil, Albania, 163; Burma, 107; East Indies, 456, 457; Egypt, 84; Iran, 47; Iraq, 43–44; Rumania, 161; Russia, 415, 416; Saudi Arabia, 70
- oil palms, 263, 323, 324, 428, 456
- olives and olive oil, 54, 64, 65, 143, 157, 163, 173, 183, 184, 229, 252, 426, 434
- O lym'pic games, 146–147
- opera, 354, 385
- Oporto (ō-pōr'tō), 229, 231
- Osaka (ō'sā-kā), 447
- Os'lo, 337
- Ot'to man Empire, 51
- Pacific Ocean, 88, 89, 116, 399, 401, 438–460
- Paderewski, Ignace (ig'nāts pā'dē-rēf'skē), 393
- pa go'das, 107, 121–122
- Pago Pago (pāng'ō pāng'ō), 459
- Pakistan (pāk'i-stān'), 89, 90, 104, 302
- Palestine (pāl'ēs-tīn), 30, 59–66, 208; Arabs in, 63; Assyrian and Babylonian conquests, 62; cities, 61, 63–64, 65–66; history, 59–64
- Pa'pal States, 187
- Papeete (pā-pē'tē), 459
- paper, 123, 215, 221
- papyrus (pā-pī'rūs), 57, 76, 82
- Paris, 78, 238, 243, 246, 249–251, 252
- Parliament (pār'li-mēnt), British, 274, 275, 282, 283, 289, 302
- Parthenon (pār'thē-nōn), 151, 156, 286
- Pasteur, Louis (pās'tūr'), 259
- Peace Palace, 317, 318
- Pearl Harbor, 449, 450
- peat, 291
- Pe'king', or Peiping (bā'pīng'), 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 449
- perfumes, 161, 213, 253, 256, 257
- Perry, Commodore Matthew, 441–442
- Persia, 36, 44, 46, 47, 62, 149, 150, 418. *See also* Iran
- Persian Gulf, 32, 33, 41, 42, 44, 47, 50, 70
- Peter the Great, 401
- Pet'sa mo, 346
- pharaohs (fā'rōz), 78, 80–81
- Philip, king of Macedonia, 152
- Philip II, king of Spain, 225, 226, 308–309, 454
- Philippines (fil'i-pēnz), 89, 225, 438, 439, 449, 450, 451, 454–455, 460
- Phoenicians (fē-nīsh'ānz), 57–58, 81, 144, 146, 173, 230
- phos'phate, 260, 427
- Piraeus (pī-rē'ūs), 156–157
- Pisa (pē'zá), 209
- Po River, 170, 183, 188, 190
- Poland, 287, 361, 366, 370, 391–396
- polar regions, 5, 11
- Pol'y ne'si'a, 439, 459–460
- Pompeii (pōm-pā'yē), 185–186
- por'ce lain, 121, 213, 256, 447
- Portugal (pōr'tū-gāl), 218, 365, 441; cities, 228–229; climate, 219; colonies, 224, 234–235, 425; decline of, 225; explorations, 223–224; government, 236; history, 220, 222–224, 225; language, 224
- potatoes, 248, 289, 319, 333, 336, 341, 363, 377, 409
- pottery, Dutch, 312; earliest, 20; English, 281; Persian, 46
- Prague (präg'), 388, 390, 391, 395
- printing, invention of, 122, 123, 214–215
- Prot'es tant Ref'or ma'tion, 353
- Prussia (prūsh'ā), 354, 356, 380, 392, 393. *See also* Germany
- puppet states, 126, 367, 420, 449
- pyramids, 78
- Pyrenees (pir'ē-nēz), 218, 221
- Quezon (kā-zōn') City, 455
- quinine (kwī'nīn), 317, 456
- Raffles, Stamford, 113
- Ran goon', 106, 107, 109, 110
- Raphael (rāf'ā-ēl), 187, 188, 354
- rayon, 337, 444
- Red Cross Society, 378–379
- religion, ancient Egypt, 77; ancient Greece, 144; ancient Rome, 179; Balkan countries, 159; Buddhism, 95–96; Christianity, *see* Christianity; Confucianism, 119–120; Czechs, 388; Hebrew, 60, 62–63, 64; Hinduism, 94–95, 101, 104; Japan, 444–445, 445–446; Lebanon, 58; Moslem, 31, 45, 51, 104; Netherlands, 308; Philippines, 454; Protestant Reformation, 352–353; Shinto, 445–446, 451; Sudan, 427
- Rem'brandt van Rijn, 315, 316
- Renaissance (rēn'ē-sāns'), 215
- Renoir (rē-nwār'), Pierre, 258
- representative government, 274–275
- Reykjavik (rā'kyā-vēk'), 333
- Rhine River, 175, 253, 306, 317, 351, 359, 360, 366, 370, 372
- Rhone River, 238, 240, 252, 360, 372, 376
- rice, 213; Burma, 106, 107; China, 129, 130, 131; India, 100; Indochina, 110, 264; Italy, 183, 188; Japan, 443; Java, 456; Malaya, 111; Philippines, 454; Spain, 222, 228; Thailand, 106
- Rimsky-Korsakov (rim'skī-kōr'sā-kōf'), Nikolai, 403
- Riviera (rē-vyā'rā), 253
- Rodin (rō-dān'), Auguste, 258–259

- Roman Catholic Church, 186, 353, 388
- Roman Empire, 63, 82, 152, 168, 174-180, 196, 220, 308, 422; Dark Ages, 197; divided, 180
- Romance languages, 181, 214
- Rome, 78, 146, 166-182, 424; as an empire, 174-180, 240; Etruscan rule in, 169; fall of, 179-180; today, 183, 186, 187, 193. *See also Italy*
- Rot'ter dam, 308, 316-317, 360
- Rouen (rōō'ān'), 242, 248, 255
- rubber, 317; artificial, 112; Belgian Congo, 323; Ceylon, 99, 111; Indochina, 110; Java, 456; Liberia, 429; Malaya, 111-113, 114; Ruanda, 324; Senegal, 263; Sumatra, 456
- Ru'bens, Peter Paul, 321
- Ruhr Valley, 359-360, 366
- Ru ma'ni a, 141, 160-161, 365, 383
- Rurik, 400
- Russia, 42, 44, 203, 357, 381, 390, 392, 394, 398-420, 462, 463; Asiatic, 401, 415-419; and Balkans, 160, 161, 162, 163; and Baltic states, 414-415; climate, 409, 410, 415; collective farms, 407, 410; European, 409-415; and Finland, 346-347; formation of U.S.S.R., 403-407; in Germany, 366, 367, 368; government, 404-407, 420; in World War II, 365, 412, 413
- Ru the'ni a, 388, 390
- rye, 363, 409
- Saar (zär) Valley, 359
- Sahara (sā-hā'rā), 31, 175, 190, 260, 261, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427
- Saigon (sī-gōn'), 106, 110, 264
- St. Gotthard (gōt'ērd) Pass, 372-373, 374, 375
- St. Paul's Cathedral, 283
- St. Peter's Church, 186, 222
- St. Petersburg, 402, 404, 406, 410
- Salamis (sāl'ā-mis), bay of, 150
- Salonika (sāl'ō-nē'kā), 141, 162
- Samarkand (sām'ēr-kānd'), 417, 418
- Samoa (sā-mō'ā), 459
- Sanskrit (sān'skrit), 93
- Sappho (sāf'ō), 153
- Sardinia (sār-din'i-ā), 170, 183
- Saudi (sā-ōō'dē) Arabia, 30, 56, 66-67
- Scandinavia (skān'di-nā'vī-ā), 327; history, 328; language, 327
- Scheldt (skēlt) River, 320, 321
- Schiller (shil'ēr), Friedrich, 353
- Schubert (shōō'bērt), Franz, 385
- science, Denmark, 322; France, 259; Germany, 363; Poland, 396; Sweden, 343-344
- Scotland, 226, 268, 270, 271, 279, 280, 287, 289
- seasons, 4-5
- SEATO, 463
- Seine (sān) River, 238, 241, 248, 250-251, 254, 255
- Senegal (sēn'ē-gōl'), 263
- Ser'bi a, 356, 381
- serfs, 201-203, 205, 207, 220-221, 354
- Sevilla (sā-vēl'yā), 222, 228, 232, 233
- Shakes'peare, William, 275, 284, 354
- Shanghai (shāng'hī'), 126, 133-134, 449
- Shan'non River, 291
- sheep, Albania, 163; Arabia, 68; Australia, 295, 298, 299; England, 277; Greece, 143; Iceland, 333; Iran, 45-46; New Zealand, 201; South Africa, 434; Spain, 219, 231; Turkey, 54-55; Yugoslavia, 162
- Shinto, 445-446, 451
- ships and shipbuilding, China, 130-131; Denmark, 331; Germany, 361; Great Britain, 279, 281; Greece, 142, 144-146, 149, 150, 157; Japan, 446; Netherlands, 311-312, 314; Northern Ireland, 292; Norway, 335-336; Phoenician, 57; Portugal, 222; Polynesia, 459; Solomon's, 61
- Sibelius (sī-bā'li-ōōs), Jean, 348
- Si be'ri a, 89, 338, 401, 403, 404, 415, 416-417
- Sicily (sīs'i-lī), 144, 167, 168, 169, 173, 183-184, 192
- silk and silk weaving, 127, 188, 189, 213; China, 122, 132, 133, 277; France, 243, 253, 256; Japan, 443-444
- Sin'ga pore, 111, 113-114, 450, 455
- skills, social-studies:
chart making, 87, 115, 304, 349, 421
critical thinking, 29, 87, 139, 165, 195, 217, 237, 305, 369, 397
learning from maps, 15, 85, 139, 164, 194, 216, 237, 267, 303, 304, 325, 349, 369, 397, 421, 437, 461
learning from pictures and diagrams, 165, 216-217
outlining, 139, 267
reading graphs, 86, 165, 195, 305, 405
using a time-line, 48-49, 85, 139, 194, 226, 267, 325, 369, 397, 421, 437, 451
word study, 14, 29, 48, 71, 85, 105, 115, 138, 155, 164, 182, 193, 195, 204, 216, 226, 236, 237, 255, 266, 288, 304, 318, 325, 340, 348, 358, 369, 397, 408, 421, 437, 452, 461
- Slavs, 161, 381, 387, 389, 400, 413
- Smyrna (smūr'nā), 54, 55, 67
- Socrates (sōk'rā-tēz), 154
- Sofia (sō'fē-yā), 161
- So'lon, 148
- Sophocles (sōf'ō-klēz), 154
- sorghum (sōr'gūm), 127
- South Africa, 431-434. *See also Union of South Africa*
- South Pole, 3, 5, 9, 11, 339
- Soviet Russia. *See Russia*
- soybeans, 123-125
- Spain, 25, 57, 66, 173, 198, 218-238, 261, 365
- Spanish Armada (ār-mā'dā), 225-226, 309
- Sparta, 147, 150
- Spice Islands, 222, 223
- spinning jenny, 277-278
- Stalin (stā'līn), Joseph, 404-406, 415
- Stalingrad (stāl'in-grād), 412, 416
- Stanley, Henry M., 323, 424
- steam power, 278-279
- steel works, France, 254; Germany, 359-360; Great Britain, 279, 281; Japan, 447; Russia, 416
- steppes (stēps), 400, 409-410, 417, 419
- Stock'holm, 342-343, 347
- Stone Age, 74, 295; New, 22, 27-28; Old, 21
- Strauss (shtrous), Johann, 285
- Su dan', the, 426-428, 436
- Sudeten (sōō-dā'tēn) Mts., 386
- Suez (sōō-ēz'), Isthmus of, 3, 83
- Suez Canal, 3, 56, 83, 84
- sugar, 213, 222, 232, 458; India, 100; Malaya, 111; Philippines, 455
- sugar beets, 162, 319, 363, 389, 413, 419
- Sumatra (sōō-mā'trā), 113, 456-457
- Sumer (sōō'mēr) and the Sumerians, 32, 33-34
- Sun Yat-sen, Dr., 125, 126, 136
- Sweden and the Swedes, 146, 326, 328, 337, 340-345, 359, 365, 401, 402
- Switzerland, 238, 239, 317, 365, 370, 372-379
- Sydney, 295, 296, 298, 299, 300
- Syracuse (sir'ā-kūs), 144, 169
- Syria (sir'i-ā), 30, 55-58, 174
- Tahiti (tā-hē'tē), 459
- Taj Mahal (tāj mā-hāl'), 102
- Tanganyika (tān'gān-yē'kā), 429, 430
- Tangier (tān-jēr'), 234
- taro (tā'rō), 458, 459
- Tashkent (tāsh'kēnt'), 417, 418
- Tasmania (tāz-mā-nī-ā), 295, 300-302
- Tatars (tā'tērz), 400, 401, 412
- Tchaikovsky (chī-kōf'skē), Peter, 403
- tea, 277, 430; Ceylon, 99, 133; China, 122, 132-133; India, 100, 133; Indochina, 110; Iran, 44; Japan, 447; Java, 456
- teak, 108, 264
- Tehran (tē-h'rān'), 45, 47
- Tel Aviv (tēl ā-vēv'), 63, 66

- Tell, William, 375
temperate regions, 4, 11
Tennyson, Alfred, 284
textiles, Belgium, 320; Great Britain, 277, 278, 279, 280; India, 98; Poland, 393
Thailand (tǐ'lǎnd) or Siam, 89, 105, 106, 109-110, 111, 121
Thames (tēmz) River, 282, 283
Thebes (tēbz), 79, 80
Thorwaldsen (tōr'vål-sēn), Bertel, 332, 375
Tiber (tǐ'bēr) River, 168, 169
Tibet (tǐ-bēt'), 117, 121
Tientsin (tǐn'tsin'), 129
Tigris (tǐ'grīs) River, 30, 33, 37, 38, 40, 43, 44, 50
tin, 317; Belgian Congo, 324; Dutch East Indies, 457; England, 57; Malaya, 113, 114
Tito (tē'tō), 162
tobacco, 317; Albania, 163; India, 100; Southern Rhodesia, 431; Turkey, 55; Yugoslavia, 162
Tokyo (tō'ki-ō), 446, 447
Toledo (tō-le'dō), 176, 222, 228
Tolstoy (tōl-stoi'), Leo, 402
Toulon (tōō'lōn'), 252
Tower of London, 282, 283
towns, in Middle Ages, 205-207
trade, Africa, 428; Asiatic Russia, 417, 419; Balkans, 160; Belgium, 319, 321; Burma, 107; Carthage, 173; Central Europe, 372, 376, 380, 382; China, 125, 135; Denmark, 329, 331; France, 239, 252, 253, 254, 255; Germany, 356, 360, 361; Great Britain, 275-277, 279, 292-293; Greece, 145, 149, 152; Iceland, 333; India, 97; Japan, 441, 442, 447; Malaya, 113-114; Middle Ages, 203, 205, 209-210, 213, 308; Netherlands, 311-312, 316-317; Norway, 335-336; Pacific, 458, 459, 460; Philippines, 455; Phoenicians, 57; Portugal, 222-224; Rome, 167, 173; Spain, 230; Sweden, 341; Thailand, 110
Trans-Siberian Railroad, 415, 416, 417
Transvaal (trāns-vāl'), 431, 432, 433
tribal life, beginnings of, 27
Tropic of Cancer, 4, 10; of Capricorn, 4, 10
Troy, 142
tsetse (tsēt'sē) fly, 430
tundra, 409
tung oil, 131-132
Tunis (tū'nīs), 173, 262
Tu ni'si'a, 190, 192, 262, 436
Turin (tū'rīn), 188
Turkestan (tūr'kē-stān'), 51, 127
Turkey, 30, 44, 50-55, 59, 160, 163, 417, 418
Turks, 51, 52, 152, 156, 160, 190, 208, 383, 402, 412
Turner, J. M., 285-286
Tyre (tīr), 57, 58
Uganda (ū-gān'dā), 429
Ukraine, 412-414
Union of South Africa, 293, 302, 425, 431-435, 436
Union of Soviet Socialist Republics. *See* Russia
United Kingdom, 269, 287, 302. *See also* British Isles, Great Britain
United Nations, 137, 379, 462-463
United States, 125, 137, 146, 163, 366, 368, 428, 441, 459, 460, 462, 463; in World War I, 44, 246; in World War II, 192, 365, 449-451
university ties, Beirut, 58; China, 127; Cordoba, 221-222; Middle Ages, 213; Prague, 388; Switzerland, 374, 375; Toledo, 222
Ur (ūr), 32, 33, 59
Ural (ū'rāl) Mts., 399, 401, 410, 415, 416, 417, 419
uranium, 324
Valencia (vā-lēn'shī-á), 227-228
Van Dyck, Anthony, 321-322
Vat'ikan City, 186-187, 374
Velasquez (vā-lās'kāth), Diego, 232, 233
Ven'ice, 156, 187, 188, 189, 207, 209, 222, 223
Ver'gil, 179
Versailles (vēr'sā'y'), 243, 356; Treaty of, 357, 381
Victoria, Lake, 72, 429; Falls, 431
Vi en'na, 51, 52, 371, 380, 382, 383, 384, 385, 395
vikings. *See* Northmen
Vistula (vīs'tū-lá) River, 391, 392, 394
Vladivostok (vlā'dī-vōs-tók'), 415
volcanoes, 184, 185, 301, 333, 429, 433, 440, 456
Vol'ga River, 401, 410, 412, 418
Wagner (våg'nēr), Richard, 354
Wales, 268, 270, 271, 279
Wal'loons, 319
War'saw, 391-392, 394, 395
Wa'ter loo', battle of, 245, 309
water power, use of, 277, 278, 336-337, 341, 377, 379
weapons, armor, 34, 200, 320; battle axes, 272; battering-ram, 36-37, 210; boomerang, 297; bow and arrow, 21; catapult, 210; weapons—*continued*
early, 18, 20-22, 23; siege tower, 36-37, 210; swords, 56, 173, 228
weaving, early, 24; Great Britain, 277, 278, 280; Persia, 46; Sweden, 343
Weser (vā'zēr) River, 351, 361
Westminster Abbey, 273, 283-285
wheat, Australia, 295, 298; China, 127, 130; European Russia, 409; France, 248; Germany, 363; Great Britain, 286; Hungary, 383; Iraq, 42; Italy, 183, 184, 185, 188; New Zealand, 301; Rumania, 161; Spain, 219, 228, 229; Ukraine, 413
wheel, invention of, 24, 28
White Russia, 414
William II, emperor of Germany, 356
William of Orange, 309
William the Conqueror, 272-273, 282
windmills, 310-311, 316, 321, 434
World War I, 43-44, 52, 55, 59, 63, 66, 103, 246, 253, 254, 295, 322, 356-357, 381
World War II, 63, 113; Africa, 262, 422; Anzacs, 301; Balkans, 160, 161, 162; Belgium, 322; British Commonwealth, 302; China, 127, 133, 135; Czechoslovakia, 390; East Indies, 450, 457; Egypt, 83; Finland, 346; France, 246-247, 254; Germany, 246-247, 358, 364-366; Great Britain, 246-247, 295; Greenland, 334; Iceland, 334; India, 104; Indochina, 265; Iraq, 44; Italy, 192-193; Japan, 449-451; Netherlands, 316; Russia, 412, 413; Scandinavia, 332-333, 336, 337, 345; Southeast Asia, 109, 110, 114; Syria, 55
Wren, Sir Christopher, 283
writing, Egyptian, 75-76, 81-82; Phoenician, 58, 81; Sumerian, 34; syllable, 76, 118; Turkish, 52-53
Xerxes (zūr'kēs), 149, 150
Yangtze (yāng'tsē') River, 116, 117, 125, 127, 129, 130, 133
Yellow River. *See* Hwang Ho
Yemen (yēm'ēn), 30, 67-68
Yokohama (yō'kō-hā'mā), 443, 446-447
Yugoslavia (yōō'gō-slā'vī-á), 141, 160, 161-162, 382, 383
Zam be'zi River, 423, 430, 431, 434
zinc, 394, 414, 417
Zionism, 63
Zuider Zee (zī'dēr zā'), 310, 311
Zurich (zōōr'īk), 371, 375



[illegible]

SEP 11 RETURN

H 83 M16 1953 GR-6 C-2
MACMILLAN SOCIAL-STUDIES SERIES/

EDUCATION LIBRARY

NL 39569999 CURR HIST



000011205184

H

CH 8p. 91

83

395691

M16

1953

Gr. 6

C. 2

COMPACT STORAGE

CURRICULUM
EDUCATION LIBRARY



Macmillan Social-Studies Series

